THE UNIVERSITY

OF ILLINOIS

LIBRARY

557

Xb

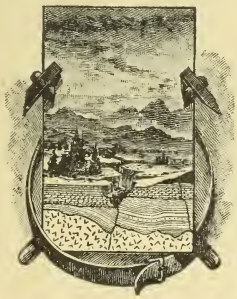
no 447-50

GEOLOGY

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
GEORGE OTIS SMITH, DIRECTOR

BULLETINS

Nos. 447-450



WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1911

557
X b
*437-50

CONTENTS

Geological Survey bulletin 447; Mineral resources of Johnstown, Pa., and vicinity.
Same 448; Geology and mineral resources of Nizina district, Alaska.
Same 449; Geologic reconnaissance in southeastern Seward Peninsula and Norton Bay-Nulato region, Alaska.
Same 450; Mineral resources of Llano-Burnet region, Texas.

Continuation

215262

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2016

https://archive.org/details/mineralresorceso4474phal

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
GEORGE OTIS SMITH, DIRECTOR

BULLETIN 447

MINERAL RESOURCES
OF
JOHNSTOWN, PENNSYLVANIA AND VICINITY

BY

W. C. PHALEN
AND
LAWRENCE MARTIN

SURVEYED IN COOPERATION WITH THE
TOPOGRAPHIC AND GEOLOGIC SURVEY COMMISSION OF PENNSYLVANIA

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1911

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Introduction	9
Geography	9
Location	9
Commercial geography	9
Topography	10
Relief	10
Surveys	11
Triangulation	11
Spirit leveling	13
Stratigraphy	14
General statement	14
Quaternary system	15
Recent river deposits (alluvium)	15
Pleistocene deposits	15
Carboniferous system	16
Pennsylvanian series	16
Conemaugh formation	16
General character	16
Detailed description	18
Wilmore sandstone member	18
Summerhill sandstone member	18
Morgantown ("Ebensburg") sandstone member	19
Harlem (?) coal	19
Red shale	19
Saltsburg sandstone member	19
Buffalo sandstone member	20
Gallitzin coal	20
Lower red shales	20
Mahoning sandstone member	20
Allegheny formation	22
General character	22
Detailed description	25
Upper Freeport coal	25
Upper Freeport limestone member	25
Bolivar clay member	25
Butler sandstone member	25
Lower Freeport coal	25
Lower Freeport limestone member	25
Upper Kittanning (C′) coal	25
Johnstown limestone member	26
Coals between Upper and Lower Kittanning coals	26
Lower Kittanning coal	27
Lower Kittanning clay member	27
Kittanning sandstone member	27
Brookville and Clarion coals	27
Pottsville formation	27

Stratigraphy—Continued. Page.
Carboniferous system—Continued.
Mississippian series 28
Mauch Chunk shale 28
Pocono formation 29
Devonian system 29
Catskill formation 29
Structure 30
Mode of representation 30
Structure in the Johnstown quadrangle 31
General statement 31
Detailed description 32
Wilmore syncline 32
Viaduct anticline 33
Johnstown basin 33
Laurel Ridge anticline 33
Barnesboro or Westover syncline 34
Minor structures 34
Mineral resources 35
Introduction 35
Coal 35
General description 35
Upper Freeport coal 35
Lower Freeport coal 35
Upper Kittanning (C′) coal 35
Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal 36
Character and importance 36
Coking tests 38
Miscellaneous tests 39
Lower Allegheny coals 39
Composition of the coals 40
Description by districts 42
Johnstown district 42
Extent 42
Conemaugh coals 43
Character and distribution 43
Gallitzin coal 43
Mahoning coal 43
Allegheny coals 44
Geologic position 44
Upper Freeport coal 48
Name and position 48
Extent and development 49
Chemical character 49
Occurrence and physical character 49
Lower Freeport coal 51
Name and position 51
Extent and development 51
Chemical character 51
Occurrence and physical character 52
Upper Kittanning coal 52
Name and position 52
Extent and development 53

Mineral resources—Continued. Page.
Coal—Continued.
Description by districts—Continued.
Johnstown district—Continued.
Allegheny coals—Continued.
Upper Kittanning coal—Continued.
Chemical character ... 54
Occurrence and physical character ... 56
Middle Kittanning coal ... 56
Lower Kittanning coal ... 57
Name and position ... 57
Extent and development ... 57
Chemical character ... 58
Occurrence and physical character ... 58
Lower coals ... 60
Pottsville coals ... 61
South Fork–Mineral Point district ... 61
Extent ... 61
Geologic position of coals ... 62
Conemaugh coals ... 62
Coal near Summerhill ... 62
Gallitzin coal ... 64
Allegheny coals ... 64
Upper Freeport coal ... 64
Name and position ... 64
Extent and development ... 65
Chemical character ... 65
Occurrence and physical character ... 66
Lower Freeport coal ... 67
Upper Kittanning (Cement) coal ... 67
Name and position ... 67
Extent and development ... 67
Chemical character ... 67
Occurrence and physical character ... 68
Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal ... 69
Name and position ... 69
Extent and development ... 69
Chemical character ... 69
Steaming tests ... 70
Coking tests ... 72
Cupola tests ... 73
Producer-gas tests ... 76
Occurrence and physical character ... 76
Lower Allegheny coals ... 77
Pottsville coals ... 78
Blacklick Creek district ... 78
Extent ... 78
Geologic position of coals ... 79
Allegheny coals ... 80
Lower Freeport (D) coal ... 80
Name and position ... 80
Extent and development ... 81
Occurrence and physical character ... 81

Mineral resources—Continued. Page.
Coal—Continued.
Description by districts—Continued.
Blacklick Creek district—Continued.
Allegheny coals—Continued.
Middle Kittanning (C) coal 82
Lower Kittanning (B) coal 82
Name and position 82
Extent and development 83
Chemical character 83
Steaming tests 83
Coking tests 85
Producer-gas test 86
Washing tests 86
Briquetting tests 87
Occurrence and physical character 88
Lower Allegheny coals 89
Windber district 91
Extent 91
Geologic position of the coals 91
Allegheny coals 92
Upper Freeport (E) coal 92
Lower Freeport (D) coal 93
Upper Kittanning (C′) coal 93
Middle Kittanning (C) coal 94
Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal 94
Name and position 94
Extent and development 94
Chemical character 95
Occurrence and physical character 95
Lower Allegheny coals 95
Conemaugh Furnace district 96
Extent 96
Allegheny coals 96
Upper coals 96
Lower Kittanning (B) coal 97
Extent and development 97
Chemical character 97
Steaming tests 98
Coking tests 98
Washing tests 99
Briquetting tests 99
Occurrence and physical character 101
Coal mining 102
Room and pillar system 102
General description 102
Ventilation 104
Drainage 104
Haulage 104
Mining methods 105
Long wall system 105
Literature 113

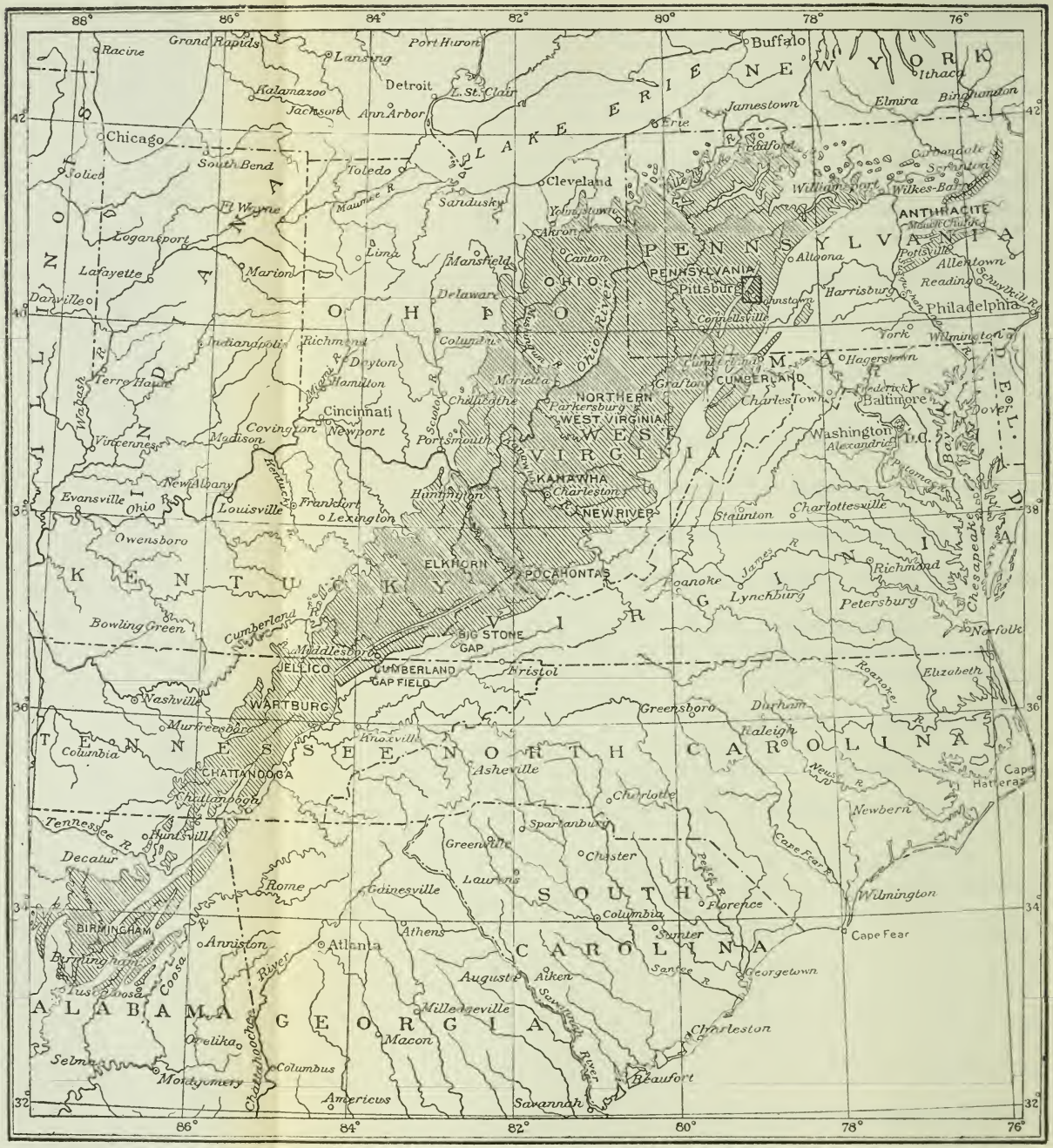
Mineral resources—Continued. Page.
Clay and shale ... 113
Mode of treatment ... 113
General description ... 113
Flint clays ... 113
Plastic clays ... 114
Shales ... 115
Description by districts ... 115
Johnstown district ... 115
Flint clays ... 115
Plastic clay ... 117
Shales ... 119
South Fork district ... 121
Flint clays ... 121
Plastic clay ... 123
Shales ... 123
Blacklick Creek district ... 124
Flint clay ... 124
Plastic clay ... 125
Miscellaneous localities ... 125
Production ... 125
Brick industry ... 126
Limestone and cement materials ... 126
Extent ... 126
Upper Freeport limestone member ... 126
Lower Freeport limestone member ... 126
Johnstown limestone member ... 127
Building stone, paving blocks, and concrete materials ... 129
Glass sand ... 131
Iron ores ... 132
History ... 132
Johnstown ore bed ... 132
Extent ... 132
Character of the ore ... 133
Physical features of the bed ... 134
Water resources ... 136
Index ... 137

ILLUSTRATIONS.

Page.
PLATE I. Economic and structural map of the Johnstown quadrangle, Pennsylvania ... In pocket.
II. Key map showing the location of the Johnstown quadrangle with reference to the entire Appalachian coal field ... 9
III. *A*, South Fork and washed away dam; *B*, Sandstone near base of Conemaugh formation near Johnstown ... 20
IV. *A*, Exposure of Lower Freeport coal on Stony Creek near trolley bridge, *B*, Country bank of the better class on the Upper Kittanning coal near Mineral Point ... 24

Page

PLATE V. *A*, Typical exposure of Mauch Chunk shale at the viaduct between South Fork and Mineral Point; *B*, Shale quarry of B. H. Campbell, north of Sheridan, at the Mercer horizon 28
VI. *A*, Detailed structure of the Loyalhanna limestone; *B*, Loyalhanna limestone (top member of Pocono formation) at summit of Ebensburg (Viaduct) anticline, Mineral Point 28
VII. *A*, Exposure of Upper Kittanning coal and Johnstown limestone member on Stony Creek, near mine of Valley Coal and Stone Company; *B*, Upper Freeport coal and overlying shales and base of Mahoning sandstone at the south portal of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad tunnel, Stony Creek 48
FIGURE 1. Sketch map showing location of triangulation stations on which survey of Johnstown quadrangle is based 11
2. Skeleton sections showing coals in Allegheny formation and the intervals between them 24
3. Sketch showing the great irregularity in detail of the structure in parts of the Johnstown quadrangle and the marked regularity in detail in other parts 31
4. Sections of the Upper Freeport (E or Coke Yard) coal in the Johnstown district 50
5. Sections of the Lower Freeport (D or Limestone) coal in the Johnstown district 52
6. Sections of Upper Kittanning (C′ or Cement) coal in the Johnstown district 55
7. Sections of the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B coal) in the Johnstown district 59
8. Section of Clarion (A′) coal in the Johnstown district 61
9. Sections of Upper Freeport (E or Lemon) coal near South Fork 66
10. Sections of Upper Freeport coal along the southeastern margin of the Wilmore Basin 66
11. Sections of Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′) coal in South Fork-Mineral Point district 68
12. Sections of Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in South Fork-Mineral Point district 77
13. Section of the Brookville (A) coal at mine of J. H. Wickes, South Fork 78
14. Sections of Lower Freeport (D) coal along Blacklick Creek 81
15. Sections of Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the Blacklick Creek district 89
16. Sections of Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′) coal in the Windber district 93
17. Sections of Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the Windber district 95
18. Sections of Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in Conemaugh Furnace district 101
19. Diagram illustrating the room and pillar method of mining in the Johnstown quadrangle 103
20. Plan showing long-wall method of mining as employed at Vinton collieries Nos. 1 and 3, Vintondale 106
21. Plan of workings, single long-wall conveyor system 107
22. Plan of workings, triple long-wall conveyor system 108



KEY MAP SHOWING LOCATION OF THE JOHNSTOWN QUADRANGLE WITH REFERENCE TO THE ENTIRE APPALACHIAN COAL FIELD.

MINERAL RESOURCES OF JOHNSTOWN, PENNSYLVANIA, AND VICINITY.

By W. C. Phalen and Lawrence Martin.

INTRODUCTION.

This report is one of a number of bulletins and geologic folios containing the results of geologic investigations carried on by the United States Geological Survey in cooperation with the Topographic and Geologic Survey Commission of Pennsylvania. Several papers based on this work, for which the State paid one-half the cost, have been or will soon be published by the State; others are in preparation for publication by the United States Geological Survey.

The field work on which this bulletin is based was done in the summer of 1906 by W. C. Phalen, assisted by Lawrence Martin. George H. Ashley, under whose supervision the work was done, visited the field and went over some of the more critical points.

GEOGRAPHY.

Location.—The Johnstown quadrangle is situated in southwest-central Pennsylvania, mostly in Cambria County, but extending also over small parts of Somerset, Westmoreland, and Indiana counties. (See Pl. I, pocket.) Its area is about 228 square miles. It lies near the eastern edge of the Allegheny Plateau province and near the northeastern edge of the great bituminous coal field that extends from the southern part of New York to northern Alabama; its position in this field is shown in Plate II.

Commercial geography.—This quadrangle lies in the plateau region west of the Allegheny Front. Its most important streams are Conemaugh River (formed by the union of Stony Creek and Little Conemaugh River at Johnstown), Blacklick Creek and its South Branch, and South Fork of Conemaugh River. Conemaugh River has long afforded one of the most available highways of communication across the region from the coast to the Middle West; the first railroad (the old Portage and Canal route) and the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad have both used this valley. The development of the iron

resources of the region was thus early stimulated, and in turn an impetus was given to the development of the coal resources, until at the present time Johnstown and the neighboring towns are among the leading coal and iron centers of western Pennsylvania.

Stony Creek flows northward, in its course forming part of the boundary between Somerset and Cambria counties, this part of its course lying entirely within the Johnstown Basin. The South Fork of Conemaugh River heads near the summit of Allegheny Mountain, near the Cambria-Bedford county line in the Ebensburg quadrangle, which adjoins the Johnstown quadrangle on the east. South and North branches of Blacklick Creek join near Vintondale and the main stream continues westward along the northern edge of the area. In a general way the drainage of the quadrangle flows from east to west. The main structural and to a less noticeable extent the main topographic features trend northeast and southwest. The drainage and structure thus intersect at a fairly large angle—a condition which has proved of vast economic importance, for it has resulted in the cutting of deep valleys and the exposing of valuable clay and coal beds. Moreover, it has made possible the exploitation on a large scale of the mineral wealth by drifting along the outcrop—a much safer and cheaper method than shafting and one tending to the most rapid development of a coal region. The streams have determined the location of the local railway systems and have made their construction fairly easy.

TOPOGRAPHY.

RELIEF.

The form of the surface of the Johnstown quadrangle bears a close and striking relation to the geology and structure. The highest points in the area are along the crest of Laurel Ridge, which south of Conemaugh River is more than 2,700 feet high at a few points. Laurel Ridge is a structural feature—that is, it is dependent on the character of the rocks brought to the surface by the structure. These are largely the sandstones of the Pocono and Pottsville formations. Where rocks of this character cover the surface the country is wild and surface cultivation is out of the question. Farther north along the ridge the sandy sediments dip below drainage level and the rocks of the Allegheny formation ("Lower Productive Coal Measures") and the Conemaugh formation ("Lower Barren Coal Measures") appear in the hills, as, for instance, along South Branch of Blacklick Creek. The changes in vegetation and general conditions accompanying the gradual disappearance of the sandy beds below the surface are noticeable north of South Branch of Blacklick Creek, and in this region the country is almost all under cultivation.

In the southeast corner of the quadrangle the highest hills are a little more than 2,700 feet high. Here also the beds are involved in

the structural uplift along the front of Allegheny Mountain, and the rocks along the crest of the mountain are chiefly the same sandstones as occur on Laurel Ridge.

The lowest points in the area are on Conemaugh River, at the western edge of the quadrangle. At Conemaugh Furnace station the elevation is 1,134.54 feet. The extremes in the topography are well brought out near by, for Conemaugh River in descending from 1,185 feet at Johnstown to 1,135 feet at Conemaugh Furnace flows through a gorge the hills on either side of which rise 1,600 feet higher.

The greater portion of the area has an elevation between the extremes given above. In detail the surface is decidedly hilly, but most of the hill slopes are rather gentle, especially back from the main drainage channels. The badly dissected character of the ridge has, however, an important bearing on the availability and exploitation of the natural resources of the region. There is very little level land in the quadrangle, what there is being confined almost solely to the lower stretches of Blacklick Creek in Indiana County.

Points of equal elevation are represented on the contour map by light-brown lines, which really represent the intersections of hypothetical horizontal planes with the surface of the country. They are placed 20 feet apart and indicate the "lay of the land" with great precision.

SURVEYS.

TRIANGULATION STATIONS.

The topographic work for the map of the Johnstown quadrangle (Pl. I) is based on triangulation stations established by the United States Geological Survey within the boundaries of the quadrangle or comparatively near its borders to the east and north. (See fig. 1.) Descriptions of the exact locations of these triangulation stations are given below:

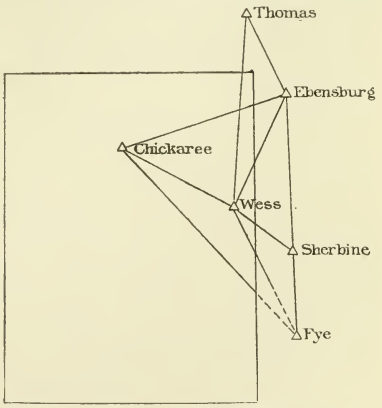


FIGURE 1.—Sketch map showing location of triangulation stations on which survey of Johnstown quadrangle is based.

CHICKAREE, CAMBRIA COUNTY.

On a cleared knob in the central part of Jackson Township, 10 miles by road westward from Ebensburg, 300 yards south of the Chickaree Hill schoolhouse.

Station mark: A marble post 34 by 6 by 6 inches set 32 inches in the ground, in the center of top of which is countersunk and cemented a bronze triangulation tablet.

[Latitude 40° 26′ 38.97″. Longitude 78° 52′ 48.29″.]

To station—	Azimuth.			Back azimuth.			Log. distance.
	°	′	″	°	′	″	*Meters.*
Ebensburg	251	24	48.82	71	30	51.47	4.1425539
Wess	292	00	35.81	112	04	41.22	3.9833693
Fye	318	31	18.78	138	37	47.50	4.3303852

EBENSBURG, CAMBRIA COUNTY.

Station is center of cupola of courthouse in Ebensburg.

Station mark: Center of cupola.

[Latitude 40° 29′ 02.07″. Longitude 78° 43′ 29.50″.]

To station—	Azimuth.			Back azimuth.			Log. distance.
	°	′	″	°	′	″	*Meters.*
Thomas	156	58	25.25	336	57	06.21	3.8644894
Carrolltown	185	49	38.40	5	50	15.62	4.1222362
Wopsononock	248	52	46.94	69	03	52.34	4.4120176
Tunnel Hill	270	56	22.25	91	03	22.64	4.1833793
Sherbine	0	52	21.75	180	52	15.82	4.1515885
Wess	27	55	04.38	207	53	07.38	3.9581867
Chickaree	71	30	51.47	251	24	48.82	4.1425539

WESS, CAMBRIA COUNTY.

In the northern portion of Croyle Township, 8 miles southwest of Ebensburg, 1 mile west of New Germany, in a pasture owned by Leo Wess. Theodolite elevated 35 feet.

Station mark: A marble post 36 by 6 by 6 inches set 32 inches in the ground, in the center of the top of which is countersunk and cemented a bronze triangulation tablet.

Reference mark: Line fence due north 44 feet distant. Center of big dead tree, N. 65° W. (magnetic), 31 feet distant.

[Latitude 40° 24′ 41.86″. Longitude 78° 46′ 29.85″.]

To station—	Azimuth.			Back azimuth.			Log. distance.
	°	′	″	°	′	″	*Meters.*
Chickaree	112	04	41.22	292	00	35.81	3.9833693
Thomas	185	20	37.23	5	21	15.32	4.1710473
Ebensburg	207	53	07.38	27	55	04.38	3.9581867
Sherbine	326	41	29.11	146	43	20.03	3.8666773
Fye	337	09	43.27	157	12	06.81	4.1299536

SHERBINE, CAMBRIA COUNTY.

On a small hill having scattering locust trees on its summit, in Croyle Township, about one-fourth mile west of the Summerhill Township line, 2 miles southwest of Wilmore, 2 miles southeast of Summerhill post-office, on land of Aaron Sherbine. Theodolite elevated 28 feet.

Station mark: A marble post 36 by 6 by 6 inches set 32 inches in the ground, in the center of top of which is countersunk and cemented a bronze triangulation tablet.

[Latitude 40° 21′ 22.50″. Longitude 78° 43′ 38.65″.]

To station—	Azimuth.			Back azimuth.			Log. distance.
	°	′	″	°	′	″	*Meters.*
Wess	146	43	20.03	326	41	29.11	3.8666773
Ebensburg	180	52	15.82	0	52	21.75	4.1515885
Tunnel Hill	228	00	07.85	48	07	13.50	4.3183273
Fye	349	15	37.33	169	16	09.98	3.8058254

FYE, CAMBRIA COUNTY.

[Not occupied.]

A cleared ridge known as the Fye place, owned by the Mountain Coal Company, in Adams Township, 6 miles south of Summerhill and 7 miles southeast of South Fork.

Station mark: A marble post 36 by 6 by 6 inches set 32 inches in the ground, in the center of top of which is countersunk and cemented a bronze triangulation tablet.

Reference mark: The lone locust signal tree 4 feet north of station mark.

[Latitude 40° 17′ 58.79″. Longitude 78° 42′ 48.19″.]

To station—	Azimuth.			Back azimuth.			Log. distance.
	°	′	″	°	′	″	*Meters.*
Chickaree	138	37	47.50	318	31	18.78	4.3303852
Wess	157	12	06.81	337	09	43.27	4.1299536
Sherbine	169	16	09.98	349	15	37.33	3.8058254

SPIRIT LEVELING.

The topography of the Johnstown quadrangle is shown on Plate I by buff-colored contour lines based on precise levels run by the United States Geological Survey. In running these levels numerous bench marks were established, their elevations being based on an aluminum tablet in the foundation of the Seventh Avenue Hotel, Pittsburg, Pa., marked "738 Pittsburg, 1899," the elevation of which is now accepted as 738.384 feet above mean sea level. The initial points on which these levels depend are various bench marks along the precise-level lines of the Pennsylvania Railroad, the accepted heights having been determined by the 1903 adjustment.

The work on the Johnstown quadrangle was done by Mr. George Seidel, levelman, in 1902.

The descriptions and elevations of these bench marks are given below:

Johnstown south along Baltimore and Ohio Railroad to Ingleside.

	Feet.
Johnstown, at west end of north parapet of railroad bridge; copper bolt (Pennsylvania Railroad bench mark)	1,180.27
Johnstown, east end of south parapet of Pennsylvania Railroad bridge; aluminum tablet stamped "1180 PITTS"	1,180.261
Johnstown, railroad ticket office, on window sill; chiseled shelf (Pennsylvania Railroad bench mark)	1,187.60
Johnstown, road crossing at Pennsylvania Railroad station; top of rail	1,184
Johnstown, in front of Baltimore and Ohio Railroad station; top of rail	1,169
Stony Creek, road crossing at station; top of rail	1,194
Johnstown, 3 miles south of, Baltimore and Ohio Railroad and trolley grade crossing; top of rail	1,191
Kring, road crossing at station; top of rail	1,241
Ingleside, 700 feet north of, northeast corner of small railroad bridge; copper bolt marked "1275 PITTS"	1,275.610

Ingleside northeast along Pennsylvania Railroad via Elkton to Salix.

Scalp Level, 0.45 mile north of, west side of track, 75 feet west of tool house, in large sandstone; aluminum tablet stamped "1719 PITTS"	1,719.225
Salix, 870 feet north of station, under Pennsylvania Railroad culvert, west wall; bronze tablet stamped "2050 PITTS"	2,049.455
Salix, railroad bridge at station, north parapet, east end; aluminum tablet stamped "2077 PITTS"	2,077.762

Seward northeast along Pennsylvania Railroad via Vintondale and Nanty Glo to Ebensburg.

Seward, 0.17 mile west of V. K. tower, railroad bridge No. 226 over Piney Run, north parapet, east end of arch; copper bolt (Pennsylvania Railroad bench mark)	1,091.571
Seward, doorstep of waiting room of station; copper bolt marked "1122 U. S."	1,122.145
Seward, crossing at station; top of rail	1,120
Wehrum, crossing at station; top of rail	1,360
Vintondale, 150 feet east of station, iron bridge, south end of west abutment; aluminum tablet stamped "1403 PITTS"	1,402.741
Twin Rocks, crossing at station; top of high rail	1,668
Nanty Glo, 200 feet south of station, iron bridge, west end of north abutment; bronze tablet stamped "1706 PITTS"	1,705.761
Nanty Glo, crossing at station; top of high rail	1,710
Beulah Road, in front of station; top of rail	1,894

STRATIGRAPHY.

GENERAL STATEMENT.

The surface rocks in the Johnstown quadrangle are entirely of sedimentary origin, all of them having been deposited in or by water. They consist of sandstones, shales, limestones, and coal and iron-ore beds, the whole having a thickness of approximately 3,100 to 3,200

feet. These rocks belong in the Devonian and Carboniferous systems, except for the imperfectly consolidated gravels of the river terraces, which are tentatively regarded as of Pleistocene age, and the recent alluvium of the flood plains. The Carboniferous rocks are of chief importance, as they contain the workable coals and clays. All these rocks will be described in descending order, beginning with the youngest.

QUATERNARY SYSTEM.

RECENT RIVER DEPOSITS (ALLUVIUM).

The alluvium of the streams of this area is the youngest bedded deposit. It consists of fine material, chiefly sand and clay, laid down by the present streams during periods of high water, and is present in varying amounts along most of the streams, though occupying as a rule small areas only. The most important alluvial area is that at the confluence of Conemaugh River and Stony Creek, on which the greater part of the city of Johnstown and its suburbs is located. Other important areas of alluvium are found on Blacklick Creek near the northwestern corner of the quadrangle. All the level land in this part of the quadrangle is under cultivation.

PLEISTOCENE DEPOSITS.

Along Conemaugh River and Stony Creek occur deposits which can not be correlated strictly with the alluvium or recent flood-plain deposits. This material, which consists of rounded bowlders varying up to 2 or 3 feet in greatest dimension, mingled with sand and clay in small quantities, is found at two or more distinct horizons. The lower deposit is well developed along the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad and is shown in small cuts a short distance east of Mineral Point. On the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad a short distance south of the quadrangle, north of the mouth of Paint Creek, near Kring, and near the suburb of Roxbury are also excellent exposures. At the quarry of B. H. Campbell, north of Sheridan, rounded bowlders occur 100 feet above the level of the Pennsylvania Railroad. This deposit is similar in all respects to the lower one occurring along Stony Creek. These bowlders show in the foreground of Plate V, *B* (p. 28). The material is considered to be Pleistocene in age. It has no economic importance.

CARBONIFEROUS SYSTEM.

PENNSYLVANIAN SERIES.

CONEMAUGH FORMATION.

GENERAL CHARACTER.

The Conemaugh formation includes the rocks lying below the Pittsburg coal and above the Upper Freeport coal. A nearly complete section of these rocks was obtained from drill records and by hand-level work along the Pennsylvania Railroad in the deepest part of the Wilmore structural basin. The upper 200 feet or so of the section represents barometric work along the roads in the Ebensburg quadrangle to the east. It has been thought advisable to give the section of the Conemaugh thus obtained in this locality as a matter of record, but it will be understood that such a detailed section necessarily is constant over a very small area. Some of the sandstones, for instance, die out completely within a short distance and other lentils appear in the section either slightly higher up or lower down. In general, local names are applied to such sandstone lentils where their position is known to be fairly well defined in the geologic column.

The section of the Conemaugh formation is as follows:

Section of the Conemaugh formation in the Wilmore Basin.[a]

	Thickness.	Total.
	Ft. in.	*Ft. in.*
Sandstones and sandy shale layers with intercalated limestones	200	200
Shale	20	220
Sandstone (Wilmore)	17	237
Shale	5	242
Limestone, sandy	2	244
Shale, green, weathering to clay	23	267
Shale, dark drab	15	282
Sandstone, containing a 10 to 12 inch limestone layer and with a possible coal bloom	6	288
Shale	10	298
Limestone	9	307
Shale, green	6	313
Limestone	1	314
Shale, concretionary	2	316
Fire clay	1	317
Shale, concretionary	4	321
Shale, olive	1	322
Shale, dark	10	332
Sandstone	1	333
Shale, blue-black	3	336
Limestone	3	339
Shale	20	359
Sandstone (Summerhill)	45	404
Shale, with sandy and limestone layers	30	434
Sandstone, shaly	25	459
Shale, dark blue, weathering like sandstone	25	484
Sandstone	2	486
Limestone	3	489
Limestone grading into sandstone	6	495
Sandstone, hard, gray	25	520
Shale	3½	520 3½
Sandstone, hard, gray	7 5½	527 9
Shale, sandy	3 2	530 11
Sandstone	5 1	536

Morgantown ("Ebensburg") sandstone member.

[a] First 200 feet, barometric measurements along roads; section hand-leveled from 200 to 495 feet; below 495 feet record obtained from a bore hole on the Pennsylvania Railroad opposite the signal tower between Wilmore and Summerhill.

Section of the Conemaugh formation in the Wilmore Basin—Continued.

	Thickness.		Total.	
	Ft.	*in.*	*Ft.*	*in.*
Shale	9	2½	545	2½
Coal (called 600-foot rider owing to its position at about 600 feet above the Lower Kittanning or B coal)		10	546	½
Shale	29	2	575	2½
Shale, red	6	1	581	3½
Shale	7	7	588	10½
Sandstone and shale	18	4	607	2½
Shale, calcareous	6	8	613	10½
Shale with calcareous and clay streaks	13	2	627	½
Shale, sandy	8	10	635	10½
Shale	3	5	639	3½
Shale, calcareous	6	10½	646	2
Shale, sandy	7	10	654	
Sandstone	31	2½	685	2½
Shale, with bony streaks		8	685	10½
Sandstone	15	5½	701	4
Shale	4	10½	706	2½
Shale, sandy } Sandstone } Buffalo sandstone member	19		725	2½
	28	1	753	3½
Slate and sandstone }	12	3	765	6½
Sandstone with congomerlate layers	55	2½	820	9
Slate	4	3	825	
Slate, sandy	7	6	832	6
Slate	28	6½	861	½
Slate, sandy	7	6½	868	7
Shale		11½	869	6½
Slate, sandy	4	6	874	½
Slate	11	7½	885	8
Sandstone	3	4	889	
Shale	10	3	899	3
Shale, red	4	11	904	2
Sandstone	10	3	914	5
Shale	8	3	922	8
Sandstone	2	8½	925	4½
Shale with sandstone layers	21	6	946	10½
Sandstone		11½	947	10
Slate	1	3	949	1
Sandstone	10	1	959	2
Slate	5		964	2
Top of Upper Freeport coal.				

With this section may be compared the following section of a part of the Conemaugh, measured by John Fulton, in Prossers Knob, near Johnstown:[a]

Section of part of the Conemaugh formation in Prossers Knob, near Johnstown.

	Ft.	in.
Stone quarry; sandstone	20	
Shales, olive	17	
Shales, drab	18	
Sandstone, thin bedded	10	
Shales	8	
Iron ore, siliceous	3	
Shales, olive and drab	68	
Shales, red	10	
Shales, olive	12	
Slate and sandstone	10	
Sandstone, white	26	
Shales, drab	13	
Sandstone, massive, drab, forming cliff	20	
Coal		3

[a] Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. H2, p. 97.

		Ft.	in.
Shale, drab		4	
Sandstone, drab		7	
Slates		2	
Johnstown iron-ore seam		2	
Shales, flesh and drab colored	Place of the Mahoning sandstone.	13	
Shales, iron stained		9	
Iron ore			10
Fire clay		2	
Shales, soft, drab		8	
Fire clay and shales		4	
Shales, drab, and sandstone		15	
Coal, Upper Freeport or E		3	

According to the section (pp. 16–17), the Conemaugh is nearly 1,000 feet thick, this estimate, however, being subject to the question of the correct correlation of the Pittsburg coal. It is made up essentially of shales and sandstones, with a few beds of limestone. Streaks of coal are present here and there, but only locally are they of sufficient thickness and purity to be worked even in a small way. Fire clay, both plastic and flint, occurs in the formation in certain parts of the area. A bed of iron ore described in the reports of the Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania as the Johnstown ore has been found on Mill Creek, north and west of Johnstown, and near the position of the old Cambria furnace at the base of Laurel Hill; it lies 50 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. Considerable historical importance attaches to this ore body, for its presence determined the beginning of the iron industry near Johnstown and undoubtedly influenced the present vigorous development of the coal.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION.

The higher portion of the Conemaugh in the Johnstown quadrangle is made up of sandstones and shales, with occasional beds of limestone. As it has been found difficult to correlate these sandstones with the typical members in the Pittsburg district and Allegheny Valley, they are here referred to by the local names given them in the Ebensburg quadrangle, which lies immediately east of the area under discussion.

Wilmore sandstone member.—The highest of these sandstones was called by Butts [a] the Wilmore sandstone. It shows in the top of the first railway cut west of Wilmore and in the neighboring hills. Its position with reference to the Upper Freeport coal is indicated in the section on pages 16–17. It is usually not more than 20 feet thick.

Summerhill sandstone member.—Next comes the Summerhill sandstone member, whose base lies 560 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. It varies from 30 to 45 feet in thickness. It was named by

[a] Ebensburg folio (No. 133), Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey, 1905, p. 5.

Butts from the village of Summerhill, in the eastern part of the Johnstown quadrangle. It outcrops conspicuously in all the hills between Wilmore and Summerhill, especially in a bluff east of the latter town. It is as a rule decidedly laminated in appearance, differing in this respect from the massive Morgantown ("Ebensburg") sandstone below.

Morgantown ("Ebensburg") sandstone member.—The next lower stratum of note in this area is a sandstone which Butts called the Ebensburg, but which in this report will be termed the Morgantown sandstone member. This sandstone lies between 400 and 450 feet above the Upper Freeport coal in the southeastern part of the quadrangle and probably less than 400 feet above it in the northern part. It is excellently developed near Elton in the Johnstown area.

Harlem (?) coal.—The Morgantown sandstone is closely underlain by a thin coal known as the 600-foot rider, as it is usually 600 feet above the Lower Kittanning coal. It outcrops near the old dam site on South Fork of Conemaugh River (Pl. III, *A*). It is possible that this corresponds to the Harlem or Friendsville coal, but this correlation is provisional, as it is hazardous to attempt close correlation with the upper portions of the Conemaugh in the western part of the State.

Red shale.—The next lower stratum persistent enough to be traced with certainty is a band of red shales 30 feet or less in thickness. These occur in nearly all parts of the quadrangle, though the distance of their top above the Upper Freeport coal is not constant, varying from 300 to 400 feet. They may correspond to the red shale in the western part of the State, to which I. C. White has given the name Pittsburg red shales.

Saltsburg sandstone member.—Around Johnstown the top of what is regarded as the representative of the Saltsburg sandstone member lies about 300 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. It is very nearly 50 feet thick and is fairly massive in the hills east of the town. It is underlain in this region by a thin band of reddish and purple shales.

In the southeastern part of the quadrangle the Saltsburg horizon is for the most part below drainage level, but several apparently carefully kept drill records give an excellent idea of its character. Its top is here 300 feet above the Upper Freeport coal, and it is about 50 feet thick. It is underlain by 30 to 40 feet of shales containing a coal (the Bakerstown bed) or, in one section, two coals separated by 25 feet of shales and sandy shales. Red shale also appears in this shale interval, and not more than 25 feet above this a slightly calcareous bed, very thin, may possibly represent the Upper Cambridge limestone. Both near Johnstown and in the southeastern part of the quadrangle these sandstones in places become sandy shales and

merge imperceptibly with the beds above or below, so that it is difficult or impossible to locate their bases and tops in the records.

Buffalo sandstone member.—In the South Fork district the top of the Buffalo sandstone member is about 200 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. As nearly as can be ascertained from the road sections, the sandstone consists of a single member. It appears prominently along the Pennsylvania Railroad near Ehrenfeld, where the débris from it is massive, and is well exposed in the shallow railroad cuts west of Summerhill station. Compactly bedded thick and thin flags are very characteristic of this stratum in the eastern part of the Johnstown quadrangle and farther east in the Ebensburg quadrangle.

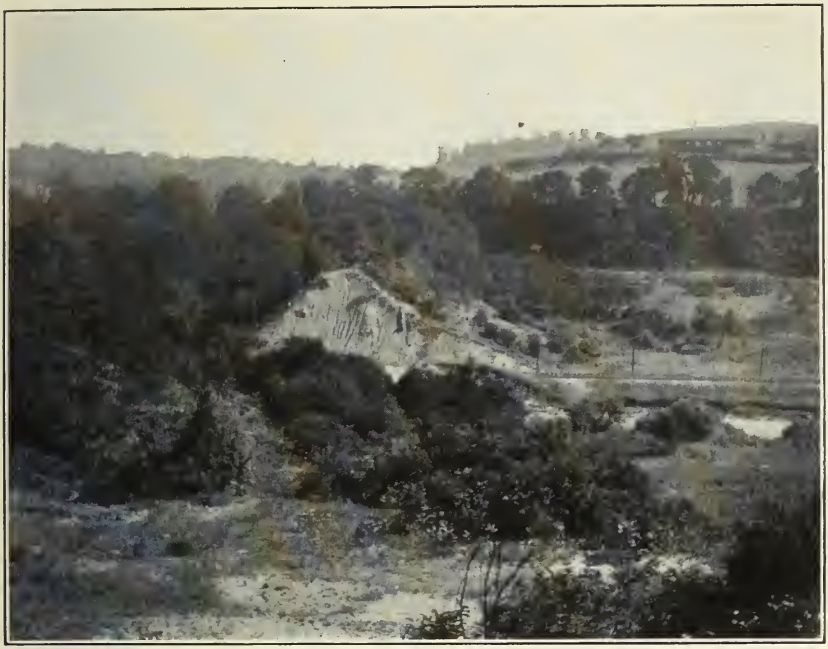
Along Blacklick Creek in the northwestern part of the quadrangle there appears in the section a very massive sandstone, whose top is 200 to 235 feet above the Lower Freeport coal and 80 and 95 feet, respectively, above the Mahoning coal and Johnstown ore bed. This sandstone probably corresponds to the Buffalo sandstone member. It is exceedingly massive, forming débris comparable to that from the Pottsville. It makes a very prominent appearance north of Vintondale and to the west in Indiana County.

Gallitzin coal.—The Gallitzin coal ranges from 70 to 125 feet above the top of the Upper Freeport coal in the region around Johnstown. In some of the diamond-drill records from the hills east of the city it appears about 110 feet above the top of the Upper Freeport coal. In some of the sections a coal appears as near the Upper Freeport as 70 feet. Where there is but a single coal in the lower 125 feet of the Conemaugh and it is as near to the Upper Freeport as 70 feet there is always doubt as to whether it should be regarded as the Gallitzin or as a lower coal. The Gallitzin coal is not a commercial bed and has not been worked except for local use in any part of the quadrangle.

Lower red shales.—The Gallitzin coal is underlain by a thin band of red or variegated shales, which are well exposed along the road ascending to Pleasant Hill in the western part of Johnstown. In some records of the drill holes put down to the east of the city these shales have been called variegated.

Mahoning sandstone member.—The Mahoning member is composed of sandstones, shales, and coals lying at the base of the Conemaugh formation between the Gallitzin coal and the Upper Freeport coal (top of the Allegheny formation). It is well exposed in the hills about Johnstown and to the south along Stony Creek, near South Fork, and near Blacklick Creek.

At the tunnel of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad south of Johnstown the following clear-cut section of the lower part of this member was obtained:



A. SOUTH FORK AND WASHED AWAY DAM.

The breaking of this dam caused the Johnstown flood of May 31, 1889.

B. SANDSTONE NEAR BASE OF CONEMAUGH FORMATION NEAR JOHNSTOWN.

Section of part of Mahoning sandstone member south of Johnstown, Pa.

	Ft.	in.
Sandstone, laminated and cross-bedded, upper Mahoning	8	
Shale, green	4–5	
Coal		5
Shale, drab, fossiliferous	2	
Coal		6
Fire clay, dark, almost black		6
Limestone, blue, ferruginous, altering to ore ("Johnstown ore")	1½–2	
Shale	30	
Sandstone, massive	20	
Shale, massive, brown	5	

This section may be considered fairly typical for this immediate region. The upper sandstone, called upper Mahoning, is decidedly characteristic in appearance. It is fine grained, weathering into extremely thin slabs, and where seen to greatest advantage ranges in thickness up to 20 feet. The coal below it, exposed in the saddle in the road above the tunnel, is present in two benches with an interval of 2 feet between. This is probably the Mahoning coal. It is nowhere of workable thickness in this quadrangle.

The "Johnstown ore" underlies the Mahoning coal and is about 50 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. As a workable ore it has been found only in the center of the Johnstown Basin. It has been worked in the hills about the city, on Hinckston Run, at the west base of Laurel Ridge, and on Mill Creek. At present it is of no importance.

Flint clay occurs in the shale interval lying above the lower Mahoning sandstone. It lies close to the top of the lower sandstone bed at an interval ranging from 50 to 80 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. The position of this flint clay is shown in the section in the hill east of Johnstown (p. 116). Its characteristics are described later (pp. 115–117).

The lower Mahoning sandstone outcrops in all the hills about Johnstown and has been quarried for building stone at many places. It is very massive, decidedly coarse grained, and micaceous. As a rule it ranges from 20 to 30 feet in thickness and is separated from the top of the Upper Freeport coal by 5 to 10 feet of dark-brown shale.

Near South Fork the base of the Conemaugh is well shown in a recent cut on the Pennsylvania Railroad near Ehrenfeld. A hand-leveled section obtained opposite the station is as follows:

Section of the base of Conemaugh formation at Ehrenfeld.

	Ft.	in.
Shale, weathering to clay	15	
Shale, olive and drab, locally sandy	30	
Coal		4–5
Shale	8	
Shale, black		2

	Ft.
Shales, blue and black	1
Coal	2
Shales	15
Shale, blue, with alternating layers of fine-grained sandstone	20
Sandstone, massive	20
Upper Freeport coal.	

The Mahoning coal appears in this section, as in that south of Johnstown, in two benches at approximately the same distance above the top of the Upper Freeport coal. The lower bench is thick enough to be worked, though so far as known no coal has ever been obtained from it. The lower Mahoning sandstone is fairly massive, but not so much so as in the hills near Johnstown.

In the hills bordering Blacklick Creek, near Wehrum, the Mahoning coal measures about a foot in thickness and is closely underlain by old ore benches, indicating the formerly extensive workings on the Johnstown iron-ore bed. The underlying flint clay is present north, west, and southwest of Wehrum in a position similar with respect to the lower Mahoning sandstone to that of the flint clay occurring above the same sandstone near Johnstown, and is thus to be correlated with that stratum. The lower Mahoning sandstone is persistent where it appears above drainage level in the Blacklick Creek district, and is fairly massive.

ALLEGHENY FORMATION.

GENERAL CHARACTER.

The Allegheny formation was originally known as the "Lower Productive Coal Measures." As may be inferred from that name, it is distinguished from the overlying formation by the presence of several workable coal beds. It is the most important formation in the Johnstown quadrangle, as in it are found all the workable coals of the area. The following section, compiled from the area about Johnstown and to the south, gives an idea of the general character of the formation in this quadrangle:

Section of Allegheny formation about Johnstown and to the south.

	Ft.	in.
Coal, Upper Freeport (Coke Yard or E coal)	3	3
Shale	14	
Shale with limestone concretions	10	
Shales, bluish	25	
Sandstone, laminated	5	
Shales and sandy shales	10	
Coal, 1 foot Bone, 1½ inches Coal, 1 foot 7 inches Bone, 1 inch Coal, 3½ inches — Lower Freeport (D or Limestone coal).	3	1

	Ft.	in.
Limestone	3¾	
Shale, blue	5	
Shale, light drab, ferruginous	7	
Shale, sandy	8½	
Shale, blue black	4	
Coal, Upper Kittanning (C′ or Cement coal)	3¾	
Shale	1	
Limestone	5	
Shale	3½	
Shale, sandy	5	
Shale, black and brown	3	
Coal	1	
Shales, sandy	5	
Shales	20	
Coal	11	
Shale	25	
Interval, chiefly sandstone	20–25	
Coal, 3 feet 8½ inches Bone or black shale, 3½ inches Coal, 3½ inches Bone, 1 inch Coal, 10 inches — Lower Kittanning (Miller or B coal)	5	2½
Fire clay	4½	
Sandstone, gray, laminated	9	8
Sandstone, massive	40	
Shale	2	
Coal and bone (Clarion or A′ coal)	3	1
Shale	10	
Sandstone, blue, laminated	5	
Pottsville.		
	280	9½
	to 285	9½

A section of the base of the Allegheny in which both the Brookville and Clarion coals show is as follows:

Section of lower part of Allegheny formation near A. J. Haws & Sons' brick plant, Coopersdale.

	Ft.	in.
Shale, dark	10+	
Coal	1	0–4
Shale, black, with siliceous limestone concretions	10	
Coal		5½
Shale and bone		4
Coal	1	0–5
Shale and bone		0–10
Pottsville sandstone, massive.		

The thickness of the Allegheny ranges from 220 to 290 feet. At its top is the Upper Freeport coal; at its base the Brookville coal. The former occurs almost directly below the massive Mahoning sandstone; the latter rests directly on the top of the even more

massive Pottsville—circumstances which in this particular area are helpful in determining the boundaries of the formation.

The more characteristic members of the Allegheny formation occurring in the Johnstown quadrangle are the following:

Upper Freeport coal (E).
Upper Freeport limestone member.
Bolivar clay member.
Butler sandstone member.
Lower Freeport coal (D).
Lower Freeport limestone member.
Upper Kittanning coal (C′).
Johnstown limestone member.
Coals between the Upper Kittanning and Lower Kittanning coals.
Lower Kittanning coal (B).
Lower Kittanning clay member.
Kittanning sandstone member.
Clarion coal.
Brookville coal.

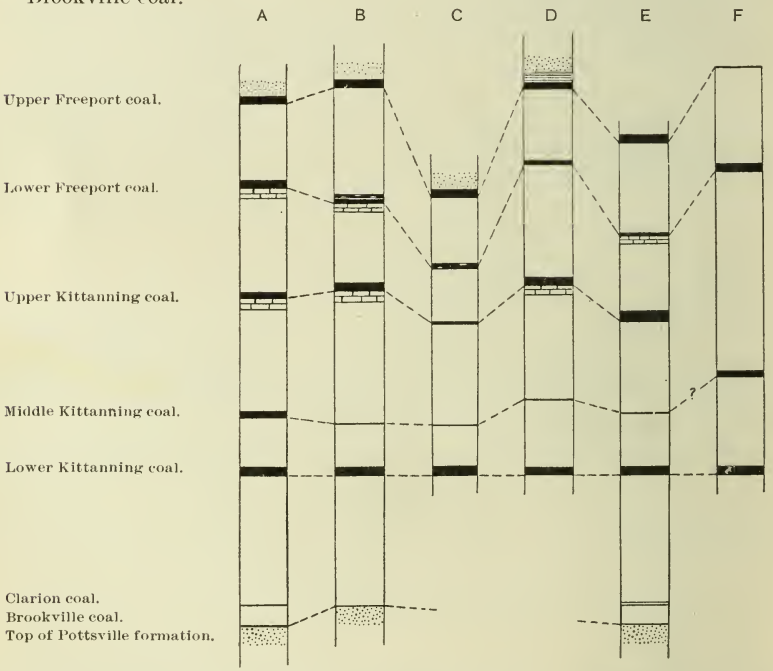


FIGURE 2.—Skeleton sections showing coals in the Allegheny formation. Vertical scale, 1 inch=100 feet. A, Compiled section near Coopersdale; B, compiled section on Peggys and Clapboard runs; C, section north of South Fork; D, section south of South Fork; E, compiled section near southern border of quadrangle; F, section on Blacklick Creek.

The position of the coals with reference to one another in the different districts is well shown in figure 2.

A. EXPOSURE OF LOWER FREEPORT COAL ON STONY CREEK, NEAR TROLLEY BRIDGE.
The overlying sandstone is the Butler. The Lower Freeport limestone member shows below the coal.

B. COUNTRY BANK OF THE BETTER CLASS ON THE UPPER KITTANNING COAL NEAR MINERAL POINT.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION.

Upper Freeport coal.—The Upper Freeport coal lies at the top of the Allegheny formation, almost directly below the massive Mahoning sandstone member and from 220 to 290 feet above the top of the Pottsville formation, or, as it is locally called, the "Conglomerate Rock." It is known in the Johnstown district as the Upper Freeport or E bed but most commonly as the Coke Yard coal. In the South Fork district it is called the Lemon or Four-foot coal. Its chemical and physical characteristics will be discussed in subsequent parts of this bulletin, as will be the case with the other workable coals.

Upper Freeport limestone member.—In the region near South Fork the Upper Freeport limestone appears in the section. A short distance east of Ehrenfeld it is well exposed in some recent excavations along the Pennsylvania Railroad, in which it ranges from 1½ to 3 feet in thickness. It is a gray limestone and very irregularly bedded. (See section, p. 65.)

Bolivar clay member.—A flint clay lying a few feet below what is regarded as the Upper Freeport coal was seen at a few places in the valley of Mardis Run, near the northwestern edge of the quadrangle. This clay probably corresponds with the Bolivar fire clay of the region to the southwest. Two feet of clay was seen at one point on the outcrop, and the bed may possibly be thicker.

Butler sandstone member.—In some places on Stony Creek a very massive sandstone 20 feet thick was observed lying directly over the Lower Freeport or D coal. (See Pl. IV, *A*.) This corresponds in position to the Butler or "Upper Freeport" sandstone. It is very local in its development.

Lower Freeport coal.—The Lower Freeport or D coal is known about Johnstown as the Limestone bed from a 2 to 3 foot bed of limestone occurring within a foot of its base. In position it ranges from 45 to 70 feet below the Upper Freeport coal. (See Pl. IV, *A*.)

Lower Freeport limestone member.—The Lower Freeport limestone occurs either directly below or within a foot of the base of the Lower Freeport coal, the slight interval as a rule being filled with black shale. This limestone shows in Plate IV, *A*.

Upper Kittanning (C′) coal.—The next lower horizon of importance is the Upper Kittanning or C′ coal, known near Johnstown as the Cement coal. It is an important coal near Johnstown and Windber, and in fact is one of the most persistent and valuable coals in the quadrangle. It occurs from 80 to 105 feet below the Upper Freeport, though near South Fork this interval is less. Above the Upper Kittanning coal, near Johnstown and to the west on Dalton Run, some of the sections show one and some two small coals. These sections follow.

Section of Upper Kittanning coal at mouth of Rolling Mill mine of Cambria Steel Company, Johnstown, Pa.

	Ft.	in.
Sandstone, thin bedded	3	
Coal		2–4
Sandstone, thin bedded and laminated	8	
Shale		6
Coal, Upper Kittanning (C′)	3	
Shale	1	
Limestone	4+	
Shale or fire clay	2–4	

Section of Upper Kittanning (C′) coal on Dalton Run.

Shale.	Ft.	in.
Coal		4
Shale		10
Coal		4
Shale	3	
Coal	4	
Shale or clay	2+	

Limestone bowlders.

Johnstown limestone member.—About Johnstown the Upper Kittanning coal is underlain by a limestone which may prove suitable for the manufacture of cement. This cement bed is best developed along Stony Creek and may be seen to advantage in the cuts on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad north of Kring, where it is 6 feet thick and is separated from the coal by 8 to 12 inches of shale. Along the spur track leading from the north end of the tunnel into the Valley Coal and Stone Company's mines it is also conspicuous but is slightly thinner. An analysis of this cement rock is given on page 128. It is shown in Plate VII, *A* (p. 48).

Coals between the Upper and Lower Kittanning coals.—In several of the sections south of Johnstown a coal bed occurs from 17½ to 20 feet below the base of the Upper Kittanning coal. This coal is very thin, in most places measuring less than 6 inches. It may be seen in the bluffs near the Citizens Eighth Ward mine and in the cut on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad north of Kring. At the latter place another coal 7½ inches thick appears in the section 13 feet below the upper thin coal and about 31 feet below the base of the Upper Kittanning bed. What is probably the upper of these two coals appears in many of the drill records from the Wilmore Basin, and both are persistent in the section along the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad east of East Conemaugh. In the latter region, however, the lower coal, which it is thought must be the representative of the Middle Kittanning (C) coal, lies 45 to 50 feet below the base of the Upper Kittanning—a distance greater than at Kring. Near the brick plant of A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited), at Coopersdale, what is tentatively regarded as the Middle Kittanning occurs 25 feet above the Lower Kittanning bed.

Lower Kittanning coal.—The next lower coal—the Lower Kittanning, Miller, White Ash, or B coal—is the most persistent and valuable bed in the area. It usually lies approximately 145 to 200 feet below the Upper Freeport coal and from about 65 to 100 feet above the top of the Pottsville.

Lower Kittanning clay member.—The Lower Kittanning clay is the most valuable plastic clay in the area. It usually underlies the lower bench of the Lower Kittanning coal, from which it may be separated by a few inches of shale. In the absence of the lower bench of coal it sometimes occurs below the main coal itself, being separated from it by 3 to 4 inches of bone or shale. (See, further, pp. 117–118, 123.)

Kittanning sandstone member.—On the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, between Foustwell and the mouth of Paint Creek, on the west flank of the Ebensburg anticline, the Pottsville and the beds below the Lower Kittanning coal are well exposed. Near the water tank and culvert nearly a mile east of the bridge over Stony Creek the following section was measured:

Section of the lower part of the Allegheny formation, east of Foustwell.

	Ft.	In.
Base of Lower Kittanning coal.		
Fire clay	4	8
Sandstone, laminated	9	8
Sandstone, massive	40	
Shale	2	
Coal		6
Shale, black		6
Coal	2	7
Shale	10	
Sandstone, blue, laminated	5	
Pottsville sandstone, massive.		

Brookville and Clarion coals.—Between the Lower Kittanning coal and the top of the Pottsville formation are found either one or two coals. The coal noted in the preceding section is one of these, possibly the upper or Clarion bed; where the section was taken it is of workable thickness. Both coals appear at the roadside near A. J. Haws & Sons' brick plant, west of Coopersdale. (For section, see p. 23.) The lower coal, consisting of two benches, is the Brookville; the higher is regarded as the Clarion. Representatives of these lower coals are found near Twin Rocks.

POTTSVILLE FORMATION.

The Pottsville, where most plainly developed in the Johnstown quadrangle, consists of three members—an upper and a lower sandstone, known respectively as the Homewood and Connoquenessing sandstone members, and an intervening shale (containing a coal bed), known as the Mercer shale member. With these is associated an important flint clay.

A section of the Pottsville along Stony Creek, in part off the southern edge of the quadrangle, is as follows:

Section of Pottsville formation in and near Johnstown quadrangle.

	Feet.
Sandstone, massive (Homewood)	65–90
Shale, black, and clay (Mercer)	11
Sandstone, massive (Connoquenessing)	95–105

This gives a total thickness to the Pottsville of about 170 feet. Between South Fork and Mineral Point the thickness of the Homewood member, where it could best be observed, is only about 35 feet, indicating a thinning to the east; the thickness of the whole formation, however, remains at about 170 feet. In the South Fork district the Mercer interval contains a valuable flint clay.

The Pottsville is not always devoid of coal, as the section given above might indicate. South of Kring the Mercer contains a coal bed whose section is given on page 61. At the B. H. Campbell shale quarry, on the Mercer (p. 119), coal is also present.

The sandstones of the Pottsville are massive and coarse grained but rarely conglomeratic. They make very large sandstone débris, and the country underlain by the Pottsville is usually wilderness.

MISSISSIPPIAN SERIES.

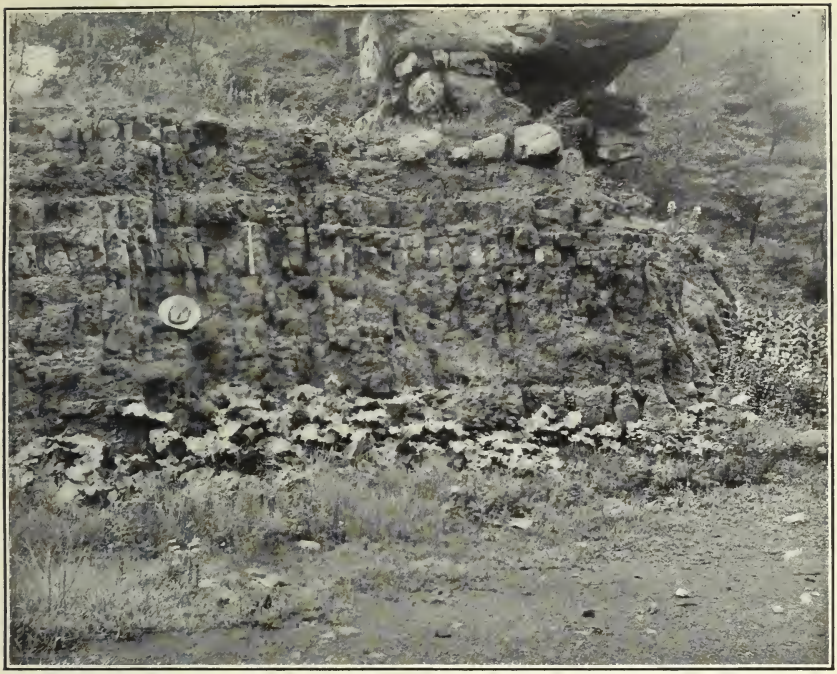
MAUCH CHUNK SHALE.

Evidences of an unconformity at the top of the Mauch Chunk are to be seen in the Johnstown quadrangle. The Mauch Chunk is well exposed along the flanks of the Ebensburg anticlinal axis on Stony Creek, near the bridge at the mouth of Paint Creek, and also south of the quadrangle. It is also well shown at the viaduct along the flanks of the Viaduct or Ebensburg anticline (Pl. V, *A*), farther west in the gorge of Conemaugh River, and on the sides of Laurel Ridge, where it is brought above drainage level by the Laurel Ridge anticline. The upper 50 feet of this formation is exposed in the valley of South Branch of Blacklick Creek, near Twin Rocks.

A section of the upper part of the formation, obtained on Stony Creek about a mile above the mouth of Paint Creek, is as follows:

Section of upper two members of Mauch Chunk shale near mouth of Paint Creek.

	Ft.	in.
Shales, red	6–21	
Sandstone, heavy	10	8
Shale, red	20	
Sandstone, vivid green	3	
Shales, red and green	13–15	
Shale, green	1	
Shale, blue-green, sandy	5	4
Sandstone, green, usually laminated and cross bedded	44+	



A. TYPICAL EXPOSURE OF MAUCH CHUNK SHALE AT THE VIADUCT BETWEEN SOUTH FORK AND MINERAL POINT.

Note the alternating thin layers of sandstone and shale and the vertical jointing.

B. SHALE QUARRY OF B. H. CAMPBELL AT THE MERCER HORIZON NORTH OF SHERIDAN.

The rounded bowlders in the foreground are probably of Pleistocene age.

A. DETAILED STRUCTURE OF LOYALHANNA LIMESTONE AT THE TOP OF THE POCONO FORMATION, EAST OF MINERAL POINT.

Weathering has brought out the cross-bedding of the rock.

B. LOYALHANNA LIMESTONE, TOP MEMBER OF POCONO FORMATION, AT SUMMIT OF EBENSBURG (VIADUCT) ANTICLINE, MINERAL POINT.

Near the viaduct the lower green laminated and cross-bedded sandstone member given in the section appears, dividing, as it were, the Mauch Chunk into an upper and lower shaly member. It may represent the Greenbrier limestone in this region. This sandstone at the viaduct was measured in its entirety and was found to be 42 feet thick. The lower shale division at the viaduct is 40 feet, giving to the members of the Mauch Chunk the following thicknesses:

Section of Mauch Chunk shale at the viaduct.

	Feet.
Upper shaly member	60–75
Sandstone	44+
Lower shale member	40

Thus the Mauch Chunk in this quadrangle may be considered approximately 160 feet thick.

POCONO FORMATION.

The upper part of the Pocono shows in the bed of Conemaugh River between the viaduct and Mineral Point. It is made up of the Loyalhanna limestone member, about 45 feet of which is here exposed. (See Pl. VI, *A* and *B*.) The entire formation is above drainage level in the gorge of Conemaugh River west of Johnstown. It is brought above water level by the Laurel Ridge anticline and covers part of the ridge both south and north of the river. Though it is not exposed so as to be measured in detail, the barometer indicated from the top of the red Catskill beds to the red shales of the Mauch Chunk overlying the Loyalhanna limestone a thickness of 1,085 feet, which it is believed closely approximates the thickness of this formation in the region. This is slightly greater than the figures obtained by Charles Butts and the writer [a] on the Allegheny Front. There is no reason to suppose that the Pocono here differs much from that on the Allegheny Mountain east of Bennington.

DEVONIAN SYSTEM.

CATSKILL FORMATION.

But 400 feet of Devonian rocks are exposed in the Johnstown quadrangle, and these occur at the top of the Catskill, in the gorge of Conemaugh River where it is crossed by the Laurel Ridge anticlinal axis. The Catskill beds are prevailingly red and green shales and red sandstones and color the soil a distinct red. The upper part of the formation was measured by the writer as follows:

[a] Ebensburg folio (No. 133), Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey, 1905, p. 3.

Section of upper portion of Catskill formation on Conemaugh River.

	Feet.
Sandstone, chocolate and reddish	45
Shale, red	20
Sandstone, chocolate-colored	5
Shales, chocolate and vivid green	40+

STRUCTURE.

MODE OF REPRESENTATION.

The inclination of the beds to a horizontal plane, or the dip, as it is commonly called, is measured in the field by means of a clinometer where the inclination is great enough to permit it. In but few localities in the Johnstown quadrangle, however, are the dips sufficient to allow this mode of measurement. Where it is not applicable continuous road sections are run and the beds are correlated from hillside to hillside. When the elevation above mean sea level of a sandstone, coal, or limestone on one hill and its elevation a mile or so away have been found, the rise or fall of this particular bed in feet per mile is at once obtained. By connecting points of equal elevation on any selected bed the contour lines for that bed are drawn. On the map, Plate I, the contour interval is 50 feet and all points on the plane selected (the base of the Lower Kittanning or B coal) that are multiples of 50 are connected by light-brown lines.

The base of the Lower Kittanning coal was selected as the bed on which to draw structure contours in the Johnstown quadrangle because this is commercially the most important coal and the most persistent. Moreover, its relations to the beds both above and below it are fairly well known.

To draw contours on the bed where it is above drainage level and is worked is easy, for it is necessary simply to obtain its elevation from point to point where it outcrops and then to connecting points of equal elevation. But where the coal fails to appear above drainage level other means of determining its elevation have to be employed, and its distance below other known beds that do appear must be used as a basis for calculation, it being assumed, of course, that this distance is constant within the areas where this method is employed. Conversely, where the dips are so great as to carry the horizon of the coal above the hilltops its interval above known beds must be used. When the latter two methods are employed in contouring great precision is not obtainable, as intervals are subject to variation in any region and are known to vary greatly within comparatively short distances in the Johnstown quadrangle. Furthermore, most of the elevations in this work are obtained by means of the aneroid barometer, which, as is well known, is liable to sudden variations and has to be constantly checked against spirit-leveled elevations.

The structure contours not only show the generalized surface formed by the Lower Kittanning coal but less precisely the lay of the underlying and overlying beds. The contour interval chosen is 50 feet and the limit of error may be considered a contour interval, but where the beds vary in thickness it may be more than this. This mode of representing the structure makes it possible to estimate approximately the elevation of the top of the Lower Kittanning coal where it is below the surface at a given point, and hence to find its depth below the surface at that point; furthermore, if the intervals of other coals either above or below the Lower Kittanning are known, their depth at any particular point may be readily computed.

STRUCTURE IN THE JOHNSTOWN QUADRANGLE.

GENERAL STATEMENT.

The beds described under the heading "Stratigraphy" (pp. 14–30) are involved in a series of parallel folds having a general northeast-southwest trend and extending completely across the area in a series

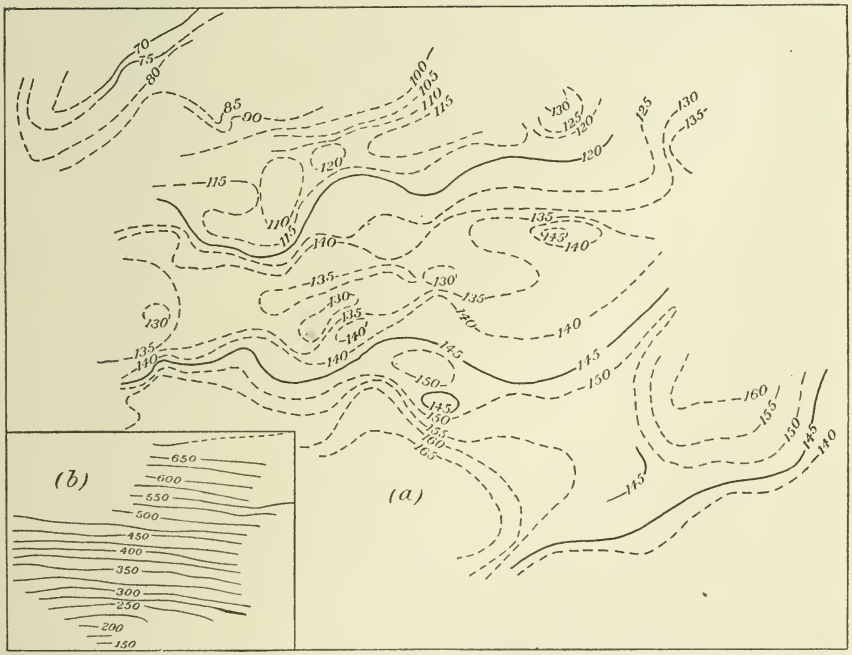


FIGURE 3.—Sketch showing (*a*) the great irregularity in detail of the structure in some parts of the Johnstown quadrangle and (*b*) the marked regularity in detail in other parts. In *b* the 5-foot contour lines are omitted to avoid crowding, but were they inserted the regularity would appear almost as pronounced.

of waves from the southeast to the northwest part of the quadrangle. The structure as worked out differs in some particulars from that described by the Second Survey of Pennsylvania, the most notable difference perhaps being in the offset of the Johnstown Basin to the

east near Johnstown (Pl. I). In the map of the Second Survey the axis of the Johnstown syncline or basin is represented as being west of the South Fork of Bens Creek; it is believed that it really lies farther to the east.

Viewed broadly, the structure is very regular in the Johnstown quadrangle, as will be seen from the structural contour map (Pl. I). In detail it may be decidedly irregular. (See fig. 3.)

The structural features in the Johnstown quadrangle, beginning in the southeast corner and proceeding to the northwest, are—

Wilmore syncline.
Viaduct or Ebensburg anticline.
Johnstown syncline.
Laurel Ridge anticline.
Westover or Barnesboro syncline.

In the reports of the Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania the Wilmore and Johnstown basins were designated subbasins and were considered to constitute part of the first bituminous coal basin. The Viaduct anticline was called a subaxis and the Laurel Ridge anticline was designated the first grand axis of the bituminous coal regions.[a] D'Invilliers[b] somewhat changed the usage, as he speaks of the first and second basins, referring to the Wilmore and Johnstown basins, respectively. The terms syncline and basin or trough are of course synonymous, as are also the terms anticline and arch.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION.

Wilmore syncline.—The Wilmore Basin or syncline is so called from the town of Wilmore, situated on the Pennsylvania Railroad a short distance east of Summerhill, in the Ebensburg quadrangle. It is a comparatively long and narrow synclinal trough parallel with and west of the Allegheny Front. The position of the axis of the basin is definitely fixed near the town of Wilmore by the opposing dips of the rocks along the old track of the Pennsylvania Railroad. As indicated on Plate I, the axis enters the Johnstown quadrangle northeast of the old reservoir site on South Fork of Conemaugh River and continues southeast, passing near the town of Elton. It leaves the quadrangle in a line almost coincident with the South Fork branch of the Pennsylvania Railroad. On the southeast side of this axis the beds dip northwest, and on the northwest side the beds dip southeast. In the quadrangle all the beds along the axis dip northeast, as the axis plunges in that direction. The rise of the beds to the southwest is rapid, amounting to 900 feet in a distance of 16 or 17 miles, so that the Lower Kittanning coal, which is between 800 and 900 feet above the sea and hence far below drainage level in the center of the basin,

[a] Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. H2, pp. xxix, 25, 26.
[b] Summary Final Rept. Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, 1895, p. 2219.

outcrops at an elevation of about 1,700 feet at the mines about Windber.

Viaduct anticline.—The Viaduct or Ebensburg anticline is the next structural feature to the west. Its axis has a general northeast-southwest direction, but swerves slightly to the southeast and then again to the southwest in the part of the quadrangle south of Conemaugh River. This offset, however, is not at all marked.

The Lower Kittanning coal and associated beds, so deeply buried in the center of the Wilmore Basin, rise rapidly and with great regularity to the west and outcrop in the valley of Conemaugh River at South Fork. From its deepest point in the Wilmore syncline the coal rises more than 1,000 feet to its highest point on the summit of the Viaduct or Ebensburg anticline. The lowest bed brought above drainage level by this rise is the top member of the Pocono formation (the Loyalhanna limestone member), which outcrops along the summit of the arch, between the viaduct and Mineral Point. (See Pl. VI, *A* and *B*.)

Johnstown Basin.—The Johnstown Basin or syncline, which is the next structural feature to the west, comprises the area between the Viaduct and Laurel Ridge anticlinal axes. It is really made up of two basins in this quadrangle, one in Cambria and one in Somerset County. It has a general northeast-southwest course but is sharply offset to the east in the vicinity of Johnstown. (See Pl. I.) The axis in Somerset County trends in the usual northeast-southwest course. The dip of the beds on the east side of the basin is comparatively gentle, the fall being approximately 900 feet in 9 miles, or at the rate of 100 feet per mile from the summit of the Viaduct anticline at the viaduct to the deepest part of the basin north of Conemaugh River. In the southern part of the quadrangle the corresponding drop is only 700 feet. On the west side of the basin the rise of the beds to the Laurel Ridge axis is sharp—between 2,000 and 2,100 feet in a distance of 9 miles along Conemaugh River—producing the maximum dips in the quadrangle. In addition to their inclination from the northwest and southeast to the center of the basin, the beds north of Conemaugh River dip gently to the northeast. The Johnstown synclinal axis and the Ebensburg anticlinal axis approach each other near the northeast corner of the quadrangle.

Laurel Ridge anticline.—The Laurel Ridge anticline is the major structural feature in the Johnstown quadrangle, and, as stated on page 32, it is the "first grand axis" as described by the Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania. It crosses Conemaugh River about midway between Conemaugh Furnace and Coopersdale and passes to the northeast, crossing South Branch of Blacklick Creek a little over a mile southeast of Twin Rocks. Where the axis of the

fold crosses the valley of Conemaugh River the lowest beds in the quadrangle—the red shales and sandstones of the Catskill formation, aggregating 400 feet or more above drainage level—are exposed. The fold pitches sharply to the northeast, and the Pocono formation, which caps the hills where the axis crosses Conemaugh River, is below drainage level where it crosses South Branch of Blacklick Creek near Twin Rocks, dropping in this distance at least 1,000 feet. As stated in the description of the Johnstown Basin, the beds along the eastern flank of the Laurel Ridge anticline rise between 2,000 and 2,100 feet in a distance of 9 miles. The fall in the beds west of the anticlinal axis to the Barnesboro or Westover Basin is at about the same rate. The anticline is therefore symmetrical.

No beds of coal are present at the summit of the ridge and none occur below its surface until Blacklick Creek is approached. The coals have, so to speak, been carried out into the air by the rise in the beds on either side of the anticlinal axis.

Barnesboro or Westover syncline.—The basin west of the Laurel Ridge anticline is termed the Westover Basin in the Pennsylvania Geological Survey reports. More recently it has been called the Barnesboro Basin by members of the United States Geological Survey.[a] The axis of the basin enters the Johnstown quadrangle near the line between Cambria and Indiana counties, passes through or very near Wehrum, and leaves the quadrangle as indicated on Plate I. From the axis of this basin the beds rise gently to the axis of the Nolo anticline, which just cuts the northwest corner of the quadrangle.

Minor structures.—Besides the principal folds, there are many minor folds in the rocks of the quadrangle. A small arch or anticline is exposed along Little Conemaugh River about a mile east of Conemaugh station. From this point westward to the Johnstown station there are many minor fluctuations, all exposed along the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad. Between Millville and Coopersdale there is a distinct anticline. Thus it appears that the main broad Johnstown syncline has been subjected to many minor plications. It has been thought by some mining men that to these lesser folds about Franklin and along Clapboard Run is due the so-called faulting which the coal exhibits in this region. The erratic behavior of the Lower Kittanning coal in this locality may possibly be due in part to this cause, but the irregularities seen by the writer are not faults as this term is used in the geologic sense, but are rather broad rolls which seem to have squeezed out the coal. In some places the conditions during sedimentation were such that coal was not deposited or, if deposited, was afterward removed.

[a] Campbell, M. R., and Clapp, F. G., in an unpublished manuscript relating to the Barnesboro quadrangle, which lies north of the Johnstown quadrangle.

MINERAL RESOURCES.

INTRODUCTION.

The mineral resources of the Johnstown quadrangle are coal, flint and plastic clay, shales, limestone and cement material, building stone, glass sand, and iron ore. Because of the great importance of coal and clay they will be treated (1) in a broad way for the sake of the general reader who may be interested in the area as a whole but not in any particular portion of it, and (2) in detail by districts. The remaining resources—limestone and cement material, building stone, glass sand, and iron ore—will be treated as a whole, as their description by districts would involve needless repetition.

COAL.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

UPPER FREEPORT COAL.

The highest important coal in the Johnstown quadrangle is known as the Upper Freeport. It is used as a domestic and steam fuel about Johnstown and South Fork and supplies some of the brick plants at Johnstown. It gives satisfactory results, particularly when used in locomotives. It is not coked in this quadrangle, though at Cresson, Gallitzin, and Bennington it gives satisfactory results in beehive ovens. In the by-product ovens of the Cambria Steel Company at Franklin, near Johnstown, it was found to be unsuitable owing to expansion, which quickly ruined the ovens and made it very difficult to force out the charge after it was coked. The analyses of this coal as given on page 40 show it to be a high-carbon coal with very low moisture content. The ash, especially in the Johnstown Basin, is high; its sulphur content, ranging from 2 to 2½ per cent, is also rather high.

LOWER FREEPORT COAL.

The Lower Freeport or D coal is of workable thickness about Johnstown, and, though not exploited at present, it will probably become one of the important coals of the Johnstown district. Its percentage of carbon is high.

UPPER KITTANNING (C′) COAL.

The Upper Kittanning or C′ coal is one of the most valuable beds about Johnstown and its suburbs, where it is known as the Cement bed. To the south, about Windber, prospecting has shown it to be even thicker than about Johnstown. As a steaming coal it is probably equal if not superior to any other coal in the Johnstown

Basin, and the recent demand for it has been greater than the supply. The six analyses (p. 40) show a high-carbon coal with correspondingly low volatile matter. The moisture is low, but the ash and sulphur are rather high. The coal mined from this bed at Franklin mine No. 1 of the Cambria Steel Company is washed and coked at the Franklin plant. It makes a coke of good grade, but owing to its low volatile matter it is not considered so well adapted for beehive ovens as some of the richer gas coals of the districts farther west. In view of the cost of shipping coke from the region about Connellsville and Pittsburg, it is cheaper to wash and coke this coal on the ground. The coal is worked also in a small way near South Fork.

LOWER KITTANNING (MILLER) COAL.

CHARACTER AND IMPORTANCE.

The next lower coal of importance in this area is the Lower Kittanning or B coal, also widely known as the Miller seam. This is the most persistent of the valuable coals of the area. From the analyses on pages 40–42 it will be seen that its fixed carbon ranges from 68 per cent in sample No. 24, collected at Wehrum, Indiana County, to more than 78 per cent in samples collected at South Fork. Its volatile matter ranges from 14 to 19 per cent. Its moisture is low; only a few analyses show more than 3 per cent and in none of them does it exceed 4 per cent. The ash and sulphur exhibit considerable variation, as might naturally be expected in view of the wide extent of the territory from which the samples were collected. The samples from South Fork have the lowest content both in sulphur and ash and show the excellent character of the Lower Kittanning bed in this part of the Wilmore Basin. As a steam coal it ranks among the very best in western Pennsylvania, the coal mined about South Fork probably equaling any other steam coal in this part of the State. As bearing on this point the following table has been prepared, showing its position among the 120-odd coals tested at the fuel-testing plant of the United States Geological Survey at St. Louis, Mo., since the summer of 1904.[a] The column recording the number of pounds of water evaporated by 1 pound of dry coal from and at a temperature of 212° F. gives the comparative results of the coals tested so far as these relate to their commercial value.

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 261, 1905, and No. 290, 1906.

Chemical composition and steaming values of typical Appalachian coals.

Location.	Number of tests made.	Average chemical composition.					Average pounds of water evaporated from and at 212° F. per pound of dry coal.
		Moisture.	Volatile matter.	Fixed carbon.	Ash.	Sulphur.	
Page, Fayette County, W. Va.	2	4.06	30.35	61.54	4.05	0.90	10.545
Do.	1	2.85	30.13	64.78	2.24	1.06	10.52
McDonald, Fayette County, W. Va.	2	2.75	20.59	70.05	6.61	.98	10.36
Big Black Mountain, Harlan County, Ky.	2	5.06	34.77	56.31	3.86	.56	10.26
Rush Run, Fayette County, W. Va.	2	2.12	21.91	70.73	5.24	.67	10.195
Ehrenfeld, Cambria County, Pa.	5	2.38	16.53	74.47	6.62	.95	10.186
Winifrede, Kanawha County, W. Va.	4	3.79	35.33	55.76	5.12	1.11	10.16
Acme, Kanawha County, W. Va.	4	2.93	32.66	57.64	6.77	1.23	10.115
Powellton, Fayette County, W. Va.	1	3.42	31.11	59.47	6.00	.82	10.09
Near Bretz, Preston County, W. Va.	3	4.20	28.05	60.86	6.89	1.28	10.07

The results of tests on the Ehrenfeld samples, although showing a range of 9.75 to 10.42 pounds of water evaporated per pound of dry coal used, are yet, when averaged, among the very best obtained at the testing plant. Each sample submitted to the steaming test was analyzed, and the accompanying analyses represent averages of the total number made, as do the figures representing the efficiency of the coals as steam producers. It is of interest to note that the Ehrenfeld coal contains the largest percentage of fixed carbon and the lowest amount of volatile matter of all the samples.

Other samples of the Lower Kittanning coal tested by the United States fuel-testing plant from January 1, 1906, to June 30, 1907, include a few from in or near this quadrangle. The results of these tests are given below, together with the analyses of the samples tested. For comparison the results (given above) from the Ehrenfeld coal are repeated.

Chemical composition and steaming values of typical Appalachian coals.

Location.	Number of tests made.	Average chemical composition.					Average pounds of water evaporated from and at 212° F. per pound of dry coal.
		Moisture.	Volatile matter.	Fixed carbon.	Ash.	Sulphur.	
Wehrum, Blacklick Creek district, Indiana County [a]	2	2.17	17.58	69.81	10.45	4.62	9.19
Lloydell, Cambria County (southeast of quadrangle) [b]	2	5.00	19.05	66.78	9.18	1.53	[c] 9.52
Near Seward, Conemaugh Furnace district, Westmoreland County [d]	2	3.15	20.55	67.75	8.56	1.79	[c] 8.90
Ehrenfeld, South Fork district, Cambria County	5	2.38	16.53	74.47	6.62	.95	10.186

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, pp. 201, 202.
[b] Idem, pp. 210, 211. Lloydell is on the east flank of the Wilmore Basin and on the quadrangle to the east.
[c] Test made on briquets from the coal.
[d] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, pp. 216, 217.

The figures obtained in the last column give comparative commercial values which show the high grade of the Lower Kittanning coal as coal or in briquet form in and near the quadrangle. It is of interest to see how the analysis and steaming values of the coal collected at Lloydell on the east flank of the Wilmore Basin compare with the results obtained near Seward in the area to the west. For the details of the conditions governing these steaming tests the reader is referred to Bulletin 332.

COKING TESTS.

The Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal is coked, but it does not rank so high as a coking coal as it does as a steam producer. Tests on samples yielded the following results:

Coking tests on Lower Kittanning coal in Johnstown quadrangle.

		1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Duration of test	hours	51	61	54	68	78
Size as used		(a)	(a)	(b)	(a)	(a)
Coal charged	pounds	10,000	9,750	12,460	13,070	11,760
Coke produced	pounds	5,223	5,779	8,144	8,129	7,350
	per cent	52.23	59.27	65.36	62.20	62.50
Breeze produced	pounds	1,600	262	332	420	529
	per cent	16.00	2.69	2.66	3.21	4.50
Total yield	per cent	68.23	61.96	68.02	65.41	67.00

[a] Finely crushed. [b] Run of mine.

Analyses of Lower Kittanning coal and of coke made from it.

	1.		2.		3.		4.		5.	
	Coal.	Coke.	Coal.	Coke.	Coal.	Coke.	Coal.	Coke.	Coal.	Coke.
Moisture	3.32	0.91	7.19	0.56	4.53	0.57	3.91	0.30	6.30	0.51
Volatile matter	15.56	2.16	17.86	.32	18.56	.55	16.35	.28	17.04	.58
Fixed carbon	74.29	88.99	69.57	91.10	70.63	90.23	68.30	84.95	69.58	89.85
Ash	6.83	7.94	5.38	8.02	6.28	8.65	11.44	14.47	7.08	9.06
Sulphur	1.12	.91	1.63	1.46	1.85	1.54	2.78	2.31	1.34	1.11

1. Raw bituminous coal from mine No. 3, Pennsylvania Coal and Coke Company, Ehrenfeld, collected under supervision of J. S. Burrows. Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 290, 1906, p. 181.
2 and 3. Washed run-of-mine coal from Wehrum, collected under supervision of John W. Groves. Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 203.
4. Raw run-of-mine coal from a mine 1½ miles east of Seward, collected under supervision of John W. Groves. Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 218.
5. Washed run-of-mine coal from same locality as No. 4.

The results obtained from the coking tests were as follows:

The coke from Lower Kittanning coal collected at Ehrenfeld (No. 1) was soft and dense, dull gray in color, with a heavy black butt. It broke in large and small chunks and was difficult to burn. The cell structure was small.

The coke from the first test (No. 2) on the Wehrum sample was soft and dense and dull gray in color. The high content in sulphur is worthy of note. The coke from the second test (No. 3) on the Wehrum

sample was light gray or silvery in color and much better than the coke from the finely crushed coal (No. 2). It also was high in sulphur. The coke from the first test (No. 4) on the sample collected 1½ miles east of Seward was light gray or silvery in color and was soft and dense, with high ash and sulphur. The coke from the second test (No. 5) was gray in color; washing produced no change in its physical appearance though it reduced the ash and sulphur slightly. As in the test No. 4, the coke was soft and dense.

It may be added that the yield of coke in all the above tests is high. The coal mined at Franklin (analysis 11, p. 40) is coked by the Cambria Steel Company in by-product ovens for use in the company's plant near Johnstown and gives satisfactory results. The coal is washed before coking, thereby adding to the cost, but even with this additional expense it is found cheaper to coke this coal on the ground than to buy coke of better quality from the Connellsville region. Tests have been made by the Cambria Steel Company with the coal mined from this bed about Ehrenfeld, and the resulting coke proved well adapted to metallurgical purposes. The yield also was satisfactory. The coal mined at Nanty Glo from this bed has been tested in beehive ovens at Gallitzin. It produced coke of good structure but of a rather dull appearance. As was to be expected, an insufficient amount of sulphur was volatilized. At Bennington this coal, like the Upper Freeport, shows a higher content in volatile matter than it does about South Fork and Johnstown. The Lackawanna Coal and Coke Company has experimented with it about Wehrum, but the washeries have been shut down and the results of the coking tests were not learned. The results of Survey tests have already been given (p. 38). The Vinton Colliery Company has erected a by-product plant at Vintondale, and in 1907 a considerable part of the coal mined from colliery No. 6 was coked.

MISCELLANEOUS TESTS.

Other tests have been made on the Lower Kittanning coal, such as producer-gas tests, washing tests, cupola tests, and briquetting tests. The details connected with these are given where this coal is considered in the different districts (pp. 71–76, 83–88, 98–100).

LOWER ALLEGHENY COALS.

The coals below the Lower Kittanning have not been extensively developed in this area. At South Fork a bed lying about 60 feet below the Miller coal and known locally as the Dirty A or Six-foot seam has been opened. It is possible that this corresponds to the Brookville (A) coal of the Allegheny Valley. It has a composition indicated by analysis 36 on pages 41–42, and from the high ash and

sulphur content, aggregating more than 15 per cent, deserves the name which is often applied to it. In other respects the analysis corresponds with those of other coals of the area, being relatively high in fixed carbon and low in volatile matter.

COMPOSITION OF THE COALS.

The coals of the Johnstown quadrangle belong to the soft, lustrous, semibituminous variety. They are best adapted for steaming and domestic purposes, but some of them make also an excellent coke. They are classed as smokeless coals because of their small content of volatile hydrocarbons. They are uniformly high in carbon and contain small amounts of volatile matter and moisture. Their ash and sulphur contents are variable but in general terms high compared with other Appalachian coals—for instance, those of West Virginia and eastern Kentucky. Some analyses of samples collected according to present Survey methods are listed below.

Analyses of coal samples from Johnstown quadrangle, Pennsylvania.[a]

	Upper Freeport (E).			Lower Freeport (D).	Upper Kittanning (C′).					
	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.
Sample as received:										
Moisture	2.65	2.82	3.04	4.73	2.81	1.67	2.60	1.94	2.93	3.51
Volatile matter	14.86	15.61	16.27	13.78	15.07	18.52	14.10	15.81	13.47	17.16
Fixed carbon	72.38	70.32	73.47	72.27	72.64	69.14	72.05	70.77	74.06	69.04
Ash	10.11	11.25	7.22	9.22	9.48	10.67	11.25	11.48	9.54	10.29
Sulphur	2.06	2.42	2.18	1.09	1.92	3.46	2.79	3.73	1.88	2.01
Loss of moisture on air drying	2.00	2.10	2.50	4.00	2.20	1.00	2.00	1.20	2.20	2.30
Air-dried sample:										
Moisture	.66	.74	.55	.76	.62	.68	.61	.75	.75	1.24
Volatile matter	15.16	15.94	16.69	14.35	15.41	18.71	14.39	16.00	13.77	17.56
Fixed carbon	73.86	71.83	75.35	75.28	74.28	69.84	73.52	71.63	75.73	70.67
Ash	10.32	11.49	7.41	9.61	9.69	10.77	11.48	11.62	9.75	10.53
Sulphur	2.10	2.47	2.24	1.14	1.96	3.49	2.85	3.78	1.92	2.06

	Lower Kittanning (B).									
	11.	12.	13.	14.	15.	16.	17.	18.	19.	20.
Sample as received:										
Prox. Moisture	2.70	2.03	2.81	1.78	2.21	2.24	2.63	2.79	3.12	3.07
Prox. Volatile matter	15.64	14.47	14.66	15.19	14.32	15.70	17.85	17.76	17.89	17.64
Prox. Fixed carbon	74.03	75.31	75.75	73.25	78.16	78.37	73.24	73.20	70.85	72.85
Prox. Ash	7.63	8.19	6.78	9.78	5.31	3.69	6.28	6.25	8.14	6.44
Ult. Sulphur	1.93	2.26	1.33	4.50	.47	.77	1.49	1.88	2.74	1.38
Ult. Hydrogen	.....	4.14	.....	4.16	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Ult. Carbon	.....	79.97	.....	77.10	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Ult. Nitrogen	.....	1.26	.....	1.41	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Ult. Oxygen	.....	4.18	.....	3.05	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Calorific value determined:										
Calories	.....	7,823	.....	7,612	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
British thermal units	.....	14,081	.....	13,702	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Loss of moisture on air drying	1.80	1.40	1.90	1.10	1.60	1.60	2.00	2.10	2.50	2.50

[a] All analyses given in this paper, unless otherwise stated, were made at the fuel-testing plant of the United States Geological Survey at St. Louis, Mo.; J. A. Holmes in charge; F. M. Stanton, chemist.

Analyses of coal samples from Johnstown quadrangle, Pennsylvania—Continued.

	Lower Kittanning (B)—Continued.									
	11.	12.	13.	14.	15.	16.	17.	18.	19.	20.
Air-dried sample:										
Prox. Moisture	0.91	0.64	0.93	0.69	0.62	0.65	0.64	0.71	0.64	0.58
Prox. Volatile matter	15.93	14.67	14.94	15.36	14.55	15.95	18.21	18.14	18.35	18.09
Prox. Fixed carbon	75.39	76.38	77.22	74.06	79.43	79.65	74.74	74.77	72.67	74.72
Prox. Ash	7.77	8.31	6.91	9.89	5.40	3.75	6.41	6.38	8.34	6.61
Ult. Sulphur	1.97	2.29	1.36	4.55	.48	.78	1.52	1.92	2.81	1.42
Ult. Hydrogen	.....	4.04	.....	4.08	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Ult. Carbon	.....	81.10	.....	77.95	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Ult. Nitrogen	.....	1.27	.....	1.43	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Ult. Oxygen	.....	2.99	.....	2.10	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Calorific value determined:										
Calories	.....	7,934	.....	7,697	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
British thermal units	.....	14,281	.....	13,854	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

	Lower Kittanning (B)—Continued.							
	21.	22.	23.	24.	25.	26.	27.	28.
Sample as received:								
Prox. Moisture	2.80	3.45	2.59	3.83	2.84	3.13	2.57	3.49
Prox. Volatile matter	17.30	18.82	18.91	19.03	17.47	17.61	18.09	16.12
Prox. Fixed carbon	73.28	71.18	70.33	67.89	71.42	69.45	69.01	74.68
Prox. Ash	6.62	6.55	8.17	9.25	8.27	9.81	10.33	5.71
Ult. Sulphur	2.46	2.01	4.04	4.57	3.11	3.77	3.97	.95
Ult. Hydrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4.62	4.43	.....
Ult. Carbon	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	76.41	75.89	.....
Ult. Nitrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1.14	1.16	.....
Ult. Oxygen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4.25	4.22	.....
Calorific value determined—								
Calories	.....	.....	.....	.....	7,821	7,664	7,618	.....
British thermal units	.....	.....	.....	.....	14,079	13,795	13,712	.....
Loss of moisture on air drying	2.00	3.00	2.00	3.30	2.40	2.80	2.10	2.80
Air-dried sample:								
Prox. Moisture	.82	.46	.60	.55	.45	.34	.48	.71
Prox. Volatile matter	17.65	19.40	19.30	19.68	17.90	18.12	18.48	16.58
Prox. Fixed carbon	74.77	73.38	71.77	70.20	73.18	71.45	70.49	76.83
Prox. Ash	6.76	6.76	8.33	9.57	8.47	10.09	10.55	5.88
Ult. Sulphur	2.51	2.07	4.12	4.73	3.19	3.88	4.06	.98
Ult. Hydrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4.43	4.29	.....
Ult. Carbon	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	78.61	77.52	.....
Ult. Nitrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1.17	1.18	.....
Ult. Oxygen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1.82	2.40	.....
Calorific value determined—								
Calories	.....	.....	.....	.....	8,013	7,885	7,781	.....
British thermal units	.....	.....	.....	.....	14,423	14,193	14,006	.....

	Lower Kittanning (B)—Continued.							Brookville. (A).
	29.	30.	31.	32.	33.	34.	35.	36.
Sample as received:								
Prox. Moisture	3.09	2.31	1.10	0.59	2.80	2.48	4.00	2.35
Prox. Volatile matter	16.66	13.99	15.80	16.61	17.92	17.87	15.89	14.30
Prox. Fixed carbon	74.79	76.69	75.69	76.76	71.32	70.41	69.57	71.40
Prox. Ash	5.46	7.01	7.41	6.04	7.96	9.24	10.54	11.95
Ult. Sulphur	1.18	1.19	1.49	.91	2.29	3.03	2.85	3.30
Ult. Hydrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4.22
Ult. Carbon	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	75.16
Ult. Nitrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1.13
Ult. Oxygen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4.24
Calorific value determined—								
Calories	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	7,679	7,415	7,382
British thermal units	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	13,822	13,347	13,288
Loss of moisture on air drying	2.20	1.60	.....	.....	2.30	2.00	3.60	1.80

Analyses of coal samples from Johnstown quadrangle, Pennsylvania—Continued.

	Lower Kittanning (B)—Continued.							Brookville. (A).
	29.	30.	31.	32.	33.	34.	35.	36.
Air-dried sample:								
Prox. Moisture	0.91	0.72	.....	.....	0.51	0.49	0.42	0.56
Prox. Volatile matter	17.03	14.22	.....	.....	18.34	18.23	16.48	14.56
Prox. Fixed carbon	76.47	77.94	.....	.....	73.00	71.85	72.17	72.71
Prox. Ash	5.59	7.12	.....	.....	8.15	9.43	10.93	12.17
Ult. Sulphur	1.21	1.21	.....	.....	2.34	3.09	2.96	3.36
Ult. Hydrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4.09
Ult. Carbon	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	76.53
Ult. Nitrogen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1.15
Ult. Oxygen	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2.71
Calorific value determined—								
Calories	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	7,836	7,692	7,517
British thermal units	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	14,105	13,846	13,532

1. Conemaugh slope.
2. Johnstown.
3. South Fork.
4. Stony Creek, near trolley bridge between Moxhom and Ferndale, south of Johnstown.
5. South Fork.
6. Franklin.
7. Dale.
8. Johnstown.
9. Moxhom.
10. Solomons Run, southeast of Johnstown.
11. Franklin.
12. Johnstown.
13. Near Walsall.
14. Stony Creek, Somerset County, south of quadrangle.
15, 16. South Fork.
17, 18. Nanty Glo.
19. Vintondale.
20. Twin Rocks.
21. Near Weber Station, Blacklick Creek.
22. Twin Rocks.
23. Wehrum.
24, 25. Wehrum. Mine samples; see Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 201.
26, 27. Wehrum. Car samples; see Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 201.
28, 29. Ehrenfeld. J. S. Burrows, collector; see Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 290, 1906, p. 179.
30. Scalp Level.
31, 32. Windber. Carload shipped by operators from Eureka No. 31 mine to St. Louis; see Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 261, 1905, p. 51. Eureka No. 31 mine is not in the Johnstown quadrangle, and the correlation of the coal bed where the sample was procured is left open.
33, 34. Near Conemaugh Furnace. Mine samples; see Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 216.
35. Near Conemaugh Furnace. Car samples; see Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 216.
36. South Fork.

DESCRIPTION BY DISTRICTS.

For convenience in reference and from the commercial point of view the coal resources of the Johnstown quadrangle are described by districts, as follows: Johnstown district, South Fork-Mineral Point district, Blacklick Creek district, Windber district, and Conemaugh Furnace district. The territory included in these different districts will be outlined in the descriptions.

JOHNSTOWN DISTRICT.

EXTENT.

The Johnstown district includes the territory about the city of Johnstown and its suburbs; the hills along the valley of Conemaugh River, extending from East Conemaugh and Clapboard Run on the east to Laurel Run and the base of Laurel Ridge on the west; the region along Stony Creek and its tributaries, Solomons Run, Sams Run, and Bens Creek; and a few smaller areas back in the country and away from the channels of transportation.

CONEMAUGH COALS.

CHARACTER AND DISTRIBUTION.

The Conemaugh formation outcrops in all the hills in the immediate vicinity of Johnstown. In a section of 300 feet of this formation measured by John Fulton[a] above the Upper Freeport coal at Prossers Knob, near the city, but 3 inches of coal was detected about 65 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. A section was measured on the hill above the plant of the Johnstown Pressed Brick Company in which 400 feet of beds with concealed intervals were observed (see pp. 115–116), and no bed of coal was detected or reported as of workable thickness. It is probable, therefore, that in the Johnstown district the Conemaugh formation contains no bed of coal which under present conditions is of commercial importance.

GALLITZIN COAL.

In the vicinity of Johnstown the Gallitzin coal averages about 100 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. Some of the diamond-drill records obtained in the hills east of the city note a coal 1 foot in thickness slightly more than 100 feet above the Upper Freeport. The maximum thickness of this bed appears to be less than 2 feet and it is in places less than 1 foot thick. In some of the sections a coal appears as low as 70 feet above the Upper Freeport. Where there is but a single coal in the lower 110 feet of the Conemaugh it is difficult to decide whether it is the representative of the Gallitzin or of the next lower bed, the Mahoning coal. What is believed to be the equivalent of the Gallitzin has been noted well up on South Fork of Bens Creek, also on the west side of the hill south of Kring and west of Ingleside, and there is evidence that it has been prospected in both these localities. Its position was located on the Johnstown-Geistown road, along the trolley line south of Island Park. Where measured along the roadside it is very thin. It may be said that its occurrence in the Johnstown Basin is fairly widespread but that it is too thin to be classed among the future workable beds in this part of the quadrangle.

MAHONING COAL.

The Mahoning coal occurs very close to and above the Johnstown ore bed and between 50 and 55 feet above the Upper Freeport coal in the region near Johnstown. It consists where seen to best advantage of two benches, as shown in the following section measured above the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad tunnel on Stony Creek south of Johnstown:

---

[a] See pp. 17–18, this bulletin; also Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, vol. H2, 1877, p. 97.

Section of Mahoning coal south of Johnstown.

	Ft.	in.
Shale roof.		
Coal		5
Shale, drab, fossiliferous	2	0
Coal		6
Fire clay, dark.		

It is nowhere worked, so far as known, and it can not be considered among the future workable coals of the area.

ALLEGHENY COALS.

GEOLOGIC POSITION.

Four coals of workable thickness occur in the Allegheny formation in the Johnstown district—the Upper Freeport or Coke Yard bed, the Lower Freeport or Limestone bed, the Upper Kittanning or Cement bed, and the Lower Kittanning or Miller bed. These are also known by letters as the E, D, C′, and B coals, respectively. The Middle Kittanning also occurs, but so far as known is of workable thickness at only a few points and therefore can not be classed among the commercial coals of the district. All the coals except the Lower Kittanning lie at convenient intervals above drainage level in the hills immediately surrounding Johnstown and are extensively worked.

The entire Allegheny formation is exposed in the Johnstown district. Several sections obtained at widely scattered points serve well to illustrate the variations in the character of its rocks as well as the intervals which separate the coals. The sections were measured by hand leveling and by rule. Some of them are as follows:

(1) *Section of upper part of Allegheny formation near Valley Coal and Stone Company's mine, on Stony Creek.*

	Ft.	in.
Coal, Upper Freeport (E or Coke Yard coal)	3	3
Shale	14	
Shales, dark, concretionary	10	
Shales, blue	25	
Sandstone, laminated	5	
Shales and sandy shales	10	
Coal, 1 foot Bone, 1½ inches Coal, 1 foot 7 inches Bone, 1 inch Coal, 3½ inches } Lower Freeport (D or Limestone coal).	3	1
Limestone	2	6
Shale and sandstone	8	
Shale, blue	15	
Coal, Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′ coal)	4 to 5	9 5
Shale	1	
Limestone	3½–4	
Shale, sandy, containing limestone concretions	8–10	
Sandstone, massive.		

The interval between the Upper Freeport and Upper Kittanning coals in the above section is about 90 feet.

The section is carried still lower by one measured south of the tunnel on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, which shows the relative positions of two small beds occurring between the Upper Kittanning or Cement bed and the Lower Kittanning or Miller bed. This section is as follows:

(2) *Section of Upper Kittanning coal and underlying coals south of tunnel on Baltimore and Ohio Railroad.*

	Ft.	in.
Coal, Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′ bed)	5	2
Shale		8–12
Limestone	6	
Shales, gray, concretionary	4–5	
Shale, drab, containing abundant ferruginous limestone concretions	6	
Shale, black		12–14
Coal		1½
Shale, blue, with ferruginous limestone concretions	6	
Shale, sandy	6	10
Coal		7½

The intervals between the three main coals in the upper part of the Allegheny formation, as well as the character of the intermediate rocks, are given in the following section obtained in the ventilating shaft of the Rolling Mill mine of the Cambria Steel Company on Mill Creek:

(3) *Section of upper part of Allegheny formation on Mill Creek.*

Upper Freeport coal.	Feet.
Concealed	20
Concealed by mine timber	22
Shale, hard	6
Sandstone	4
Shale	3½
Coal, Lower Freeport (Limestone or D coal)	1½
Limestone, nodular	2
Shale, dense, drab, or clay	10
Shale, blue, irregularly bedded	4
Shale, light drab	7
Sandstone	3
Shale	3
Shale, sandy	8
Top of Cement coal.	

The interval between the Upper Freeport and Upper Kittanning coals here is between 90 and 95 feet.

The following section was measured by F. B. Peck and W. C. Phalen on the Eighth Ward road, south of Kernville:

(4) *Section of upper part of Allegheny formation on Eighth Ward road, south of Kernville.*

	Ft.	in.
Coal, 3 feet 8 inches Clay, 4 inches Coal, 3 inches } Main Upper Freeport (Coke Yard or E coal).	4	3
Clay	2	6
Coal		3
Shale	5	
Shales, ferruginous	10	
Sandstone, argillaceous	8	
Sandstone, concretionary	3	
Sandstone, massive	19	
Shale, black	3	
Sandstone		4
Shale, black		3
Coal, 7–8 inches Bone, ½–1 inch Coal, 8 inches Shale, black, 2 inches Coal, 2 feet 6 inches } Lower Freeport (Limestone or D bed)	4	1
Shale, black		6
Limestone	3	9
Shale, blue	5	
Shale, massive, drab, ferruginous	7	
Shale, sandy	8	6
Shale, blue-black	4	
Coal, Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′ bed)	3	9
Shale	1	
Limestone	5	
Shale	3	6
Shale, sandy	5	
Shale, black and brown	3	
Coal	1	
Shales, sandy	5	
Shales	20	
Coal		11
Shales	25	

The interval here between the Upper Freeport and the Upper Kittanning coals is about 85 feet.

The following section is of interest, as it shows a coal between the Lower Freeport and Upper Kittanning beds, presumably the same bed as that above the Upper Kittanning at the mouth of the Rolling Mill mine and on Dalton Run.

(5) *Section of upper part of Allegheny formation south of stone bridge on Stony Creek, Johnstown.*

	Ft.	in.
Coal, 6 inches Bone, 1 inch Coal, 6½ inches Shale, 1 inch Coal, 1 foot 7 inches } Lower Freeport (Limestone or D coal)	2	9½
Fire clay	1	
Shale	3	

	Ft.	in.
Limestone	2	6
Shales	17–18	
Coal		8
Bone		9
Shales, brown, with concretions	3	6
Shale, sandy	8	4
Top of cement coal.		

The following section was measured in a small gully on the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad half a mile east of Conemaugh depot.

(6) *Section of upper part of Allegheny formation on Pennsylvania Railroad east of East Conemaugh.*

	Ft.	in.
Coal, 3 feet 3 inches Bone, 2 inches Coal, 4½ inches } Upper Freeport (Coke Yard or E coal).	3	9½
Shales	18	
Shale and sandstone beds	12	
Shales	4	10
Coal		8
Fire clay	4	
Limestone, green sandy		6
Sandstone, laminated	6	
Sandstone, shaly	5	
Sandstone, massive	40	
Coal, Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′ coal)	2	11½
Limestone	2	
Shale, gray, with limestone nodules	1	6
Limestone	5	
Shale, gray, with ferruginous concretions	5	
Shales, blue	17	
Railroad level.		
Shale, blue, with ferruginous limestone concretions	10	
Limestone nodules, blue, to creek level.		

The above section was completed down to the Lower Kittanning coal by a section a short distance to the west. Part of it could not be hand leveled but had to be measured by barometer. The section is as follows:

(7) *Section between Upper Kittanning (C′) and Lower Kittanning (B) coals.*

	Ft.	in.
Base of Upper Kittanning (C′ or Cement coal).		
Shales, bluish and gray (containing a small coal locally), with concretions; 40 feet of these shales are represented in the preceding section	50	
Coal		10½
Shales, greenish blue	6	8
Sandstone, gray	1	9
Shale, black	1	5
Sandstone, blue, thick bedded	5	8
Approximate interval made up chiefly of sandstone to Lower Kittanning (Miller or B bed)	25±	

The above sections well illustrate the character of the Allegheny rocks between the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal and the Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) bed. The opportunities for measuring the interval from the Lower Kittanning to the top of the Pottsville are rare near Johnstown. On Clapboard Run this interval is about 70 feet. On Stony Creek south of the area the character of the rocks making up the interval was carefully determined and the section hand leveled. This section of the lower Allegheny is as follows:

(8) *Section from top of Pottsville to Lower Kittanning (Miller or B coal) on Stony Creek, south of Johnstown quadrangle.*

	Ft.	in.
Coal, 3 feet 8½ inches Bone or black shale, 3½ inches Coal, 3½ inches Bone, 1 inch Coal, 10 inches Lower Kittanning (Miller or B coal)	5	2½
Fire clay	4	8
Sandstone, gray, laminated	9	8
Sandstone, massive	40	
Shale	2	
Coal and bone	3	7
Shale	10	
Sandstone, laminated	5	
Top of Pottsville.		

The interval from the base of the Lower Kittanning coal to the top of the Pottsville here is about 75 feet, which is very close to the interval of 70 feet measured on Clapboard Run.

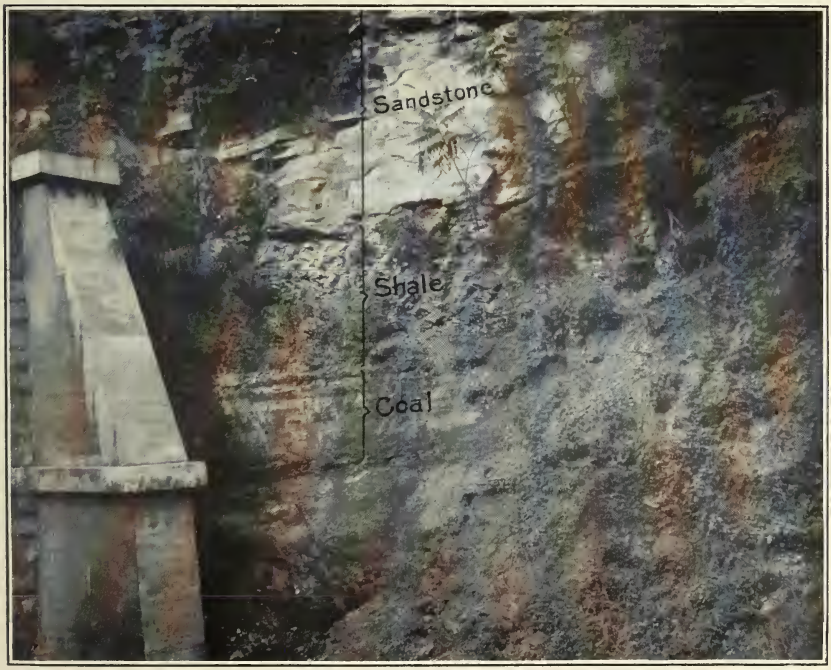
In this section but one coal appears between the top of the Pottsville and the base of the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed, but in places two coals occur in this interval, as in the section of the lower Allegheny rocks obtained near the brick plant of A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited), west of Coopersdale. (See p. 24, fig. 2, section A.)

Many other measurements of the intervals between the coals of the Allegheny were obtained in and near Johnstown. (See fig. 2.) These intervals and those brought out in the sections given above will be described in detail in considering the stratigraphy of the individual coal beds.

UPPER FREEPORT COAL.

Name and position.—In the Johnstown district the Upper Freeport or top coal of the Allegheny formation is commonly known as the Coke Yard coal, from the fact that it was coked in the early days of the iron industry at the old Cambria furnace on Laurel Run. It is also frequently referred to as the E coal. It lies at the top, indeed marks the top, of the Allegheny formation, being separated from the usually massive Mahoning sandstone member (of the Conemaugh formation) above by a few feet of shales, and being located between 255 and 265 feet above the top of the Pottsville formation, or "Conglomer-

A. EXPOSURE OF UPPER KITTANNING COAL AND JOHNSTOWN LIMESTONE MEMBER ("CEMENT BED" IN THE ILLUSTRATION) ON STONY CREEK, NEAR MINE OF VALLEY COAL AND STONE COMPANY.



B. UPPER FREEPORT COAL WITH OVERLYING SHALES AND BASE OF MAHONING SANDSTONE AT SOUTH PORTAL OF BALTIMORE AND OHIO RAILROAD TUNNEL, STONY CREEK.

ate Rock," as it is popularly known. Its relation to the other coals in the Allegheny formation are shown in figure 2 and may be learned from most of the sections just given (pp. 44–47).

Extent and development.—The Upper Freeport is present in all the hills along Conemaugh River near the city and its suburbs, extending as far to the west as the hills bordering east of Laurel Run. It is also above drainage level on Clapboard, Hinckston, and St. Clair runs and practically along the entire course of Stony Creek and its tributaries, Solomons and Sams runs. It is not above drainage level through the entire course of Bens Creek in this area, as the synclinal trough in Somerset County causes its disappearance for a short distance, but even there it is not deeply buried. Plate I gives an excellent idea of its outcrop in the vicinity of Johnstown.

Wherever the coal is exposed it has been worked fairly extensively, and it is now being worked on a large scale in many mines about Johnstown. The most important workings are those of the Cambria Steel Company at the Conemaugh slope. The Ferndale Coal Company also operates on an extensive scale. Many smaller mines on this coal bed are worked the year round, and many small banks, from which coal is never shipped by rail, are worked only during the winter season. The most important mines on this coal are indicated on Plate I.

Chemical character.—The composition of the Upper Freeport coal in the Johnstown district is shown in analyses 1 and 2, on page 40. These analyses indicate this coal to be a high-carbon coal with comparatively low moisture. The ash and the sulphur are high.

Occurrence and physical character.—Average and typical sections of the Upper Freeport coal in the Johnstown district are shown in figure 4. The main bench averages between 3 feet and 3 feet 10 inches in thickness, more nearly the former than the latter. In places there is present a lower bench, which only exceptionally (as at the mine of Lewis Eppley, on Hinckston Run) exceeds 4 or 5 inches in thickness. This lower bench is separated from the main bench by a thin bone or shale parting rarely more than 5 or 6 inches thick. The lower part of the coal bed is in some places so intimate a mixture of coal and bone that it is difficult to differentiate the two. Such is the case in section 19, obtained at the south portal of the tunnel of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad on Stony Creek. (See Pl. VII, *B*.) At a bank on Bens Creek the coal shows a section (No. 21) quite different from the usual one, but this section was obtained at a point several miles away from most of the other sections, and the lack of measurements in the intermediate territory makes it impossible to state whether the thinning shown is local or general to the west of the Johnstown Basin. However, to the north of this point, on St. Clair

Run, the section seems to be as usual. Only the main bench of this coal is ever worked, and all the coal below the main bench serves as a floor, except where it is necessary to remove it for head room.

As a rule no partings were noted in the main bench of this coal in the Johnstown district, a particular in which it differs markedly from the equivalent bed about South Fork and along the southeastern flank of the Wilmore Basin. Its maximum thickness nowhere exceeds 5 feet and usually ranges near 4 feet. The minimum thickness may

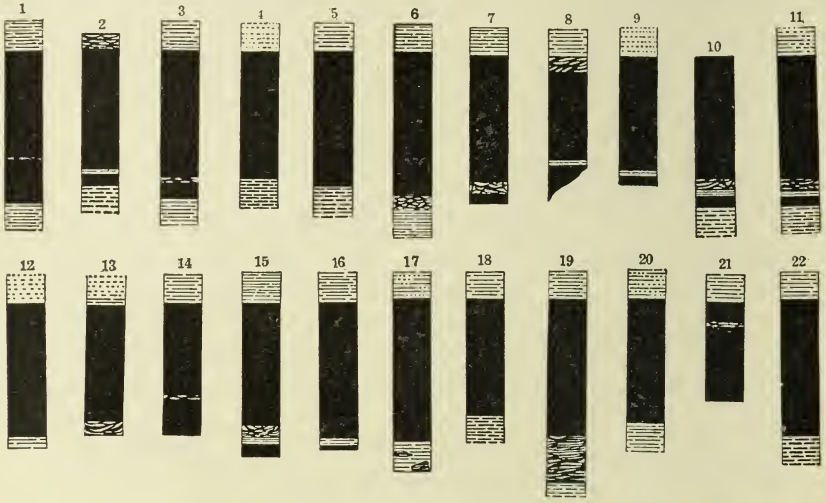


FIGURE 4.—Sections of the Upper Freeport (E or Coke Yard) coal in the Johnstown district. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1. Lewis Eppley, Hinckston Run, above Rosedale.
2. Conemaugh slope, Cambria Steel Company, west of East Conemaugh.
3. Country bank in ravine, north of Pennsylvania Railroad, northeast of East Conemaugh.
4. L. J. Mitchell, mouth of Clapboard Run.
5. Charles Umbarger, head of Clapboard Run.
6. Johnstown Pressed Brick Company, Frankstown road.
7. William Davis, Frankstown road.
8. William Schaeffer, Shingle Run, Dale.
9, 10, 11, 12. Berkebile Coal Company, Dale, north of Moxhom.
13. Country bank, Sams Run, just above Highland Coal and Coke Company's mine.
14. Ferndale Coal Company, Grubtown opening
15. Ferndale Coal Company.
16. Country bank, Roxbury.
17. Natural exposure along trolley line, opposite Valley Coal and Stone Company's mine.
18. Natural exposure along trolley line, south of Island Park.
19. South portal of Baltimore and Ohio Railroad tunnel, south of Johnstown.
20. Natural exposure on Stony Creek near mine of Valley Coal and Stone Company.
21. Bens Creek, Somerset County.
22. Country bank, St. Clair Run.

be regarded as 2 feet, though, as in all coal beds, local rolls pinch the coal out altogether. Such rolls, however, appear to be extremely rare in this coal bed, which is characterized by marked uniformity. There are few or no clay veins. The roof is usually shale or shaly sandstone, in places bony. It is generally firm, but draw slate is occasionally reported. In some of the mines great care is taken in propping to prevent falls.

LOWER FREEPORT COAL.

Name and position.—The next lower coal of importance in the Allegheny formation in the Johnstown district is the Lower Freeport or D coal. It is popularly known as the Limestone coal, and is better known about Johnstown under this name than under either of the other two.

It lies from 50 to 65 feet below the Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) coal and from 25 to 36 feet above the Upper Kittanning (Cement) coal in the valley of Stony Creek, both south and west of Johnstown. On Mill Creek it is 55 feet below the Upper Freeport coal and about 37 feet above the Upper Kittanning coal. On Peggys Run, near the Franklin mine of the Cambria Steel Company, it is 58 feet below the Upper Freeport and 45 feet above the Upper Kittanning, which is here worked. In section 6, page 47, the 8-inch coal 35 feet below the Upper Freeport coal may not be the representative of the Lower Freeport; certainly its distance below the Upper Freeport is very much less than that usual in the district as a whole.

Extent and development.—The Lower Freeport coal is above drainage level, as is the Upper Freeport bed, in all the hills near Johnstown, outcropping along Conemaugh River, Stony Creek, and their tributaries. Its outcrop line, if drawn on the map (Pl. I), would fall between that of the Upper Freeport and Upper Kittanning coals.

The coal has been prospected at many points about the city and its suburbs, but it is not mined, at least on a commercial scale, at the present time. The most promising outcrops were observed along Stony Creek from the vicinity of the mines of the Valley Coal and Stone Company northward to Roxbury. On Peggys Run, near Franklin, it was prospected and proved to be 4 feet thick but so badly broken by partings that it is not commercially valuable. It is reported 18 inches thick with a shale band in the middle in the hills north of Coopersdale. It is believed to be one of the important coals of the future in this district, especially along Stony Creek.

Chemical character.—In the sample of coal collected south of Johnstown, the analysis of which is given on page 40 (No. 4), the clay partings were not included, as these will be discarded when the coal is worked on a commercial scale.

In the analysis the percentage of carbon is high and comparable with this constituent in other coals in this district. The moisture can not be considered representative, as the sample was procured near the outcrop. The ash runs rather high but not above the average of the coals of the area. The coal from this bed is not considered good in the region about Johnstown, but the analysis of the sample collected near Stony Creek (see p. 40) indicates that in this locality, where the coal is persistent and of workable thickness, it has commercial importance.

Occurrence and physical character.—The Lower Freeport coal occurs as a rule in three distinct benches (see fig. 5) in the territory about Johnstown and from Ferndale southward on Stony Creek. These benches are separated by thin shale or bone partings. The top bench averages about a foot in thickness and the middle bench about 2 feet. In the commercial development of this coal bed only these two benches will be worked, the underlying coal and bone serving as a floor. It may be said, therefore, that in this locality there is present from 2½ to 3 feet of coal. Southeast of Johnstown, at Dale and on Sams and Solomons runs, where this coal was measured by F. B. Peck and Lawrence Martin, a thin bench, usually under 6 inches, occurs at the top of the bed, and the two main benches are below, separated by bone or shale. In this part of the district these two workable benches do not average as much coal as in the workable parts of the bed on Stony Creek.

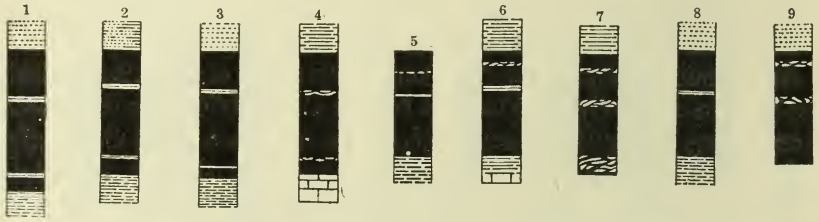


FIGURE 5.—Sections of the Lower Freeport (D or Limestone) coal in the Johnstown district. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1. Natural exposure south of Kernville, near Citizens Eighth Ward mine.
2. Exposure on Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, west bank of Stony Creek, opposite Lorraine Steel Company's plant.
3. Stony Creek near trolley bridge.
4. Stony Creek near Valley Coal and Stone Company's mine.
5. West bank of Stony Creek, Johnstown.
6. Sams Run.
7. Dale.
8, 9. Head of Solomons Run.

Immediately over the coal are usually a few inches of bone and black shale overlain by dense shale, sandy shale, or massive sandstone. Plate IV, *A* (p. 24), gives an idea of the character of this roof. The coal is underlain by clay, below which occurs the limestone, though in places the limestone underlies the coal directly.

UPPER KITTANNING COAL.

Name and position.—The next lower coal of importance in this district is the Upper Kittanning coal. It is also referred to as the C′ coal, but more commonly is known as the Cement seam, from the bed of cement rock which closely underlies it. In the early reports of the Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania it was called the Lower Freeport or D coal and the coal next above it was referred to as the Middle Freeport or D′ bed.[a]

[a] Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. II2, 1877, p. xxviii.

The Upper Kittanning coal commonly occurs within 100 feet of the Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) bed. At Kernville the interval between the two is about 90 feet; on Stony Creek near the Valley Coal and Stone Company's mine it is 90 feet; on Mill Creek, between 90 and 95 feet; south of Kernville, on the trolley line, 84 feet. On the Frankstown road an interval of about 100 feet was measured, though it was reported that the two coals locally occur as near to each other as 80 feet. Along the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad just east of Conemaugh depot the interval is 90 feet, and near the Franklin mines it was reported as 103 feet. It can be stated, therefore, that about 95 feet below the Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) coal the prospector may expect to find the representative of the Upper Kittanning (Cement) coal in the Johnstown district. Sections 1, 3, 4, and 6, on pages 44 to 47, and the compiled sections obtained near Coopersdale and on Clapboard and Peggys runs (fig. 2) clearly indicate its relation to all the coals in this district.

Extent and development.—The Upper Kittanning (Cement) seam outcrops at a height above drainage level that is convenient for exploitation at practically all points about Johnstown. West of the city and north of Conemaugh River the coal is worked on the estate of Lewis J. Prosser, at the north end of Ten Acre Bridge. Here the coal is just below the flood-plain level at the base of the hill and has to be reached by slopes. A short distance to the west, just back of Coopersdale, a slight rise in the beds brings this coal above the flood plain, and a few abandoned banks indicate that it was formerly worked on a small scale here. The steep rise in the formations toward the west does not allow it to appear in the hills west of Laurel Run. To the east of the synclinal axis along Hinckston Run the coal is above drainage level and was worked just above the present location of Johnstown depot. Though not now exposed at that exact point, the fairly massive sandstone which usually overlies it is well exposed near the position of the old Ray furnace. A very short distance to the east the coal appears in the cliffs bordering the railroad, and it may be traced beyond Conemaugh depot. At present there are no workings of note on it east of Johnstown depot and north of the Little Conemaugh, though, as will be seen from section 6, page 47, it is 3 feet thick and hence workable in this general locality.

South of Conemaugh River, well up toward the head of Clapboard Run, the coal is worked in a small way at the present time. It is 2 feet 10 inches thick at the mine of Harry Wissinger, and this indicates that its thickness south of the river is much the same as that to the north, near Conemaugh depot. A few old openings on the bed were also noticed near the mouth of Clapboard Run. On Peggys Run is located Franklin No. 1 mine of the Cambria Steel Company. In the eastern part of Johnstown, on the Frankstown road, the coal

is opened at a few mines, the workings of at least one of which extend through the hill and come out on the Dale road leading to Walnut Grove. In Dale the coal has been opened by numerous private individuals and companies, and the workings extend eastward to Walnut Grove and well up to the head of Solomons Run. The more important mines and banks are shown on Plate I, and the character of the coal bed will be outlined subsequently. (See pp. 54–56.) In the hill between Dale and Moxhom and on Sams Run east of Moxhom the coal is very thick (see sections 11, 12, and 13, below) and is worked by the Highland Coal and Coke Company and the Sunnyside Coal Company. Farther south, on Stony Creek, toward Kring, this coal bed thickens from 3 or 4 feet to as much as 6 feet in places, as near the mine of the Valley Coal and Stone Company, though that company mines only about 5 feet. (See Pl. VII, *A*.) In the cut on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad north of Kring 5 feet 2 inches of coal was measured. (See section 2, p. 45.) This thick coal continues southward. The westward dips toward the Johnstown Basin carry this bed below drainage level less than a mile southeast of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad tunnel south of Moxhom.

West of Stony Creek and 2 miles southwest of Kring, on a creek unnamed on the map, the Upper Kittanning (Cement) coal has been opened by the Kelso Smokeless Coal Company. Here also more than 5 feet of coal was measured. Where observed along Bens Creek in Somerset County the bed is also of workable thickness. It has been opened near the confluence of the north and south forks of Bens Creek, on the land of Elizabeth Cable, on Dalton Run, and at the reservoir dam on Dalton Run. In this locality the small seam overlying the Upper Kittanning was observed. In the region north of Bens Creek the coal is 4 feet or more in thickness. Immediately west of Johnstown the operations of the Cambria Steel Company have been pushed westward in Upper Yoder Township beyond Mill Creek, and the coal has shown no tendency to become too thin to work. The Rolling Mill mine, in which these extensive operations are in progress, is the largest mine in the area and indeed one of the largest in the State.

In the hills back of Cambria the Upper Kittanning (Cement) bed is above drainage level and has been opened in many places. At the mines of Samuel and E. W. Fuge the coal is about 3 feet in thickness. In the hills west of Morrellville the coal has been mined and may be assumed to be of workable thickness. It may be stated, therefore, that all about Johnstown the Upper Kittanning coal is workable.

Chemical character.—Analyses 5 to 10, page 40, indicate the composition of this coal.

The analyses show a high-carbon coal with correspondingly low volatile matter. The moisture is low, but ash and sulphur are high.

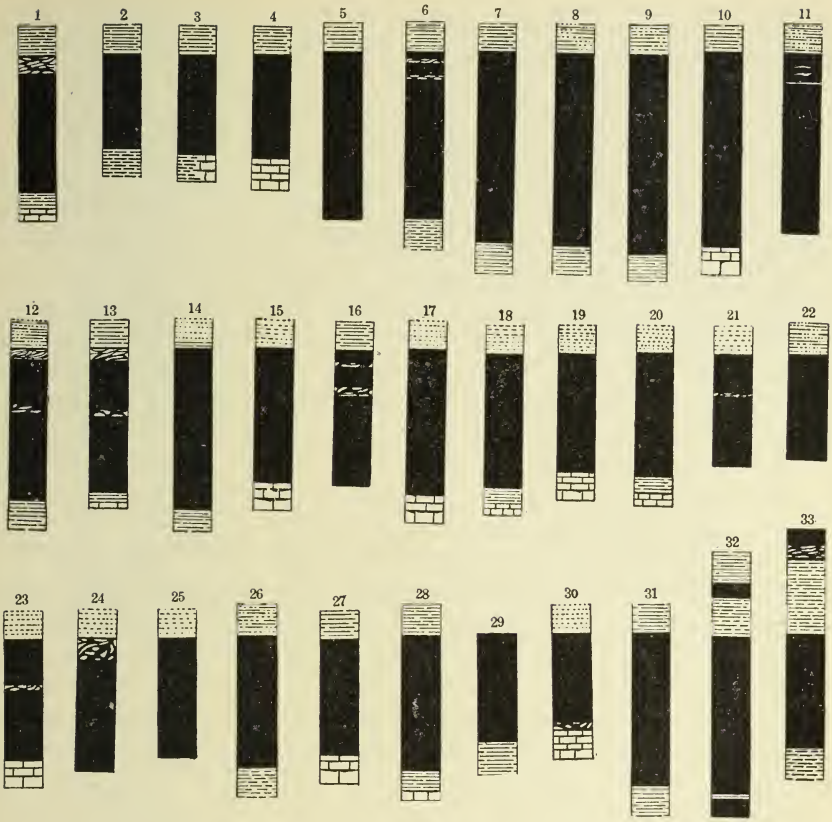


FIGURE 6.—Sections of the Upper Kittanning (C′ or Cement) coal in the Johnstown district. Scale, 1 inch = 5 feet.

1. Cambria Steel Company, Rolling Mill mine.
2. L. Prosser, north end Ten Acre Bridge.
3. E. W. Fuge, Cambria.
4. Samuel Fuge, Cambria.
5, 6. In cut on Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, west side of Stony Creek, opposite Moxhom.
7. In cut on Baltimore and Ohio Railroad north of Kring.
8. Natural exposure, near Valley Coal and Stone Company's mine.
9. Valley Coal and Stone Company.
10. Kelso Smokeless Coal Company.
11. Highland Coal and Coke Company, Sams Run, east of Moxhom.
12, 13. Sunnyside Coal Company, between Dale and Moxhom.
14. George Heidingsfelder, head of Solomons Run.
15. D. D. Stoll, head of Solomons Run.
16. Jacoby mine, eastern part of Dale or Walnut Grove.
17. Wertz & Miller, Walnut Grove.
18. William Rohde, Solomons Run, east of Dale.
19. Edward Litsinger, Solomons Run, east of Dale.
20. Suppes Coal Company, Chas. H. Suppes, jr., Dale opening.
21, 22. Citizens' Coal Company, Dale mine.
23. Caddy mine.
24. Fyock's mine.
25. Jacoby mine (second opening), Dale.
26. Suppes Coal Company, Chas. H. Suppes, jr., Frankstown road opening to Dale mine. (See No. 20.)
27. Natural exposure, east of Johnstown.
28. John F. Griffith, Frankstown road, Johnstown.
29. Head of Clapboard Run.
30. Cambria Steel Company, Franklin No. 1.
31. Dalton Run, at the reservoir.
32. Dalton Run, Elizabeth Cable.
33. William McAuliff, Bens Creek, near confluence of North and South forks.

Occurrence and physical character.—West of Johnstown, at the Cambria openings south of Conemaugh River, and north of Conemaugh River, the Upper Kittanning coal averages very nearly 3 feet in thickness; at one opening, however, it was only 2 feet 7 inches as measured. To the south along Stony Creek the bed gradually grows thicker, as indicated in sections 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10 (fig. 6). As much as 6 feet of coal was reported in places and several measurements of 5 feet were made. (See fig. 6.) The bony character of the upper 8 inches is indicated in section 6, and as a rule the upper 8 to 12 inches has to be discarded. On Sams Run, east of Moxhom, and between Dale and Moxhom, according to observations made by F. B. Peck, the coal is between 3½ and 4 feet thick, generally with a few inches of bone (discarded in mining) at the top and a small bony streak about midway between the roof and floor. At Dale and on Solomons Run the bed is usually made up of good solid coal, varying in thickness from nearly 3 feet to more than 4 feet, here and there with a bony streak near the middle and in many places with a few inches of bone at the top. On Peggys Run and in the exposures along the Pennsylvania Railroad the coal is not 3 feet thick and in places is less than 2½ feet thick. In Upper Yoder Township the coal ranges from 3 to 4 feet in thickness, often with one or two smaller coals above.

As a rule the coal of this bed is a good clean product, generally uniform throughout. In a few of the mines the upper foot of coal is reported soft and the lower foot harder than the average. The roof of the coal is either very dense shale or else sandy shale or sandstone and gives no trouble whatsoever. The floor is usually a few inches of firm shale or clay closely underlain by the Johnstown "cement" bed. This cement bed locally underlies the coal directly. (See Pl. VII, *A*.) The coal bed is uniform in thickness and few rolls are reported. Clay veins are, however, numerous and in places are very annoying. Considerable trouble is often caused by gas, which necessitates the use of safety lamps.

MIDDLE KITTANNING COAL.

In considering the stratigraphy of the different members of the Allegheny formation the presence of two small coals between the Upper and Lower Kittanning beds was pointed out (p. 26). The lower of these coals is regarded as the equivalent of the Middle Kittanning (C) coal in the Johnstown district. South of the tunnel on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad going to Kring the distance from the base of the Upper Kittanning (Cement) bed to this coal is 32 feet (section 2, p. 45); the coal here is only 7½ inches thick. South of Kernville, near the Eighth Ward mine of the Citizens Coal Company, this coal is 11 inches thick and is about 43 feet

below the base of the Upper Kittanning bed (section 4, p. 46). Along the Pennsylvania Railroad near Conemaugh depot the interval between the Cement bed and the Middle Kittanning coal is about the same—namely, 45 to 50 feet—but the coal here is only 10½ inches thick (section 7, p. 47). At these different places the Middle Kittanning coal is not of workable thickness, and as a rule it can not be considered workable in this district. It is fairly persistent, however, and hence serves as an additional check on the identity of the beds both above and below it. It has been opened at Coopersdale, at the brick plant of A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited), where it is about 25 feet above the Lower Kittanning coal and shows a thickness of 30 inches, with more concealed. It is also said to be of workable thickness at the head of Solomons Run. From what is known about it at present it can not be classed among the commercial coals of the district.

LOWER KITTANNING COAL.

Name and position.—The next lower important coal in the Allegheny formation is the Lower Kittanning coal. It is also known as the Miller or B bed in and near Johnstown. Its position below the Upper Kittanning (Cement) bed can be obtained by direct measurement at only a very few points in the Johnstown district, as most of the operations on it are conducted either by slope or incline. At the foot of the hill ascending from Kernville to Grandview Cemetery, Johnstown, the interval was reported to be 98 feet, and where hand leveled on Stony Creek south of the quadrangle it was just 100 feet. Near the Ingleside Coal Company's mine it was reported to be 86 feet. Near the Franklin mines of the Cambria Coal Company the interval between the Upper and Lower Kittanning beds was ascertained by means of a bore hole to be 90 feet. It may therefore be safely assumed that the Lower Kittanning will be found 85 to 100 feet below the Upper Kittanning (Cement) bed.

Extent and development.—Immediately about Johnstown the Lower Kittanning coal is near to or below drainage level and the mines working the coal are either slopes or shafts. North of Conemaugh River and just at the western edge of Coopersdale the rise of the measures approaching Laurel Ridge brings the coal above drainage, and it is worked by A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited) at their brick plant. The under clay is also mined in connection with the coal. To the north on Laurel Run the coal has been opened in a small way by John Adams. East of the Haws mine the coal disappears below drainage level and does not reappear until it reaches a point just east of Conemaugh depot, where it is worked by the Keystone Coal and Coke Company. From this point as far to the east as South Fork it is above drainage level throughout nearly the entire course of

Conemaugh River, varying of course in elevation above the river, owing to the Ebensburg anticline and the circuitous course of the stream.

South of Conemaugh River what is possibly the Lower Kittanning coal is worked at present by J. L. Custer well up on Clapboard Run. It has been worked near the mouth of the run by the Argyle Coal Company, but considerable difficulty was experienced owing to the irregularities in the bed, which ultimately led to the abandonment of operations. A short distance away, on Peggys Run, the Cambria Steel Company has opened its Franklin No. 2 mine. In this mine (No. 48, Pl. I) much difficulty has been experienced and much expensive dead work required owing to the irregularities in the coal. (See pp. 59, 60.) In the city of Johnstown the Citizens' Coal Company has a slope to this coal bed near the Adams Street Schoolhouse, and in Kernville the coal is worked by W. J. Williams. The coal is above drainage level for a short distance on Solomons Run, coming up just at the mouth of Falls Run. To the south along Stony Creek the coal appears above drainage level near Kring, and it is worked farther south on the east side of the creek by the Ingleside Coal Company. In the suburbs west of Johnstown—that is, at Morrellville and on St. Clair Run—the coal is worked by W. J. Williams and by Robertson & Griffith. Thus the total number of mines on this bed in this region is about ten.

Chemical character.—Analyses of this coal (Nos. 11 to 14, pp. 40–41) give an idea of its composition in the Johnstown Basin.

Like the coals already considered, the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal in the Johnstown district is a high-carbon coal low in volatile matter and moisture. The ash and sulphur show considerable variation, but this may be accounted for partly by the fact that the samples were collected at scattered localities. The ash and sulphur seem to be much in excess of these constituents in coals from the South Fork district. As a steam coal the Lower Kittanning ranks very high; the engines on the Pennsylvania Railroad are supplied in part with it from one of the mines along the line. The coal is also coked at Franklin by the Cambria Steel Company in by-product ovens for use in the company's steel plant near Johnstown. It gives satisfactory results but has to be washed before coking, thereby adding to the cost of the product. Even with this additional item of cost it is found cheaper to coke this coal on the ground than to buy coke of better quality from the Connellsville region.

Occurrence and physical character.—The thickness of the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal in the Johnstown district is shown in figure 7; it ranges from $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 feet, the latter figure probably being a maximum for the Johnstown Basin. Except along Clapboard and Peggys

runs and near Franklin, the coal is on the whole regular; its floor rolls and here and there the coal is cut down to 2 feet, but rarely to less than this. Clay veins are generally absent and where present are small. In and about Johnstown, less than a foot below the base of the main bench and separated from it by shale, there is commonly a small coal, which varies from 7 to 24 inches, the latter measurement being made at the mine of the Somerset and Cambria Coal Company's opening on Stony Creek, near Foustwell. Below the lower coal (or in its absence below the main bench) occurs a light to dark drab plastic clay, ranging from 3 to 6 feet in thickness. It was observed that where the clay was at a maximum the coal appeared in a single bench, with the lower part bony; but it can not be stated that this condition is the usual one. The clay is of great importance near Johnstown. (See pp. 117–118.) The coal itself is in general entirely

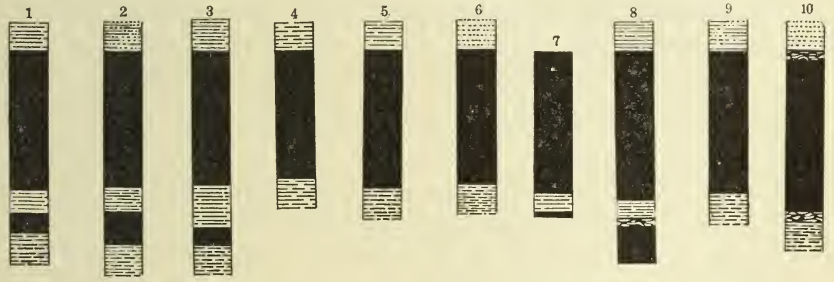


FIGURE 7.—Sections of the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the Johnstown district. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1. John Adams, Laurel Run.
2. A. J. Haws & Sons, Coopersdale mine.
3. A. J. Haws & Sons, shaft at brick plant.
4. W. J. Williams, Kernville.
5. Citizens' Coal Company, Green Hill mine.
6. Cambria Steel Company, Franklin No. 2.
7. Cambria Steel Company, Franklin No. 2, outlet on Clapboard Run.
8. Keystone Coal and Coke Company, Conemaugh slope.
9. Ingleside Coal Company.
10. Robertson & Griffith, St. Clair Run.

free from partings and is uniform from roof to floor. The roof is massive sandstone, tough shale, or sandy shale, requiring little or no timbering, and there is no draw slate reported.

At Franklin and on Clapboard Run, on the other hand, the Lower Kittanning coal is erratic, and much difficulty has been experienced in mining on account of the irregular character of the floor. These irregularities are termed faults by the miners, but they are not faults in the geologic sense. The coal in this locality may be 6 feet thick in one place and only 15 inches thick a few feet away, and over small areas it is completely absent. It is believed that this singular

occurrence is due to peculiar conditions of sedimentation during or subsequent to its original deposition in this locality, and not to subsequent movement, and that the trouble will be found to be only local and will disappear to the south. In confirmation of this belief may be cited two drill holes, one on the Frankstown road and the other near the head of Peggys Run, in which the Lower Kittanning coal is normally developed. So far as known, the coals above the Lower Kittanning (Miller) are normal in their occurrence; if the cause for the erratic conditions in the Lower Kittanning were regional, the Upper Kittanning (Cement) coal, which is worked at higher levels in the same hills, would probably be irregular likewise. The slight folds or rolls in the structure observed along the Pennsylvania Railroad near East Conemaugh are considered to have had nothing to do with the peculiar conditions just described. These irregularities have led to much expensive dead work near Franklin and have caused the abandonment of large operations on Clapboard Run.

LOWER ALLEGHENY COALS.

Coals lower than the Lower Kittanning and yet in the Allegheny formation are exposed in this district. At Coopersdale the top of the Pottsville formation appears at road level just west of the brick plant of A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited). Just above, two small coal beds, each measuring less than 2½ feet, are exposed, separated by about 10 feet of dark shale. The section is given on page 23. These coals probably correspond to the Brookville (A) and Clarion (A′) of the Allegheny Valley. One of these, probably the lower (Brookville), is exposed on Clapboard Run. The Lower Kittanning seam has been opened along this run, and about 70 feet below it a coal has been worked which is considered the Brookville or a coal very close to it. Two sections of this coal are as follows:

Sections of Brookville coal on Clapboard Run.

	Ft.	in.
Bony coal	1	8
Bone		1
Coal	1	8

	Ft.	in.
Bone or shale		9
Coal		3
Bone		½
Coal		6
Bone or shale		1
Coal	1	7

These sections are very similar, showing an upper bench from 18½ to 20 inches in thickness, mostly of bone and of no value, and a lower bench 19 or 20 inches thick. The coal has no value along this run.

South of the quadrangle, between the mouth of Paint Creek and Foustwell, the lower part of the Allegheny, together with the whole

of the Pottsville and a large part of the Mauch Chunk formation, is brought above drainage level on the flanks of the Ebensburg or Viaduct anticline. The section on page 27 shows a coal 10 to 15 feet above the massive sandstone at the top of the Pottsville and separated from it by shale and sandstone. It is quite possible that this may be the Clarion coal. At least it is one of the Brookville-Clarion coal group. (See fig. 8.)

FIGURE 8.—Section of the Clarion (A') coal along Baltimore and Ohio Railroad near southern edge of Johnstown quadrangle. Scale, 1 inch = 5 feet.

POTTSVILLE COALS.

The Pottsville formation lies below the Allegheny formation and, as indicated on page 28, consists of an upper and a lower sandstone member with an intervening shale member. This shale in many places carries a coal known as the Mercer. The coal appearing between the tipple of the Ingleside Coal Company and Kring, on Stony Creek south of Johnstown, is considered to belong in the Mercer coal group. The section is as follows (see also fig. 2):

Section of Mercer coal south of Kring.

	Ft.	in.
Black shale	5	6
Coal		9
Pyritiferous dark sandstone		1–2
Coal		6
Shale		2
Coal		9
Coal and bone		11
Black shale		3–4
Coal		4
Bone		4½
Clay	1	

The coal is so badly broken that it can not be considered among the workable beds of the district.

Near Sheridan the Mercer coal is about a foot thick. (See p. 119.)

SOUTH FORK-MINERAL POINT DISTRICT.

EXTENT.

In the South Fork-Mineral Point district will be included all the coal occurrences between, in, and near the two towns named. The mining operations extend from Ehrenfeld on the east to the point where Conemaugh River makes a sharp bend to the south, about 2 miles west of Mineral Point. Operations are conducted on both sides of the river. The openings are confined to the immediate river valley, but the workings in many of the larger mines are very extensive and have been pushed back into the hills a long distance from the river.

GEOLOGIC POSITION OF COALS.

The three formations which are of economic interest in the district are the Conemaugh, Allegheny, and Pottsville. The dips near South Fork are steep and the rock exposures are too imperfect to permit complete and detailed sections. North and south of Conemaugh River, however, diamond-drill holes have been put down and the records have apparently been carefully kept. Opportunity was afforded also for a measurement of the rocks in the shaft of the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company near New Germany. A very clear idea, therefore, of the rocks as far down in the section as the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal has been obtained.

On South Fork of Conemaugh River, near the northernmost cottage of the group near the old dam site, the interval between the Upper Freeport and Lower Kittanning coals is 206 feet. In the shaft at New Germany the interval between the two coals is 145 feet, a decrease to the north of 61 feet. It is known that this decrease in the interval takes place within a distance of 4½ miles, and it is possible that it may occur within a shorter distance.

CONEMAUGH COALS.

COAL NEAR SUMMERHILL.

Northwest of Summerhill, at an elevation of 1,800 feet, a coal has been opened by the side of the public road. It is reported to be exactly 300 feet above the Upper Freeport (Lemon or E) coal. The openings have entirely fallen in and no opportunity was afforded to measure the thickness or ascertain the character of the coal. The information was received that about 40 acres of territory had been worked out and that the coal was 4 feet thick. A measurement of the thickness of the part of the coal exposed along the roadside fully corroborates this information.

This occurrence is probably that described by Platt under the heading "Brown's mine, near Summerhill." Platt's description is as follows:[a]

> Northeast of the outcrop [of the E coal?] the hill rises steadily for 250 feet, and near the top Mr. Brown opened up a bed of coal unlike, both in character and in position geologically, any other coal thus far known in Cambria County. It overlies the Upper Freeport bed (E) certainly by as much as 200 feet; but the intervening measures are concealed, and their character is therefore almost wholly unknown.
>
> The bed has very little cover and is irregular and uneven, both roof and floor undergoing frequent changes, sometimes within a few yards. Moreover, the thickness of the bed has been very seriously affected by "horsebacks" and "clay veins," the coal varying in width all the way from 4 feet to as many inches.
>
> Two drifts were started in on the bed at the outcrop; one gangway is driven northwest and the other northeast. In both entries there is a sharp rise, that to the northeast being due to a local roll in the rocks of tolerably wide sweep.

[a] Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. H2, 1877, pp. 38–40.

The following measurements of the bed, made in the northeast gangway, will serve to give a clearer expression to the actual condition of things:

Section made near mouth of mine.

	Ft.	in.
Roof, "black slate"	1	
Coal, compact and of cuboidal structure	1	6
Coal, friable and of columnar structure		4
Coal, cuboidal structure	2	10
Floor, "slate," alternating with sandstone.		

Section made 60 feet beyond last.

Sandstone.	Ft.	in.
Slate		6
Coal	2	
Slate		2
Coal	1	3

Between these two measurements a "clay vein" intervenes, cutting out the coal almost entirely for a short distance. The bed then resumes its full height as given above, but diminishes steadily in going northeast, until at the end of the entry the coal is no longer of workable size, as follows:

Roof, sandstone.	Ft.	in.
Coal	1	6
Sandstone floor.		

At this point operations were brought to a close.

In the northwest mine the coal attains its greatest thickness, but is everywhere slaty and poor; it shows, however, throughout, the same horizontal crystallization already noted in connection with the other mine. The northwest entry was driven in several hundred yards, but with practically the same results as attended the operations elsewhere. These continued troubles naturally led to the abandonment of the mines.

The bed is represented only in the tops of the highest hills and covers a very limited area. The rise in the rocks carries it into the air a short distance west of Brown's openings, and east of the synclinal axis it is not known to occur.

Considering the geological horizon of the bed, together with the slaty character of the coal from it, it is apparent that this is one of the seams of the Barren Measures, of which there are several, usually thin and unimportant, but here, and confined perhaps to this immediate territory, of abnormal thickness and width.

The bed also undergoes such marked changes in point of character that no one specimen would fairly represent the average run of the mine. In the main, however, the coal is poor, being heavily loaded with earthy matter and other impurities. But along the center of the bed ranges not infrequently a narrow belt of soft, bright, rich clean coal, the limits of which are clearly defined both above and below by benches of smooth, tough, slaty coal. * * *

Two analyses of the coal were therefore made of specimens selected and forwarded to Harrisburg by the owners of the property, the Messrs. Brown, of Summerhill. The first analysis represents the small bench of soft friable coal, and reads as follows (D. McCreath):

Water at 225°	0.820
Volatile matter	19.155
Fixed carbon	70.175
Sulphur	.445
Ash	9.405
	100.000

Coke, per cent, 80.025; color of ash, gray. The coal is bright, tender, and seamed with charcoal and pyrites.

The other analysis may be said to represent the condition of the greater portion of the bed. The large percentage of ash, nearly one-fifth of the whole, gives to this coal its firmness and compactness and also its slightly conchoidal fracture and dull luster, but at the same time it ruins the bed totally for all practical purposes. The analysis also shows that this cannel slate is more sulphurous than the bench of soft coal in the center of the bed. The analysis is as follows (D. McCreath):

Water at 225°	0.550
Volatile matter	17.325
Fixed carbon	61.632
Sulphur	1.033
Ash	19.460
	100.000

Coke, per cent, 82.125; color of ash, gray. The coal is exceedingly compact, has a dull, resinous luster generally, but carries seams of bright crystalline coal.

GALLITZIN COAL.

South of South Fork a coal appears in the sections about 115 feet above the Upper Freeport (Lemon or E) bed. From its interval this is probably the representative of the Gallitzin bed. It is not workable, as it is rarely more than a foot thick. North of South Fork this coal is about 65 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. Another coal, possibly the Mahoning, appears below it in the section; this likewise is not workable near South Fork.

ALLEGHENY COALS.

Four coals have been worked in the Allegheny formation in the South Fork-Mineral Point district. They are (1) the Upper Freeport or E coal, which is known near South Fork and also along the eastern margin of the Wilmore Basin as the Lemon coal; (2) the Upper Kittanning or Cement coal; (3) the Lower Kittanning, Miller, or White Ash coal; and (4) the Brookville, usually referred to as the Dirty A coal. The first three are of greatest importance in this district.

UPPER FREEPORT COAL.

Name and position.—As stated above, the Upper Freeport coal is known at South Fork as the Lemon coal. It is also sometimes called the E bed, having been so termed by the geologists of the Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania. It is also often referred to as the Four-foot coal. The position of this coal at the top of the Allegheny and its relations to the lower Allegheny coals are shown in figure 2. Its position with reference to the Mahoning sandstone in the South Fork district is indicated in the following section measured at Ehrenfeld:

Section of Upper Freeport (Lemon) coal and associated beds at Ehrenfeld, Pa.

	Ft.	in.
Shale	15	
Shale, olive and drab, locally sandy (Upper Mahoning?)	30	
Coal (Mahoning, upper bench)		4–5
Shale	8	
Shale, black		2
Shale, blue and black	1	
Coal (Mahoning, lower bench)	2	
Shale	15	
Shale, blue, with alternating layers of fine-grained sandstone	20	
Sandstone, massive (Mahoning)	20	
Coal, 1 foot 11½ inches Bone, 2 inches Coal, 1 foot 8 inches — Upper Freeport coal	3	9½
Clay, with limestone nodules in lower foot	2	
Limestone, irregularly bedded (Upper Freeport)	1½–3	
Fire clay in places	1±	
Shale	15+	

Extent and development.—The Upper Freeport coal appears above drainage level just east of Ehrenfeld, and has been opened at railroad level by the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company at its No. 8 opening. Not far to the west, but higher in the hill owing to the rapid rise of the beds westward, is located mine No. 6 of the same company. This mine was not being worked in the summer of 1906, at the time of visit. West of Mineral Point this coal is present in the hills bordering Conemaugh River, but at varying distances from it. (See Pl. I.) It has been opened in a small way in one or two places, but where seen the openings had fallen in.

South of Conemaugh River it has been worked in and near South Fork by the South Fork Mining Company, and on the west side of South Fork of the Conemaugh by O. M. and H. C. Stineman. It is also present in the hills along the south side of the river, but it has been hardly touched there up to the present time.

Chemical character.—Analysis No. 3, page 40, shows the character of this coal near South Fork. It compares favorably with the other coals in the Johnstown quadrangle, and the analysis shows the normal high carbon content, with low volatile combustible matter. Moisture and ash are also low, but sulphur is high. The product from this coal bed is used chiefly for steaming purposes. It is also coked in beehive ovens at Cresson, Gallitzin, and Bennington with satisfactory results. Its composition along certain parts of the Allegheny Front—at Gallitzin, for instance—is different from that of the coal near South Fork, as the following analyses will show. The percentage of fixed carbon is lower and that of volatile matter higher in the Ebensburg region

than on the west side of the basin at South Fork. The coal collected at Sonman, Puritan, and Dunlo, however, is very much the same in composition as that near South Fork and Johnstown.

Analyses of Upper Freeport coal in Ebensburg quadrangle.[a]

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.
Moisture	0.52	0.63	0.41	1.41	0.43	0.47	0..41
Fixed carbon	66.00	64.43	74.71	71.26	72.89	74.17	73.17
Volatile matter	26.59	27.92	19.41	20.05	17.77	18.44	17.83
Ash	6.89	7.02	5.47	7.28	8.91	6.92	8.59
Sulphur	1.21	.94	1.38	3.34	1.83	1.71	1.53

[a] Ebensburg folio (No. 133), Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey, 1905, p. 9. The samples whose analyses are given above were collected by Charles Butts.
1, 2. Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company, Gallitzin. W. T. Schaller, analyst.
3. Shoemaker Coal Company, Sonman. W. T. Schaller, analyst.
4. G. Pearse & Sons, Puritan. W. T. Schaller, analyst.
5, 6, 7. Mountain Coal Company, Dunlo. Analysis made at Metallurgical Laboratory, Pittsburg, Pa.

Occurrence and physical character.—The Upper Freeport coal about South Fork may occur in either two or three benches, of which only

FIGURE 9.—Sections of the Upper Freeport (E or Lemon) coal near South Fork. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1, O. M. Stineman No. 3; 2, H. C. Stineman No. 5; 3, Pennsylvania, Beech Creek and Eastern Coal Company No. 8; 4, natural exposure in railroad cut at Ehrenfeld; 5, South Fork Coal Mining Company No. 2.

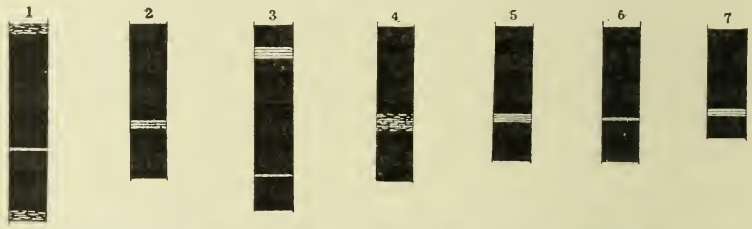


FIGURE 10.—Sections of the Upper Freeport coal along the southeastern margin of the Wilmore Basin (after Butts). Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1, Webster No. 11 mine, southeast of Gallitzin, Pa.; 2, Shoemaker mine, Sonman; 3, Hopfer's mine, Trout Run; 4, George Pearse & Sons, Puritan; 5, Beaverdam Run, near Pavia road; 6, Logan Coal Company, Beaverdale; 7, Dunlo.

the two lower are workable, and in this respect it differs essentially from the same coal about Johnstown. At Ehrenfeld and at opening No. 8 of the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company, on the opposite side of Conemaugh River, only two benches were observed, and the upper bench is for the most part very much thicker than the corresponding middle bench at places where three are

present. The upper of the workable benches ranges in thickness from 1 foot to 2 feet and the lower bench from 1½ to 2 feet. The bone or shale between the two main benches ranges from half an inch to 2 inches. It is very persistent in this district and is usually present also in this bed along the southeast margin of the Wilmore Basin. Figures 9 and 10 show the general similarity of this coal bed on both sides of the Wilmore Basin.

LOWER FREEPORT COAL.

The next lower coal in the South Fork district is the Lower Freeport coal, which lies from 40 to 50 feet below the Upper Freeport coal. It is persistent and is shown in most of the diamond-drill records, but it has not been developed in this district. Locally it is of workable thickness; in some of the well records it measures as much as 2½ feet solid coal with no partings; in others it consists of two benches separated by a thin binder. The two benches taken together would constitute a workable bed. In most of the sections studied it is so badly broken up or so thin as to be of no value; and it therefore can not be classed among the commercial coals in this district at present.

UPPER KITTANNING (CEMENT) COAL.

Name and position.—The next lower coal—the Upper Kittanning (Cement) bed—is an important coal near South Fork. It corresponds to the same bed about Johnstown, though it is not at this time so important as the coal in that district. It occurs nearly midway between the Upper Freeport (Lemon or E) coal and the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed. North of Conemaugh River, therefore, where the interval between these two coals is only 145 feet (as near New Germany), it occurs about 67 feet below the Upper Freeport coal and about 75 feet above the Lower Kittanning. South of the river, where the interval between the Upper Freeport and Lower Kittanning is approximately 200 feet, it is again about midway between the two, its distance below the former and above the latter ranging from 92 to 105 feet.

Extent and development.—The Upper Kittanning is worked for local supply in the town of South Fork by Robert A. Giles and Charles Hutzel. Other (abandoned) banks in the town were observed. West of the town and on the west side of South Fork it is worked on a considerable scale by H. C. and O. M. Stineman. The coal is present in the hills westward to Mineral Point and beyond. Near Mineral Point two small mines on this coal bed belong to H. W. Gillan. (See Pl. IV, *B*.)

Chemical character.—Analysis No. 5, page 40, indicates the composition of this coal in South Fork. The coal is bright and lustrous

and the analysis shows it to be on a par with the corresponding coal in the Johnstown district. Both its ash and sulphur average below those of the coal in that district, but in other respects the analyses are very similar.

To the east, in the Ebensburg quadrangle, this coal is locally workable and has been opened and worked by G. Pearse & Sons at Puritan, on Trout Run. The composition of the coal here, as shown in the table below, is about the same as it is farther west, about South Fork; but analyses of the two samples collected in the same mine show considerable divergence.

Analyses of Upper Kittanning coal at Puritan.

[W. T. Schaller, analyst.]

	1.	2.
Moisture	1.70	0.52
Volatile matter	19.28	22.00
Fixed carbon	71.19	67.49
Ash	7.83	9.99
Sulphur	1.60	3.47

Occurrence and physical character.—In thickness the coal ranges from 3 to 3½ feet, usually without any partings, and has a hard shale roof which gives no trouble. There is in places a few inches of bone

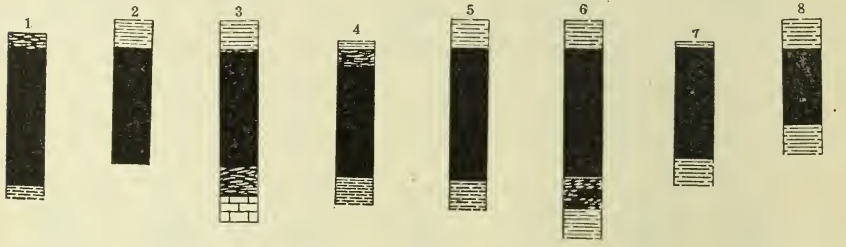


FIGURE 11.—Sections of the Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′) coal in the South Fork-Mineral Point district. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1, H. C. Stineman No. 6, South Fork; 2, O. M. Stineman, No. 3½, South Fork; 3, Robert A. Giles, South Fork; 4, Charles Hutzel, South Fork; 5, Old opening, southern part of South Fork; 6, 7, H. W. Gillan, near Mineral Point; 8, Salt Lick Run.

at the top, which is discarded in mining. The lower part of the coal is locally bony. Below this, and in its absence directly below the coal, there is a band of clay, ranging from a few inches to more than 2 feet. Below the clay, or just below the coal itself, is found a bed of limestone or cement rock—the Johnstown limestone member—measuring in places as much as 4 feet.

Figure 11 indicates graphically what has been outlined above. In the area to the east the coal is locally workable, and where exploited by G. Pearse & Sons, on Trout Run, on the east side of the basin,

in the Ebensburg quadrangle, its thickness is very much the same as near South Fork. At Bennington it is 2 feet 10 inches thick; in the Sonman shaft it is 2 feet; in the Yellow Run shaft 2 feet 6 inches; and in a diamond-drill hole of the Henriette Mining Company, south of Llanfair, it is 1 foot thick. On the east side of the basin, therefore, it can not be considered more than locally workable. On the west side of the basin it may be regarded as among the future important coals, both near South Fork and in the region to the south, where considerable exploratory work with the diamond drill has showed this coal to be 3 feet or more in thickness.

LOWER KITTANNING (MILLER) COAL.

Name and position.—The Lower Kittanning, Miller, B, or White Ash bed is the most important coal in the South Fork-Mineral Point district. Immediately about South Fork it lies 160 feet below the Upper Freeport bed; elsewhere it ranges from 145 to 200 feet below the Upper Freeport coal (see p. 24) and about half as much below the Upper Kittanning (Cement) bed. Its position, approximately 55 to 65 feet above the top of the Pottsville (or "conglomerate rock," as the Pottsville is popularly called), should serve to locate and identify it with little trouble in the South Fork-Mineral Point district.

Extent and development.—North of Conemaugh River the coal has been opened by the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company and worked at its No. 3 and No. 5 mines, the workings in the latter being on the dip of the bed. Farther west the Priscilla Coal Company is working the same bed, and still beyond, near the Ebensburg (Viaduct) anticlinal axis, are the openings of the Keystone Coal and Coke Company, called Argyle Nos. 1 and 2 mines. There are also a few abandoned mines on the Lower Kittanning bed north of Conemaugh River, and to judge from the culm heaps at their tipples large bodies of coal have been removed from them.

South of the river and west of South Fork the workings on the Lower Kittanning coal are extensive. The mines here include collieries Nos. 2 and 4 of the Stineman Coal and Coke Company and colliery No. 1 of the Stineman Coal Mining Company. To the east and in the town itself are the workings of the South Fork Coal Mining Company. The magnitude of the coal industry at South Fork may be judged from the fact that in 1905 there were produced in these mines 1,400,000 tons of coal, valued at $1,500,000.

Chemical character.—Analyses Nos. 15, 16, 28, and 29 (pp. 40–42) give an excellent idea of the high grade of this coal as mined near South Fork. The analyses below give an idea of its composition in the Ebensburg quadrangle, on the southeast flank of the Wilmore Basin.

Analyses of Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal in the Ebensburg quadrangle.[a]

[Air-dried samples; W. T. Schaller, analyst.]

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.
Moisture	0.53	0.32	0.57	0.38	0.36	0.35	0.43
Volatile matter	26.90	21.97	23.52	19.44	20.46	17.81	19.41
Fixed carbon	63.52	71.38	69.64	74.28	72.76	74.28	75.78
Ash	9.05	6.33	6.27	5.90	6.42	7.56	4.38
Sulphur	1.21	.68	.99	.72	1.74	3.14	.76

[a] Ebensburg folio (No. 133), Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey, 1905, p. 9.

1. Reed & Bradley mine, Bennington.
2, 3. Lilly Mining Company, Bear Rock Run.
4. A. C. Blowers, Bens Creek.
5, 6. Alton Coal Company, Lloydell.
7. Henriette Coal Company, near Llanfair.
1 to 6 collected by Charles Butts; 7 by W. C. Phalen.

From the analyses (pp. 40–42) it appears that the fixed carbon in the samples collected in the Johnstown quadrangle, near South Fork, ranges from 74 to more than 78 per cent, with volatile matter ranging from 14 to more than 16 per cent. The moisture of the samples as received at the laboratory is low, not exceeding 3.5 per cent. The samples from South Fork are notably low in sulphur and ash and show the excellent character of the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal in this part of the Wilmore Basin. The samples collected from the Ebensburg quadrangle by Charles Butts and W. C. Phalen during the summer of 1903 were analyzed in the chemical laboratory of the Survey at Washington and not in the laboratory of the technologic branch of the Survey at St. Louis. The results of analyses are therefore not strictly comparable with the results of analyses from South Fork (pp. 40–42). The former show more diversity in composition, as would naturally be expected when the scattered places from which the samples were collected are considered. The general similarity of the results, however, is noteworthy, as is also the low content in sulphur and ash. The second sample collected from the Alton Coal Company's mine at Lloydell (No. 6, above) seems to be entirely exceptional regarding its sulphur content, and it is probable that a "sulphur ball" found its way into the sample without being suspected.

Steaming tests.—As a steam coal the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal from the South Fork district ranks among the very best of western Pennsylvania and probably equals in steaming value any other steam coal in this part of the State. (See comparative tables, p. 37.)

In the following tables are given the results of tests on run-of-mine coal loaded under the supervision of J. S. Burrows, formerly of the Survey, collected from No. 3 mine of the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company, at Ehrenfeld. One coking test, five steaming tests, and one producer-gas test were made on the car-

load sample collected.[a] A steaming test was also made on this sample mixed with coal from the Darby mine of the Darby Coal and Coke Company, at Darby, Lee County, Va., but the results of this test are not given in the bulletin cited.

The analysis of the carload sample tested is as follows (for mine samples see analyses 28 and 29, pp. 41–42):

Analysis of carload sample of Lower Kittanning coal from South Fork-Mineral Point district.

Laboratory No.		2152
Air-drying loss.		2.90
Proximate.	Moisture.	3.51
	Volatile matter.	16.82
	Fixed carbon.	73.04
	Ash.	6.63
Ultimate.	Sulphur.	.94
	Hydrogen.	4.56
	Carbon.	80.70
	Nitrogen.	1.26
	Oxygen.	5.91
Calorific value determined:		
	Calories.	7,933
	British thermal units.	14,279

The results of the steaming tests on this coal are as follows:

Steaming tests on Lower Kittanning coal from South Fork-Mineral Point district.

	Test 236.	Test 237.	Test 238.	Test 239.	Test 242.
Heating value of coal..B. t. u. per pound of dry coal..	14,886	14,868	14,828	14,690	14,659
Force of draft:					
Under stack damper....inch water..	0.43	0.45	0.50	0.63	0.47
Above fire....do....	.15	.16	.17	.19	.16
Furnace temperature....°F..	2,317	2,266	2,212	.....	2,059
Dry coal used per square foot of grate surface per hour....pounds..	15.74	16.23	15.69	17.64	14.33
Equivalent water evaporated per square foot of water-heating surface per hour....pounds..	2.93	2.96	2.93	3.08	2.92
Percentage of rated horsepower of boiler developed...	82.0	83.0	82.1	86.5	81.9
Water apparently evaporated per pound of coal as fired....pounds..	8.51	8.27	8.44	7.98	8.52
Water evaporated from and at 212° F.:					
Per pound of coal as fired....do....	10.12	9.85	10.05	9.52	10.17
Per pound of dry coal....do....	10.37	10.17	10.42	9.75	10.22
Per pound of combustible....do....	11.20	11.02	11.29	10.71	11.15
Efficiency of boiler, including grate....per cent..	67.27	66.06	67.86	64.10	67.19
Coal as fired:					
Per indicated horsepower hour....pounds..	2.79	2.87	2.81	2.97	2.78
Per electrical horsepower hour....do....	3.45	3.54	3.47	3.67	3.43
Dry coal:					
Per indicated horsepower hour....do....	2.73	2.78	2.71	2.90	2.77
Per electrical horsepower hour....do....	3.37	3.43	3.35	3.58	3.41
Proximate analysis:					
Moisture.	2.37	3.11	3.56	2.44	0.42
Volatile matter.	16.74	15.68	16.09	16.64	17.51
Fixed carbon.	74.66	74.93	73.85	73.69	75.20
Ash.	6.23	6.28	6.50	7.23	6.87
	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00
Sulphur.	.88	.89	.87	1.12	1.01

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 290, 1906, pp. 178–181.

Steaming tests on Lower Kittanning coal from South Fork-Mineral Point district—Continued.

	Test 236.	Test 237.	Test 238.	Test 239.	Test 242.
Ultimate analysis:					
Carbon[a]	84.14	84.03	83.81	82.98	83.35
Hydrogen[a]	4.34	4.35	4.33	4.28	4.15
Oxygen[a]	2.93	2.91	2.91	2.89	3.27
Nitrogen[a]	1.31	1.31	1.31	1.29	1.32
Sulphur	.90	.92	.90	1.15	1.01
Ash	6.38	6.48	6.74	7.41	6.90
	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00

[a] Figured from car sample.

Test 236: Size as shipped, run of mine. Size as used, over 1 inch, 6.5 per cent; ½ inch to 1 inch, 13.6 per cent; ¼ inch to ½ inch, 22.4 per cent; under ¼ inch, 57.5 per cent. Duration of test, 9.88 hours. Kind of grate, rocking.

Test 237: Size as shipped, run of mine. Size as used, over 1 inch, 5.8 per cent; ½ inch to 1 inch, 12.3 per cent; ¼ inch to ½ inch, 19.5 per cent; under ¼ inch, 62.4 per cent. Duration of test, 10 hours. Kind of grate, rocking.

Test 238: Size as shipped, run of mine. Size as used, over 1 inch, 5.4 per cent; ½ inch to 1 inch, 9.1 per cent; ¼ inch to ½ inch, 14.9 per cent; under ¼ inch, 70.6 per cent. Duration of test, 10.02 hours. Kind of grate, rocking.,

Test 239: Size as shipped, run of mine. Size as used, over 1 inch, 4.4 per cent; ½ inch to 1 inch, 8.8 per cent; ¼ inch to ½ inch, 16.2 per cent; under ¼ inch, 70.6 per cent. Duration of test, 9.92 hours. Kind of grate, rocking.

Test 242: Size as shipped, run of mine. Size as used, over 1 inch, 2.0 per cent; ½ inch to 1 inch, 7.0 per cent; ¼ inch to ½ inch, 14.5 per cent; under ¼ inch, 76.5 per cent. Dried coal. Duration of test, 7.88 hours. Kind of grate, plain.

The figure giving the number of pounds of water evaporated by 1 pound of dry coal from and at a temperature of 212° F. gives the results of the coal tested so far as these relate to its commercial value, and the reader is referred to the table on page 37 for the standing of the Ehrenfeld coal among other standard steaming coals. The results of the tests, on the Ehrenfeld samples though showing a range of 9.75 to 10.42 pounds of water evaporated per pound of dry coal used, are yet, when averaged, among the very best made at the testing plant.

Coking tests.—The coal from the lower Kittanning bed near South Fork has been coked, and the results of the test on the sample from Ehrenfeld are given below:

Coking test on Lower Kittanning coal from Ehrenfeld.

[Run of mine; finely crushed; raw; duration of test, 51 hours.]

Coal charged	pounds..	10,000
Coke produced	do....	5,223
Breeze produced	do....	1,600
Coke produced	per cent..	52.23
Breeze produced	do....	16.00
Total percentage yield		68.23

The product was a soft, dense coke of a dull-gray color, in large and small chunks. There was a heavy black butt on the coke, and it was hard to burn. The cell structure was small.

Analyses of coal and coke.

	Coal.	Coke.
Moisture	3.32	0.91
Volatile matter	15.56	2.16
Fixed carbon	74.29	88.99
Ash	6.83	7.94
Sulphur	1.12	.91

The yield of coke from this test is comparatively high, but the poor quality of the coke shows that the coal does not belong among the best coking coals of western Pennsylvania and West Virginia. Coke made by the Cambria Steel Company with coal mined from this bed about Ehrenfeld proved well adapted to metallurgical purposes. The yield also was satisfactory.

Cupola tests.[a]—In connection with the tests of coals made at the plant of the United States Geological Survey at St. Louis in 1904 practical melting tests were made of coke that showed any likelihood to be of value to the foundry industry. Among those tested was one made from coal collected at colliery No. 3 of the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company at Ehrenfeld. The test was conducted in a 36-inch foundry cupola lent by the Whiting Foundry Equipment Company, of Chicago. The 36-inch shell of the cupola was relined to 26 inches internal diameter. There were four horizontal tuyeres measuring 4 by 6 inches on the outside and 3 by 13 inches on the inside of the cupola, which were situated 11 inches above the sand bottom. The total tuyere area was 96 square inches, giving a ratio of 1 to 5.96 with the cupola area. A No. 6 Sturtevant fan run at 2,514 revolutions a minute furnished the blast, which was kept at about 7 ounces.

The cupola test was conducted by W. G. Ireland, and the details of the method employed are outlined in the references cited above and will not be given here. The results of the test are shown in the following table:

[a] Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 48, pt. 3, 1906, pp. 1367–1370; Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 336, 1908, pp. 48, 49, 50, 54, 57, 60, 63.

Cupola tests on Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal from Ehrenfeld.

Cupola test No.	Date.	Charges (pounds).																		Ratio iron to coke.
		Coke bed.	Pig iron.	Scrap.	Coke.	Pig iron.	Scrap.	Coke.	Pig iron.	Scrap.	Coke.	Pig iron.	Scrap.	Coke.	Pig iron.	Scrap.	Total. Coke.	Total. Pig iron.	Total. Scrap.	
	1906.																			
65	September 19	180	540	180	63	428	143	63	428	143	62	427	142	62	427	142	430	2,250	750	7
188	December 7	195	585	195	59	417	139	59	416	139	59	416	139	58	416	138	430	2,250	750	7

Cupola test No.	Analysis of coke (per cent).							Specific gravity.	Fluidity strip (per cent), full.	Maximum blast pressure (ounces).	Record of melt.											
	Moisture.	Volatile matter.	Fixed carbon.	Ash.	Sulphur. In coke.	Sulphur. In ash.	Phosphorus.				Pounds of iron. Poured.	Pounds of iron. Additional melted.	Pounds of iron. Total.	Melting rate. Per hour (pounds).	Melting rate. Increase or decrease.	Recovered (pounds). Iron.	Recovered (pounds). Coke.	Melting loss (per cent).	Melting ratio. Iron to coke.	Melting ratio. Increase or decrease.	Coke bed. Increase (+) or decrease (−) (pounds).	Coke bed. Height above top of tuyeres (inches).
65	0.91	2.16	88.99	7.94	0.91	0.10	0.0049	1.76	98.61	7	1,939	565	2,504	5,181	.....	228	81	9.07	7.20	.....	.....	.....
188	.91	2.16	88.99	7.94	.91	.10	.0049	1.76	93.05	7	2,256	257	2,513	5,799	Increase.	199	49	9.60	6.50	Decrease.	+15	16.33

Cupola tests on Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal from Ehrenfeld—Continued.

Cupola test No.	Blast on at—	Iron running.	Record of melt—Continued. Weight and time of each ladle of melted iron.																	
			Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—
65	11.35 a. m.	11.42	22	11.47	89	11.50	74	11.50½	79	11.52	96	11.52½	91	11.53	66	11.55	82	11.55½	80	11.56
188	3.34 p. m.	3.42	88	3.47	94	3.47½	30	3.48	78	3.50	86	3.50½	58	3.51	86	3.52	88	3.52½	71	3.53

Cupola test No.	Record of melt—Continued. Weight and time of each ladle of melted iron—Continued.																					
	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—
65	62	11.57	95	11.57½	68	11.58	81	11.59	75	11.59½	68	12.00	74	12.01	146	12.01½	72	12.02	85	12.04	136	12.04½
188	84	3.54	86	3.54½	79	3.55	86	3.56	89	3.56½	80	3.57	87	3.58	90	3.58½	78	3.59	89	4.00	83	4.00½

Cupola test No.	Record of melt—Continued. Weight and time of each ladle of melted iron—Continued.												Melting time (minutes).	Remarks.
	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—	Lbs.	At—		
65	50	12.05	79	12.08	95	12.08½	48	12.10½	26	12.11	.....	.....	29	Iron hot.
188	66	4.01	87	4.02	87	4.02½	88	4.04	92	4.04½	89	4.06	26	Iron hot; 27th ladle—79 pounds at 4.07; 28th ladle—58 pounds at 4.08.

Producer-gas test.—The following results were obtained from the producer-gas test made on the Ehrenfeld sample:

Producer-gas test on Lower Kittanning coal from Ehrenfeld.[a]

	Coal as fired.	Dry coal.	Combustible.
Coal consumed in producer per horsepower per hour.			
Per electrical horsepower:	*Pounds.*	*Pounds.*	*Pounds.*
Available for outside purposes	1.25	1.22	1.13
Developed at switchboard	1.18	1.15	1.07
Per brake horsepower:			
Available for outside purposes	1.06	1.04	.96
Developed at engine	1.00	.98	.91
Equivalent used by producer plant.			
Per electrical horsepower:			
Available for outside purposes	1.35	1.32	1.22
Developed at switchboard	1.28	1.25	1.15
Per brake horsepower:			
Available for outside purposes	1.15	1.12	1.04
Developed at engine	1.09	1.06	.98

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 290, 1906, pp. 180–181.

Size as shipped, run of mine; size as used, not determined. Duration, 50 hours. Average electrical horsepower, 187.9; average British thermal units gas per cubic foot, 133; total coal fired, 11,100 pounds.

Analyses.

Coal.		Gas by volume.	
Moisture	2.49	Carbon dioxide (CO_2)	9.9
Volatile matter	16.61	Carbon monoxide (CO)	18.7
Fixed carbon	73.70	Hydrogen (H_2)	14.1
Ash	7.20	Methane (CH_4)	2.2
	100.00	Nitrogen (N_2)	55.1
Sulphur	.91		100.0

Occurrence and physical character.—The Lower Kittanning coal near South Fork (see fig. 12) has a section similar to that of the bed near Johnstown, already described. Its main bench, however, is thicker, averaging nearly 4 feet and in some places reaching 5 feet, with no partings. The double structure—that is, the occurrence of a main bench with the under coal—which is fairly persistent in the Johnstown district, is even more apparent about South Fork. Some of the mines, however, show it only here and there. In other physical aspects this coal resembles the Lower Kittanning bed about Johnstown. Its roof of dense shale or sandstone, the general absence of "draw slate" or of clay veins, and the irregular floor are all common to the bed in both districts. The top few inches of the coal is usually bony and has to be discarded. In appearance the coal is lustrous and much of it is iridescent, and its columnar cleavage is one of its more characteristic features.

The lower bench varies in thickness, but is in places as much as 2 feet thick; this thickness is reached near both South Fork and Mineral Point. The lower coal is underlain by valuable plastic clay and is separated from the main bench by a few inches to a foot of clay or shale. So far as known, the under coal is not utilized. As a rule it is not so persistent along the southeastern margin of the Wilmore Basin if the sections obtained by Mr. Butts and Mr. Phalen

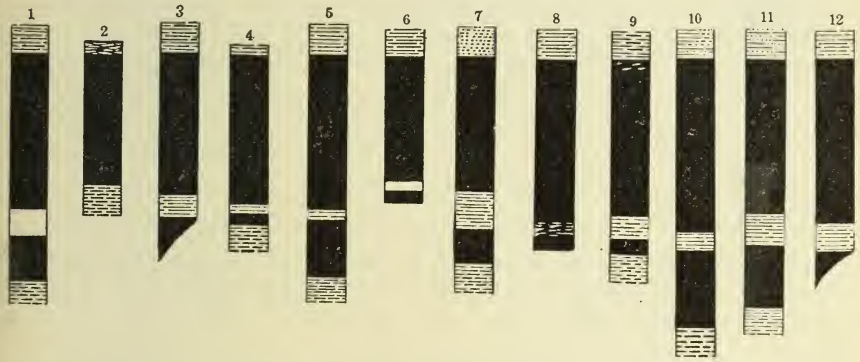


FIGURE 12.—Sections of Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the South Fork-Mineral Point district. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1. Keystone Coal and Coke Company, Argyle No. 2, South Fork.
2. Keystone Coal and Coke Company, Argyle No. 1, South Fork.
3. Priscilla Coal Company, South Fork.
4. Pennsylvania, Beech Creek and Eastern Coal Company, Ehrenfeld.
5. Stineman Coal and Coke Company, No. 2, South Fork.
6. Stineman Coal and Coke Company, No. 4, South Fork.
7. Stineman Coal Mining Company, No. 1, South Fork.
8. Stineman Coal and Coke Company, No. 2, Timber opening, South Fork.
9. South Fork Coal Mining Company, No. 1, South Fork.
10. Valley Smokeless, No. 3, Mineral Point.
11. Page & Reighard, Juniper mine, Mineral Point.
12. George Schafer, Mineral Point.

in 1903 are representative. It here appears locally, as the following section shows:

Section of Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal at Henriette shaft No. 1, Llanfair, Pa.

	Ft.	in.
Coal	3	9
Slate		3
Coal		11
Clay.		

LOWER ALLEGHENY COALS.

A coal 65 feet below the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed has been opened at a few points about South Fork and Mineral Point. This coal probably corresponds to the Brookville or A coal. Most of the openings have fallen shut, but one bank is mined at South Fork to supply the local brick company. The coal is better known locally as the Dirty A or Six-foot coal, but where measured (see fig. 13) only 3½ feet of coal was observed. The bone parting observed a

foot from the base is only an inch thick. The roof is shale or sandstone and so far as known gives no trouble. The coal runs as thick as 5 feet and as thin as 3 feet. According to reports, 4 feet may be considered an average. The coal is reported not to be rolly and no clay veins of importance have been encountered.

FIGURE 13.—Section of the Brookville (A) coal at the mine of J. H. Wickes, South Fork. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

It has a composition indicated by analysis 36, page 41. From the high ash and sulphur content, aggregating more than 15 per cent, the coal deserves the name Dirty A, which is often applied to it. In other respects the analysis corresponds with those of other coals of the area, being relatively high in fixed carbon and low in volatile matter. It is possible that the coal may be valuable in this district, but the fact that it has not been developed on an extensive scale and apparently has not come into competition with the other coals of the district is strong presumptive evidence that in quality it is not up to the standard of the other coals mined about South Fork.

POTTSVILLE COALS.

But one other coal in the South Fork-Mineral Point district deserves brief attention. This is the coal associated with the flint clay (see pp. 121–123) at the Mercer horizon. The coal is not worked and where observed was merely a thin streak in the middle of the clay. The following section was seen and measured at the clay mine of J. H. Wickes:

Section of clay and coal at Mercer horizon, South Fork.

	Ft.	in.
Roof, heavy sandstone.		
Plastic clay	3½	
Coal		⅛–2
Flint clay	4½	
Sandstone.		

Though the coal is not workable here, it is quite possible that it may be of workable thickness locally. In this district, however, it can not be regarded as among the commercial beds of the future.

BLACKLICK CREEK DISTRICT.

EXTENT.

In the Blacklick Creek district will be included the coal occurrences along Blacklick Creek and its South Branch. Operations on these coals are confined almost exclusively to the creek valley, the principal mining towns being Nanty Glo, Cardiff, Twin Rocks, Weber, Vintondale, and Wehrum. The coals outcrop from Nanty Glo, where they are brought above drainage level on the east margin of the Laurel

Ridge anticline, westward to Vintondale, on the west flank of the same anticline. Just west of Vintondale the highest workable coal disappears below drainage level, and still farther west, at Wehrum, mining operations are conducted by means of a shaft. West of Wehrum the coal-bearing beds are brought above drainage level just at the western edge of the quadrangle, near Dilltown. A few country banks have also been opened on Mardis Run.

GEOLOGIC POSITION OF COALS.

Figure 2 shows the relations between the principal coals in the Blacklick Creek district, and the following section, measured along the railroad and in the hills north of Vintondale, shows the character of the beds which make up the intervals:

Section north of Vintondale.

		Ft.	in.
Sand and shale		9	
Coal, reported 42 inches, thinning to 18 inches when run in from the outcrop (D coal).			
Concealed		57	
Sandstone		15	
Concealed		10½	
Shale, sandy		5	
Concealed		10½	
Shales, brown-drab		10	
Coal, 2 feet 3 inches			
Clay, 1 inch	Middle Kittanning (C) coal	2	10½
Coal, 6½ inches			
Shales		7	8
Chiefly clay		5	2
Sandstone		3	1
Shale, black		2	4
Sandstone with black shale partings		5	2
Shale, sandy, becoming concretionary and ferruginous at base		20	8
Interval		4	
Shale, variegated black and drab		6	
Coal, 3 feet 8 inches			
Shale, 2 inches			
Coal, 4 inches	Lower Kittanning (B or Miller) coal	5	1
Clay, 2 inches			
Coal, 9 inches			
Shales, sandy			6
Fire clay, dark gray		3	5
Sandstone, drab, resembling ganister			2–3
Clay, light drab		3	

The Middle Kittanning (C) coal, the first above the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) bed, which is the coal worked along Blacklick Creek, occurs at an interval above it of about 50 feet. This coal is nearer the Lower Kittanning at Nanty Glo, having been reported only 34 feet above it near the opening of the Ivory Hill Mining Company at that place. At Big Bend its interval above the Lower Kittanning is about 45 feet.

There is still another coal at the top of the section deserving attention. At Vintondale a gully was dug up the hill from railroad level where the Lower Kittanning coal outcrops. The section given above, except the part between the Lower and Middle Kittanning coals, was measured in this gully. The top coal was observed by hand level to be 108 feet above the intermediate (Middle Kittanning or C) coal, and the interval between the Lower and Middle Kittanning beds was found to be 46½ feet. Thus from the top coal to the Lower Kittanning (B) bed the distance is about 164 feet. At Nanty Glo a workable coal (probably the Lower Freeport or D coal) was observed by hand-level measurement to occur 150 feet above the Lower Kittanning coal, and at Twin Rocks a coal was reported at almost exactly the same interval by the engineer of the Big Bend collieries. At Wehrum certain of the diamond-drill records show a coal about the same interval above the Lower Kittanning coal. So far as the writers are aware, this is the highest coal of any importance in the Blacklick Creek district. About 50 feet above it occurs an unworkable small coal, which is regarded as the equivalent of the Upper Freeport or E bed. The highest workable coal along Blacklick Creek will therefore be regarded tentatively as the Lower Freeport (D) coal.

The nomenclature of the coals discovered in the Blacklick Creek district and the intervals between them have been graphically given by D'Invilliers.[a] He places the first coal above the Lower Kittanning (B) at 60 feet above it, but the hand-leveled sections at Vintondale, as well as measurements made at Twin Rocks and reports from authorities at Nanty Glo, make this coal at least 15 feet lower, and instead of lettering it C′, as D'Invilliers has done, the writers prefer to regard it as the C coal and the representative of the Middle and not the Upper Kittanning bed. Further, D'Invilliers places the next higher coal at 120 feet above the Lower Kittanning (B) and the next at approximately 60 feet higher. This bed, which he denotes as the E with a question, he describes as a "good bed, thinning westward to about 3 feet." It is believed that this is the coal measured at Nanty Glo, at Twin Rocks, near Rexis, and on Mardis Run, though the interval obtained (150 to 160 feet above the Lower Kittanning bed) falls short by at least 20 feet of the interval platted by D'Invilliers.

ALLEGHENY COALS.

LOWER FREEPORT (D) COAL.

Name and position.—Some question arises as to whether the highest workable coal in the Allegheny formation is the Upper or Lower Freeport. It is quite certain that the full complement of coals in the formation is not developed along Blacklick Creek, at

[a] Summary Final Rept. Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, 1895, pl. 415, p. 2222.

least not as clearly as in the Johnstown Basin. Only three workable coals in the Allegheny (above and including the B bed) were determined with any certainty, and, though more may be present, they must be small and hence of no value except for stratigraphic purposes.

The position of the highest workable coal is very definitely fixed. At Nanty Glo it is just 150 feet by hand level above the Lower Kittanning (B) bed. On the Selderville road, between Nanty Glo and Twin Rocks, the interval, measured by barometer, is 158 feet; at Vintondale, by hand level, it was made 164 feet; and, as stated by the engineer of the Big Bend collieries, the interval at Big Bend is about 150 feet. There is a question as to whether this coal is the Upper Freeport or the Lower Freeport, and this question the writers are unable to settle definitely. Objection should not be made to its being considered as the Upper Freeport on the basis of its small interval above the Lower Kittanning coal, as this interval is even less than 150 feet at New Germany. In this report, however, it will be regarded as the Lower Freeport coal.

Extent and development.—The Lower Freeport (D) coal has been opened by the Ivory Hill Coal Mining Company east of Nanty Glo and on the side of the hill just west of the No. 14 colliery of the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company. It has been prospected and its position and character are well known at Twin Rocks and to the northeast, opposite No. 2 colliery of the Big Bend Coal Mining Company. About Vintondale it has been prospected and its character is known, as a section of the coal near Rexis was measured by Mr. Martin. On Mardis Run, just off the northwest corner of the Johnstown quadrangle, the coal is opened and a section was measured. At present it is not a commercial factor in the Blacklick Creek district, but it can be classed among the future commercial coals of this district.

Occurrence and physical character.—Figure 14 shows the mode of occurrence of the Lower Freeport coal. It generally consists of two

FIGURE 14.—Sections of the Lower Freeport (D) coal along Blacklick Creek. Scale, 1 inch = 5 feet.

1, Mardis Run near northwest edge of Johnstown quadrangle; 2, Blacklick Creek near Rexis; 3, road south of Twin Rocks; 4, Twin Rocks; 5, Ivory Hill Coal Mining Company, Nanty Glo.

or three benches separated by thin bone partings, the coal aggregating from 3 to 3½ feet in thickness. At Vintondale, Twin Rocks,

and Nanty Glo the upper bench varies from 1½ to nearly 2 feet in thickness, and the lower bench averages about 15 inches, with some few inches of bone beneath. At Twin Rocks this is underlain by a few inches of coal. On Mardis Run the coal is more broken, consisting of three benches, each about a foot thick. The roof is usually shale and the coal is underlain by clay. The presence of the parting in this coal has been a drawback to operations on it, but it is quite probable that it will yet be worked; in fact, it was worked during the hard-coal famine of 1902–3 and gave satisfaction. If proper care is exercised in separating the bony parting, it should be readily marketed. The resemblance of the sections to those of the Upper Freeport coal near South Fork is marked.

MIDDLE KITTANNING COAL.

A little more than 100 feet below the Upper Freeport coal and from 35 to 45 feet above the main coal of the Blacklick district (Lower Kittanning or Miller bed) occurs a coal which is persistent along South Branch of Blacklick Creek. It has been observed at Twin Rocks, Nanty Glo, and Vintondale, and its interval with respect to the main Blacklick coal has been measured at the two last-named places. It has been called the Middle Kittanning coal because it is the first coal above the Lower Kittanning bed. At Vintondale the following section was measured:

Section of Middle Kittanning coal at Vintondale.

	Ft.	in.
Shale roof.		
Coal	2	3
Clay		1
Coal		6½
Clay.		

The coal here has a thickness of 33½ inches and is therefore workable. Owing to its persistence, it may be regarded as among the coals that will in the future be worked in this region, though it may be some time before it will be necessary to draw on this coal as a source of supply.

LOWER KITTANNING (B) COAL.

Name and position.—The main coal of the Blacklick district is considered the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal and corresponds to this coal about South Fork. Some question has been raised as to this correlation and the coal has been regarded as the equivalent of the Upper Kittanning or C′ coal. The objections to the latter view have been summed up by D'Invilliers[a] in the following words, with which the writers are in full agreement.

> The whole character of the "Blacklick seam" is totally unlike the appearance of the Kittanning upper bed(C′) as exposed anywhere in Clearfield, Cambria, or Somerset counties. On the other hand, its double structure, columnar cleavage, partings, roof

[a] Summary Final Rept. Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, 1895, p. 2222.

and floor, and excellent chemical character most strongly resemble the features of the Kittanning lower bed (B or Miller seam), all through southern Cambria and especially in the Paint and Shade Creek valleys of Somerset County. * * * At no place in the Blacklick region has the cement bed been noticed beneath this coal, which would identify it as bed C'.

Extent and development.—This coal is often referred to as the Blacklick Creek seam. It appears above drainage level just east of Nanty Glo, on South Branch of Blacklick Creek, where it has been opened by the Ivory Hill Coal Mining Company. In the southern part of Nanty Glo are two important mines on this coal—the Pennsylvania, Beech Creek, and Eastern Coal Company's colliery No. 14 and that of the Nanty Glo Coal Mining Company. Some distance north of the town is the mine of the Lincoln Coal Company, and still farther north, near the edge of the quadrangle, is the opening of the Cardiff Coal Company. The next mining center to the west is Twin Rocks or Expedit postoffice, near which are located collieries Nos. 1 and 2 of the Big Bend Coal Mining Company and colliery No. 3 of the Commercial Coal Mining Company. Colliery No. 4 of the latter company is located about 4 miles farther west, at a little settlement called Weber. The Vinton Colliery Company controls the workings on this bed about Vintondale. Four out of its five collieries were active in the summer of 1906 and colliery No. 6 was just being opened. The coal goes below drainage level in the town and the operations to the west at Wehrum are conducted by shafting for the coal to a depth of 187 feet. On the west side of the Barnesboro or Westover Basin the bed appears above drainage level just at the edge of the quadrangle and has been worked in a small way by H. R. Dill about a mile northwest of Dilltown. The development of this coal along Blacklick Creek is of recent date, and the production of this district, which was only 5,000 tons in 1894, had increased in 1905 to 1,045,802 tons, valued at $1,019,617.

Chemical character.—The composition of this coal is indicated by analyses 17 to 27 (pp. 40–41). This exceptionally complete series of analyses shows that the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal has much the same character along Blacklick Creek as at Johnstown and South Fork. The moisture in the coal is low, in no sample exceeding 4 per cent. The volatile matter is likewise low and remarkably uniform, ranging from more than 17 per cent to less than 19 per cent. Fixed carbon ranges from 67 to 73 per cent—a slight range considering that the samples were obtained by three individuals from scattered mines. Ash is on the whole low, but sulphur is rather high, in one sample exceeding 4½ per cent. As a whole, however, the figures all point to a high-grade coal.

Steaming tests.—Steaming tests have been made on Lower Kittanning coal collected at Wehrum by the United States Geological Survey.[a] The analyses on the samples used are as follows:

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, pp. 201–202.

Chemical analyses of Lower Kittanning coals from Wehrum.[a]

		Test 472.	Test 473.	Test 467.
Prox.	Moisture	1.88	2.45	3.90
	Volatile matter	17.60	17.55	23.35
	Fixed carbon	69.06	70.56	64.65
	Ash	11.46	9.44	8.10
Ult.	Sulphur	5.37	3.87	3.11
	Hydrogen	4.13	4.31	4.35
	Carbon	75.63	78.83	78.71
	Nitrogen	1.15	1.21	1.09
	Oxygen	1.94	2.00	4.18
	Ash	11.68	9.68	8.43
	Sulphur	5.47	3.97	3.24

[a] Proximate analysis of fuel as fired; ultimate analysis of dry fuel figured from car sample. (See analyses 10 and 11, pp. 40–41.)

The results of the steaming tests are as follows:

Steaming tests on Lower Kittanning coal from Wehrum.

	Test 472.[a]	Test 473.[a]	Test 467.
Size as used:			
Over 1 inch, per cent	8.2	4.6	.....
½ inch to 1 inch, do	11.1	6.9	.....
¼ inch to ½ inch, do	19.2	13.9	.....
Under ¼ inch, do	61.5	74.6	.....
Average diameter, inch	0.41	0.31	.....
Duration of test, hours	8.75	9.77	8.87
Heating value of fuel, B. t. u. per pound of dry fuel	13,729	14,240	14,258
Force of draft:			
Under stack damper, inch of water	0.81	0.82	0.76
Above fire, do	.27	.23	.17
Furnace temperature, °F.	2,512	2,615	2,753
Dry fuel used per square foot of grate surface per hour, pounds	16.87	17.24	17.63
Equivalent water evaporated per square foot of water-heating surface per hour, pounds	3.00	3.25	3.53
Percentage of rated horsepower of boiler developed	84.2	91.2	99.00
Water apparently evaporated per pound of fuel as fired, pounds	7.27	7.65	7.98
Water evaporated from and at 212° F.:			
Per pound of fuel as fired, do	8.76	9.22	9.65
Per pound of dry fuel, do	8.93	9.45	10.04
Per pound of combustible, do	10.57	10.85	11.30
Efficiency of boiler, including grate, per cent	62.81	64.09	68.00
Fuel as fired:			
Per indicated horsepower hour, pounds	3.23	3.07	2.93
Per electrical horsepower hour, do	3.99	3.79	3.62
Dry fuel:			
Per indicated horsepower hour, do	3.17	2.99	2.82
Per electrical horsepower hour, do	3.91	3.69	3.48

[a] Run of mine.

Test 467 made on Renfrow briquets from briquetting test 176 (p. 87), which burned freely with short flame, 5.4 per cent black smoke, and very hot fire; briquets coking well and throwing off fragments of coke in ash during combustion; 39 per cent clinker, thin, metallic, red and black, brittle when cold; ash of dark-gray color, looked like coke.

The figures giving the pounds of water evaporated from and at a temperature of 212° F. per pound of dry fuel used represent the value of the coal for steaming. The first two tests give 8.93 and 9.45, or an average of 9.19, which compares very well with 10.545, the figure for the first-class steaming coal from Fayette, W. Va. (See

p. 37.) The figure for test 467 (10.04) represents the steaming value of briquets and strictly speaking should not be used in making comparisons with the results obtained from the raw coal.

Coking tests.—The results of the coking tests made on this coal are given below. [a]

Coking tests on Lower Kittanning coal from Wehrum.

[Run of mine, washed.]

		Test 185.	Test 188.
Size as used		Finely crushed.	Run of mine.
Duration of test	hours	61	54
Coal charged	pounds	9,750	12,460
Coke produced	do	5,779	8,144
	per cent	59.27	65.36
Breeze produced	pounds	262	332
	per cent	2.69	2.66
Total yield	do	61.96	68.02

Analyses of coal and coke.

	Test 185.		Test 188.	
	Coal.	Coke.	Coal.	Coke.
Moisture	7.19	0.56	4.53	0.57
Volatile matter	17.86	.32	18.56	.55
Fixed carbon	69.57	91.10	70.63	90.23
Ash	5.38	8.02	6.28	8.65
Sulphur	1.63	1.46	1.85	1.54

The coke resulting from the first test was of a dull-gray color, soft and dense, with high sulphur. The second test, with run-of-mine coal, produced a light-gray silvery coke, much better than the coke from the finely ground coal. In the coke from the second test, also, the sulphur is high. The yield in the second test was much better than that in the first. The coal mined at Nanty Glo from this bed has been tested in beehive ovens at Gallitzin. It produced coke of good structure but of dull appearance. As in the Wehrum samples, an insufficient amount of sulphur was volatilized. The Lackawanna Coal and Coke Company has experimented with its coal about Wehrum, but the washeries have long been closed and the results of the coking tests could not be learned. The Vinton Colliery Company has recently built a large by-product plant at Vintondale and a large part of the coal mined from colliery No. 6 in 1907 was coked in it.

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 203.

Producer-gas test.—The following producer-gas test was made:

Producer-gas test on Lower Kittanning coal from Wehrum.[a]

	Coal as fired.	Dry coal.	Combustible.
Coal consumed in producer per horsepower per hour.			
Per electrical horsepower:	*Pounds.*	*Pounds.*	*Pounds.*
Commercially available	1.29	1.26	1.12
Developed at switchboard	1.24	1.21	1.08
Per brake horsepower:			
Commercially available	1.10	1.07	.96
Developed at engine	1.05	1.03	.92
Equivalent used by producer plant.			
Per electrical horsepower:			
Commercially available	1.43	1.39	1.25
Developed at switchboard	1.37	1.34	1.20
Per brake horsepower:			
Commercially available	1.22	1.18	1.06
Developed at engine	1.17	1.14	1.02

[a] *Lump coal.*—Size as used: Over 1 inch, 7 per cent; ½ inch to 1 inch, 14 per cent; ¼ inch to ½ inch, 18 per cent; under ¼ inch, 61 per cent. Duration of test, 24 hours. Average electrical horsepower, 191.8. Average B. t. u. per cubic foot of gas, 144.4. Total coal fired, 5,700 pounds.

Analysis of gas by volume.[a]

Carbon dioxide (CO_2)	10.7
Carbon monoxide (CO)	17.2
Hydrogen (H_2)	15.8
Methane (CH_4)	2.2
Nitrogen (N_2)	53.8
Ethylene (C_2H_4)	.3

Washing tests.—Washing tests were made as follows. The figures indicate that finer crushing is advantageous. The loss of "good coal" (by which is meant all coal of a quality equal to or better than that of the washed coal) in the refuse will not exceed 2 per cent.

Float and sink tests of Lower Kittanning coal from Wehrum.

Number of test.	Size used (inch).	Specific gravity of solution used.	Percentage of float.		Sink (per cent).	Analysis.			
			To refuse.	To total sample.		Ash.		Sulphur.	
						Per cent.	Per cent reduction.	Per cent.	Per cent reduction.
On raw coal (preliminary):									
1	½	1.35	.....	72	28	5.47	44	1.30	66
2	½	1.41	.....	78	22	5.27	46	1.45	62
3	½	1.45	.....	80	20	5.54	43	1.54	59
4	½	1.52	.....	81	19	6.26	36	1.71	55
On refuse (float):[b]									
1	.....	1.35	11.80	2.95	.....	4.95	.....	1.71	.....
2	.....	1.41	13.20	3.30	.....	6.50	.....	2.13	.....
3	.....	1.46	14.50	3.64	.....	7.65	.....	2.29	.....
4	.....	1.51	17.20	4.30	.....	8.15	.....	2.88	.....

[a] For analyses of fuel used see analysis 27, p. 41.
[b] Duration of test, 2 hours. Size as used, through 1-inch screen. Jig used, special; speed, 70 revolutions per minute; stroke, 2½ inches. Raw coal, 20.37 tons; washed coal, 15.25 tons, or 75 per cent; refuse, 5.12 tons, or 25 per cent.

Analyses.

Sample tested.	Moisture.	Ash.		Sulphur.	
		Per cent.	Per cent reduction.	Per cent.	Per cent reduction.
Raw coal, car sample	3.13	9.81	.....	3.77	.....
Washed coal	6.45	5.38	45	1.53	59
Refuse	5.78	47.18	.....	19.78	.....

Briquetting tests.—Two briquetting tests were made of the coal. Test 176, with 7 per cent binder (water-gas pitch), gave satisfactory briquets, which were tough and easily handled without breaking when warm, but which were brittle when cold; they broke with characteristic smooth, glossy fracture, hard surface, and sharp edges. In test 184 the Wehrum coal was mixed with an approximately equal portion of anthracite graphitic coal from Cranston, near Providence, R. I. From this mixture excellent briquets were made with 6.25 per cent binder on the Renfrow (American) machine. Although the pitch used had a low melting point, the briquets handled well from the machine and piled without stocking. The outer surface was very hard and smooth and broke without crumbling, giving a smooth fracture and sharp edges.

Briquetting tests of coal from Wehrum.

[Water-gas pitch binder.]

	Test 176.[a]	Test 184.[b]		Test 176.	Test 184.
Details of manufacture:			Tumbler test (1-inch screen):		
Machine used	Renf.	Renf.	Held.....per cent..	70.5	93.0
Temperature of briquets..°F..	185	185	Passed (fines).....do....	29.5	7.0
Binder—			Fines through 10-mesh sieve .....per cent..	85.0	91.4
Laboratory No.....	4553	4543	Weathering test:		
Amount.....per cent..	7	6.25	Time exposed.....days..	53	11
Weight of—			Condition.....	[e] A	[e] A
Fuel briquetted..pounds..	8,000	10,000	Water absorption:		
Briquets, average...do....	0.420	0.5	In 19 days.....per cent..	22.0	.....
Heat value per pound—			In 16 days.....do....	.....	13.3
Fuel as received..B. t. u..	13,712	[c]13,712 [d]10,996	Average for first—		
Fuel as fired.....do....	13,702	12,793	4 days.....do....	4.05	.....
Binder.....do....	16,969	16,966	5 days.....do....	.....	1.90
Drop test (1-inch screen):			Specific gravity (apparent).....	1.043	1.275
Held.....per cent..	50.5	68.5			
Passed.....do....	49.5	31.5			

[a] Size as used: Over $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 2.2 per cent; $\frac{1}{10}$ inch to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 6 per cent; $\frac{1}{20}$ inch to $\frac{1}{10}$ inch, 12 per cent; $\frac{1}{40}$ inch to $\frac{1}{20}$ inch, 19 per cent; through $\frac{1}{10}$ inch, 60.8 per cent.

[b] Size as used: Over $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 0.8 per cent; $\frac{1}{10}$ inch to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 7 per cent; $\frac{1}{20}$ inch to $\frac{1}{10}$ inch, 15 per cent; $\frac{1}{40}$ inch to $\frac{1}{20}$ inch, 22.2 per cent; through $\frac{1}{40}$ inch, 55 per cent.

[c] Coal from Wehrum, Pa.

[d] Coal from Cranston, R. I.

[e] A=briquets in practically same condition as when put out. Surface shows no signs of erosion or pitting. Briquets hard with sharp edges and fracture same as that of new briquets. See Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, p. 43.

Extraction analyses.

	Pitch.	Fuel.		Briquets.	
		Pennsylvania coal.	Rhode Island coal.	Test 176.	Test 184.
Laboratory No.	4543	4104	3141	.....	4913
Air-drying loss.....per cent.	.....	2.10	3.40	2.80	0.03
Extracted by CS_2:					
Air-dried.....do.	.....	.79	.02	5.89	6.27
As received.....do.	99.66	.77	.02	5.72	6.25
Pitch in briquets, as received.....do.	.....	.....	.....	5.02	5.91

Occurrence and physical character.—In its mode of occurrence the Lower Kittanning bed on Blacklick Creek strongly resembles in its main features the same coal in the districts along Conemaugh River. (See fig. 15.) The coal is made up of a bench from 3½ to 4 feet thick and of either one or two lower benches. In a few places both lower benches are missing (see sections 2, 5, and 6); the absence of both lower benches is, however, only local, for in the same mine the upper of the two has been observed at one place but has disappeared a short distance away. The lowest bench was not observed about South Fork or Johnstown but is persistent along Blacklick Creek. Here and there the main bench is underlain by bone. The middle bench is thin, averaging not more than 4 or 5 inches. The lower bench is 2 feet thick in places. The two shale partings inclosing the middle bench are thin, rarely exceeding a few inches in thickness. The analyses (see pp. 41–42) represent coal from the main bench; that from the middle thin bench is reported good but too thin to mine; and that from the lowest bench is high in ash and sulphur and usually too impure to ship. Below the lowest bench occurs a good deposit of clay, which has never been exploited along Blacklick Creek. The roof of the coal is either very firm shale or sandstone. The character of the roof, the irregularity of the floor, the general absence of clay veins, and the nongaseous nature of the coal are points in which it is similar to the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed in the Conemaugh Valley. The coal is bright and lustrous, with a marked tendency to columnar cleavage.

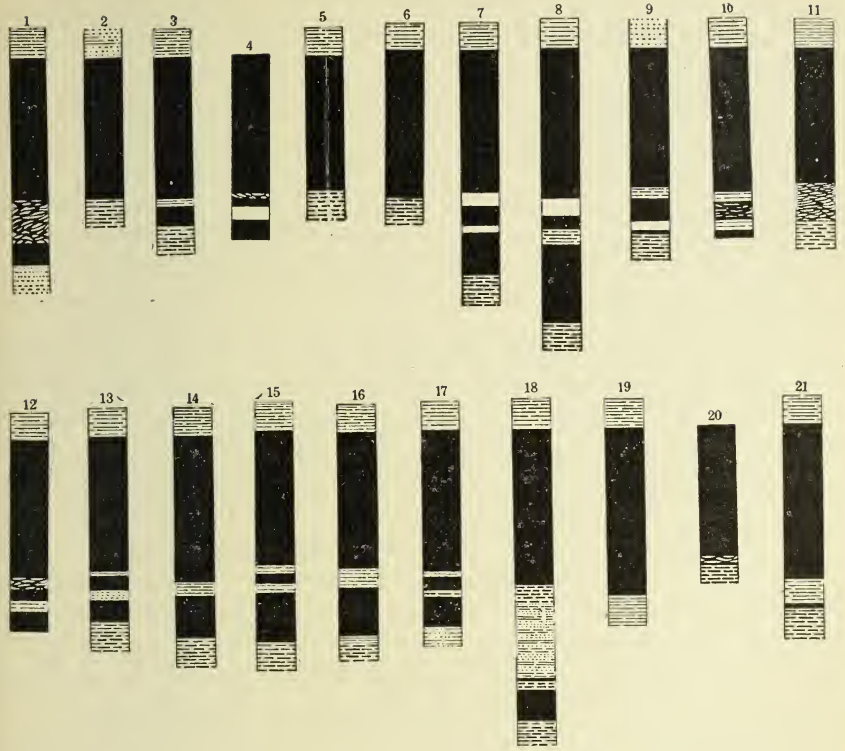


FIGURE 15.—Sections of the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the Blacklick Creek district. Scale, 1 inch=5 feet.

1. Pennsylvania, Beech Creek and Eastern Coal Company No. 14, Nanty Glo.
2. Nanty Glo Coal Mining Company No. 1, Nanty Glo.
3. Lincoln Coal Company, Nanty Glo.
4. Ivory Hill Coal Mining Company, Nanty Glo.
5. Cardiff Coal Company, 5 miles north of Nanty Glo.
6. Country bank 1½ miles north of Nanty Glo.
7, 8. Commercial Coal Mining Company No. 3, 1½ miles east of Twin Rocks.
9. Big Bend Coal Mining Company, Nonpareil No. 1, Twin Rocks.
10. Big Bend Coal Mining Company, Big Bend Colliery No. 2, Twin Rocks.
11. Vinton Colliery Company No. 1, Vintondale.
12. Vinton Colliery Company No. 2, Vintondale.
13. Vinton Colliery Company No. 6, Vintondale.
14, 15. Vinton Colliery Company No. 3, Vintondale.
16. Vinton Colliery Company No. 5, Vintondale.
17. Exposure in railroad cut east of Vintondale.
18, 19. Lackawanna Coal and Coke Company No. 4, Wehrum.
20. Amos Rager, Rummel Run.
21. H. R. Dill, 1½ miles northwest of Dilltown.

LOWER ALLEGHENY COALS.

Along Blacklick Creek other coals are known which are below the Lower Kittanning bed. In the railroad cut near Twin Rocks these lower coals show, as they do also a short distance east of Weber. Just where the spur track turns in to the collieries of the Big Bend Coal Company at Twin Rocks the following section was measured:

Section of Brookville and Clarion coals (?) near Big Bend.

		Ft.	in.
Sandstone, massive.			
Coal, 10 inches	Clarion (A′)?	4	2
Parting, 6 inches			
Coal, 1 foot 6 inches			
Parting, 4 inches			
Coal, 1 foot			
Shale, black			8
Shale, sandy		2–3	
Coal (Brookville (A)?)			2
Clay		3–4	
Sandstone, massive.			

From the massive sandstones about the place where the section was made it is impossible to be absolutely sure that this coal is in the Allegheny. The massive sandstone overlying the coal in the cut may be traced northward along the nose where the river makes the big bend for some distance—in fact, so far as to make it fairly certain that it is an Allegheny sandstone and to corroborate the view that the coal whose section is given above probably corresponds to the lowest coal or coals in the Allegheny formation. One of these lower coals has been opened about 43 feet above the railroad tracks just back of Twin Rocks railroad station, but the bank is now fallen shut. The coal was reported as present only in patches and was known in the locality as the Three-foot seam or Sulphur vein.

The view that the coal in the cut near Twin Rocks is in the Allegheny formation and at its base is strengthened by observations made on the highway and along the railroad farther west, near Weber. Near Commercial No. 4 mine the massive sandstones may be observed close below the Lower Kittanning (B) coal, and at an estimated interval of 71 to 77 feet below are found two coals thought to correspond with the coals given in the foregoing section. These are regarded, on stratigraphic grounds, as Allegheny coals, and the massive sandstone is believed to be the Kittanning sandstone member. This heavy sandstone coming at the base of the Allegheny makes it difficult to conclude as to the position of the base of this formation, especially where the evidence has to be obtained at scattered points in different sections. This massive sandstone, however, is known to occur at other places in or near the quadrangle where the relations are plain and where there is no doubt as to its being in the Allegheny—for instance, south of the quadrangle, along Stony Creek.

Near Weber, as near Twin Rocks, the two coals occurring at the base of the Allegheny are too thin to be worked, each being less than a foot thick. The sections containing these two coals, regarded as the Brookville (A) and the Clarion (A′) coals, are given below. The first section was measured by Mr. Martin and the second and third by Mr. Phalen.

Sections of Brookville and Clarion coals near Weber.

1. Section on both sides of railroad cut.

	Ft.	in.
Sandstone, coarse grained, thin and thick bedded	19	8
Sandstone, with quartz crystals and iron ore	7	6
Coal, Clarion (A′?)		9
Fire clay, blocky, fine, sandy, fossiliferous	2	6
Sandstone, fine grayish	1	9½
Sandstone, blue-black, shaly		7½
Sandstone, fine grained, grayish		6
Shale, bluish black, with limestone nodules	4	6
Coal, Brookville (A?)		2½
Clay, grayish	4	6+

2. Section on north side of cut.

Sandstone.	Ft.	in.
Coal (bony in middle), Clarion (A′)		9
Fire clay, gravelly, sandy, almost sandstone. Contains abundant organic impressions (fossil imprints), but they are very poor.	5	
Shale, drab or dark gray	4	6
Coal, Brookville (A)		1¾
Clay		6+

3. Section on south side of cut.

Sandstone.	Ft.	in.
Coal, Clarion (A′)		8–9
Sandstone, gnarly, or sandy fire clay with plant impressions	6	6
Shale, dark, with concretions	4	9
Coal, Brookville (A)		2
Shales, dark, irregularly bedded, upper part resembling fire clay.	4	

The dip from the south to the north side of the track is marked, even for so short a distance.

WINDBER DISTRICT.

EXTENT.

The Windber district of this report includes the territory about the town of Windber, situated within the Johnstown quadrangle.

GEOLOGIC POSITION OF THE COALS.

All the workable coals in this district are found in the Allegheny formation, which is above drainage level in all the hills surrounding Windber and Scalp Level. Of these coals, only the Lower Kittanning is now worked, but higher coals are known to be valuable.

The usual main coals of the Allegheny formation are represented in this district—that is, the Upper and Lower Freeport and the Upper, Middle, and Lower Kittanning coals. These coals are also visible in the road sections in the surrounding hills. The distance between the highest and lowest of the five beds varies from 180 feet to about 210 feet, and, as usual, the Upper Kittanning bed occurs about midway between. A section of the lower part of the

Allegheny was hand leveled by W. C. Phalen at Scalp Level, from the point where the trolley line crosses Paint Creek. This section is as follows:

Section of lower Allegheny rocks at Scalp Level, Somerset County, Pa.

	Ft.	in.
Sandstone débris.		
Coal		10–12
Clay	3	
Shale, sandy	5	
Shale, blue	15	
Coal		3–4
Sandstone, gnarly	1	
Concealed, but with 1 foot of Lower Kittanning coal showing at top (railroad level)	16	6
Shale, black	5	
Shale, sandy	10	
Shale	5	
Shale, débris	20	
Coal, 10 inches... Shale, 4 inches.. Bone, 6 inches... Coal, 6 inches.... (Brookville or Clarion)	2	2
Concealed	10	
Sandstone, Pottsville	6+	

According to these measurements, the interval from the top of the Pottsville to the top of the Lower Kittanning (B) coal is about 70 feet, and the single coal which shows in the section may be the equivalent of the Brookville or Clarion beds. At Scalp Level, where Paint Creek passes over bluffs of the Pottsville formation, D'Invilliers[a] noted a thin seam of coal 14 to 18 inches thick outcropping just above the water. This bed was not observed and may possibly be the representative of the other of these lower coals.

On the assumption that the average thickness of the Allegheny from the Lower Kittanning bed to the Upper Freeport, near Windber, is 180 feet and the interval from the top of the Pottsville to the Lower Kittanning is about 75 feet, the thickness of the Allegheny in this district is about 250 feet.

ALLEGHENY COALS.

UPPER FREEPORT COAL.

The Upper Freeport (E) coal is the highest of the important coals outcropping in the hills surrounding Windber. It lies, according to barometric measurements, about 170 to 180 feet above the Lower Kittanning coal, and this interval remains fairly constant as far to the northeast as Elton, where drillings show it to be about 175 feet. Still farther northeast, toward South Fork of Conemaugh River, the inter-

[a] Summary Final Rept. Pennsylvania Geol. Survey, vol. 3, pt. 2, 1895, p. 2248.

val increases to 200 feet. West of Stony Creek, in Somerset County, according to the only available information, which has been procured from diamond-drill records, the interval is about 200 feet.

Little definite information was obtained as to the thickness of the Upper Freeport coal in this district, as no openings were located on it. The diamond-drill records northeast of Windber all indicate that it is workable, containing on an average about 3 feet of coal. It is known to be persistent—a fact which, in connection with a thickness of 3 feet, seems to place it among the future sources of supply in this region.

LOWER FREEPORT (D) COAL.

The Lower Freeport (D) coal is also persistent in this district; but little is known about it except from data furnished from drillings. Some of the records from points northeast of Windber show it to be in places 3 feet thick; others show less promising sections. It is possible that this bed may be valuable in the future; but the data obtained are insufficient to afford a basis for a positive opinion.

UPPER KITTANNING (C′) COAL.

The Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′) coal about Windber lies practically midway between the Upper Freeport and Lower Kittanning beds. This is one of the most valuable coals about Wind-

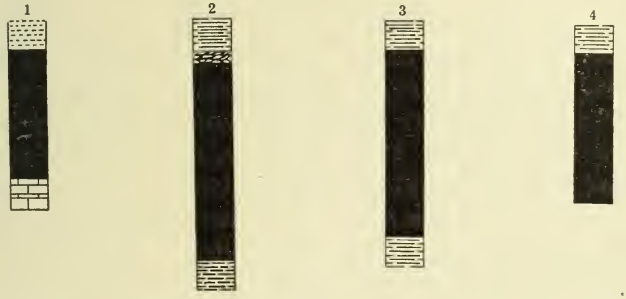


FIGURE 16.—Sections of the Upper Kittanning (Cement or C′) coal in the Windber district. 1, Baltimore and Ohio Railroad south of quadrangle; 2, Stony Creek west of Ingleside; 3, east of Walsall; 4, head of Walsall Creek. Scale, 1 inch = 5 feet.

ber. Though it is not worked on a commercial scale, something is known at least of its physical character from prospects on it in the region north of Windber, within the limits of the Johnstown quadrangle. In the description of this coal in the Johnstown district it was stated that it increased in thickness along Stony Creek, southward from Moxhom. As a matter of fact, the unusual thickness of 5 feet 6 inches prevails generally north of Windber; 6 feet has been measured one-half mile north of Eureka No. 37 and 5 feet 5 inches 1 mile north of the same mine. In both places the roof was black shale. (See also fig. 16.)

Section 1 in figure 16 can not be regarded as strictly in the Windber district, as it is on the west flank of the Ebensburg (Viaduct) axis, some miles above the mouth of Paint Creek. Sections 2 and 3 are taken from country banks near Windber. Section 4 may possibly be incomplete, as two sections measured about half a mile south and less than a mile west show very nearly 5 feet of coal in one and more than 5 feet in the other.

Enough is known of the coal in this district to be certain that it is of workable thickness. It may not average as thick as the above sections indicate, but an average of 4 to 5 feet in the hills north of Windber is probably a conservative estimate. Its quality is probably equal to that of the coal mined from this bed near Johnstown. (See p. 40.) In places the upper part of the coal bed is bony and will have to be discarded in mining. The roof is generally very firm shale.

MIDDLE KITTANNING COAL.

The next lower coal, the Middle Kittanning (C), is 25 to 30 feet above the Lower Kittanning bed. A few of the diamond-drill records to the northeast of Windber show nearly 3 feet of coal in this bed. This thickness is exceptional. The coal may prove valuable in this district, but not enough is known about it to form a positive opinion.

LOWER KITTANNING COAL.

Name and position.—The Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the Windber district occurs, as stated above, at an interval of about 170 to 200 feet below the Upper Freeport coal along the southern edge of the quadrangle. Immediately about Windber the interval is somewhat nearer the former than the latter figure. The coal outcrops well down in the hills about the town, permitting the operations to be conducted from the outcrop by drifts.

Extent and development.—The coal appears above drainage level on the eastern flank of the Ebensburg (Viaduct) anticline where this fold approaches the Wilmore Basin, near the southern edge of the quadrangle, and is present in the hills along Paint Creek westward to Stony Creek. The coal is above drainage level northward for some distance on Stony Creek, where the dip to the Johnstown Basin carries it below water level.

The operations on this bed of coal in the portion of the Windber district in this quadrangle are but a small part of the coal industry around Windber. As noted above, only two operations are conducted wholly within the Johnstown area—namely, Eureka Nos. 37 and 40.

Chemical character.—Analyses Nos. 30 to 32, pages 41–42, indicate the composition of the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal about Windber. The analyses show its carbon content to be among the highest in the area, with a comparatively small amount of sulphur and ash.

Occurrence and physical character.—The sections in figure 17 illustrate the general section of the coal in the Windber district. The first two are the more representative, as they are more complete, showing the under coal characteristic of the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed.

The main bench averages between 3½ and 4 feet of coal. A small rider, averaging 3 to 4 inches in thickness but varying from 1 to 14 inches, occurs from 3½ to 4 feet above the top of the main bench; it is noted in the Scalp Level section given on page 92. There is also usually present an under coal lying from 3 inches to 2 feet below the

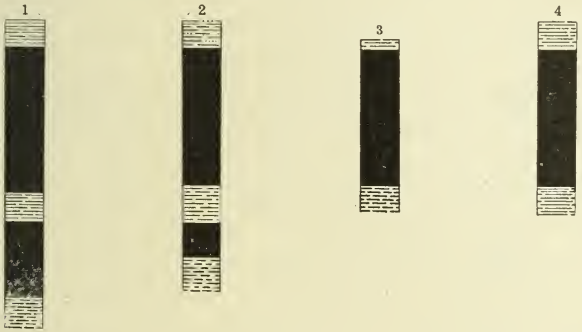


FIGURE 17.—Sections of the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the Windber district. 1, Baltimore and Ohio Railroad south of quadrangle; 2, Berwind-White Coal Mining Company, Eureka No. 37, Windber; 3, near south edge of quadrangle; 4, near Walsall. Scale, 1 inch = 5 feet.

main bench. This under coal ranges from 3 to 18 inches in thickness and may be very regular.

The roof is excellent and is either sandstone or sandy shale. It requires little or no timbering except where broken through. The partings in the coal are the usual "sulphur" lentils or balls, which are easily separated from the coal. Rolls are numerous and here and there the coal is completely pinched out. In places the slickensided surfaces associated with thin coal indicate movement akin to true faulting. The under clay is not worked in any of the mines, so far as known. The coal in the main bench is of the lustrous columnar variety.

LOWER ALLEGHENY COALS.

Though lower coals occur about Windber, they are too thin to be worked so far as known. Section showing the relations of these lower Allegheny coals are given on page 24.

CONEMAUGH FURNACE DISTRICT.

EXTENT.

Along the west edge of the quadrangle, in the valley of Conemaugh River, the lower part of the Allegheny is brought down to drainage level by the steep dips along the western flank of the Laurel Ridge anticline. As the Allegheny or coal-bearing formation outcrops only along the river, the active mines are confined to the immediate river valley, and the district is small. Within the Johnstown area there are but two active mines—that of the Johnstown Coal Company and that of the Nineveh Coal Company. Both these concerns are working on the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed. The dips carry this coal below drainage level just beyond the confines of the quadrangle, and farther west, in the town of Seward, it lies at a depth of 130 feet, as shown by the shaft of the Seward Coal Company.

ALLEGHENY COALS.

UPPER COALS.

But little definite information can be given regarding the three highest coals in the Allegheny formation in this part of the quadrangle, for the reason that they have not been worked even on a small scale and few openings on them were found. It is known, however, that they are present in the hills north of Conemaugh River, outcropping along Trout Run, on which the Upper Freeport bloom was discovered. At this place a small opening, believed to be on the Upper Kittanning coal, showed the following section:

Section of Upper Kittanning coal on Trout Run.

	Ft.	in.
Massive shale roof.		
Coal	1	
Bony		4
Coal	2	3½+

The Middle Kittanning is fairly persistent in this district and occurs about 40 feet above the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed. Near Cramer this bed measured as follows:

Section of Middle Kittanning (C) coal near Cramer.

	Ft.	in.
Shale		6
Coal	1	8
Bony		2
Coal		11
Clay.		

About Seward this coal measures 2 feet 6 inches. At Seward also the Lower Freeport (D) coal is reported as being about 2 feet thick, capped by 8 to 12 feet of shales mixed with sandstone slabs and underlain by 7 feet of bluish massive shales. The overlying shales are used in the manufacture of red building brick.

LOWER KITTANNING (B) COAL.

Extent and development.—The only coal of commercial importance around Conemaugh Furnace at present is the Lower Kittanning (Miller) bed, and, as stated above, there are but two mines at which this coal is worked—that of the Johnstown Coal Company, on the north side of Conemaugh River, and that of the Nineveh Coal Company, on the south side of the river and on the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad. The coal here lies about 65 to 70 feet above the top of the Pottsville formation. Farther west the coal goes below drainage level and is mined by shaft near Seward by the Seward Coal Company.

Chemical character.—A sample carload of coal from this bed, collected and shipped by J. W. Groves, of the United States Geological Survey, from a point on the Pennsylvania Railroad 1½ miles east of Seward, Westmoreland County, has been subjected to steaming, washing, coking, and briquetting tests,[a] so that the character and behavior of the coal in this part of the quadrangle are known. Two mine samples were also collected for chemical analysis. The results of the chemical analyses are given on pages 41–42 (Nos. 33–35) and below:

Chemical analyses of Lower Kittanning coal from Conemaugh Furnace district.

	Steaming tests.[a]		Briquetting tests.[b]	
	512.	514.	198.	213.
Laboratory number	4726	4713	4769	4885
Proximate:				
Moisture	3.50	2.79	6.16	1.23
Volatile matter	19.98	21.11	19.23	20.58
Fixed carbon	67.71	67.79	64.38	67.74
Ash	8.81	8.31	10.23	10.45
Sulphur	1.59	1.91	2.68	2.98
Ultimate:				
Hydrogen	4.39	4.42	4.20	4.56
Carbon	81.06	80.25	78.12	79.21
Nitrogen	1.06	1.09	1.09	1.12
Oxygen	2.72	3.73	2.83	1.51
Ash	9.13	8.55	10.90	10.58
Sulphur	1.64	1.96	2.86	3.02

[a] Proximate analysis of fuel as fired; ultimate analysis of dry fuel figured from car sample.
[b] Proximate analysis of fuel as received; ultimate analysis on dry basis.

Only the proximate analyses are of interest in this connection, and these need but little comment. They show the usual high carbon characteristic of this coal in the Johnstown quadrangle, together with low volatile matter. The moisture is about the same as usual for this coal, though perhaps a trifle higher. Ash and sulphur are both higher than the average for this coal in the rest of the area.

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 332, 1908, pp. 216 et seq.

Steaming tests.—The steaming tests were not made on the coal itself but on briquets made from it, and the results are given in the table below. The weights of water evaporated from and at a temperature of 212° F. per pound of dry fuel used—9.65 pounds in test 512 and 8.14 pounds in test 514—indicate the standing of briquets made from this coal. The results should be compared with the results with first-class steaming coals given on page 37.

Steaming tests on Lower Kittanning coal from the Conemaugh Furnace district.

	Test 512.[a]	Test 514.[b]
Duration of test ..... hours..	7.77	7.93
Heating value of fuel ..... B. t. u. per pound of dry fuel..	14,495	14,382
Force of draft:		
Under stack damper ..... inch of water..	0.93	0.93
Above fire ..... do....	.19	.23
Dry fuel used per square foot of grate surface per hour ..... pounds..	19.93	27.52
Equivalent water evaporated per square foot of water-heating surface per hour .. do....	3.84	4.47
Percentage of rated horsepower of boiler developed	107.7	125.3
Water apparently evaporated per pound of fuel as fired ..... pounds..	7.70	6.54
Water evaporated from and at 212° F.:		
Per pound of fuel as fired ..... do....	9.32	7.91
Per pound of dry fuel ..... do....	9.65	8.14
Per pound of combustible ..... do....	10.76	9.06
Efficiency of boiler, including grate ..... per cent..	64.29	54.66
Fuel as fired:		
Per indicated horsepower hour ..... pounds..	3.03	3.58
Per electrical horsepower hour ..... do....	3.75	4.41
Dry fuel:		
Per indicated horsepower hour ..... do....	2.93	3.47
Per electrical horsepower hour ..... do....	3.62	4.29

[a] Equal weights of briquets made from washed coal (briquetting tests 215 and 216, p. 100).
[b] Equal weights of briquets (briquetting tests 208 and 209, p. 100).

Test 512 on briquets from tests 215 and 216 (equal weights); briquets burned freely, with intense heat and no smoke; 31 per cent clinker. Test 514 on briquets from tests 208 and 209 (equal weights); briquets burned freely, with intense heat and no smoke; 50 per cent clinker.

Coking tests.—The results of the coking tests on this coal are given below, together with analyses of the coal and resulting coke.

Coking tests on Lower Kittanning coal from Conemaugh Furnace district.

[Run-of-mine coal, finely crushed.]

	Test 179 (raw).	Test 182 (washed).
Duration of test ..... hours..	68	78
Coal charged ..... pounds..	13,070	11,760
Coke produced ..... do....	8,129	7,350
Coke produced ..... per cent..	62.20	62.50
Breeze produced ..... pounds...	420	529
Breeze produced ..... per cent..	3.21	4.50
Total yield ..... do....	65.41	67.00

Test 179 yielded soft, dense coke light gray and silvery in color, with high ash and sulphur. Test 182 yielded soft, dense coke gray in color. Ash and sulphur were reduced by washing. There was no improvement in physical appearance.

Analyses.

	Test 179.		Test 182.	
	Coal.	Coke.	Coal.	Coke.
Moisture	3.91	0.30	6.30	0.51
Volatile matter	16.35	.28	17.04	.58
Fixed carbon	68.30	84.95	69.58	89.85
Ash	11.44	14.47	7.08	9.06
Sulphur	2.78	2.31	1.34	1.11

Washing tests.—Results of washing tests are given below. The figures indicate that finer crushing is advantageous. The loss of "good coal" (by which is meant all coal of a quality equal to or better than that of the washed coal) in the refuse will not exceed 2 per cent.

Float and sink tests on Lower Kittanning coal from Conemaugh Furnace district.[a]

Number of test.	Size used (inch).	Specific gravity of solution used.	Percentage of float.		Sink (per cent).	Analyses.			
			To refuse.	To total sample.		Ash.		Sulphur.	
						Per cent.	Per cent reduction.	Per cent.	Per cent reduction.
On raw coal (preliminary):									
1	3	1.35	.....	83	17	4.95	53	0.93	67
2	2½	1.42	.....	88	12	5.66	46	1.24	57
3	1½	1.45	.....	88	12	4.72	55	1.02	64
4	¾	1.52	.....	89	11	6.07	42	1.09	62
On refuse (float):									
1	.....	1.35	17.20	3.91	.....	5.42	.....	1.69	.....
2	.....	1.41	18.50	4.20	.....	5.69	.....	1.69	.....
3	.....	1.45	19.88	4.51	.....	6.45	.....	2.15	.....
4	.....	1.53	20.20	4.59	.....	7.89	.....	2.08	.....

[a] Duration of test, 2¾ hours. Size as used, through 1-inch screen. Jig used, special; speed, 70 revolutions per minute; stroke, 2½ inches. Raw coal, 22.21 tons; washed coal, 17.25 tons, 78 per cent; refuse, 4.96 tons, 22 per cent.

Analyses.

Sample tested.	Moisture.	Ash.		Sulphur.	
		Per cent.	Per cent reduction.	Per cent.	Per cent reduction.
Raw coal, car sample	4.00	10.54	.....	2.85	.....
Washed coal	6.48	6.76	36	1.30	54
Refuse	10.21	46.25	.....	17.40	.....

Briquetting tests.—Seven briquetting tests were made, three on raw and four on washed coal. Briquets from both the English and the Renfrow (American) machines had similar appearance, with smooth, hard surface, were very brittle, and broke with a glossy fracture and

sharp edges. The percentage of binder (water-gas pitch) seemed to have little effect on brittleness, although Renfrow briquets with 8 per cent binder were handled with less breakage. There was no noticeable difference between the briquets made from raw and those from washed coal.

For analyses of coal used in briquets see page 97 (those from briquetting tests 208 and 209 under steaming test 514; from briquetting tests 212, 215, and 216 under steaming test 512).

Briquetting tests on run-of-mine coal from Conemaugh Furnace district.

[Water-gas pitch binder.]

	Test 198.	Test 208.	Test 209.	Test 212.	Test 213.	Test 215.	Test 216.
Details of manufacture:							
Machine used	Eng.	Renf.	Renf.	Renf.	Renf.	Eng.	Eng.
Temperature of briquets	158	158	158	158	158	176	176
Binder—							
Laboratory number	4683	4683	4683	4683	4683	4683	4683
Amount.....per cent..	6	7	8	7	8	6	7
Weight of—							
Fuel briquetted.....pounds..	3,200	4,500	8,000	6,500	6,500	6,400	3,300
Briquets, average.....do....	3.52	0.451	0.457	0.427	0.458	3.63	3.44
Heat value per pound—							
Fuel as received.....B. t. u..	13,347	13,347	13,347	14,639	14,639	14,639	14,639
Fuel as fired.....do....	13,198	13,981	13,981	.....	13,896	13,988	13,988
Binder.....do....	16,637	16,637	16,637	16,637	16,637	16,637	16,637
Drop test (1-inch screen):							
Held.....per cent..	74.8	19.5	26.0	23.0	19.5	74.6	71.9
Passed.....do....	25.2	80.5	74.0	77.0	80.5	25.4	28.1
Tumbler test (1-inch screen):							
Held.....do....	71.0	54.0	61.5	67.0	64.0	74.0	70.5
Passed (fines).....do....	29.0	46.0	38.5	33.0	36.0	26.0	29.5
Fines through 10-mesh sieve.....do....	65.4	86.8	86.4	91.6	87.3	63.2	70.4
Water absorption:							
In 13 days.....do....	14.5	15.5	15.0	19.0	14.5	9.5	11.0
Average for first 5 days.....do....	2.34	2.78	2.66	3.1	2.50	1.56	1.56
Specific gravity (apparent)	1.141	1.11	1.127	1.043	1.144	1.148	1.121

Tests 198, 208, and 209. Size used: Over $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 0.8 per cent; $\frac{1}{10}$ inch to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 3.6 per cent; $\frac{1}{20}$ inch to $\frac{1}{10}$ inch, 11.2 per cent; $\frac{1}{40}$ inch to $\frac{1}{20}$ inch, 27 per cent; through $\frac{1}{40}$ inch, 57.4 per cent.

Tests 212, 213, 215, and 216 (on washed coal). Size as used: Over $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 0.8 per cent; $\frac{1}{10}$ inch to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, 4.8 per cent; $\frac{1}{20}$ inch to $\frac{1}{10}$ inch, 16 per cent; $\frac{1}{40}$ inch to $\frac{1}{20}$ inch, 26 per cent; through $\frac{1}{40}$ inch, 52.4 per cent.

Extraction analyses.

	Pitch.	Fuel.	Briquets.			
			Test 198.	Tests 208, 209.	Test 213.	Tests 215, 216.
Laboratory No.	4683	4498	4769	4713	4885	4726
Air-drying loss.....per cent..	.....	3.10	5.50	2.00	0.60	3.10
Extracted by CS_2:						
Air-dried.....do....	.....	1.02	5.60	6.86	8.03	6.90
As received.....do....	89.31	.99	5.29	6.72	7.98	6.61
Pitch in briquets as received.....do....	.....	.....	5.00	6.49	7.92	6.37

Occurrence and physical character.—The sections in figure 18 indicate the thickness of the Lower Kittanning coal, its under benches, and the character of its roof and floor in the Conemaugh Furnace

FIGURE 18.—Sections of the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal in the Conemaugh Furnace district. 1, 2, Johnstown Coal Company, north of Conemaugh River; 3, Nineveh Coal Company, Seward mine, south bank of Conemaugh River. Scale, 1 inch = 5 feet.

district. In addition to the sections shown in the figure, the following were measured:

Section of Lower Kittanning coal on Laurel Ridge, near Cramer.

	Ft.	in.
Shale roof.		
Coal	3	7
Shale		6
Coal	1 to 1	8
Fire clay.		

Section of Lower Kittanning coal at mine of Seward Coal Company, Seward.

	Ft.	in.
Shale roof.		
Coal	3	3
Shale or clay		6
Coal	1	
Clay		6
Coal		6
Fire clay, hard	1	
Clay, soft (reported)	1	4

The coal near Conemaugh Furnace and Seward is comparable in every way with the corresponding coal as mined farther east near Johnstown, South Fork, Blacklick Creek, and Windber. In this particular district the bed was measured and studied in three mines and seen at one country bank. The main bench ranges from 3 feet 3 inches to 3 feet 9 inches. Below this, one and in places two lower benches are found. The first ranges in thickness from 6 to 20 inches and is separated from the main bench by a shale parting usually not more than 6 inches thick; this bench is used at Seward by the brick company to burn bricks. The second lower bench is about 6 inches thick, and the underlying clay is reported as thick as 17 feet, only 6 feet of which is considered of brickmaking grade. The roof of the coal is firm shale and the usual rolls in the floor are present.

COAL MINING.

Two general systems of working coal were employed in the Johnstown quadrangle when this work was done—the room and pillar system and the long-wall system. The former is in most common use, but two of the mines along Blacklick Creek (Nos. 1 and 3 of the Vinton Colliery Company) have used the long-wall system.

ROOM AND PILLAR SYSTEM.

General description.—The diagram or plan of the workings of one of the mines in the quadrangle given in figure 19 conveys some idea of the methods generally employed in the room and pillar method of mining coal.

Most of the mines in the quadrangle are drift mines and work coal which averages between 3 and 4 feet in thickness. For this reason, in the headings where hauling is done the roof is generally removed so as to allow between 5 and 5½ feet above the rail or nearly 6 feet in the clear. The main heading is usually driven straight and is cut through rolls, which are very common in the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal, the most important bed of the area. If the rolls are too pronounced, however, the main heading may be curved around them.

The main entry or heading is usually run about 10 feet wide; in some mines it is as narrow as 9 feet and in a few as wide as 12 feet; in still others the width of the main headings ranges from 18 to 25 feet, but in such mines the rock is gobbed underground. Wide headings are not usual. The main airways appear to be about as wide as the main headings, and the pillar left between the two averages about 50 feet.

Cross or side headings are run from the main headings either at a considerable inclination or at right angles. The width of the cross headings varies but is commonly about 15 to 18 feet. One mine at South Fork reported cross headings only 7 to 8 feet wide. A few mines near Johnstown reported cross headings as broad as 21 and 24 feet, but here it is possible that much of the rock may be gobbed underground. About South Fork some of the larger mines reported cross headings 550 feet apart. In turning rooms from the cross headings the turn may be about 9 feet long and 15 feet wide, but the practice may vary considerably from these figures.

The dimensions of rooms vary within narrow limits. The width ranges from 21 to 40 feet; 24-foot rooms are very common, but those in excess of 30 feet are rare. About South Fork the roof of the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal has caused trouble in places, and some rooms have been lost on account of running them too wide; in the mines where this difficulty was encountered a 21-foot room with 15 to 20 foot pillars has given the best satisfaction. The length of the

FIGURE 19.—Diagram illustrating room and pillar method of mining in Johnstown quadrangle.

rooms in the larger mines is usually 300 feet, but ranges from 225 to 360 feet, the latter length being fairly common near South Fork and along Blacklick Creek. In many of the smaller mines the length of rooms is less than 100 feet.

The width of pillars between rooms is generally 30 feet, but in some of the mines where the covering is unusually heavy more pillar has to be left, and at South Fork some of the larger mines report 34 to 36 foot pillars. As stated above, a 15 to 20 foot pillar gives the best satisfaction in certain mines. Pillars 27, 24, and 21 feet wide are also used at a few mines. A 60-foot pillar was reported from a couple of mines. A "skip" is a crosscut between two adjacent rooms. Its length, of course, is the width of a pillar; its width varies from 10 to 20 feet. Pillars are worked back from the room face within 60 feet of the cross headings until all the rooms in the cross headings are worked out. The roof is allowed to cave after the coal is worked out.

The methods of ventilation, drainage, and haulage of coal to the surface, together with the mining methods employed, vary widely. Some of the mines in the quadrangle are among the largest in the State and employ hundreds of men. Such mines have extensive underground workings and employ the most elaborate and expensive systems to insure the safety of the lives of the men and the cheapest and most expeditious means of transferring coal from mining breasts to coal cars. At Windber, for instance, machine mining is practiced almost altogether at Eureka No. 37, compressed-air machines being used. Hauling is done by electricity and ventilation by fans. The drainage is natural and by pump. Of Eureka No. 40 mine, which is the latest in the Windber territory, J. T. Evans, mining inspector of the sixth bituminous district of Pennsylvania, says:[a] "It will be the model mine of the district."

Ventilation.—Ventilation is effected by natural methods, furnace and stack, or fan. In the smaller mines the first two methods are in common use, but in the larger mines fan ventilation has to be employed. The variety of the fans used is great; the size of fan and the number of revolutions made per minute depend entirely on local coditions. The motive power used in driving the fans is compressed air, electricity, steam, etc.

Drainage.—Drainage is either natural or artificial. In most of the smaller mines and in some of the larger workings natural drainage is used. Artificial drainage is accomplished by pumps driven by compressed air, steam, or electricity; hand pumps are also used.

Haulage.—In the smaller mines both hand haulage and mule haulage are employed. In the larger mines mule haulage is used almost exclusively as an auxiliary; the mules haul the loaded mine

[a] Rept. Pennsylvania Dept. Mines, pt. 2, 1906, p. 377.

cars to the foot of slopes or planes or to the electric tramways, and the loaded cars are hauled out by wire ropes or electric locomotives. The overhead-trolley system is in common use and at South Fork the third-rail system is used in one of the mines.

Tipples are of various makes. The old-fashioned cradle tipple is still the most popular, but an automatic dump is used at some of the larger mines at South Fork and on Blacklick Creek, a crossover patent in at least two mines on Blacklick Creek, and a kind of rotary tipple at one mine in the Blacklick Creek district. At the Conemaugh slope the coal is dumped at the mine mouth into buckets of 1,000 pounds capacity, which are then conveyed by electric power from the north side of Conemaugh River over the Pennsylvania Railroad to the Franklin plant of the Cambria Steel Company.

Mining methods.—The mining methods employed in the Johnstown quadrangle are hand or pick mining and machine mining. In some of the larger mines machines are used almost exclusively, but as a general thing a combination of pick and machine mining is found more satisfactory.

LONG-WALL SYSTEM.

The conveyor method of the long-wall system of mining coal has been used at collieries Nos. 1 and 3 of the Vinton Colliery Company at Vintondale, in the Blacklick Creek district (fig. 20). It has been abandoned for some years in this district. The long-wall system is the one most commonly used in the coal mines of Europe, where it is regarded as being much more economical of the coal than the room and pillar method. For this reason it was recommended in the report to the Secretary of the Interior by Messrs. Watteyne, Meissner and Desborough,[a] the three foreign experts recently selected for the investigation of mine explosions in the United States. The long-wall system has a number of modifications, that used in the Blacklick Creek district and commonly referred to as the conveyor method being one of them. Figures 21 and 22 illustrate the method as formerly practiced at Vintondale. The coal bed worked is the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) bed. It usually runs 3 feet 6 inches thick near Vintondale, and its maximum and minimum thickness may be taken as 3 feet 10 inches and 3 feet 3 inches, respectively. Below the main bench, from which it is separated by 8 to 10 inches of shale, is a coal ranging from 2 to 10 inches in thickness. The roof of the coal is hard shale and is a most excellent cover, though it has marked slips or crevices. The coal is bound very tightly to both roof and floor. The average thickness of the cover is about 180 to 200 feet. The territory of the mines is long and narrow, and this, together with the

[a] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 369, 1908, p. 6.

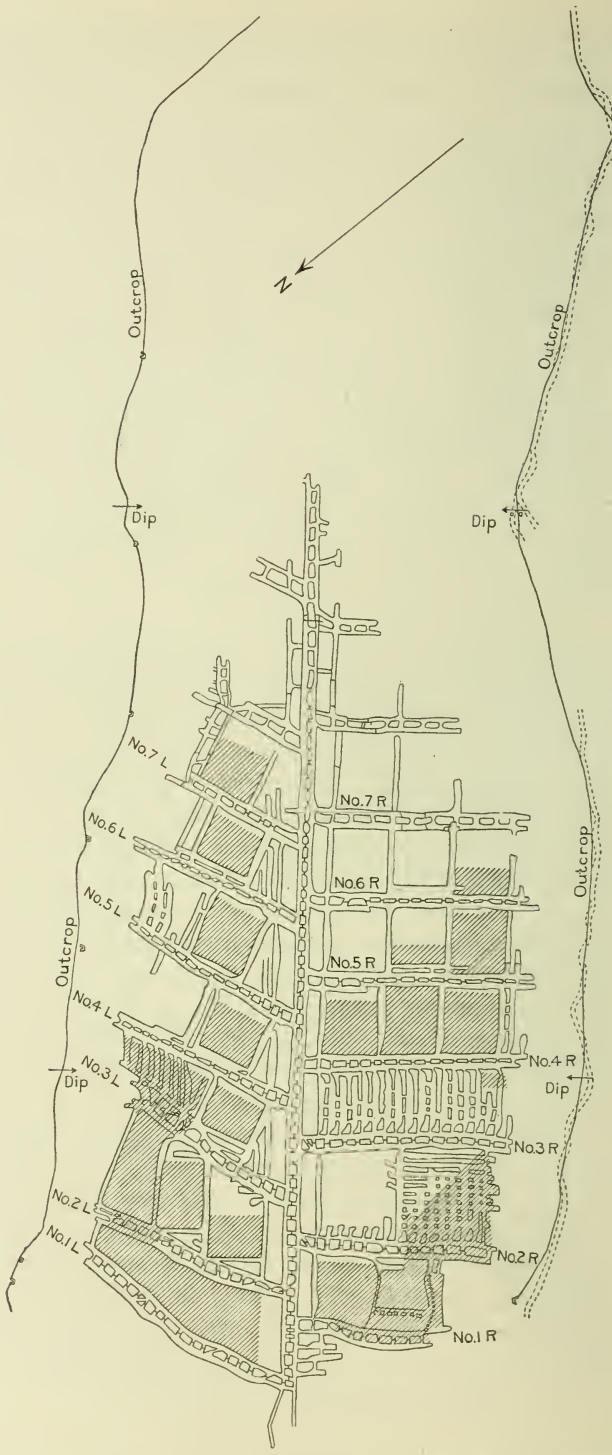


FIGURE 20.—Plan showing long-wall method of mining as employed at Vinton collieries Nos. 1 and 3, Vintondale

heavy pitch of the coal (see Pl. I), makes the successful working of the bed by the room and pillar method difficult.[a]

The long-wall method as first practiced at Vintondale differs somewhat from the method used there later. At the beginning of the operations in this region the faces of the coal were worked by passing the mine cars at one end of the face, along the face, and out at the opposite end when loaded. The results were only fair, as the roof and the steep grades both gave trouble. In the other mines working at Vintondale at this time no marked slips or cracks in the roof had been noticed and it was naturally inferred that these conditions would prevail generally; but after the long-wall faces had been in

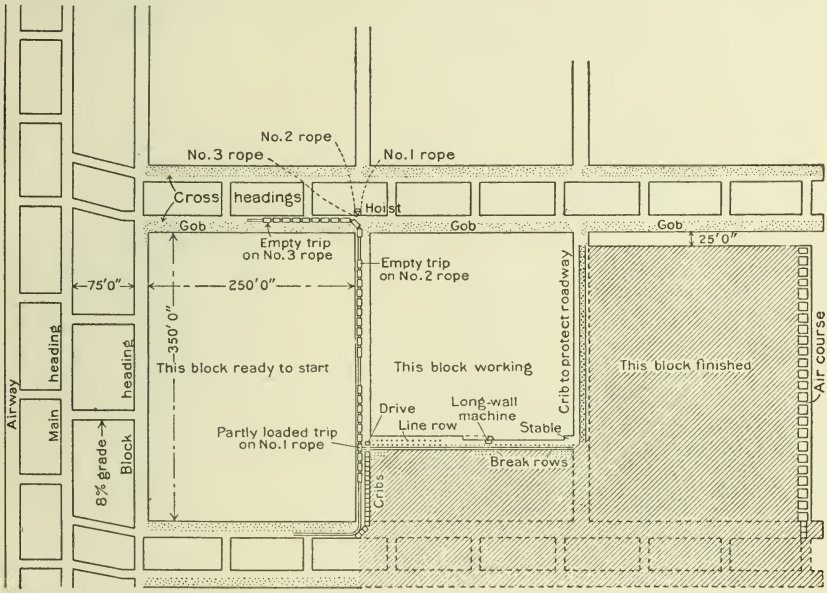


FIGURE 21.—Plan of workings, single long-wall conveyor system. (From an article by J. I. Thomas in Mines and Minerals, November, 1907, pp. 200–203. Reproduced by permission.)

operation for some time marked slips were encountered almost exactly in line with the face of the coal, and it was found very difficult to keep the roadway open when these slips occurred at the working face.

Another reason for abandoning this method of working was the difficulty of controlling mine cars on the heavy grades. Not only wrecks but delays were caused by mine cars getting beyond the working faces. If the roof conditions had been more favorable, the proposed method of working would have made, with slight modifications, an excellent arrangement for the use of the conveyor system.[b]

[a] A description of the method of mining the coal in this region was read by Mr. Clarence R. Claghorn at the February, 1900, meeting of the North of England Institute of Mining and Mechanical Engineers (Trans. Inst. Min. Eng., vol. 18, 1900, pp. 351 et seq.).

[b] Ware, R. G., Trans. Inst. Min. Eng., vol. 29, 1906, pp. 462–474.

To overcome the delays and difficulties, C. R. Claghorn proposed that a conveyor should be installed along the long-wall faces and that the mine cars should be run on a semipermanent road under the head end of the conveyor and there loaded instead of being passed along the face. From the first the conveyor was a success.

The following descriptions of the working methods at Vintondale are by Mr. J. I. Thomas, assistant superintendent of the Vinton collieries[a] when the field work on the report was done:

The block work, which is a modification of long-wall mining, was first started in the No. 3 mine of this company seven years ago. At the outset cars were run around the working face and loaded. This method brought only fair results owing to the necessity of using small cars, steep grades, and difficulty in keeping roadways open. Arrangements were then made for the placing of a conveyor along the face, allowing the cars to be run under the head end to be loaded.

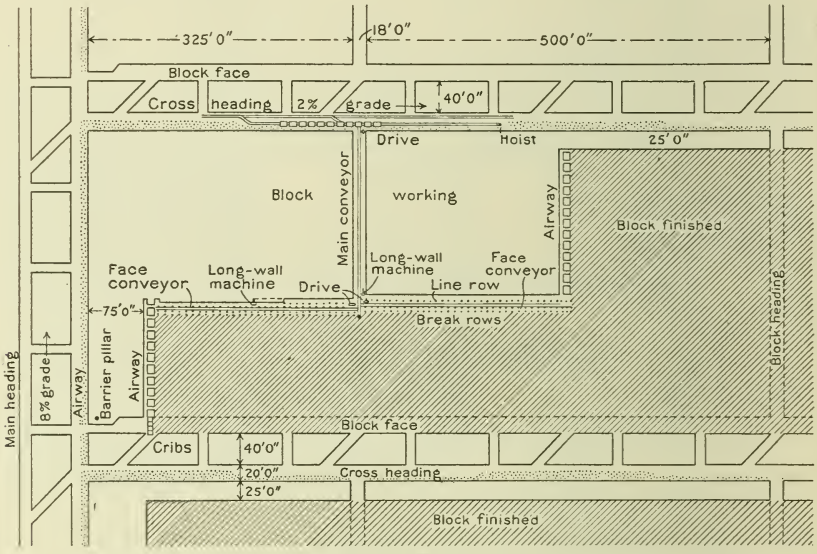


FIGURE 22.—Plan of workings, triple long-wall conveyor system. (From an article by J. I. Thomas in Mines and Minerals, November, 1907, pp. 200–203. Reproduced by permission.)

The first conveyor, which was made entirely of wood, was a cumbersome affair and much time was consumed in moving it laterally along the face after the cut had been loaded out, but after a year's trial the results obtained were so gratifying that metal conveyors were designed and ordered and preparations were made to employ this system on a much larger scale.

The conveyor system is very flexible and numerous methods of working are applicable, as the condition of the territory demands.

In Vintondale, at present, there are two different arrangements—that is, the single conveyor method, which has been mentioned, and the triple-conveyor system, by which two face conveyors dump alternately into a third conveyor, which in turn dumps into the mine cars. Both air and electricity are used as the driving power.

[a] Coal Min. Inst. America, June meeting, 1907. Mine and Quarry, vol. 2, No. 3, February, 1908, pp. 193 et seq. Mines and Minerals, November, 1907, pp. 200–203.

In the No. 3 mine, where the single-conveyor system is being used with compressed air as power, the main heading and air course are driven up the pitch through the center of the property. Cross headings are driven off the main at intervals of 400 feet and run to the outcrop. These headings are 20 feet wide, with an 8-foot roadway carried next to the pillar, which is 40 feet thick. Barrier pillars of 75-foot thickness are maintained on each side of the main entries. Block headings are driven perpendicularly off the cross entries at 265 feet centers. This allows a solid face of 250 feet. These block headings are driven 15 feet wide, but bottom is lifted only 7 feet wide near the rib and of such depth to allow a clearance of 6 feet from the top of rail. The remaining width acts as a shelf for the support of the drive and long-wall machine. As the block headings are driven for a distance of 350 feet into the solid coal, it is found necessary to carry along a good line of bratticing for the purpose of ventilation.

The block nearest the outcrop is first attacked. On this block it is necessary to maintain an areaway at the rear end. This is done by driving along with the block a place 4 feet wide, leaving a pillar 10 feet thick between it and the edge of the block. The coal is extracted to within 25 feet of the upper heading, when the conveyor is removed to the next block, which is worked out in the same manner; and so on until the coal in the whole tier of blocks is recovered. In the meantime the pillar left by the block and the chain pillars are being mined by hand. The time consumed in removing equipment from one block to another is usually about fifteen hours.

The type of conveyor consists of a trough or pan made of sheet steel one-eighth inch thick, 12 inches wide at the bottom, 18 inches wide at the top, and 6 inches high, set on strap-iron standards. The conveyor, which is 250 feet in length, is made up in sections of 6, 12, 15, and 18 foot lengths, connected together by means of one-half inch flat-headed bolts, countersunk. The front is inclined for a distance of 45 feet to allow clearance for mine cars to pass under. The rear end is inclined for 15 feet to compensate for the size of sprocket wheel. A return runway for the chain is afforded below the pans by angle irons.

A cast-iron driving sprocket 18 inches in diameter and 13-inch face is attached to the front end. On the shaft of this sprocket, which is extended 12 inches beyond one of the bearings, is keyed a 12-tooth 16-inch diameter sprocket, which connects with the driving mechanism. The rear-end section consists of a framework made up of two I-beams, 6 feet long and strongly braced, on which rest the take-up boxes for keeping the chain in adjustment and the rear sprocket wheel over which the chain returns.

The conveyor chain is made of either steel or malleable cast iron, held together by bolts, the ends of which may be riveted or fitted with nuts. As it is impracticable to secure a chain that will not break, they are designed so that repair can be made expeditiously.

The power is carried to the different machines by means of a 2-inch pipe, which is run from the main supply along the lower heading to the top of the block heading. A connection is here made with the hoisting engine. The line is carried on props down the block heading to the conveyor, where it is connected by means of a $2\frac{1}{2}$-inch wire-wound rubber hose to a 2-inch pipe that runs the entire length of the block and attached to the conveyor. This pipe has outlets with 2-inch stopcocks at intervals of 50 feet, to which the hose of the mining machines and air drills may be attached. This arrangement necessitates carrying only a short length of hose on these machines instead of one reaching the whole length of the block.

From the end of the conveyor a $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe is run to the air engine. In this pipe is a valve, which is connected to a rod that reaches to the head end of the conveyor. It is from this point that the conveyor is controlled when running. As the air line needs to be shortened 5 feet nearly every day, several sections of different lengths are kept near at hand, so that this change can be quickly made.

The cars are handled to the conveyor by means of a double cylinder, with an 8 by 10 inch double friction-drum hoisting engine. The drums work loose on the shaft

independent of each other and are equipped with a powerful differential brake that will hold any load the engine will hoist; 500 feet of $\frac{5}{8}$-inch rope is reeled on each drum. A small hand drum, on which is reeled 150 feet of $\frac{1}{2}$-inch rope, is used to lower the cars around the curve.

The cars are dropped into the lower heading from the main haulage and pulled, either with mules or a small engine, to the top of the block heading. Here the rope of the small drum is attached to the coupling between the first and second car and the cars pushed around the curve. One of the ropes of the hoist is now attached to the rear end of the trip, which is usually ten cars, and the small rope is freed. The trip is then dropped to the conveyor to be loaded. Another trip is attached to the other rope of the hoist in the same manner. This trip is held on the block entry until the first trip is loaded. This having been accomplished, the loaded trip is dropped to the bottom of the block heading and the rope disengaged. The driver here takes the cars and hauls them to the main haulage. The rope is then pulled to the top of the block heading and attached to the cars, as described. In the meantime the empty trip on the block heading has been dropped to the conveyor and started to be loaded. This change usually occupies two to three minutes. Electric signal wires are run the length of block headings, by which the head man signals the engine boy.

The drive, which is a small double-cylinder engine with reduced gearing, is mounted on a frame and attached to the conveyor. The power is transmitted by means of a steel thimble roller chain to the sprocket on the drive shaft of the conveyor.

The drill used for boring the holes is an ingenious tool; the weight of auger and drill does not exceed 20 pounds. The machine is a small four-cylindered air engine and has a gear on the shank of the machine. The auger is attached to a small chuck that is screwed on to the end of the shank. A hose three-eighths inch in diameter and 50 feet long, attached to the conveyor pipe, furnishes the power for the drill.

The complement of men required to run a block is 13—that is, block boss, machine runner and helper, driller, who also acts as shot firer, engine boy, head man, and six loaders.

The "block boss," or leader of the crew, has direct charge of the block. He must be a man who has some knowledge of mining and the care of machinery, and must possess good executive ability. The balance of the crew, with the possible exception of machine men, are generally non-English-speaking men.

In preparation for the day's work the machine has cut one rail (30 feet) on the previous afternoon. In the morning this coal is shot down and the loaders begin work immediately. It requires from four and one-half to five hours for the machine men to finish the cut. The machine is then overhauled and moved up in position to start the return cut. After finishing their own work the runner and his helper go back on the block and make preparations for the moving of the conveyor. This consists of setting a line of props, called the line row, about 8 feet apart, and a distance from the conveyor equal to the depth of the undercut. As these are placed the old line row, which is now against the conveyor, is withdrawn. The pulling jacks for moving the conveyor are distributed along the block 40 feet apart and placed in position.

The shot firer keeps closely after the machine, and is through shooting shortly after the undercut is finished. He then starts from the far end of the block to drill holes in the new face. It usually takes him about two hours daily to drill the entire width of the block.

Each loader is supplied with a pick and shovel and a piece of sheet iron 9 inches wide and 6 feet long, which he attaches to the conveyor to act as a side board. As each loader cleans up his place he moves forward to the head of the line. This continues until the coal is loaded out, which usually requires about six and one-half hours.

When cleaned up the drive is reversed and the timber, which has arrived on the last trip, is run through on the conveyor to such points on the block where it is required. When this is accomplished the power is shut off by means of a valve located at the top of the block heading. The hose is disconnected from the main feed pipe and the conveyor is moved up to the line row. This lateral move of the conveyor requires very little time, very seldom exceeding five minutes. A break row, consisting of two rows of props set 2 feet apart, is now placed along the lower side of the conveyor. These props are set on a cap piece, placed on a small pile of slack, and wedged at the top. Two break rows are all that is necessary to protect the block. In the meantime a portion of the crew are engaged in pulling out the extra break row. This is the most hazardous work on the block and is given personal attention by the block boss. Axes are used in this operation, and about 75 per cent of the props recovered are practically uninjured.

While the block crew are employed timbering the conveyor man and hoist boy make the necessary pipe connections and go along the conveyor with a pump jack and level it up. They also build a crib at the head end, which is placed so as to prevent the roof from breaking over into the block heading.

When the timber drawers have advanced such a distance from the machine that the noise of the exhaust will not annoy them, the machine begins cutting and is usually able to have one rail, or about 30 feet, cut before the shift is over.

With a 5-foot undercut the block throws 125 tons. Four cuts a week are on an average obtained from each block, which makes a daily average of 100 tons.

Although the results obtained from this system of mining were highly satisfactory, it was found there was still room for improvement, especially with regard to the original cost of the development and the dead work connected with the running of the block. It was with the idea of remedying these features and of improving on other less important conditions that the triple-conveyor system was designed and installed. After being in use for over a year in four of the mines where electricity is the power used the results obtained are even better than were anticipated.

In laying out a mine for this system the main entry and airway are driven up or down the pitch, and cross headings are driven off them at intervals of 400 feet at such an angle as will give a 2 per cent grade; 75-foot barrier pillars are left on each side of the main entries. The cross heading is driven 20 feet wide and gobbed on the lower side. The air course, which afterward is used as the block face, is driven 20 feet wide, but no bottom is lifted; a 40-foot pillar is maintained. Block headings are run perpendicularly off the cross headings at 518-foot centers; they are driven 18 feet wide, with bottom lifted in the center 5 feet wide, and to such a depth as will give a clearance of 5 feet.

When the block is ready for operation a conveyor 350 feet long is placed in the block heading, and along the face of the air course on each side is placed a conveyor 250 feet long, with delivery ends directly over the main conveyor, one being 5 feet in advance of the other. Each conveyor is driven by a 20-horsepower 250-volt series-wound motor incased in a sheet-iron frame mounted on steel shoes, so as to be easily moved.

Airways are maintained on the blocks by driving two places slightly in advance of the block face, 6 and 4 feet wide, respectively, with a 10-foot pillar between. The first place acts as a stable for the machine and is driven by the machine. The airway is pick-mined, and one man manages to keep these other places going on the rear end of both blocks. By this arrangement no cribbing is necessary.

The blocks are worked to within 25 feet of the cross heading, when the conveyors are removed to another block. The remaining pillar is brought back along with the heading stumps.

The power is carried to the top of the block heading by a 2–0 wire. Here are attached two insulated twin cables, one to furnish power to the machines, the other for the drives and hoist.

The cables are carried down the block heading, one on each side of the main conveyor, being attached to it by means of malleable-iron brackets. At the junction of the conveyors connections are made with the drives, also with a cable that is attached to each of the face conveyors.

Stations are established 50 feet apart on the face-conveyor cables, to which connections are made with the short cable attached to the long-wall machines and electric drills. Switches are placed at the head end of the main conveyor, by which the power is controlled.

The method of handling the cars to the conveyor is simple. A side track is laid 300 feet long, of which the block heading is the center. Connection is made with the main track at the lower end, and a crossover switch is placed directly under the conveyor. At the upper end of the siding is placed an electric hoist. A trip of 14 cars is shoved into the empty track, and the rope is attached and the trip pulled up to the conveyor. Signal wires are hung between the conveyor and the hoist, and as each car is loaded the trip is pulled forward. When loaded the trip is dropped on the loaded siding, the rope disengaged and attached to the empties.

The crew operating a double block consists of 17 men—that is, block boss, machine runner and helper, driller, shooter, two conveyor men, hoist boy, five loaders, and four timber men.

Two long-wall machines are used, one for each side, although one machine can keep up the work in case of emergency.

As the machine men finish cutting one block they put the machine in position to start back on the cut and move over to the next block and begin cutting. They are followed by the shooter and loaders. The driller sets the line row and also has time to assist in loading.

When a block is cleaned up the timber men move up the conveyor, set the break rows, pull the timber, and make everything ready for the conveyor to start when the opposite block is loaded out.

The main conveyor, which is made up of 12-foot sections, is disjointed about every third day, and one of the sections taken out and moved to the block heading next to be worked. The surplus length of cable is gathered on a reel located at the head end of the main conveyor.

The working of the face is similar to that of the single block with the exception that the machine men, loaders, etc., continue at their own special work during the whole shift, the dead work being taken care of by the four timber men, thus not hindering the steady flow of coal, which averages 150 tons per day.

For the purpose of keeping the machinery in as good a shape as possible, a skilled mechanic is attached to each mine. He assumes charge in case of an accident and makes necessary repairs, although most of the breakdowns are easily taken care of by the block boss and machine man.

In the starting of a block is where the best results are obtained, as the roof requires little attention until about 100 feet have been extracted. It then begins to weigh heavy on the posts, and it is found necessary to carry three or four double break rows in anticipation of what is called the "big break." This usually occurs when the block is advanced from 100 to 150 feet, although in several instances a 500-foot face has been carried up 200 feet before the overhanging strata broke. After the sand rock is down only two break rows are carried, and the roof keeps breaking behind the last row as the face is extended.

The men are paid day wages, and as they become accustomed to the work and machinery are advanced accordingly. The block boss, as an incentive to secure the best results, is paid a small bonus per ton besides his regular day rate.

The cost averages for the last two years show that block coal is loaded on the mine cars 35 per cent cheaper than the district mining rate, but this cost can be materially reduced when a few improvements now being worked out are brought to a state of perfection. Among these may be mentioned a more simple mechanical rig for spotting the mine cars and a scheme for reducing the amount of timber used.

LITERATURE ON COAL MINING.

For the very latest information and statistical data, together with brief descriptions of the conditions of mines, improvements made therein, and the number and cause of accidents by years, the reader is referred to the annual volume entitled "Report of the Department of Mines, Pennsylvania." Most of the area included in the Johnstown quadrangle was in the sixth bituminous district of the State when this report was written. For information regarding coal-mining methods in general the reader is referred to the "Coal and metal miners' pocket book," ninth edition, 1904, pages 280 et seq.

CLAY AND SHALE.

MODE OF TREATMENT.

The clay materials of the Johnstown quadrangle are flint clays, plastic clays (including some fire clays), and shales.

On pages 14 to 28 of this bulletin a detailed description is given of the rocks in which the workable or potentially workable shale and clay beds are found, and to these preliminary descriptions the reader is referred for an explanation of the names which are applied to the beds containing the clays and which are employed in the following discussions. The treatment of the clays, like that of the coal, will be twofold, consisting of (1) a preliminary description of their general character and geologic position, followed (2) by a detailed description by districts, intended for the use of those who are more particularly interested in the subject. The detailed descriptions will be accompanied by analyses and sections. The distribution of the clay beds which are regarded as of economic importance is shown on Plate I by means of purple lines.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

FLINT CLAYS.

Flint clays occur at three or more horizons in the Johnstown area. The highest is in the Conemaugh formation and ranges in position from 50 to nearly 100 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. It usually occurs very close to the Mahoning coal in the hills immediately about Johnstown, and its distance above the Upper Freeport coal is therefore nearer 50 to 75 feet than 100 feet. A clay in a similar position with respect to the top of the Allegheny formation was also observed in the hills north of South Fork. It appeared to be of the ordinary plastic variety. In the Blacklick Creek district, near Wehrum, a flint clay has been observed at many places in a similar position with reference to the Mahoning sandstone member. This flint clay, which

in many places attains a thickness of 7 feet, is probably to be correlated with the flint clay occurring near Johnstown.

In the Allegheny formation a flint clay was observed near the northwest edge of the quadrangle, in the valley of Mardis Run. It occurs 25 feet below the Upper Freeport coal and probably corresponds with the Bolivar flint clay of the area to the west.

The most important flint clay in the entire quadrangle is that occurring at the Mercer horizon in the hills about South Fork, where it is associated with plastic clay. In the mine of J. H. Wickes it is 4½ feet thick. The flinty character is persistent between South Fork and Mineral Point, but elsewhere throughout the quadrangle the Mercer member is usually characterized by a band of shale and plastic clay.

PLASTIC CLAYS.

Plastic clays have been observed at many horizons in the Johnstown quadrangle. At only a few places, however, are their position with reference to transportation facilities and their thickness such as to make them of great economic importance. A few plastic-clay beds have been observed in the Conemaugh formation. Many of the coals in the Allegheny formation are underlain by plastic clays. The clay below the Upper Freeport is of workable thickness at some places. Below the "cement rock" associated with the Upper Kittanning (Cement) coal a deposit of clay was noted at some places around Johnstown. The most important plastic clay in the Allegheny formation is that below the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) coal bed, and it is extensively mined around Johnstown and South Fork in connection with that coal. It is mixed with the flint clay from South Fork and Dean station to make all grades of fire brick and refractory material in general. This clay varies in thickness from less than 3 feet to 12 feet, of which from 2½ to 5 feet is worked in the most important clay mines near Johnstown. At Seward 12 feet of clay is reported below the Lower Kittanning coal, but of this thickness only 6 feet is mined and used in the manufacture of buff or light-colored brick.

In the northern part of the quadrangle, along Blacklick Creek and at Conemaugh Furnace, the clay below the Lower Kittanning coal is of workable thickness, and there is no reason why its quality should not compare with that of the plastic clay near Johnstown and South Fork. So far as known, however, it has never been mined in connection with the coal in either of these districts.

The lowest plastic clay in the region occurs at the Mercer horizon. This clay is associated with and occurs immediately above the flint clay at the same horizon near South Fork. Plastic clay of Mercer age is also found on Stony Creek in the hills north of the mouth of Paint Creek and farther to the south. It is also present in the hills

north of Sheridan and is worked at a quarry in this locality. The corresponding clays have been prospected but are not worked at present on the west slope of Laurel Ridge, a few miles southeast of Conemaugh Furnace.

SHALES.

In the Johnstown quadrangle valuable shale beds are scattered through the Conemaugh and Allegheny formations, and in the Pottsville formation the Mercer member is nearly everywhere characterized by the presence of a shale bed of varying thickness. Near Johnstown valuable shale beds occur in the lower 300 feet of the Conemaugh formation and are worked near the city. The higher beds of the Conemaugh are exposed in the railroad cuts west of Wilmore, and the numerous shale beds there included (see section, p. 16) insure the presence of much good brickmaking material admirably situated with respect to transportation. At the Bruce H. Campbell quarry, north of Sheridan, a clay that is associated with rounded bowlders and is presumably of Pleistocene age is worked (Pl. V, *B*). Residual clays are so widely distributed in this quadrangle as hardly to merit detailed mention.

DESCRIPTION BY DISTRICTS

JOHNSTOWN DISTRICT.

FLINT CLAYS.

Flint clay occurs persistently at but one horizon in the Johnstown district. This horizon is at or just above the Mahoning sandstone member and in the hills surrounding the city it is 50 to 70 feet above the Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) coal. Though fairly well distributed in favorable locations for easy exploitation, this clay is, so far as known, worked only by the Johnstown Pressed Brick Company at its plant on a hill east of the city. A section of the rocks in the hill will show the position of this clay and its relation to the underlying coal, which is at the top of the Allegheny formation.

Section of lower part of Conemaugh formation in hill east of Johnstown.

	Feet.
Concealed, and sandstone from top of hill	91
Shales	10
Shales, black	5
Shales, brick-red	40
Concealed, but probably shales	25
Shales, dull olive, weathering reddish [a]	25
Shales, olive to red	5
Shales, dark olive green, slightly gritty, with iron oxide and manganese oxide on the bedding planes [a]	13–15
Sandstone, laminated	15
Shales	30

[a] Beds worked for brick material.

	Ft.	in.
Concealed, but with a sandstone in its upper part	42	
Flint clay.[a]		
Shales	8	
Shales, ferruginous	10	
Shales, green, concretionary	10	
Shales, irregularly bedded	5	
Shales, sandy	8	
Sandstone, massive (Mahoning)	25	
Concealed	12	
Coal, 3 feet 6 inches.. / Bone, 5 inches..... } Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) coal	3	11

Fragments of flint clay have been seen in the following localities near Johnstown: On the road ascending Shingle Run, in Dale Borough, east of Johnstown, more than 2 feet of flint clay associated with shale was measured 60 feet above the Mahoning sandstone member. An old prospect hole on this flint clay was seen on the road leading to Grandview Cemetery, in which the clay was about 65 feet above the Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) coal; it was of a light-straw color and appeared to be of good quality. On the Ferndale-Johnstown road, a short distance north of the Eighth Ward mine of the Citizens Coal Company, an abundance of flinty clay débris occurs above the road near the top of the massive Mahoning sandstone. In the hill above the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad tunnel east of Island Park, on the new county road, some flint clay was observed about 40 feet above the Upper Freeport coal and near the top of the Mahoning sandstone. Northwest of Johnstown, in the hills bordering Laurel Run and its branches on the east, a short distance east of the old coke yard from which the Upper Freeport gets its local name, this flint clay is exposed, indicating a probable continuity of the bed as far west as the valley of Laurel Run. Here again the flint clay is about 50 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. Northwest of Johnstown, on the road ascending Pleasant Hill from the valley of Conemaugh River, a flint clay occurs about 110 feet above the Upper Freeport coal and 10 feet below a smaller bed of coal. This smaller bed of coal may possibly be higher stratigraphically than the seam 70 feet above the Upper Freeport at the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad tunnel near Island Park; if so, the flint clay of Pleasant Hill is higher than that previously described, and there are two flint-clay horizons in the 100 feet at the base of the Conemaugh formation. At the southern edge of the quadrangle, in Somerset County, in the hills bordering Stony Creek, this same flint clay has been observed.

Should the clay after careful prospecting prove to be present in sufficient quantity and of such quality as to justify its exploitation at the above-named localities, it could be marketed, as most of the

[a] Beds worked for brick material.

occurrences which have been noted are conveniently situated with respect to transportation. Deposits of this clay too far removed from market and transportation to have commercial value have also been observed on the headwaters of Mill Creek and Dalton Run.

It should be added that the occurrences noted above are largely roadside outcrops at which it is impossible to determine the exact thickness and nature of the clays. Only careful prospecting can determine these points, but the fact that one of the flint clays is being exploited at one locality is significant.

PLASTIC CLAY.

The flint clay above the Mahoning sandstone assumes a plastic phase at places in the Johnstown district. Most of the valuable plastic clay in this region, however, occurs in the Allegheny formation ("Lower Productive Coal Measures"). At a few places a clay bed of workable thickness occurs below the Upper Freeport coal, in connection with which it might be mined. At the Cyrus Shepard mine, leased by L. J. Mitchell, east of Franklin and near the mouth of Clapboard Run, 2 feet 4½ inches of clay were measured by Mr. Martin, but the clay is known not to be persistent, as but a short distance away the section obtained shows an entirely different aspect.

A clay bed underlies the Johnstown limestone member—that is, the limestone occurring near or just below the base of the Upper Kittanning (Cement) coal. This clay has been worked, but it is not now exploited. It is referred to in the report on this district by F. Platt and W. G. Platt[a] as having been developed by Mr. Haws, of Johnstown. The clay was analyzed by T. T. Morrell,[a] with the following results:

Analysis of clay occurring below the Johnstown limestone member.

Silica (SiO_2)	71.98
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	26.29
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)	2.21
Magnesia (MgO)	.44
Manganese dioxide (MnO_2)	.32
	101.24

The most valuable clay in the Allegheny formation is that underlying the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal. Many of the mines working this coal around Johnstown produce also considerable amounts of the clay. The clay bed in this district ranges from less than 3 to about 6 feet in thickness, but locally it may be even thicker than this. It usually underlies the lower bench of the Lower Kittanning coal, from which it is separated by a few inches of shale; or, in the absence

[a] Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. H2, 1875, p. 148.

of the lower bench, it occurs below the main coal itself, separated from it by about 3 to 4 inches of bone or shale. It is a light-drab clay, not very hard, of irregular fracture, greasy to the touch, and slakes on exposure to the weather. Its composition is indicated by the following analyses:

Analyses of clay underlying the Miller seam.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Silica (SiO_2)	65.90	66.40	53.10	68.82
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	20.30	19.80	27.80	20.85
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)	[a] 1.60	[a] 1.68	[a] 3.08	2.79
Magnesia (MgO)	.66	.61	.60	.23
Lime (CaO)	.09	.10	.22	.82
Soda (Na_2O)	.34	.30	.48	.....
Potash (K_2O)	2.98	3.24	3.58	.....
Titanium oxide (TiO_2)	1.20	1.00	1.20	MnO_2 .66
Loss on ignition	6.50	6.40	10.20	5.83
	99.57	99.53	100.26	100.00

[a] Total iron calculated as Fe_2O_3.

1. Citizens' Coal Company's Green Hill mine, Johnstown; E. C. Sullivan, analyst.
2. A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited) mine, near the stone bridge, Johnstown; E. C. Sullivan, analyst.
3. Seward Coal Company's mine, Seward, Westmoreland County, Pa.; E. C. Sullivan, analyst.
4. Clay underlying the Lower Kittanning (Miller) seam at Johnstown; T. T. Morrell, analyst. Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. H2, p. 148.

This clay is worked about Johnstown by W. J. Williams at Kernville. Below the coal at the Kernville mine there is a shale layer of varying thickness, about 2 to 6 inches in places, below which is from 3 to 5 feet of plastic clay. This clay is mined and used at one of the local brickyards. At the Green Hill mine of the Citizens' Coal Company the average thickness of the underlying clay is 5 feet. This also is shipped to a local brick plant. This clay is mined by A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited), both at their shaft near the famous stone bridge in Johnstown and to the west at Coopersdale. In the shaft workings an average of nearly 3 feet is worked. At Coopersdale it averages 3½ feet in thickness but in places runs as thick as 5 feet. It was observed in the mine that when the clay attained its maximum thickness the coal appeared in a single bench, with its lower 4 or 5 inches bony. At both the Haws mines the Lower Kittanning coal is mined with the clay, and is used as the fuel to burn the brick at the brick plants situated at the mine mouths. The clay is also mined by Robertson & Griffith on St. Clair Run in connection with the overlying coal.

Nearly all the product of the Johnstown clay mines is used at local brick plants, where it is mixed with flint clay from the Mercer horizon, shipped chiefly from South Fork and Dean station. When thus mixed with the flint clay it forms a suitable bond in a product that is used in the manufacture of high-grade refractory products and bricks for blast-furnace and open-hearth work, and in making sleeves, nozzles, tuyeres, and other articles exposed to high temperatures. In the most refractory products nothing but flint clay is used.

The lowest plastic clay in the Johnstown quadrangle is associated with the Mercer coal and is not exposed immediately about the city. In the hills lying east of Stony Creek, south of Kring, on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, this horizon has been prospected and some clay and shale have been found, but they have never been worked. At one exposure of the Mercer south of the quadrangle, on the west flank of the Ebensburg anticlinal axis, more than 11 feet of clays and shales were measured in one exposure. Flint clay was not observed in connection with the Mercer at any of the old prospect pits.

North of Sheridan, at the quarry of Bruce H. Campbell, the following section was measured, showing 6 feet and possibly more of clay below the Mercer coal:

Section of Mercer shale member at Bruce H. Campbell quarry, north of Sheridan.

	Ft.	in.
Sandstone in massive bowlders.		
Clay, red, with rounded bowlders (Pleistocene?)	5–10	
Shales	20	
Coal and bone	1	3
Clay	6	
Shales	6	

That the underlying clay and shales are much thicker than is indicated by the above section has been proved by sinking three test holes. Both red and buff building bricks are made from the clays and shale quarried here.

SHALES.

It has been remarked that the most important shale horizons about Johnstown are confined to the lower 300 feet of the Conemaugh formation. The section given on pages 115–116 shows the character of the lower 400 feet of beds in this group of rocks in a hill east of the city. From about 50 feet above the top of the Upper Freeport (Coke Yard) coal to the top of the hill numerous promising beds of shale are exposed. Most of the shale group lying between 165 and 210 feet above the Upper Freeport coal is being worked by the Johnstown Pressed Brick Company into a good building brick of both the buff and red varieties. The fuel used in burning the brick is obtained from the Upper Freeport coal, which the company works in the same hill. The shales are ground through a 12-mesh sieve, or to a size to make them "ball." The material is then hoisted by a bucket-belt conveyor to the sieve, thence sent through a hopper to the pans, after which it is pressed into brick, the dry-press process being used.

The composition of the shales employed is indicated below. The shales were first air dried and then subjected to the usual fusion, with subsequent analyses.

Ultimate and rational analyses of shales from hill east of Johnstown.

	1.	2.
Silica (SiO_2)	51.32	64.29
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	24.39	17.95
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)	6.94	5.74
Manganese oxide (MnO)	.14	Trace.
Lime (CaO)	.70	.46
Magnesia (MgO)	1.73	1.30
Sulphuric anhydride (SO_3)	Trace.	Trace.
Ferrous oxide (FeO)	1.43	1.64
Alkalies (Na_2O)	.23	.35
Alkalies (K_2O)	1.09	1.80
Water at 100° C	.92	.95
Ignition loss	11.32	5.44
	100.21	99.92
Free silica	10.09	28.54
Clay substance	81.51	57.85
Feldspathic substance	8.40	13.61
	100.00	100.00

1. Sample collected from upper shale bed: see section (p. 115). Analysis made at the structural-materials laboratory of the United States Geological Survey at St. Louis. A. J. Phillips, analyst.
2. Sample collected from lower shale bed; see section (p. 115). Analysis made at the structural-materials laboratory of the United States Geological Survey at St. Louis. P. H. Bates, analyst.

In Prospect Hill, north of Johnstown, the Cambria Steel Company has quarried shale lying about 80 to 100 feet above the Upper Freeport coal and utilized it in connection with the overlying surface clay in the manufacture of red building brick of good quality. The brick plant of the company is located at Cambria.

The geologic structure immediately near Johnstown is such that the beds lie fairly flat and the lower few hundred feet of the Conemaugh formation is exposed. Sections obtained in the hills around the city and along the Pennsylvania Railroad to the west indicate that the lower part of this formation is of prevailingly shaly character, comparable with that seen in the hill to the east. It is therefore probable that a great deal of brickmaking material exists in these hills which has never been tested. Though all this shale may not be of the grade of that worked by the Johnstown Pressed Brick Company, some of it probably is, and much of it may be suitable for paving brick, sewer pipe, fireproofing of various sorts, and other rough material. All the shale in the hills about the city and to the west is fairly accessible to transportation, and cheap fuel is assured by the presence of valuable coal beds 300 feet or more below.

The lowest promising shale horizon in this district is associated with the Mercer coal. The prospect pits on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad south of Kring show the presence of dark shales at this horizon. At points north of Sheridan the Mercer shale is thick and is worked in connection with the overlying Pleistocene clays at the quarry of Bruce H. Campbell. (See Pl. V, *B*, p. 28.) The section on page 119 shows 20 feet of shales overlying the coal, and the thickness of brickmaking material at the base of the section is known from test holes put down by the company to be much greater. The shales in the 20-foot bed given near the top of the section are dark brown

and drab in color, somewhat sandy, and concretionary. This shale is mixed with the overlying clay, and the mixture is used in making a buff or red building brick, the color depending on the proportions of shale and clay used. The beds worked at this quarry rise abruptly toward the west at a rate that soon carries the Mercer horizon with its shales over the tops of the hills.

Mr. Martin collected a sample of the shale from this quarry, taking it from the entire width of the exposure and then mixing it with the overlying clay in the proportion of 2 parts of shale to 1 of clay. The sample was analyzed by P. H. Bates, of the structural-materials laboratory of the Survey at St. Louis, with the following results:

Ultimate and rational analyses of shale and clay from Mercer shale member, B. H. Campbell quarry, north of Sheridan.

Silica (SiO_2)	62.86
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	18.85
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)	5.19
Manganese oxide (MnO)	.37
Lime (CaO)	1.42
Magnesia (MgO)	.98
Sulphuric anhydride (SO_3)	.11
Alkalies Na_2O	.06
Alkalies K_2O	2.59
Water at 100° C	2.27
Ignition loss	5.45
	100.15
Free silica	27.70
Clay substance	56.41
Feldspathic substance	15.89
	100.00

SOUTH FORK DISTRICT.

FLINT CLAY.

A band of clay that occurs in the Pottsville formation in the South Fork district has been worked at points south of the Pennsylvania Railroad from South Fork westward beyond Mineral Point and also at a few places north of the railroad. In this district this clay is characterized by a persistent flinty streak. This clay is present in the hills along Conemaugh River in an area extending west to about 1 mile east of Conemaugh station. The outcrop is continuous except where the local dips and change in direction of the river carry it below drainage. The flinty clay may not be present at all points between Mineral Point and Conemaugh. For example, the clay observed at this horizon in the tunnel of the old Portage Railroad is not particularly flinty in character. From Mineral Point to South Fork, however, the flinty character is persistent.

This flint clay is now worked by the Garfield Fire Clay Company near the viaduct and by J. H. Wickes and the South Fork Fire Brick

Company west of South Fork. The following section was measured at Mr. Wickes's mine:

Section of fire clay at J. H. Wickes's mine, South Fork.

	Ft.	in.
Heavy sandstone roof.		
Clay, plastic	3	6
Coal		1/8–2
Clay, flint	4	6
Sandstone.		

This clay was also worked by the Page-Reigard Mining Company near Mineral Point and at South Fork, but in July, 1904, the mine at South Fork was shut down. It is reported that the plastic clay is persistent but that the thickness of the flint clay is variable, dwindling to 14 inches in a northeast-southwest zone. A specimen of the clay was collected in October, 1906, and analyzed by A. J. Phillips at the structural-materials laboratory of the United States Geological Survey at St. Louis. This analysis (No. 1 in the table below) may be compared with an analysis of what is believed to be clay from the Mercer, taken from the central band of the bed worked years ago near the viaduct. This latter clay was not definitely fixed in its stratigraphic relations by the Platts.[a] It was regarded by them as clearly underlying all the workable coals and as being connected with the "Conglomerate Rock," as the Pottsville was sometimes called, and as being the equivalent of the fire clay of Sandy Ridge, which is known to be in the Mercer member. The third analysis in the table represents clay from the middle layer in the Sandy Ridge bed.

Ultimate and rational analyses of Mercer clays.

	1.	2.	3.
Silica (SiO_2)	44.30	45.42	44.950
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	38.31	36.80	37.750
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)	1.40	[b] 3.33	[c] 2.700
Manganese oxide (MnO)	.10	[d] .48	.....
Lime (CaO)	.82	.87	.302
Magnesia (MgO)	.59	.45	.216
Sulphuric anhydride (SO_3)	Trace.	.....	.....
Ferrous oxide	.71	.....	.....
Alkalies { Na_2O	.22	}	.985
Alkalies { K_2O	.17		
Water at 100° C.	.75	.....	.....
Ignition loss	12.77	[e] 12.65	[e] 13.050
	100.14	100.00	99.953
Free alumina	3.88	.....	.....
Clay substance	93.26	.....	.....
Feldspathic substance	2.86	.....	.....
	100.00	.....	.....

[a] Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. H2, 1875, p. 146.
[b] All iron reported as peroxide of iron.
[c] Reported "oxide of iron."
[d] Calculated as MnO_2.
[e] Reported as water and organic matter.

1. Flint clay from Mercer horizon, A. J. Wickes's mine, South Fork; A. J. Phillips, analyst.
Flint clay from Mercer horizon, near the viaduct; T. T. Morrell, analyst, Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept H_2, 1875, p. 147.
3. Fire clay of Sandy Ridge; A. S. McCreath, analyst, Second Geol. Survey Pennsylvania, Rept. H, 1874, p. 119.

There is a striking similarity among these analyses.

At South Fork the clay is smooth, hard, compact, light to dark gray in color, breaks with a conchoidal fracture, and burns to a straw-yellow color. The analysis indicates a high-grade material, with perhaps a little too much iron.

The clay mined at South Fork is in part shipped to Johnstown and in part mixed with plastic clay from the Lower Kittanning seam and used at the local brick plant. Some of the products of this flint clay have been tested for refractoriness at the plant of the Cambria Steel Company at Johnstown and have proved highly satisfactory.

PLASTIC CLAY.

About South Fork a plastic clay of doubtful value has been observed at a few places near the top of the Mahoning sandstone; its position corresponds with that of the band of flint clay in the Johnstown district. The clay below the Upper Freeport (Lemon) coal bed is fairly thick in this region, but it is not worked at present. At O. M. Stineman's mine No. 3 this coal is underlain by 2 feet 3 inches of clay, which may be worked at some future time in connection with the coal. This clay is not comparable in thickness with that which directly underlies the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal seam, and which about South Fork, as near Johnstown, is the most important plastic clay in the Allegheny formation. The plastic clay associated with the Lower Kittanning coal seam is usually workable, at some places having a thickness of 6 to 8 feet and averaging about 3 to 4 feet of workable clay of good grade. A brief note on the character of this clay will be found in the description of its occurrence in the Johnstown district (p. 117), where analyses also are given. There is every reason to suppose that in this district it is of the same quality as about Johnstown. Most of the South Fork clay is mined in connection with the coal and is used almost entirely at the local brick plant.

SHALE.

So far as known the shales in the South Fork district have not been utilized. In the two large cuts west of the town of Wilmore, on the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad, shale beds are exposed that vary in position from 400 to 675 feet above the Upper Freeport coal. In the surrounding hills many promising shales are found conveniently situated with respect to transportation. Their appearance indicates that they may be adapted to the manufacture of paving brick and other materials that require only an inferior grade of clay or shale; to determine their fitness for any purpose, however, practical tests must be made. In a recent cut opposite Ehrenfeld, along the new county road, a bed of shale 50 to 60 feet thick, lying 60 feet above the Upper Freeport coal, also appears to be promising.

BLACKLICK CREEK DISTRICT.

The South Branch of Blacklick Creek flows along the northern edge of the Johnstown quadrangle. It is joined by the north branch a short distance west of Vintondale, and the main stream flows westward beyond the limits of the area. Deposits of flint and plastic clay are found in the adjacent hills along the creek, and although many of these are conveniently situated with respect to lines of transportation the demand has not yet been sufficient to justify their exploitation.

FLINT CLAY.

The flint clay in the Blacklick Creek district occurs at two horizons. The higher is found in the lower part of the Conemaugh formation, above what is thought to be the equivalent of the Mahoning sandstone member and a few feet below a small coal bed, possibly the Mahoning coal. This flint clay has been observed in many places north, west, and south of Wehrum, but the rise of the beds toward the east causes a gradual increase in its distance from the valley and from transportation facilities and finally its complete absence from the hills. West of Wehrum, however, both north and south of Blacklick Creek, it occurs at many points, having in places the unusual thickness of 7 to 8 feet. It is a typical flint clay in appearance, though its content of iron oxide is apparently very high. A sample collected from a roadside exposure west of Dilltown gave the following analysis:

Partial analysis of flint clay from a natural exposure west of Dilltown.

[E. C. Sullivan, analyst.]

Silica (SiO_2)	50.3
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	21.3
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)[a]	10.4
Magnesia (MgO)	.61
Lime (CaO)	.39
Soda (Na_2O)	.18
Potash (K_2O)	1.14
Titanium oxide (TiO_2)	.90
Loss on ignition	12.00
	97.22

The percentage of fluxing materials, principally iron oxide, indicated in this analysis, is so high as to prohibit its practical use. A lower flint clay, lying a few feet below what may prove to be the Upper Freeport coal, was seen at a few places in the valley of Mardis Run, near the northwestern edge of the quadrangle. This clay may correspond to the Bolivar clay of the region to the southwest. Two feet of clay was seen at one point on the outcrop and the bed may possibly be thicker. This clay is rather remote from transportation.

[a] Total iron calculated as Fe_2O_3.

PLASTIC CLAY.

The coal that is being extensively worked in the valley of Blacklick Creek is regarded as the equivalent of the Lower Kittanning (Miller or B) seam of the Johnstown and South Fork districts. In the Blacklick Creek district, as well as along Conemaugh River, this coal is underlain by a promising clay bed. This clay is not exploited at present, and no certain measurement of its thickness was obtained. At many of the mines 2 feet or more of promising clay was seen, comparable, in appearance at least, with that in the Johnstown district.

MISCELLANEOUS LOCALITIES.

Along the western flank of Laurel Ridge, near the line of the Pennsylvania Railroad, the Lower Kittanning (Miller) coal has been opened at a few places and the clay underlying it found to be of workable thickness. At the coal mine of the Johnstown Coal Company more than 2 feet of clay was seen; and near Seward, beyond the western limits of the quadrangle, 12 feet of clay occurs in the same position, 6 feet of which is worked by the Seward Brick Company.[a]

About 2 miles southeast of Conemaugh Furnace, on the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad and south of it, the Conemaugh Stone Company has done considerable quarrying in the Pottsville and has exposed the Mercer shale member. The following section was measured but does not show the complete thickness of the clay:

Section showing Mercer shale member and accompanying clays at quarry of Conemaugh Stone Company.

	Ft.	in.
Shale, dark, with 2 inches of bone near base	3	
Fire clay	1	
Clay, sandy	1	
Clay, good, drab	1	
Coal or smut		½
Clay, drab	5+	

PRODUCTION.

The firms named below are engaged in the brick and clay industry in this area. In addition coal companies mining the Lower Kittanning coal about Johnstown and South Fork may produce small quantities of the underlying clay for use in the local brick plants.

Clay miners:

Page-Reigard Mining Company, flint clay, Mineral Point.
W. J. Williams, plastic clay, Kernville.
Citizens' Coal Company, plastic clay, Green Hill mine, Johnstown.
Robertson & Griffith, plastic clay, St. Clair Run, Morrellville.

[a] For an analysis of the clay underlying the coal mined at Seward, see p. 118.

Manufacturers of fire brick:
A. J. Haws & Sons (Limited), Johnstown and Coopersdale.
Hiram Swank Sons, Johnstown.
South Fork Fire Brick Company, South Fork.
Manufacturers of building brick:
Cambria Steel Company, Johnstown.
Bruce H. Campbell Brick Company, Sheridan.
Johnstown Pressed Brick Company, Johnstown.

BRICK INDUSTRY.

The brick industry in the vicinity of Johnstown has grown to considerable magnitude. Some of the flint clay used in the manufacture of the fire brick and other more refractory products is shipped from other parts of the State, but except for this most of the raw material used is of local occurrence.

LIMESTONE AND CEMENT MATERIALS.

EXTENT.

In the Conemaugh formation of western Pennsylvania numerous limestone members have been found and traced with certainty over broad areas. These have been proved to be so constant in their position in the geologic column that they have been named and have served as guides in unraveling the stratigraphy. Some of these are the Pittsburg, Clarksburg, Elk Lick, Ames or "Crinoidal," and Upper and Lower Cambridge limestone members of the Allegheny Valley, and the Johnstown iron-ore bed, which is in places nothing more than a ferruginous limestone at an inconsiderable distance from the outcrop. Some of these limestones undoubtedly occur in the Johnstown quadrangle. Actual correlation has not been made, however, partly because the limestones in the quadrangle are regarded as lenticular and partly because they are so numerous that they can not be correlated certainly with the persistent and characteristic limestones of the Allegheny Valley.

The limestones of the Conemaugh are of no importance whatever commercially and have never been used except for fertilizing purposes on a very small scale. The limestones in the Allegheny are of greater importance than those in the Conemaugh. They are three in number—the Upper Freeport limestone member, the Lower Freeport limestone member, and the Johnstown limestone member.

UPPER FREEPORT LIMESTONE MEMBER.

The Upper Freeport limestone member appears in the section only near South Fork and Ehrenfeld. A short distance east of Ehrenfeld it is exposed in some recent excavations along the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad. It is a gray limestone from 1½ to 3 feet in

thickness and at Ehrenfeld it is very irregularly bedded. It lies a short distance below the Upper Freeport coal, being separated from it by about 2 feet of clay containing limestone nodules in its lower foot. So far as known, this particular limestone has never been used in this area.

LOWER FREEPORT LIMESTONE MEMBER.

The Lower Freeport limestone member occurs either directly below or within a foot of the base of the Lower Freeport coal, the slight interval as a rule being occupied by black shale. It ranges from 1½ to nearly 4 feet in thickness. The best exposures in the quadrangle occur along Stony Creek (Pl. IV, *A*, p. 24) and the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad between Moxhom and the mine of the Valley Coal and Stone Company. This limestone has never been used in any way.

JOHNSTOWN LIMESTONE MEMBER.

The limestone occurring below the Upper Kittanning or Cement coal is known locally as the Johnstown cement bed. It is best developed along Stony Creek and may be seen to advantage on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad north of Kring, where it is 6 feet thick and is separated from the coal by 8 to 12 inches of shale. Along the spur track leading from the north end of the Baltimore and Ohio tunnel to the mine of the Valley Coal and Stone Company it is also conspicuous but slightly thinner. (See Pl. VII, *A*, p. 48.) The sections measured by hand level (see pp. 44 and 47) indicate the relations of this limestone and show its thickness where measured in this part of the quadrangle. The bed is nearly 8½ feet thick near Conemaugh depot and nearly 5 feet in the section along the Pennsylvania Railroad to the west, approaching Johnstown depot. To the east, on Conemaugh River, it is exposed just at the northwest apex of the first big meander. It must be thick in all the intermediate territory. Its outcrop along Stony Creek near the Rolling Mill mine of the Cambria Steel Company is also conspicuous. Northwest of Johnstown, near the old Cambria furnace and at the east base of Laurel Hill, it outcrops and shows just above the waters of Laurel Run. Here it is a bluish limestone with a few streaks of calcite. It is present but not very thick near South Fork, and is also reported near Scalp Level, just across the Somerset County border.

In the reports of the Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania[a] this bed is called the "Ferriferous limestone," but its identity with the limestone of the same name of the Allegheny Valley was left open for more complete and harmonious evidence than was available when the report on Cambria and Somerset counties was written.

[a] Rept. H2, 1877, pp. 150 et seq.

The limestone at this horizon was worked at one time. In the report of the Second Geological Survey, Platt mentions the Haws Cement Works as utilizing this rock occurring on Stony Creek not far from the Rolling Mill mine. He describes it as being bluish gray in color, hard, and brittle, showing small crystals of iron pyrites, and containing considerable clay. The deposit worked was dolomitic in character. The sample collected near Kring for analysis is also dolomitic in character. (See analysis 1.) Such high magnesian limestones have been used in the manufacture of natural cements near Utica, La Salle County, Ill., in the Louisville district of Indiana and Kentucky, and in the Rosendale district, Ulster County, N. Y. The magnesia, in natural cements at least, may be regarded as equivalent to lime so far as the hydraulic properties of the product are concerned. The presence of magnesium carbonate in a natural cement rock is merely incidental, while the silica, alumina, and iron oxide are essential. For comparison average analyses of limestones from the different districts mentioned above are given below, together with that of the limestone near Johnstown:

Analyses of limestones suitable for making cement.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Silica (SiO_2)	14.44	20.92	13.34	18.04
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	7.82		3.46	6.18
Ferric oxide ($Fe2O_3$)	1.54	2.35	1.90	2.63
Manganese oxide (MnO)	.20	.....	.....	.....
Lime (CaO)	25.05	26.32	31.49	25.23
Magnesia (MgO)	13.29	12.10	11.19	12.47
Sulphuric anhydride (SO_3)	.15	[a] 1.81	.....	[b] .78
Alkalies Na_2O	.28	[c] .18	.....	n. d.
Alkalies K_2O	.86			n. d.
Water at 100° C	.28	36.73	[e] 37.07	[d] 1.20
Ignition loss (includes CO_2)	36.48			[e] 33.31

[a] Average of two analyses.
[b] Average of five analyses.
[c] Average of two analyses, one of which is too low.
[d] Result of one analysis.
[e] Includes only CO_2.

1. Sample collected on Baltimore and Ohio Railroad north of Kring. Analysis made at structural-materials testing laboratory, United States Geological Survey, St. Louis, Mo. A. J. Phillips, analyst.
2. Average of five analyses of natural cement rocks, Utica, Ill. Eckel, E. C., Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 243, 1905, p. 340.
3. Average of six analyses of natural cement rocks, Louisville district, Indiana-Kentucky. Eckel, E. C., Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 243, 1905, p. 341.
4. Average of six analyses of natural cement rocks, Rosendale district, New York. Eckel, E. C., Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 243, 1905, p. 346.

The close agreement among the foregoing analyses strongly suggests that the Johnstown limestone member may be of value in the future for local use only in making natural cement. Its cementation index is 1.14, which places it in class A, according to the scheme of E. C. Eckel.[a] According to Eckel, products having an index between 1.00 and 1.15, when burned at sufficiently high temperature, are slow setting and high in tensile strength. They include the "natural Portlands" and allied products. If not burned high enough, cements

[a] Cements, limes, and plasters, 1905, pp. 198–199.

of such low index will contain free lime and magnesia. This particular product near Johnstown stands near class B (in which the cementation indexes run from 1.15 to 1.60). In this class are included most American natural cements and nearly all European Roman cements. As a rule it is not necessary to burn these products at so high a temperature as those in class A.

The composition of the Johnstown limestone member differs from place to place, as the following analysis of a sample collected from the vicinity of Mineral Point shows. This sample is low in alumina, magnesia, and silica and high in lime and differs from the material of the corresponding bed near Johnstown:

Analysis of cement rock, Mineral Point.

Sample collected by Lawrence Martin near Mineral Point. Analyzed at structural-materials laboratory, United States Geological Survey, St. Louis. A. J. Phillips, analyst.]

Silica (SiO_2)	4.97
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	2.57
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)	.56
Manganese oxide (MnO)	.48
Lime (CaO)	48.36±
Magnesia (MgO)	1.21±
Sulphuric anhydride (SO_3)	.13
Alkalies Na_2O	.08
Alkalies K_2O	.53
Water at 100° C	.09
Ignition loss	41.17

The addition of clay or shale of proper composition would be necessary to bring rock of the composition shown above to that of a Portland cement. It is almost certain that suitable clay or shale exists in the locality. The comparative thinness of the bed will militate against its extensive use. After it has been worked some time along its outcrop it will have to be mined underground. The expense attached to such operations would prevent competition except for purely local purposes.

BUILDING STONE, PAVING BLOCKS, AND CONCRETE MATERIALS.

The only rock suitable for building stone in the Johnstown quadrangle is sandstone, and of this rock there is a great abundance. Locally it has proved of great value in the construction of culverts, bridges, etc., along the Pennsylvania Railroad and in the construction of dwellings; but as a rule it will not bear the cost of very distant transportation. The gate at the entrance to Grandview Cemetery, Johnstown, is an example of the application of this local rock for construction purposes.

The sandstones of the Conemaugh have been used in certain parts of the quadrangle in the construction of dwellings. In the north-

eastern part the Morgantown ("Ebensburg") sandstone member has been so used with very satisfactory results. In the hills about Johnstown the Mahoning sandstone member is exceedingly massive in places and is capable of furnishing dimension stone of sizes suitable for the foundations of houses and for culverts, bridges, chimneys, etc. A great deal of this sandstone has been quarried from the outcrops of the Mahoning sandstone member, especially in the hills east of the city, and used for the purposes enumerated.

The Pottsville formation is made up almost entirely of sandstone. It has been quarried along the main line of the Pennsylvania Railroad and used for construction purposes and in the manufacture of concrete. The Conemaugh Stone Company formerly quarried it for use in construction along the Pennsylvania Railroad from a quarry on the south side of Conemaugh River, a few miles southeast of Conemaugh Furnace. The Pottsville formation outcrops along the Pennsylvania Railroad also near South Fork, Mineral Point, and east of Johnstown, also on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad near Paint Creek and farther south. The sandstone is in most of these localities a pure coarse-grained or gritty rock, usually weathering to a gray or gray-white rock of pleasing appearance. It seasons rapidly and firmly and withstands the eroding action of the elements in a manner to make it of great value as a building stone.

West of Coopersdale the sandstones of the Pottsville formation are quarried and crushed for use in concrete. The quarry is owned by A. B. Cooper, who also controls a quarry on the Loyalhanna limestone member in the lower part of the hill. The limestone is crushed for use in concrete and is also used for paving blocks. The quarry on the sandstone is located a few hundred feet above the tracks of the Pennsylvania Railroad on the north side of the river. The sandstone is very pure and is decidedly coarse grained to gritty in texture. It is blasted out without much regard to the size or shape of the product, the only requirement being that the fragments be as small as possible. The larger pieces are broken up and the stone is removed to the mill on the railroad by means of small cars moving on an inclined plane and controlled by a stationary engine at its foot. At the mill the sandstone is crushed by two crushers having a capacity of 100 and 300 tons a day of ten hours. It is then conveyed to a wet pan, in which it is further reduced in size and thence passed through screens of the proper size, from which it is conveyed by a bucket conveyor directly to the cars.

Another rock used in the manufacture of concrete is the Loyalhanna limestone member, which (see p. 29) occurs at the top of the Pocono formation. It is about 45 feet thick in the Johnstown quadrangle. It is not a true limestone but rather a sandy limestone. It weathers

in a peculiar and characteristic way, well shown in Plate VI, *A*, page 28. This siliceous limestone is quarried and split into paving blocks which give satisfaction, and is crushed for use as ballast in railroad beds. For both uses it is well adapted, as its calcareous portion on solution and recrystallization tends to bind the fragments solidly together and yet leaves sufficient space between them to allow the free circulation of water. The siliceous limestone exposed near the viaduct between Mineral Point and South Fork has also been quarried for paving blocks.

GLASS SAND.

The question has been raised whether the pure sandstone occurring in the Pottsville formation in the Johnstown quadrangle might not be used in the manufacture of glass, especially bottle glass. Sand or crushed sandstone, as is well known, is the major constituent of glass, forming from 52 to 65 per cent of the mass of the original mixture, or from 60 to 75 per cent of the finished product. To the sand is due the absence of color (according to its purity), the transparency, brilliancy, and hardness of glass. For the finest flintware, such as optical and cut glass, only the purest sand can be employed. For plate and window glass, which are commonly pale green, absolute purity is not essential, but generally the sand should not carry more than 0.2 per cent of iron oxide. Green and amber glass for bottles, jars, and rough structural work can be made from sand relatively high in impurities, but an excess of iron is to be avoided by careful selection. Washing may be necessary to remove the iron, and magnetic separation may have to be employed. Clay in the raw material is objectionable, as it clouds the glass, but it may be removed in part by washing. Magnesia is troublesome because it makes the batch difficult to fuse. If a sandstone is used as a source of glass sand, it should be friable, so as to be readily crushed.

The sandstone derived from the Pottsville formation is in its original form a massive rock, in some places friable but in others not; the less friable portions are, however, readily crushed. In many parts of the quadrangle the sandstone of the Pottsville fills all the requirements of a glass sand for the manufacture of bottles, jars, and rough structural material; where the amount of oxide of iron is excessive it may be corrected by the addition of small amounts of manganese dioxide or other decolorizing agents. The following analysis of a sample of friable sandstone from the Pottsville formation, collected on the west flank of Laurel Ridge, not far from Seward, shows the character of this sandstone at this point, and it is quite probable that sandstone of equally great purity may be collected at other points where the Pottsville outcrops in this area:

Analysis of glass sand from Pottsville formation on west flank of Laurel Ridge, near Seward.

[Made by A. J. Phillips at the structural-materials testing laboratory of the United States Geological Survey at St. Louis, Mo.]

Silica (SiO_2)	97.54
Alumina (Al_2O_3)	.81
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3)	.09
Lime (CaO)	1.04
Magnesia (MgO)	.06
Alkalies $\{Na_2O$	.02
Alkalies $\{K_2O$	.16
Water at 100° C	.03
Ignition loss	.49
	100.24

The amount of impurities is notably small. Iron oxide falls well within the outside limits demanded for bottles, jars, and rough structural material. The amount of clayey material is very small, as is also the magnesia.

The sandstone of the Pottsville should offer no serious obstacle to being ground to the requisite fineness (say to pass through a 20 to 50 mesh sieve). In prospecting for glass sand only the clearest and whitest sand should be selected, and before exploitation complete quantitative analyses and furnace tests of representative samples should be made.

IRON ORES.

HISTORY.

But one bed of iron ore in the Johnstown quadrangle deserves mention, and that one is now of historic interest only. The interest attached to the ore is, however, great, for its presence in the hills near Johnstown was perhaps the main factor in determining the location of the present great plant of the Cambria Steel Company, which sought this position for its works owing to the close association between the ore and the underlying coal beds. With the appearance of the cheap Lake ores on the market the Johnstown iron ore ceased to be of importance. At present it is not worked, and very little first-hand information is to be obtained regarding it. The following notes are simply a compilation from the report of the Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania [a] and are given here to make this report of the mineral resources of the Johnstown quadrangle complete

JOHNSTOWN ORE BED.

EXTENT.

The Johnstown ore bed is found in the center of the Johnstown Basin. Its eastern outcrop appears a short distance west of Conemaugh depot, where it occupies a position well up on the hillsides

[a] Rept. H2, 1875, pp. 111, 112, 118 et seq.

above the railroad. Thence it descends slowly westward, approaching water level at Hinckston Run, and after crossing the synclinical axis it again rises toward the Laurel Ridge anticline and comes to the surface on the eastern flank of Laurel Ridge. In the hills along the south bank of the Conemaugh it has never been found, although repeated search has been made for it. Its horizon has been determined may times and the vertical distance between it and the upper Freeport (Coke Yard) coal has been accurately measured. At Johnstown this interval is about 50 feet. This same iron-ore bed is known to exist on Mill Creek southeast of Johnstown, where it was benched for many years prior to 1875 by Dr. Schoenberger, the ore furnishing the material on which two small furnaces were run. The same ore was mined near and smelted at the old Cambria furnace, near the base of Laurel Hill.

CHARACTER OF THE ORE.

The ore bed at the opening of the Cambria Company's mine on the west bank of Hinckston Run was divided into two bands by a stratum of fire clay or shale which ranged from an inch to a foot in thickness and which crumbled when exposed to the weather, losing its water slowly and changing in color. The upper bench was much richer in iron than the lower, the latter being calcareous; but the ore from both benches contained sufficient lime to flux and was charged into the furnace with the coke without limestone. The ore yielded about 30 per cent of metallic iron when carefully treated in the furnace, but sometimes ran below this figure and occasionally rose above it. Its character is expressed by the following analyses, furnished by T. T. Morrell:

Analysis of iron ore from Johnstown bed.

Silica	4.885
Alumina	1.552
Carbonate of iron	52.330
Sesquioxide of iron	15.230
Carbonate of lime	15.285
Carbonate of magnesia	9.390
Phosphoric acid	.530
Sulphur	.850
Water.	
Metallic iron, 35.930.	

Mr. Morrell reports finding also a strong trace of manganese. The ore was calcined before being used in the furnace; the calcination was carried out in large open heaps near the mine, at an expense of about 10 per cent of fuel. The following analyses by Mr. Morrell show the general character of the ore after calcining, from both the upper and lower benches:

Analysis of calcined iron ore from Johnstown bed.

	Upper bench.	Lower bench.
Peroxide of iron	77.64	45.86
Silica	7.34	21.94
Alumina	1.02	4.02
Sesquioxide of manganese	1.39	.86
Lime	10.10	19.94
Magnesia	1.01	6.35
Phosphoric acid	.99	.53
Sulphuric acid	.52	.33
	100.01	99.85
Metallic iron	54.350	32.110
Phosphorus	.424	.232
Sulphur	.210	.133

PHYSICAL FEATURES OF THE ORE BED.

The ore bed is invariably underlain by shale and the roof is chiefly of the same material, being locally replaced by massive sandstone containing lumps of carbonate ore. The roof shale shows a decided tendency to crumble, and after the ore has been removed it sinks steadily, gradually reducing the height of the gangways. This behavior of the roof has been a source of constant annoyance, and has required the closest watching to avoid accidents. To counteract the sinking, "shanties" 4 feet high, consisting of strong timbers laid crosswise, are constructed at short intervals. In places these powerful logs are crushed so tightly together as not to exceed 2 feet in height. The irregularities of the bed are perhaps one of its most striking features. These irregularities consist of "rolls" and "horsebacks," which, though numerous, do not interfere with the general plan of working the ore. The system employed in mining is known as the long-wall method, the best and most economical of all systems wherever practicable. (See pp. 105–112.) By this method the ore is taken from along a line of wall which as it advances includes within a certain distance all the ore under the hill as far as the point reached.

The ore oxidizes rapidly at the outcrop, changing from a dove color to a rich brown, the former being the color of the unaltered carbonate, the latter of the hydrous oxide, or limonite, resulting from the oxidation of the carbonate. The average thickness of the ore at the Hinckston Run mine is about 2 feet; it changes, however, in thickness abruptly, the upper band thickening and the lower thinning, and vice versa. The following measurements made at different points in the mine serve to show the varying thickness of the ore bands. The third section was measured at a distance of 10 feet from the place where the second measurement was made, and the fourth 15 feet still farther southwest.

Sections of Johnstown ore bed.

	Ft.	in.
(1) Sandstone with bowlders of ore.		
Ore		5
Indurated fire clay		5
Ore		7½
Shale.		
(2) Shale roof.		
Ore, parted by 1 inch of fire clay	2	4
(3) Shale roof.		
Ore	1	2
Shale floor.		
(4) Shale roof.		
Ore	1	
Parting		4
Ore	1	
Shale floor.		

WATER RESOURCES.

The Johnstown quadrangle is a well-watered region. Most of the towns derive their water from the headwaters of the smaller creeks flowing into the main drainage channels—Stony Creek, Conemaugh and Little Conemaugh rivers, and Blacklick Creek with its North and South branches. These streams are fed by multitudes of springs as well as by the ordinary rainfall. This water is stored in reservoirs to insure a constant and adequate supply. The water is excellent, because the slopes from which most of it comes, though of small extent, are in general well wooded and comparatively free from habitation. The city of Johnstown obtains its water chiefly from three storage reservoirs, two on Mill Creek and one on Dalton Run. South Fork obtains its supply from a storage reservoir on Sandy Run. The town of Wehrum procures water from a reservoir on Rummel Run, and it is understood that the town of Vintondale also has a reservoir on a stream to the southeast. The town of Windber and associated mining villages, lying in part within the Johnstown quadrangle, are supplied partly from a storage reservoir on Little Paint Creek. For industrial purposes the Cambria Steel Company has constructed a large reservoir on Hinckston Run. During most of the year the flow of the streams is fairly adequate, but during the dry season of the autumn the supply is likely to run low. During the summer of 1906 the streams all maintained a good flow of water.

Away from the railroads the inhabitants of the region depend mostly on wells. Many of these wells have been driven as far down as coal beds, which are almost universally in water-bearing zones. The water obtained from such beds is commonly sulphurous and generally considered very wholesome. Springs are very abundant but do not appear to be large. The springs generally issue from coal beds or just above impervious clay beds. Though the volume in most such springs is not large, in purity the water can not be excelled. Many of the drill holes put down in this area have tapped water-bearing beds, but almost all the drillings have been made in search

of coal beds, and little or no attention has been paid to the water-bearing strata. These usually have been either sandstone beds or coal beds. Such a hole was drilled near the confluence of North Fork and South Fork of Bens Creek in Somerset County, near Mishler. The locality is known as Sulphur Springs. The water probably issues from the Upper Kittanning coal bed, as the drill hole is understood to be very shallow.

INDEX.

A. Page.

Allegheny formation, character and distribution of ... 22–27, 44
clays in ... 114
brick from ... 114
coals in ... 22–27, 44–61, 64–78, 80–91, 92–95, 96–101
See also particular coals.
limestones in ... 126–129
sections of ... 22–23, 27, 92
figure showing ... 24
shales in ... 115
Alluvium, occurrence and character of ... 15
Ashley, G. H., work of ... 9

B.

Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, bench marks along ... 14
Barnesboro syncline, description of ... 24
B coal. *See* Lower Kittanning coal.
Bear Rock Run, coal at, analysis of ... 70
Beaverdale, coal at, section of, figure showing. 66
Beaverdam Run, coal at, section of, figure showing ... 66
Bench marks, location of ... 14
Bennington, coal at ... 69
coal at, analysis of ... 70
coking of ... 39
Bens Creek, coal on ... 49, 54
coal on, analysis of ... 70
section of, figure showing ... 55
Bens Creek (South Fork), coal on ... 43
Beulah Road, bench mark on ... 14
Big Bend, coal at ... 79, 81
section at ... 90
Blacklick Creek, coal on ... 22, 80–81
rocks on ... 20
section on, figure showing ... 24
Blacklick Creek district, clays of ... 113–114, 124–125
coals of ... 80–95
position of ... 79–80
extent of ... 78–79
Blacklick Creek seam. *See* Lower Kittanning coal.
Bolivar clay member, character and distribution of ... 25
Brick industry, firms engaged in ... 156
Briquetting tests, results of ... 87–88, 99–100
Brookville coal, character and distribution of. 23, 27, 41–42, 60–61, 77–78
sections of ... 60, 91, 92
figures showing ... 24, 78
See also Dirty A coal.
Buffalo sandstone member, character and distribution of ... 20
section of ... 17
Butler sandstone member, character and distribution of ... 25

C. Page.

Cambria, coal at and near ... 54, 55
coal at and near, section of, figure showing ... 55
Carboniferous system, occurrence and character of ... 16–29
Catskill formation, character and distribution of ... 29
section of ... 30
C coal, position of ... 80
See also Middle Kittanning.
C′ coal. *See* Upper Kittanning coal.
Cement. *See* Portland cement.
Cement coal. *See* Upper Kittanning coal.
Cement rock, natural, analyses of ... 128, 129
Chickaree, triangulation station at ... 11–12
Clapboard Run, clay on ... 117
coal on ... 49, 53, 58, 59, 60
sections of ... 60
figures showing ... 50, 55, 59
section of, figure showing ... 24
structure near ... 34
Clarion coal, character and distribution of. 23, 27, 61
section of ... 90, 91, 92
figures showing ... 24, 61
Clay, character and distribution of ... 113–126
See also Flint clays; Plastic clays.
Clay industry, firms engaged in ... 125–126
Coal, mining of, bibliography of ... 113
mining of, description of ... 102–112
figures showing ... 103, 106, 107, 108
occurrence and character of ... 35–101
Coal deposits, description of, by districts ... 42–101
Coke Yard coal. *See* Upper Freeport coal.
Coking tests, results of ... 72–73, 85, 98–99
Conemaugh formation, character and distribution of ... 16–22, 43
clays in ... 113, 114
coals in ... 19, 20–22, 43–44, 62–64
limestone in ... 126
members of, description of ... 18–22
sandstones of ... 129–130
view of ... 20
sections of ... 16–18, 21–22, 115–116
shales in ... 115
Conemaugh Furnace, coal from ... 101
coal from, analyses of ... 41–42
Conemaugh Furnace district, clays of ... 114
coals of ... 96–102
extent of ... 96
Conemaugh River, clays on ... 121
coals on ... 49, 51, 53, 56, 57–58, 65, 67, 69, 96, 97
commerce by ... 9–10
description of ... 9, 11
limestone on ... 127
rocks on ... 15, 28, 29
sections of ... 30
figure showing ... 101

Page.

Conemaugh slope, coal from 49
coal from, analysis of 42
section of, figures showing 50, 59
Conglomerate rock. *See* Pottsville formation.
Connoquenessing sandstone member, character and distribution of 27–28
Contours, structure, explanation of 30–31
Conveyor method, description of 105–112
Conveyors, description of 109–110
Coopersdale, clay at 118
coals at and near 27, 48, 51, 57, 60
section of, figure showing 59
sandstones near 130
section at 23
figure showing 24
Cramer, coal near, section of 96
Cupola tests, results of 73–75

D.

Dale, coal at 52, 54, 56
coal at, analysis of 40, 42
sections of, figures showing 50, 52, 55
Dalton Run, clay on 117
coal on 25, 54
section of 26
sections of, figure showing 55
D coal. *See* Lower Freeport coal.
Devonian system, occurrence and character of 29–30
Dilltown, clay near 124
clay near, analysis of 124
coal near 79, 83
section of, figure showing 89
D'Invilliers, E. V., on coals 80, 82–83, 92
on structure 82
Dirty A coal, analysis of 41
character and distribution of 39–40
See also Brookville coal.
Drainage, description of 9–10
relation of, to structure 10
Drainage, mine, methods of 104
Dunlo, coal at, section at, figure showing 66

E.

East Conemaugh, coal near, section of, figure showing 50
section near 47
Ebensburg, triangulation station at 12
Ebensburg quadrangle, coal of 68
coal of, analyses of 67, 70
Ebensburg sandstone. *See* Morgantown sandstone member.
E coal. *See* Upper Freeport coal.
Economic geology, account of 35–136
map showing ..... Pocket.
Ehrenfeld, coal at and near 37, 65, 66, 73
coal at and near, analysis of 41–42, 76
coking of 38, 72, 74
cupola tests of 73–75
section of, figure showing 66
producer-gas tests of 76
limestone near 126–127
rocks at and near 20, 21, 25
sections at 21–22, 65
figure showing 77
shale near 123

Page.

Elevations, location and height of 10–11
Elton, coals near 92
rocks near 19
Expedit post office. *See* Twin Rocks.

F.

Falls Run, coal at 58
Ferndale, coal near 52
"Ferriferous limestone," correlation of 127
Flint clays, analyses of 121, 122, 124
character and distribution of 113–117, 121–123, 124, 125
sections of 115–116, 122, 125
Four-foot coal. *See* Upper Freeport coal.
Foustwell, coal near 59, 60
section near 27
Franklin, coal at and near 51, 53, 58, 59, 60
coal from, analysis of 40, 42
coking of 39
sections of, figures showing 55, 59
structure near 34
Frankstown, coal near 53, 60
coal near, section of, figures showing 50, 57
Fulton, John, work of 43
Fye place, triangulation station on 13

G.

Gallitzin, coal near 65
coal near, section of, figure showing 66
Gallitzin coal, character and distribution of 20, 43, 64
Geography, outline of 9–10
Glass sand, analysis of 132
character and distribution of 131–132
Greenbrier limestone, character and distribution of 29
Grubtown, coal at, sections of, figure showing. 50

H.

Harlem coal, character and distribution of ... 19
Haulage, methods of 104–105
Headings, character of 102
Hinckston Run, coal on 49
coal on, section of, figure showing 50
iron ore on 133
Homewood sandstone member, character and distribution of 27–28

I.

Ingleside, bench mark at 14
coal near 43, 57
sections of, figures showing 59, 93
Ireland, W. G., work of 73
Iron ores, history of 132, 133
location of 18, 132
See also Johnstown ore.
Island Park, coal near 43
coal near, section of, figure showing 50

J.

Johnstown, bench marks at and near 14
clays near 116
coals in and near 25, 26, 35, 43, 58–59
analyses of 40, 42
sections of 26

Page.
Johnstown, coals in and near, sections of, figures showing ... 50, 55, 59
rocks near ... 19, 20, 21, 25
sections near ... 17–18, 22–23, 115–116
shales near ... 115
water supply of ... 135
See also Johnstown district.
Johnstown Basin, description of ... 32, 33
Johnstown district, clays of ... 113, 115–119
coals of ... 25, 43–61
analyses of ... 40–42
sections of, figures showing ... 50, 52, 55
description of ... 42
shales of ... 115, 119–121
analyses of ... 120, 121
brick from ... 119
Johnstown limestone member, character and distribution of ... 26, 127–129
clay below ... 117
analysis of ... 117
limestone of ... 127–129
analyses of ... 128
view of ... 48
Johnstown ore bed, analyses of ... 133, 134
character and distribution of ... 18, 21, 126, 132–135
sections of ... 135
Johnstown syncline, description of ... 32, 33

K.

Kernville, clay at ... 118
coals in and near ... 53, 56, 57, 58
sections of, figures showing ... 52, 59
section near ... 46
Kittanning sandstone member, character and distribution of ... 27
Kring, bench mark at ... 14
clay near ... 119
coal near ... 26, 28, 43, 54, 56, 58, 61
section of ... 61
figure showing ... 55
limestone near, analysis of ... 128
rocks near ... 15, 26

L.

Laurel Ridge, clays on ... 115, 116, 125
glass sand on, analysis of ... 132
iron ore on ... 133
location and occurrence of ... 10
rocks on ... 28, 29
Laurel Ridge anticline, description of ... 33–34
Laurel Run, coal on ... 57
coal on, section of, figure showing ... 59
limestone on ... 127
Lemon coal. *See* Upper Freeport coal.
Limestone, analyses of ... 128, 129
character and distribution of ... 125–129
Limestone coal. *See* Lower Freeport coal.
Little Conemaugh River, structure on ... 34
Llanfair, coal at ... 69
coal at, analysis of ... 70
section of ... 77
Lloydell, coal from, analyses of ... 37, 70
Long-wall system, description of ... 105–112
figures showing ... 106, 107, 108
recommendation of ... 105

Page.
Lower Allegheny coals, character and distribution of ... 39–40, 60–61, 77–78, 89–91, 95
See also Brookville coal; Clarion coal; Dirty A coal.
Lower Freeport coal, character and distribution of ... 25, 35, 51–52, 67, 80–82, 93, 96
sections of ... 22, 44, 46
figures showing ... 24, 52, 81
view of ... 24
Lower Freeport limestone member, character and distribution of ... 25, 127
view of ... 24
Lower Kittanning clay member, character and distribution of ... 27
Lower Kittanning coal, analyses of ... 36–37, 40–42, 58, 69–70, 71, 73, 76, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 95, 97, 99, 100
briquetting tests of ... 87–88, 97, 99–100
character and distribution of ... 27, 34, 36, 57–60, 69, 76–77, 82–83, 88, 94–95, 97, 101
clay below ... 117–118, 123, 125
analysis of ... 118
coke from, analyses of ... 73, 85, 99
coking tests of ... 38–39, 58, 72–73, 85, 98–99
cupola tests of ... 73–75
producer-gas tests of ... 76, 86
sections of ... 23, 47, 48, 77, 79, 101
figures showing ... 24, 59, 77, 89, 95, 101
steaming tests of ... 70–72, 83–85, 97, 98
structure map of ... Pocket.
explanation of ... 30
washing tests of ... 86–87, 99
"Lower Productive Coal Measures." *See* Allegheny formation.
Loyalhanna limestone member, character and distribution of ... 29
use of, for concrete ... 130–131
view of ... 28

M.

Mahoning coal, character and distribution of ... 22, 43, 64
section of ... 44
Mahoning sandstone member, character and distribution of ... 20–22
sections of ... 18, 21–22
use of, for building ... 130
Map, economic and structural, of Johnstown quadrangle ... Pocket.
Map, index, showing position of Johnstown quadrangle ... 9
Mardis Run, clay on ... 25, 114, 124
coal on ... 79, 80, 81, 82
section of, figure showing ... 81
Martin, Lawrence, work of ... 9
Mauch Chunk shale, character and distribution of ... 28–29
sections of ... 28, 29
view of ... 28
Mercer coal, character and distribution of ... 61
section of ... 61
Mercer shale member, character and distribution of ... 27–28
clays of ... 114, 119, 121–122, 125

Page.
Mercer shale member, clays of, analyses of. 121, 122
clays of, section of..... 119, 122, 125
quarry on, view of..... 28
section of..... 125
shale of..... 120–121, 125
analysis of..... 121
Middle Kittanning coal, character and distribution of..... 26, 44, 56–57, 82, 94, 96
sections of..... 79, 82, 96
figure showing..... 24
Mill Creek, clay on..... 117
coal on..... 51, 53, 54
iron ore on..... 133
section on..... 45
Miller coal. *See* Lower Kittanning coal.
Mineral Point, coal near..... 67, 77–78
coal near, sections of, figures showing.... 68, 77
view of..... 24
limestones at, analyses of..... 129
rocks near..... 15
Mineral Point district. *See* South Fork–Mineral Point district.
Mineral resources, description of..... 35–136
Mining, facility of..... 10
Mississippian series, occurrence and character of..... 28–29
Morgantown sandstone member, character and distribution of..... 19
section of..... 16
Morrellville, coal near..... 54, 58
Moxhom, coal near..... 54, 56, 93
coal near, analysis of..... 40, 42
sections of, figures showing..... 50, 55
limestone near..... 127

N.

Nanty Glo, bench mark at..... 14
coal of..... 78–79, 80, 81–82, 83
analyses of..... 40, 42
coking of..... 39
sections of, figures showing..... 81, 89
New Germany, coal near..... 67

P.

Paint Creek, coal near..... 60, 94
rocks near..... 15, 28, 60–61
sandstone near..... 130
section near..... 28
Peggys Run, coal on..... 51, 53, 56, 58, 60
section on, figure showing..... 24
Pennsylvania, cooperation with..... 9
Pennsylvania Railroad, bench marks along.. 14
Pennsylvanian series, occurrence and character of..... 16–28
Phalen, W. C., work of..... 9
Pillars, details of..... 103
Plastic clays, analyses of..... 117, 118
character and distribution of..... 114–115, 117–119, 123, 125
sections of..... 119
Platt, Franklin, on Summerhill mine..... 62–64
Pleasant Hill, clays on..... 116
Pleistocene deposits, occurrence and character of..... 15

Page.
Pocono formation, character and distribution of..... 29
topography of..... 10
Portland cement, materials for..... 26
Pottsville formation, character and distribution of..... 27–28
coals of..... 61, 78
sections of..... 61, 78
See also Mercer coal.
glass sand from..... 131–132
analysis of..... 132
sandstones of..... 130
section of..... 28
topography of..... 10
Producer-gas tests, results of..... 76, 86
Prospect Hill, shale on..... 120
Prossers Knob, coal in..... 43
section of..... 17–18
Puritan, coal at, analysis of..... 68
coal at, section of, figure showing..... 66

Q.

Quaternary system, occurrence and character of..... 15

R.

Recent deposits, occurrence and character of. 15
Red shale, character and distribution of..... 19, 20
Relief, description of..... 10–11
Rexis, coal near..... 80
coal near, section of, figure showing..... 81
River deposits, occurrence and character of.. 15
Room and pillar system, description of.... 102–105
Rooms, character of..... 102–103
Roxbury, coal at, section of, figure showing.. 50
Rummel Run, coal on, section of, figure showing..... 89

S.

St. Clair Run, coal on..... 49–50, 58
coal on, section of, figure showing..... 50, 59
Salix, bench mark at..... 14
Salt Lick Run, coal on, section of, figure showing..... 68
Saltsburg sandstone member, character and distribution of..... 19–20
Sams Run, coal on..... 49, 52, 54, 56
coal on, sections of, figures showing... 50, 52, 55
Sandstone, character and distribution of.. 129, 131
use of, for building..... 129
Sandy Ridge, clay from, analysis of..... 112
Scalp Level, bench mark at..... 14
coals near..... 91, 92
analysis of..... 41–42
limestone at..... 127
section at..... 92
Seidel, George, work of..... 13
Seward, bench mark at..... 14
clays at..... 114
coal at..... 96, 97, 101
analysis of..... 37
coking of..... 38, 39
section of, figure showing..... 101
glass sand near, analysis of..... 132

Page.
Shale, analyses of..... 120, 121
character and distribution of..... 113, 115, 119–121, 123
Sherbine farm, triangulation station on..... 12–13
Sheridan, clay near..... 114–115, 119
coal near..... 61
quarry near, view of..... 28
rocks near..... 15
shale near..... 115, 120–121
analysis of..... 121
Shingle Run, clay on..... 116
Six-foot coal, analysis of..... 41
character and distribution of..... 39–40
See also Brookville coal.
Solomons Run, coal on..... 49, 52, 54, 56, 58
coal on, analysis of..... 40, 42
section of, figures showing..... 52, 55, 57
South Fork (town), clay at..... 121–122, 123
clay at, section of..... 122
coal at and near..... 67, 76, 77–78
production of..... 69
sections of, figures showing..... 68, 77, 78
limestone near..... 126–127
rocks at and near..... 20, 25
section at, figure showing..... 24
water supply of..... 135
See also South Fork–Mineral Point district.
South Fork (river) coals on..... 35, 36, 64, 65, 70, 92
coals on, analyses of..... 40, 41–42, 70
sections of, figure showing..... 66
dam on, view of..... 20
rocks on..... 62
South Fork–Mineral Point district, clays of... 113, 114, 121–123
coals of..... 25, 62–78
position of..... 62
extent of..... 61
shales of..... 123
Spirit leveling, progress of..... 13–14
Springs, character and distribution of..... 135
Steaming tests, details of..... 70–72, 83–85, 98
Steaming value, comparative, of coals..... 37
Stony Creek, bench mark on..... 14
clays on..... 114, 116
coal on and near..... 49, 51, 53, 54, 55, 58, 61
analyses of..... 40, 42, 93, 94
sections of, figure showing..... 52
views of..... 24, 48
description of..... 10
limestone near..... 127
rocks on..... 15, 20, 25, 26, 28
sections on..... 44, 46–47, 48
figures showing..... 50
Stratigraphy, description of..... 14–30
Structure, representation of..... 30–31
Structure in Johnstown quadrangle, description of..... 31–34
map showing..... 31, Pocket
relation of, to drainage..... 10
Summerhill, coal near..... 62–64
coal near, analyses of..... 63, 64
section of..... 63
rocks near..... 19
Page.
Summerhill sandstone member, character and distribution of..... 18–19
Surveys, description of..... 11–14

T.

Ten Acre Bridge, coal at..... 53
coal at, section of, figure showing..... 55
Thomas, J. I., on mining at Vintondale..... 108–112
Tipples, character of..... 105
Topography, description of..... 10–14
Triangulation stations, description of..... 11–13
location of, map showing..... 11
Trout Run, coal on..... 68–69, 96
coal on, section of..... 96
figure showing..... 66
Twin Rocks, bench mark at..... 14
coal at or near..... 80, 81, 82, 85, 89–90
analysis of..... 40, 41, 42
sections of, figures showing..... 81, 89
rocks at..... 28
section at..... 90

U.

Upper Freeport coal, analyses of..... 35, 40, 65–66
character and distribution of..... 25, 35, 48–50, 64–67, 92–93
coking of..... 35
sections of..... 46, 47, 65
figures showing..... 24, 50, 66
view of..... 48
Upper Freeport limestone member, character and distribution of..... 25, 126–127
Upper Freeport sandstone. *See* Butler sandstone member.
Upper Kittanning coal, analyses of ..36, 40, 54, 67–68
character and distribution of..... 25, 35–36, 52–54, 56, 67–69, 93–94, 96
coking of..... 36
sections of..... 26, 45, 96
figures showing..... 24, 55, 68, 93
views of..... 24, 48

V.

Ventilation, methods of..... 104
Viaduct anticline, description of..... 33
Vintondale, bench mark at..... 14
by-product plant at..... 39
coal at or near..... 79, 80, 81, 82, 83
analysis of..... 40, 42
mining at, method of..... 105–112
method of, figures showing..... 106, 107, 108
rocks near..... 20
section near..... 79, 82
figure showing..... 89
water supply of..... 135

W.

Walnut Grove, coal at..... 54
coal at, section of, figure showing..... 55
Walsall, coal from, analysis of..... 40, 42
coal from, sections of, figures showing... 93, 95
Walsall Creek, coal on, section of, figure showing..... 93
Washing tests, cost of..... 86–87, 99

Page.
Water resources, character and distribution of 135–136
Weber, coal from 83, 90
coal from, analysis of 41–42
sections at 91
Wehrum, bench mark at 14
clay near 113–114, 124
coal near 22, 79, 80, 83
analyses of 37, 41–42, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88
briquetting tests on 87–88
coking tests on 38–39, 85
producer-gas tests on 86
sections of, figure showing 89
steaming tests on 83–85
washing tests on 86–87
water supply of 135
Wells, use of 135–136
Wess farm, triangulation stations on 12
Westover Basin, description of 34
Page.
West Virginia, coals of, analyses of 37
White Ash coal. *See* Lower Kittanning coal.
Wilmore, rocks near 18
shales near 115, 123
Wilmore Basin, coals in 26
coals in, sections of, figure showing 66
description of 32–33
section in 16–17
Wilmore sandstone member, character and distribution of 18
Wilmore syncline. *See* Wilmore Basin.
Windber, coals near 25, 35, 91–95
coals near, analysis of 41–42
section of, figure showing 95
water supply of 135
Windber district, coals of 92–95
coals of, position of 91–92
extent of 91

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
GEORGE OTIS SMITH, DIRECTOR

BULLETIN 448

GEOLOGY AND MINERAL RESOURCES

OF THE

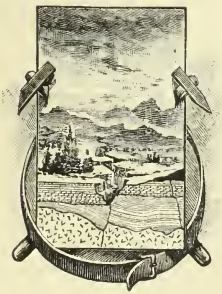
NIZINA DISTRICT, ALASKA

BY

FRED H. MOFFIT

AND

STEPHEN R. CAPPS



WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1911

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Preface, by Alfred H. Brooks	7
Introduction	9
Location and area	9
Outline of geography, geology, and exploration	9
Climate	13
Vegetation	15
Population	16
Transportation	16
Topography	18
Relief	18
Drainage	20
Descriptive geology	20
Stratigraphy	20
Sedimentary rocks	20
Rock types	20
Triassic system	21
Chitistone limestone	21
Character of the formation	21
Distribution	22
Thickness	23
Age	23
McCarthy shale	28
Character of the formation	28
Distribution	28
Thickness	29
Age	30
Jurassic system	31
Kennicott formation	31
Character of the formation	31
Distribution	36
Thickness	37
Age and correlation	38
Quaternary system	43
Preglacial conditions	43
Pleistocene ("Glacial") epoch	43
Character and extent of glaciation	43
Chitina glacier	45
Nizina glacier	46
Kennicott glacier	47
Retreat of the ice	48
Bench gravels	49
Present stream gravels	50
Postglacial erosion	51
Rock glaciers	52

Descriptive geology—Continued. Page.
Stratigraphy—Continued.
Igneous rocks 60
Triassic or pre-Triassic 60
Nikolai greenstone 60
Character of the formation 60
Petrographic description 61
Distribution 61
Thickness 62
Age 63
Jurassic or post-Jurassic igneous rocks 64
Quartz diorite porphyry intrusives 64
Lithologic character 64
Petrographic description 65
Distribution 66
Age 66
Structure 67
Areal geology 70
Historical geology 71
Sedimentary and igneous record 71
Physiographic record 74
Economic geology 75
History 75
Copper 77
Occurrence of the ores 77
General statement 77
Copper sulphide deposits in greenstone and limestone 78
Native copper associated with the greenstone 79
Placer copper 80
Origin of the copper deposits 81
Description of properties 83
Principal groups 83
Bonanza mine 84
Jumbo claim 90
Erie claim 91
Independence claims 92
Marvellous and Bonanza extension claims 92
Nikolai claim 93
Westover claim 95
Other prospects 97
Gold 98
Production 98
Source of the gold 98
Placer deposits 100
Dan Creek 100
Chititu Creek 103
Young Creek 107
Index 109

ILLUSTRATIONS.

		Page.
PLATE	I. Map of the Copper and Chitina valleys, showing location of area represented on the Nizina special map	9
	II. Nizina special map	In pocket
	III. Geologic map of the Nizina district	In pocket
	IV. *A*, Talus cones on east side of McCarthy Creek at base of limestone cliffs; *B*, Folded Triassic limestone-shale beds on southwest side of Copper Creek	18
	V. Limestone wall on west side of Nizina River near mouth of Chitistone River	22
	VI. *A*, Bowlders in conglomerate at base of Kennicott formation on south branch of Nikolai Creek; *B*, Sandstone of Kennicott formation on ridge south of Nikolai mine	32
	VII. *A* and *B*, Unconformity between Triassic and Jurassic formations	36
	VIII. Rock glacier on McCarthy Creek three-fourths of a mile above mouth of East Fork	56
	IX. *A*, Rock glacier near head of National Creek; *B*, Head of rock glacier on Little Nikolai Creek	56
	X. *A*, Rock glacier in a tributary of McCarthy Creek northeast of Bonanza mine; *B*, Detail of surface of rock glacier on tributary of McCarthy Creek	58
	XI. *A*, North end of Porphyry Peak, showing inclusions of black shale in porphyry; *B*, Porphyritic intrusions in black shale of Kennicott formation on McCarthy Creek	64
	XII. West side of ridge at Bonanza mine	84
FIGURE	1. Columnar section showing the formations represented on the geologic map of the Nizina district	11
	2. Columnar section of the basal part of the Kennicott formation exposed on Nikolai Creek	31
	3. Generalized columnar section of the Jurassic sediment in the Nizina district	37
	4. Diagram showing the overlapping of lenticular porphyry sills in the black shales of Copper Creek	65
	5. Sketch map of the area near the Bonanza mine, showing the limestone-greenstone contact, the location of the richer ores on the surface, and the tunnels	87
	6. Sketch showing form of ore body exposed in the upper northern tunnel at the Bonanza mine	88

Page.

FIGURE 7. Sketch showing form of ore body exposed in the southern tunnel at the Bonanza mine 89
8. Sketch of the ore body at the Jumbo claim 91
9. Sketch map of area in vicinity of Nikolai mine 94
10. Sketch map of a part of Chititu, Rex, and White creeks, showing the location of claims and the relation of bench and stream gravels 104
11. Diagram showing the method of operating hydraulic giants on Chititu Creek 106

PREFACE.

By Alfred H. Brooks.

The completion in 1908 of the reconnaissance surveys[a] of the two copper belts lying north and south of the Wrangell Mountains paved the way for more detailed investigations. As the southern or Chitina copper belt will be the first one to be developed, it was appropriate to begin the detailed investigation in this field. The funds available for this work made it possible to survey only a part of the Chitina belt, and after careful consideration it was decided to take up the work in the Nizina district. This conclusion was based on three considerations: (1) The information available indicated that the Nizina district afforded the best opportunities for solving the general geologic problems relating to the entire copper belt; (2) the mining developments of this part of the district were more extensive than elsewhere in the belt, which gave both better opportunities for observations on the occurrence of the ores and greater promise of soon reaching a productive basis; (3) investigation of this field made it possible to cover a placer district long productive in a small way and giving promise of larger output.

The descriptions set forth in this report apply to only about one-fourth of the Chitina copper belt, but the conclusions advanced as to occurrence of the ores will, it is believed, have value to the entire district. If the developments in the Chitina Valley continue, as is expected, further surveys will be undertaken as soon as circumstances permit.

The cost of detailed geologic maps is much increased by the fact that they must be preceded by detailed topographic surveys. The Nizina region was surveyed by D. C. Witherspoon in 1908, and the resulting map, which is an excellent piece of work done under very adverse conditions, accompanies this report (Pl. II, in pocket) and adds much to its value.

[a] Moffit, F. H., and Maddren, A. G., The mineral resources of the Kotsina-Chitina region, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 374, 1909; Moffit, F. H., and Knopf, Adolph, The mineral resources of the Nabesna-White River district: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 417, 1910.

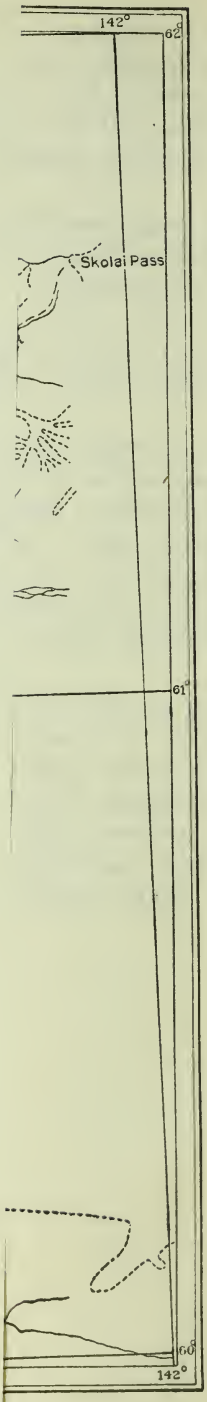
The general geology of this district as set forth in the report bears testimony to the accuracy of the observations and deductions of the earlier workers in this field. It is a significant fact that the stratigraphic subdivisions, suggested by Oscar Rohn, who did the pioneer work in this field, have found acceptance in the present analysis of the geologic sequence.

The most important conclusion bearing on the economic geology here presented is the fact that the copper-ore bodies appear to occur chiefly along a system of cross fractures which are at approximately right angles to the greenstone-limestone contact. These fractures occur along well-defined faults, at least one of which has been traced for a long distance. This may apply to the entire Chitina district and is worthy of consideration by the prospector.

These investigations also appear to indicate that the copper deposits are by no means confined to the immediate vicinity of the limestone-greenstone contact, as has usually been supposed. Though the most promising ore bodies thus far found do occur in this contact, evidence of strong mineralization has been found at a considerable distance from it. Another important fact brought out by this investigation is the occurrence of auriferous deposits in the Kennicott formation (Jurassic).

This report, although far more complete than any other report previously published on the district, is by no means exhaustive. With the progress of mining many facts will be ascertained which will make possible more definite statements on the geology of the mineral deposits. If the district develops into a great copper producer, a detailed study of the mining geology should be undertaken similar to those made of many of the mining camps of the Western States.

MAP OF THE COPPER AND CHITINA VALLEYS, SHOWING LOCATION OF AREA REPRESENTED ON NIZINA SPECIAL MAP.



SPECIAL MAP.

GEOLOGY AND MINERAL RESOURCES OF THE NIZINA DISTRICT, ALASKA.

By Fred H. Moffit and Stephen R. Capps.

INTRODUCTION.

LOCATION AND AREA.

The Nizina district takes its name from Nizina River, a northern branch of Chitina River, and lies in the eastern part of the Copper River drainage basin. Its position with reference to the coast and the Canadian boundary is shown on Plate I, opposite. That portion of it to which the following descriptions are confined is included between parallels 61° 12′ and 61° 37′ north latitude and meridians 142° 22′ and 143° west longitude and is represented on the Nizina special map. (See Pl. II, in pocket.) The area mapped, however, is irregular in outline and only 300 square miles in extent, so that it comprises little more than one-half of the quadrangle indicated.

OUTLINE OF GEOGRAPHY, GEOLOGY, AND EXPLORATION.

Chitina River rises in the high snow-covered mountains northwest of Mount St. Elias and adjacent to the international boundary line and flows westward between the Chugach and the Wrangell mountains till it unites with Copper River at a point 100 miles from the coast. (See Pl. I.) Most of its waters, however, are derived through its northern tributaries from the snow fields of the Wrangell group. Nizina River is the largest of these tributaries. It drains the southeastern part of the Wrangell Mountains and a small part of the area between Chitina River and the head of White River. From its principal source in Nizina Glacier it flows southward for 15 miles and then turns abruptly to the west and continues in that direction 20 miles farther before joining the Chitina. It therefore has a length of 35 miles, all minor curves and irregularities of its course being disregarded. The big westward bend of the river lies almost in the center of the area covered by the Nizina special map.

The two branches of the Nizina, with Chitistone and Kennicott rivers, contribute much the greater part of its waters. It is therefore chiefly of glacial origin. All these streams are swift and heavily laden with glacial débris. They have floored their valleys with broad gravel flats, over which they migrate from side to side, sometimes in a single channel, sometimes in a network of channels, and, besides building up their flood plains by the addition of new material, they are continually cutting away and redepositing the material already laid down. The principal small streams shown on the Nizina special map are McCarthy Creek, a tributary of Kennicott River, and Dan, Chititu, and Young creeks, eastern tributaries of Nizina River. Their valleys do not show such profound glacial erosion as the main streams, for the ice masses that occupied them were smaller, yet they nevertheless underwent extensive glaciation. All are characterized by broad, open valleys at their heads and by rock canyons in their lower courses.

The Wrangell Mountains, although a more or less distinct group, merge into the St. Elias Range on the southeast and are not there sharply defined from them. They are limited on the south and west and partly on the north by the valleys of Chitina and Copper rivers, and are separated from the Nutzotin Mountains on the northeast by a depression extending from the head of Copper River to the head of White River. The group trends in a northwest-southeast direction and its length is approximately double its width. Its greatest diameter is about 100 miles. Half a dozen or more peaks of unusual beauty and size, ranging in height from 12,000 to 16,200 feet, rise above the rugged snow-covered mass about them, and from one of these, Mount Wrangell, the group received its name. The Wrangell Mountains were formed by the erosion of a great mass of Tertiary and Recent lavas piled up on an older surface of very considerable relief and having its greatest development in the neighborhood of Mount Wrangell and Mount Sanford. The southeastern limit of these younger flows is probably somewhere in the vicinity of Skolai Pass and Chitistone River, although it is possible that they may extend still farther to the east. Thus the Wrangell Mountains consist essentially of lava flows and are distinct in their origin from the other mountains about them, all of which are made up principally of deformed sedimentary beds. The area shown on the Nizina special map is on the border line between the volcanic flows of the Wrangell Mountains on the northwest and the older sedimentary formations of the Chugach and St. Elias mountains on the south and southeast, but the rock formations developed in the area are mostly of sedimentary origin.

The formations represented on the accompanying geologic map (Pl. III, in pocket) are shown in the section forming figure 1. At the base is the Nikolai greenstone, made up of a great but unknown thickness of basaltic lava flows, many of which are amygdaloidal. On the top of these flows rests the Chitistone limestone, which was deposited without any interruption of structural uniformity between it and the underlying rocks. Its thickness exceeds 3,000 feet. The lower part of the Chitistone formation consists of thick, massive beds of gray limestone, but toward the top the limestone beds become thinner and small shale beds appear in increasing amount till they finally predominate. The Chitistone limestone thus passes by transition through thin-bedded shales and limestones into a black shale with only occasional thin limestone beds. Much of the shale was removed by erosion before the deposition of the succeeding formation, so that its thickness, though in doubt, can not be less than several thousand feet. Both the Chitistone limestone and the conformably overlying shales (McCarthy shale) are of Upper Triassic age.

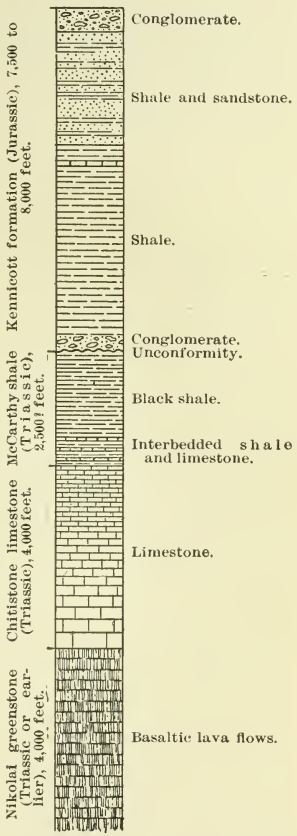


FIGURE 1.—Columnar section showing the formations represented on the geologic map of the Nizina district.

A period of uplift and erosion took place after the Triassic black shales were laid down and was not terminated till Upper Jurassic time, when deposition began once more. On the upturned edges of the Nikolai greenstone, the Chitistone limestone, and the overlying Triassic shales a great thickness of Upper Jurassic sediments (Kennicott formation) was deposited. They consist of conglomerate, sandstone, and black shale, but the shale predominates greatly over the conglomerate and the sandstone. The Jurassic sediments attain a thickness of at least 7,500 feet. They are the youngest of the bed-rock formations exposed within the mapped area. The later deposits consist of Quaternary sands, gravel, and silt, most of which are intimately connected in origin with the recent glaciation of the country.

The Nizina district has been the scene of igneous activity from Paleozoic time to the present. A great quantity of quartz diorite porphyry in the form of sills and dikes was intruded into the Jurassic rocks, but for some reason these intrusives rarely appear in the underlying formations. In some places the porphyritic intru-

sives are so extensively developed that they predominate over the shale, and the shale appears only as great black masses caught up in the light-colored intrusive rock.

Folding in greater or less degree has taken place in all the formations mentioned, but is far more pronounced in the older ones, particularly the Triassic shales, than in the Jurassic sediments. Within the area of the Nizina special map the greenstone, limestone, and shale formations dip rather steeply to the northeast. The Jurassic rocks, on the other hand, are tilted to the southwest or lie in broad, flat folds. All have been faulted and show local displacements of very considerable extent.

The earliest references to the geology of the Chitina Valley are found in the accounts of exploring expeditions made by Allen in 1885 and by Schwatka and Hayes in 1891. Such accounts, from the nature of the expeditions, could give only very incomplete information. The investigations by Rohn in 1899, however, laid the foundations of our present knowledge of the geology of the region. He recognized the formations that have been described and proposed the names Nikolai, Chitistone, and Kennicott. He also applied the name McCarthy Creek shale to the shale formation overlying the Chitistone limestone; but this was not adopted by Schrader and Spencer in their later work, since they believed that the shale should be divided into a number of formations.[a]

In 1900 Schrader and Spencer carried on a much more extended investigation of the geology and mineral resources of the Chitina Valley, and at the same time a topographic reconnaissance map was made by Gerdine and Witherspoon which was used as a base for the geologic map. Two years later (1902) Mendenhall visited the Kotsina and the Elliott Creek copper prospects, in the western part of the Chitina Valley, and published also some brief statements concerning the Nizina gold placers, although he had no opportunity to examine them in person. No further geologic work in the Chitina region was undertaken by the Federal Government till 1907, when interest in the copper resources of the country led to an examination by Moffit and Maddren of all the copper prospects in the valley, which resulted in some additional information concerning its geology and the occurrence of both copper and gold. The importance of the district led to the preparation of the Nizina special map by Witherspoon in 1908 and to the detailed geologic investigations in 1909, whose results are described in this report.

Many notes on the copper prospects, particularly the Bonanza mine, have appeared in the daily press and in mining magazines, and although most of them had only a temporary value as news a

[a] Schrader, F. C., and Spencer, A. C., The geology and mineral resources of a portion of the Copper River district, Alaska: Special publication U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901, note at bottom of page 32.

few are permanent contributions to the literature. An incomplete list of papers on the district follows:

ALLEN, Lieut. HENRY T. Report of an expedition to the Copper, Tanana, and Koyukuk rivers, in the Territory of Alaska, in the year 1885. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1887.

HAYES, C. WILLARD. An expedition through the Yukon district: Nat. Geog. Mag., vol. 4, 1892, pp. 117–162.

ROHN, OSCAR. A reconnaissance of the Chitina River and Skolai Mountains: Twenty-first Ann. Report U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 2, 1900, pp. 393–440.

SCHRADER, FRANK C., and SPENCER, ARTHUR C. The geology and mineral resources of a portion of the Copper River district, Alaska: Special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901.

MENDENHALL, WALTER C., and SCHRADER, FRANK C. The mineral resources of the Mount Wrangell district, Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 15, 1903.

MENDENHALL, WALTER C. Geology of the central Copper River region, Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 41, 1905.

MOFFIT, FRED H., and MADDREN, A. G. The mineral resources of the Kotsina and Chitina valleys, Copper River region: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 345, 1908, pp. 127–175. (This is a preliminary statement of results published in a more complete form in Bulletin 374.

KELLER, HERMAN A. The Copper River district, Alaska: Eng. and Min. Jour., vol. 85, No. 26, June, 1908, pp. 1273–1278.

MOFFIT, FRED H., and MADDREN, A. G. The Kotsina-Chitina region, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 374, 1909.

The field work on which the present report and the geologic map are based was done between July 1 and September 10, 1909, or in a little less than seventy days. It was greatly aided by a previous knowledge of the region and by the earlier work of Schrader and Spencer, but the time available was too short to permit an excursion up Nizina River to determine the relation between the Triassic and the Paleozoic sediments on Skolai Creek, or to make a careful study of the Kennicott formation south of Young Creek. Both localities merit careful investigation because of the light they may throw on the stratigraphy of the region. The chapter in this report dealing with the Quaternary system was written by Mr. Capps, who also did the office work on the geologic map. The task of preparing the remainder of the description of general geology and of economic geology fell to the senior author.

CLIMATE.

The climate of Chitina Valley is pleasanter in many ways than that of the Pacific coast region of Alaska. Temperature variations are far greater, but the precipitation is less and the number of cloudy, disagreeable days is very much smaller. No continuous records of temperature and precipitation are at hand, and it is probable that none have been kept, although observations for parts of several years have been made at Kennicott and were made available through the kindness of Mr. Stephen Birch.

The Copper River region, of which Chitina Valley is a part, as has been stated previously, is separated from the Pacific coast by a broad belt of mountains nearly 50 miles across and ranging in height from 6,000 to 10,000 feet. This belt is broken only by the narrow canyon-like valley of the lower Copper River, and by its influence on the warm moisture-laden air of the Pacific it becomes an important factor in the climate of Copper and Chitina basins. Another factor of importance is the still loftier Wrangell group of mountains on the north.

The seasons of Copper River basin are a long winter and a short summer, separated by a still shorter spring and fall. Spring comes sooner in the upper Chitina Valley than in the Copper River valley proper, as is shown by the earlier breaking up of the ice. Snow goes from the valley bottoms by the middle of May and from the lower hills by the first of June, but enough remains on the mountain sides till the first or middle of July to hinder prospecting. The summer climate resembles that of some of our Northern States in late spring. Frosts are not expected from the middle of June to the middle of July, but by the first of September the snow line begins to descend on the mountain sides. After the spring break-up the volume of water in the streams, particularly those fed by snow fields and glaciers, gradually increases until it reaches a maximum about the middle of July; it then decreases rapidly as the cooler nights come on. The July period of high water is not the result of increased precipitation but of the warm weather and the bright sun on the snow fields. Cloudy days always make a very appreciable difference in the daily rise of the glacier streams. Sometimes, however, the rivers are flooded by unusually heavy rains and occasionally in winter by the breaking out of water confined in the glaciers. This took place in the Kennicott Glacier early in 1909. During a period of unusually cold weather the outlet of the subglacial stream known as the "pothole" was closed and the water backed up under the glacier till the pressure was so great that the ice could not resist it. The water burst forth from a new outlet and flooded the Kennicott and Chitina rivers, tearing up the ice and piling it in confusion. Fortunately no one was freighting on the river, and the new ice which formed afterward gave the best sledding ever known by freighters on the Chitina. A similar flood caused by the breaking out of confined waters from Nizina Glacier took place a few years previously. The high water of July makes the fording of Nizina River difficult and at times dangerous, but this difficulty decreases in August, and by the first of September it is ended. Temperatures low enough to allow standing water to freeze are usual in the latter part of August, and early in September the glaciers cease to be active and the streams are clear and low.

Temperatures of 30°, 40°, or even 50° below zero are experienced in winter, and the snowfall is heavy, although much less than on the coast.

Observations at Kennicott, at the mouth of National Creek, and at the Bonanza mine, a little more than 2½ miles away and 4,000 feet higher, showed that the temperature at the mine during the coldest weather was always considerably higher than at the lower camp.

The winter of 1908–9 was unusual because of its low temperatures and light snowfall. It resulted from these conditions that the streams were in places frozen to the bottom, and the water, breaking out above, ran down over the top and froze to a great thickness. Some of the so-called glaciers on Chititu Creek had a thickness of 15 or 20 feet and did not melt away till early in the following July, thus seriously interfering with placer mining. Such conditions are common enough in the streams of northern Alaska but are unusual in the Nizina district.

VEGETATION.

In this region, as in many other parts of Alaska, vegetation flourishes in a way that would be surprising to those who think of the country only as a region of continual cold and ice. The growing season is short, but the summer days are warm and much longer than in lower latitudes, so that in the few favorable weeks plants grow rapidly. Grass comes up as soon as the snow goes and by the first or middle of June there is good feed for horses in favorable places. It is not abundant in the lower valley bottoms, even in midsummer, and the best of it is found at or above timber line. There is good feed in the upper part of all the small valleys. A small leguminous plant, locally called "pea vine," grows on the gravel bars and in the fall and late summer makes excellent forage. It is nourishing, and horses are so fond of it that they will leave almost anything else to get it. Grass loses its nourishing qualities as soon as the frost strikes it, and for this reason miners and prospectors start their horses to the coast about the first of September.

All the lower mountain slopes of the Nizina district and all the valley bottoms except the flood plains of streams are covered with spruce timber. The upper limit of timber ranges from 2,500 to 4,000 feet above sea and is highest on the gentle and rounded slopes away from the glaciers, such as the south slope of the ridge west of Rex Creek and on Sourdough Hill. Timber suitable for lumber grows on the lower ground. The best of it is found on the flats south of Nizina River, from Dan Creek to Young Creek, in the drier ground at the base of the hill slopes. Some of the trees reach a diameter of 18 inches and are tall enough to furnish two 16-foot cuts. Besides the spruce, there are cottonwood and birch, but these have

little value for lumber. A heavy growth of alders is usually found about timber line. Willows are present in the valleys, but are far less abundant in variety and amount than in northern Alaska. The "devilclub," so troublesome in the coast region, is found occasionally in the Nizina district also.

POPULATION.

During the early days of the Nizina gold excitement the white population of the district amounted to several hundred persons, but this number quickly decreased, as is usual in such stampedes. There are no accurate records of the number of early comers. Some of them were of the "hanger-on" class and stayed only long enough to learn that the district had little to offer them. The later population has been a variable one, but for the last two or three years it probably has not been far from 100. Most of this number were employed in the gold placers of Chititu and Dan creeks and the rest were prospecting for copper. With the completion of the railroad and the beginning of mining at Kennicott and the increased activity in the gold-producing streams that will come with better transportation the white population will increase. There is no permanent native population. Nizina River valley was the hunting ground of Chief Nikolai, and his house was near the mouth of Dan Creek, but since his death several years ago superstition has kept his followers from returning there until within the last two summers. The permanent dwellings of the Indians are on Copper River, where they spend most of the winter and where they fish in summer. It seems to have been the custom of many to leave the fishing ground only during the time of the fall hunting or in the trapping season.

TRANSPORTATION.

To provide satisfactory means and routes of transportation has been from the beginning the most serious difficulty the prospectors in Chitina Valley have had to meet. Up to the present time all supplies and equipment for the Nizina district have been brought from Valdez in winter by sled. The route usually followed in freighting is from Valdez to Tonsina over the Government trail, then by way of Tonsina, Copper, Chitina, and Nazina rivers to the destination. Occasionally, however, this route has been varied by crossing Marshall Pass at the head of Lowe River and following Tasnuna and Copper rivers to the mouth of the Chitina; but this latter route was given up because of the difficulties encountered on Tasnuna River and of the fact that the Government trail to Fairbanks is kept open all winter by the regular travel. The great advantage of the route lay in the ability to haul very heavy loads on the

smooth ice of Copper River, thus saving time and horse feed, the two great items of expense, on this part of the trip. This route probably would have been used exclusively for freighting to Chitina Valley if a good trail down Tasnuna River had been available for travel.

The time consumed in carrying large outfits from Valdez to the Nizina district is from two to three months. The cost of freighting has varied from slightly less than 7 cents to 30 cents per pound, depending on the size of the outfit and the condition of the trail. The lower figure of cost is an exceptional one and is not possible under any other than the most favorable conditions. Probably about 10 cents per pound is an average cost for the larger companies when the trail is good.

Summer travel is over a route different from that followed in winter. The summer trail leaves the Government trail at Tonsina and crosses Copper River at the mouth of Tonsina River. From there it passes to the north side of Chitina Valley, entering the mountains by way of Kuskalana River and crossing Kuskalana and Fourth of July passes to Kennicott Glacier and River. No freighting is done on the summer trail, but the mail goes in over it twice each month.

Within the Nizina district trails connect the various camps and enable the miners to travel from one to another without serious difficulty, although there is little communication between them during the working season. The trails are all shown on the topographic map and need not be described in detail. The one most traveled is that over Sourdough Hill from McCarthy Creek to Chititu and Dan creeks. Because it is less swampy, it is used by many in preference to the lower trail around the west end of the hill, but the hill is steep and the climb is hard. One great difficulty with this trail is the necessity of fording Nizina River. A proposal to bridge the river at a point several miles below the present fording place will probably be carried out in the near future.

It is seen from the figures previously given that the cost of transportation is a heavy tax on all work done in the Nizina district. This expense has not only hindered copper prospecting but has delayed the installation of placer mining machinery also. This burden will be much lightened in a short time, however, for railroad communication with the coast is promised early in 1911. Construction work on the Copper River and Northwestern Railway was commenced under the present management at Cordova in 1908 and since that time has been pushed as rapidly as conditions permitted. In 1908 the tracks were advanced from Cordova to within 10 or 12 miles of Abercrombie Rapids, although the lower steel bridge over Copper River was not erected till the following spring. In 1909 the piers for a second bridge, at the river crossing between Childs

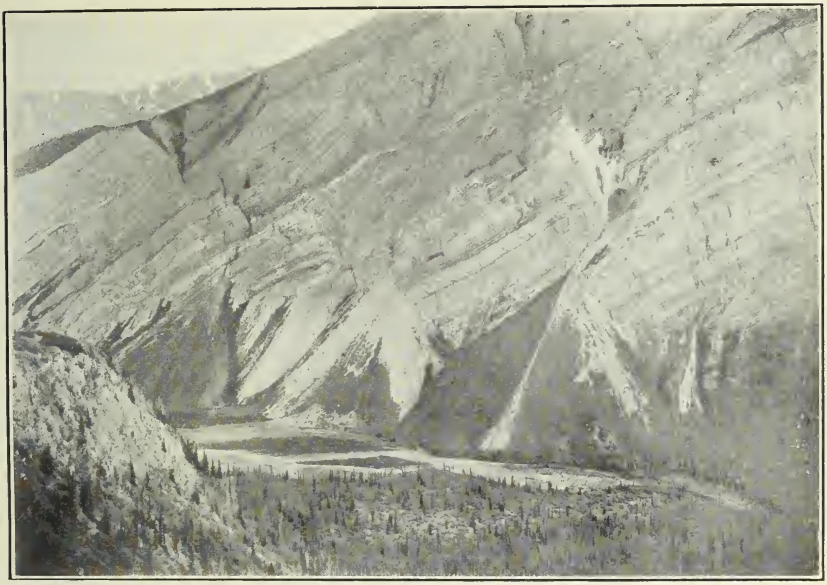
Glacier and Miles Glacier Lake, were built and the tracks were advanced to Tiekel River. With the completion of this part of the road most of the slow and difficult work was ended and there remained only 90 miles of track construction to reach Kennicott. This includes a third bridge over Copper River, between the mouths of Chitina and Kotsina rivers, where it is proposed to place a temporary pile bridge while the construction of piers for the permanent bridge is going on. The building of the railroad has not involved any unusually difficult construction problems for modern railroad engineering, and the greatest obstacles to operation will doubtless arise from weather conditions. Along Copper River the tracks are particularly exposed to obstruction by snowslides, and adequate provision for their protection will have to be made. Above Abercrombie Rapids the tracks follow the river bank on the débris-covered edge of Baird Glacier. The ice is overlain by a thin coating of loose rock and is overgrown with alders. It appears to have no motion, but it is probable that more or less melting goes on and that the tracks will require more attention and repair than in other places. Some have expressed uncertainty concerning the effect of the terrible winter winds that sweep down the lower part of Copper River valley and have even predicted that they would prevent the running of trains, but such difficulties have been overcome elsewhere and probably will be here. Railroad communication with the coast promises greater aid in the development of the Copper River valley than any other single enterprise yet undertaken.

TOPOGRAPHY.

RELIEF.

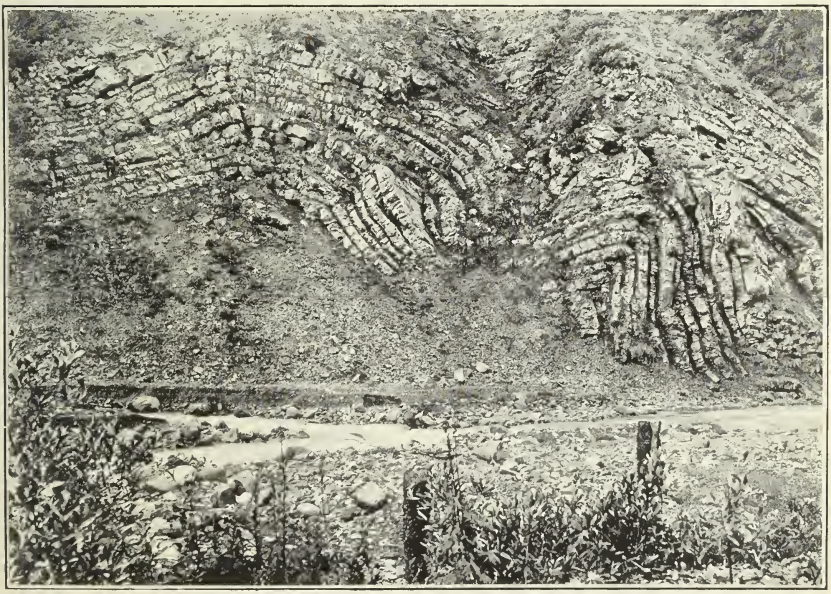
The Nizina district has been described as situated at the southeastern border of the Wrangell Mountains, in the region where this group merges into the Coast Range Mountains to the east and south. The mapped area does not extend far enough north or east to take in any of the larger snow fields or glaciers or to include the highest mountains of the Wrangell group or Coast Range, although peaks of 7,000 or 8,000 feet are shown. To the southeast is the broad lowland formed by the junction of Chitina and Nizina valleys. The map (Pl. II, in pocket) shows as the major features of relief two mountain areas separated by the valley of Nizina River, but other topographic forms are even as striking as these, particularly the steep, straight valley walls, the deep gulches tributary to Young Creek, and the peculiar wormlike rock glaciers.

Three geologic elements are involved in the relief—the high mountain masses, the gravel-covered lowlands, and the gravel benches or terraces. Glacial erosion and the character of the rock formation have



A. TALUS CONES ON EAST SIDE OF McCARTHY CREEK, AT BASE OF LIMESTONE CLIFFS.

See page 19.



B. FOLDED TRIASSIC LIMESTONE AND SHALE BEDS ON SOUTHWEST SIDE OF COPPER CREEK.

See page 28.

been strikingly effective in giving form to the mountains. The work of the ice in straightening and steepening valley walls is conspicuous on Chitistone River and the adjacent part of Nizina River and on the upper part of McCarthy Creek. It is also seen in the numerous cirque valleys in which most of the streams head. McCarthy Creek is a typical example of a glaciated valley in this district. Its upper part is a broad, open, U-shaped valley with gravel floor. Its lower part is a succession of rock canyons with high gravel terraces. These features, except the gravel terraces, are characteristic of every glaciated valley of the region and are probably the result of rapid head valley glacial erosion and the effort of the stream to establish a more advantageous grade after the melting of the ice.

Different kinds of rock were affected in different degrees by the glacial ice and by subsequent erosion. The massive Chitistone limestone forms precipitous cliffs and tall spires, as on Dan Creek, Chitistone and Nizina rivers, McCarthy Creek, and at Bonanza mine. The greenstone slopes are not so steep and are more uniform in surface contour; they rarely form perpendicular walls such as are common in the limestone exposures. The shales give smooth, rounded outlines where they have undergone glacial erosion and sharp, jagged peaks and ridges with steep, bare slopes where they have been subjected to attack by weather alone. These two features are seen in the shale area south of Dan Creek. Between Dan Creek and White Gulch the shale mountains are characterized by angular outlines and bare slopes, but south of Chititu Creek the same shales were overridden by the ice streams from Chitina Valley and present smooth, rounded contours. This feature, however, has been modified by intense postglacial erosion, with the production of such topographic forms as Blei Gulch and the deep gashes cut by tributaries of Young Creek. A different topographic form, dependent on the structure of the upper shale formation, is the flat top of the ridge on the west side of Nizina River directly opposite the mouth of the Chitistone. It is due to the almost horizontal position of the sandstone beds that form the base of the Kennicott in this locality.

Talus deposits cover the lowest mountain slopes and reach their greatest development at the bases of large porphyry exposures and limestone cliffs. In this connection it should be said that the occurrence of a small proportion of porphyry in talus slopes and rock glaciers is usually sufficient to obscure other kinds of rock. Talus fans of noticeable symmetry have been built up below gulches in the limestone formation east of McCarthy Creek (Pl. IV, *A*) and north of Chitistone River. The peculiar detrital accumulations here called rock glaciers are confined to the high mountainous parts of the district but are widely distributed in the mapped area. They are described in the discussion of Quaternary deposits.

The second important element in the relief of the district is the gravel-covered valley lowland areas. Their distribution is readily seen on the map. They represent the accumulated deposits of present glacial erosion and the reworked deposits of former glaciation, together with the contributions of present stream erosion. With the older bench gravels they occupy fully one-third of the mapped area. The bench gravels, which are of glaciofluvial origin, are most conspicuous about the mouth of Dan Creek, the lower parts of Chititu and Young creeks, and on McCarthy Creek, but are present in other places also.

DRAINAGE.

Nearly all the larger streams of the Nizina district originating within the mountain area head in glaciers, and those that do not thus head nevertheless receive much of their water from melting snow banks throughout all or part of the year. All the streams are swift and subject to rapid variations in quantity of water flowing in them. Nizina River falls 600 feet in 19 miles within the mapped area, or at the rate of 31.5 feet per mile. McCarthy Creek has a grade of 100 feet per mile and Chititu Creek 180 feet per mile in their lower courses.

In contrast with the well-drained mountain areas, the lowlands are swampy and dotted with numerous ponds and lakes. They are covered with an inferior growth of spruce and with moss that acts like a sponge to hold water and prevent its rapid run-off. The surplus water from the lakes is carried away in sluggish clear-water streams. These features are characteristic of the southwest part of the mapped area. Trails in such country are often almost impassable for horses in summer, and for that reason they keep to the gravel bars or the ridges.

DESCRIPTIVE GEOLOGY.

STRATIGRAPHY.

SEDIMENTARY ROCKS.

ROCK TYPES.

It has already been stated that the Nikolai greenstone is the oldest rock formation exposed in the Nizina district and that it is conformably overlain by the Chitistone limestone and a shale formation (McCarthy shale), both of which are of Triassic age. It was further stated that a great thickness of shale of Jurassic age—the Kennicott formation—rests unconformably upon the upturned edges of the greenstone, limestone, and shale; that these formations, particularly the Kennicott, were intruded by light-colored porphyritic igneous rocks; and that the most recent deposits of the district are unconsolidated gravels of Quaternary age.

The Nikolai greenstone, because of its relation to the Chitistone limestone, its importance as a geologic formation, and its structure, might fittingly be described in connection with the sedimentary formations. Inasmuch, however, as it is of igneous origin, its description will be taken up later in its proper place in the account of the igneous rocks.

TRIASSIC SYSTEM.

CHITISTONE LIMESTONE.

CHARACTER OF THE FORMATION.

The name Chitistone was applied by Rohn to the great Triassic limestone of the Nizina district because he found the limestone best developed along the Nizina in the vicinity of the mouth of Chitistone River. This name was later adopted by Schrader and Spencer and has since come into general use. The Chitistone limestone is a conspicuous formation occurring all along the south flanks of the Wrangell Mountains from Kotsina River to Dan Creek and probably extending into the valley of the upper Chitina. In the Nizina district the lower part of the Chitistone formation is made up of thick, massive beds of a dark-gray or bluish-gray color but weathering to a lighter gray on the surface. The upper part, on the other hand, is made up of thinner beds, and this thinness increases toward the top. A slight difference in chemical composition between the upper and the lower parts of the Chitistone limestone is indicated by the brownish-yellow weathering of the upper part. Changing conditions of sedimentation are indicated, too, in a more noticeable way by the appearance of thin shale beds at the top of the formation. This limestone is the oldest of the sedimentary formations exposed within the mapped area and lies on the Nikolai greenstone conformably, exactly as if both were sedimentary formations deposited in the same sea and the limestone had been laid down on the greenstone before any movement or disturbance had taken place in the greenstone. This conformable relation holds true wherever the contact has been examined, although in many places it is found that there has been movement of the two formations along this contact surface. In several places a bed of red and green shale with a maximum thickness of about 5 feet was found to intervene between the limestone and the greenstone, but it is not known whether the shale is widely distributed or not, since the limestone-greenstone contact is nearly everywhere covered with talus. The shale is present in the vicinity of Bonanza mine and on Kennicott Glacier.

Excellent sections of the Chitistone limestone are seen on the west side of Nizina River, opposite the mouth of Chitistone River, and on McCarthy Creek. On McCarthy Creek the lower part of the forma-

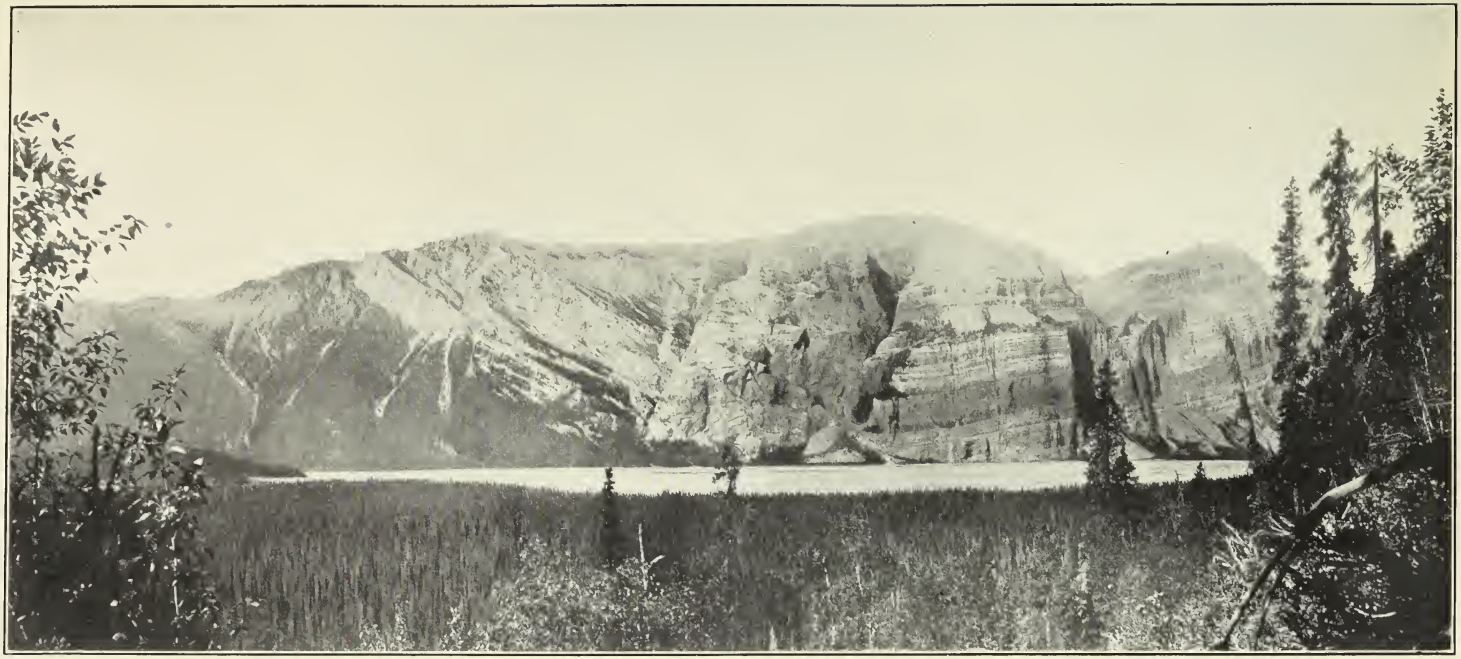
tion, which dips about 30° NE., consists of massive beds of bluish-gray limestone, making up approximately three-fifths of the total thickness. Above this lower massive portion is a succession of more thinly bedded limestone strata weathering a rusty-yellow color and making up the remaining two-fifths of the formation. The thickness of individual beds decreases from the base toward the top, as has been stated, and near the top thin beds of black shale make their appearance. Then comes an indefinite thickness, approximately 300 feet, of thin-bedded limestone and shale overlain in turn by a great thickness of black shale, which Rohn called the McCarthy Creek shale.[a] It is thus seen that there is a transition from the bedded limestones below through interbedded thin limestones and shales to shale above, and it is readily understood that difficulty arises in choosing a definite dividing plane between these two formations.

The section on Nizina River shows the same features as that on McCarthy Creek, but here the whole syncline is exposed, revealing the steep northward dip on the south, the horizontal bedding in the middle, and the gentle southward dip on the north. The bedding features are well shown in the center of the syncline for the whole succession from base to overlying shales. (See Pl. V.)

DISTRIBUTION.

The Chitistone limestone occupies a narrow band along the northeastern edge of the mapped area, extending southeastward from Kennicott Glacier (at the northern limit of the area) to the head of Copper Creek. The dip of the limestone along its southern boundary is to the northeast and decreases from approximately 30° in the vicinity of Kennicott Glacier and McCarthy Creek to only a few degrees on Dan and Copper creeks. It results from this that the width of the limestone belt is much less at the glacier and on McCarthy Creek than on Dan Creek. The limestone belt has a width of slightly more than 1 mile on the ridge between McCarthy Creek and East Fork, which is probably less than its width at any place between McCarthy Creek and Kennicott Glacier. East of Nizina River the limestone caps the mountains between Dan Creek and Chitistone River in the form of a broad, shallow syncline fully 5 miles wide. The continuity of limestone exposures is interrupted in many places by valley gravel and talus deposits, but aside from separate limestone areas produced in this way there are a number of small detached areas whose separation from the principal limestone masses represented on the map is due to other causes. Such an area is seen at the head of Nikolai Creek and owes its isolation to the fact that the overlying Kennicott formation has been only partly eroded. If all of the conglomerate and sandstone of the Kennicott

[a] Rohn, Oscar, A reconnaissance of the Chitina River and the Skolai Mountains, Alaska: Twenty-first Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 2, 1900, p. 426.



LIMESTONE WALL ON WEST SIDE OF NIZINA RIVER NEAR MOUTH OF CHITISTONE RIVER.

The limestone overlies the Nikolai greenstone on the left. See page 22.

were removed, the small limestone area would be found to be part of the larger area to the east. Another isolated area lies south of Dan Creek, but in this case the limestone was separated from the main limestone mass to the north and reached its present position through faulting.

THICKNESS.

The two localities on Nizina River and McCarthy Creek afford favorable opportunities for measuring the thickness of the Chitistone limestone, since in both places the whole formation is present. One element of uncertainty presents itself, however—the difficulty of choosing the somewhat arbitrary plane to separate the limestone from the overlying shales; yet, since the intervening thin-bedded shale-limestone succession is probably less than 300 feet thick, the error in measurement, and the results are the same as on Nizina River. A 5 per cent, as will be seen later.

The base of the limestone in the central part of the syncline on Nizina River is hidden by river gravels, but since the curve of the beds is small and regular and greenstone is exposed along the base of the cliffs only a short distance north and south of the axis of the syncline, it is evident that almost the complete section of the limestone is shown in one vertical column. This section gives a thickness of 3,000 feet for the Chitistone limestone in its type locality. The McCarthy Creek section gives an almost equally good chance for measurement, and the results are the same as on Nizina River. A section north of Chitistone River gives a greater thickness than 3,000 feet, but as in this locality the limestone has been folded and faulted it is believed that the figures there are less reliable than those first given.

Exposures of Chitistone limestone extend westward to Kotsina River, less than 15 miles from Copper River, but the thickness is much less than in the Nizina district and in places is not more than 200 or 300 feet. No evidence has been collected to show that the limestone becomes progressively thinner from the east toward the west in Chitina Valley, and, although that may be the case, the decreased thickness in the valleys of Kotsina River and Elliott Creek may be due to erosion before deposition of the Kennicott formation took place.

AGE.

The age of the Chitistone limestone was long in doubt but is now known to be Upper Triassic. This age determination is based on fossil collections made in 1907 at a number of localities along the limestone area from Kotsina River to the Chitistone and on larger collections made in the Nizina district in 1909. All the collections were submitted to T. W. Stanton for determination and the forms present are contained in the following lists. These lists include,

however, only the species collected within the area of the Nizina special map. The numbers given the specimens are the catalogue numbers in the National Museum. Concerning the collection of 1907 Dr. Stanton says in part:

> The collection is small and fragmentary, but it has proved sufficient to show quite conclusively that the beds in question are of Triassic age. The ammonites, especially, are all characteristic Triassic types, and the few brachiopods obtained are also Mesozoic. There is no indication of Paleozoic fossils in any part of the section represented. * * *
>
> The following lists give the form recognized from each locality. In most cases specific identifications have not been possible, but this does not lessen the accuracy of the age determination:

Bonanza mine and Bonanza Creek:

4808; Nos. 9, 14 to 19, 21, 22—

Undetermined corals.
Terebratula sp.
Spiriferina sp.
Hinnites? sp.
Pseudomonotis subcircularis (Gabb)?

Jumbo Creek, near the Bonanza mine:

4809; Nos. 10 to 13, 20—

Pentacrinus sp.
Terebratula sp.
Avicula? sp.
Arcestes? sp.

The last two named are certainly Triassic types of ammonites and probably belong to the genera to which they are provisionally assigned.

South side of Chitistone River:

4810: Nos. 23, 24—

Spiriferina? sp.
Halobia sp.
Arcestes? sp.
Tropites? sp.

The last two are Triassic ammonites provisionally identified from imperfect specimens.

The list of fossils collected in 1909 is here arranged by localities. Dr. Stanton says of them:

> The fossils from the Chitistone confirm the recent determinations of that horizon and definitely prove that it is of Triassic age.

Jumbo Creek:

6300—

Base of Chitistone limestone corals? Too obscure for identification.

McCarthy Creek:

6330—

Terebratula sp. Probably Triassic.

Nikolai Creek:

6303—

Halobia sp.; related to H. superba Mojsisovics.
Undetermined Pelecypod.

6306—

Juvavites? sp.
Arcestes sp.

Nikolai Creek—Continued.
6312—
Pseudomonotis subcircularis (Gabb).
Arcestes sp.
Juvavites? 2 sp.
Orthoceras sp.
Chitistone River:
6319—
Tropites sp.
(Lower part of Chitistone limestone.)
6320—
Halobia superba.
Arcestes.
6333—
Halobia superba Mojsisovics?
Arcestes sp.
Copper Creek:
6321—
Halobia superba Mojsisovics?

When Schrader and Spencer studied the geology of the Chitina Valley in 1900 they found no fossils in the Chitistone limestone and were unable to give conclusive evidence concerning the age of the limestone. They, however, correlated it with the massive Carboniferous limestone at the head of White River, first described by Hayes[a] and later by Brooks.[b]

This limestone is exposed on the north side of Skolai Creek, one of the eastern tributaries of Nizina River, and is conspicuous in Skolai Pass, between the heads of Skolai Creek and White River. The correlation of limestones so similar in appearance and so near to each other seemed to have much in its favor, but better opportunities for study have proved it to be incorrect.

Although the Chitistone limestone can not be correlated with the limestone on White River, it is known that limestone similar in appearance and of the same age as the Chitistone limestone is present on the north side of the Wrangell Mountains, in the depression between them and the Nutzotin Mountains. There is, however, no such development of Triassic limestone there as is seen in the Chitina Valley, and the known exposures are confined to one small area.

A table of correlations for the Mesozoic sedimentary rocks of Alaska is here given, from which it appears that Triassic rocks, so far as they are known at present, are confined to the region south of the Alaska Range. Aside from the Chitina region, Triassic rocks probably have their greatest development in the Cook Inlet region, where they occur principally in the form of cherts with a small proportion of shale and limestone beds.

[a] Hayes, C. Willard, An expedition through the Yukon district: Nat. Geog. Mag., vol. 4, 1892, p. 140.

[b] Brooks, Alfred H., A reconnaissance from Pyramid Harbor to Eagle City, Alaska: Twenty-first Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 2, 1900, p. 359.

Correlation of the Mesozoic sedimentary rocks of Alaska.

		Nizina district (Moffit and Capps, 1909).	Nabesna-White River district (Moffit and Knopf, 1908[a]).	Talkeetna and Matanuska district (Paige and Knopf, 1906[b]).	Cook Inlet and Alaska Peninsula (Stanton and Martin, 1904[c]).	Alaska Range (Brooks, 1902[d]).	Southeastern Alaska (Wright and Wright, 1908[e]).	Yukon Basin (Brooks and Kindle, 1908[f]).	Northern Alaska (F. C. Schrader, 1901[g])
Cretaceous.	Upper				Marine and nonmarine shales and sandstones, conglomerates, coal.			Conglomerates, sandstone, slate, and shale, cut by granite.	Bergman series (?) Nanushuk series. Sandstones with some conglomerate, slate, and lignite.
					—Unconformity—			—Unconformity—	—Unconformity—
	Lower.			Limestone.			Shale, conglomerate limestone, graywacke and slate overlying andesitic lavas, tuffs, breccia, conglomerate, and sandstone, which in turn rest on granite intrusives.	Siliceous slate and quartzites, with some tuff and a little limestone, cut by basic dikes.	Anaktuvuk series and Koyukuk series. Feldspathic sandstones and some conglomerate. Impure limestone, sandstone, slate, and igneous rocks.
								—Unconformity—	—Unconformity—
Jurassic.	Upper.	Kennicott formation. Conglomerate shale, sandstone.	Banded slates, graywackes, and conglomerate, with some limestone and sandstone.	Shales, sandstones, conglomerates, tuff, and arkose, with coal.	Naknek formation. Conglomerate, arkose, sandstone, and shale, with interstratified andesite flows.				Corwin series. Gray sandstone, limestone and shale, quartzite, and some coal.
		—Unconformity—	—Unconformity—	—Unconformity—					—Unconformity—
	Middle.			Shales, sandstone, and conglomerate, with coal. Andesitic greenstone. tuffs, agglomerates and breccias, rhyolites, dacites, and tuffs.	Enochkin formation. Shales and sandstones, with some conglomerate beds.	Tordrillo group. Compact feldspathic sandstones and grits, slate, and some limestone.			

				—Unconformity—	—Unconformity—	—Unconformity—			
	Lower.				Tuffs and sandstones.				
					—Unconformity—				
Triassic.	Upper.	McCarthy shale, Chitistone limestone.	Limestone.		Thin bedded cherts, limestones, and shales usually much contorted and with many intrusive masses. Base not seen.	Skwentna group, age undetermined. Igneous rocks, with some slates and limestones.	Argillaceous limestones and calcareous sandstones.	Limestones and slates.	
						—Unconformity—			

a Moffit, Fred H., and Knopf, Adolph, Mineral resources of the Nabesna-White district, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 417, 1910, p. 16.
b Paige, Sidney, and Knopf, Adolph, Geologic reconnaissance of the Matanuska and Talkeetna basins, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 327, 1907, p. 10.
c Stanton, T. W., and Martin, G. C., Mesozoic section on Cook Inlet and Alaska Peninsula: Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 16, 1905, p. 410.
d Brooks, Alfred H., The Mount McKinley region, Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 70, 1911, p. 591.
e Wright, F. E., and Wright, C. W., The Ketchikan and Wrangell mining districts, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 347, 1908, p. 34.
f Brooks, Alfred H., and Kindle, E. M., Paleozoic and associated rocks of the upper Yukon, Alaska: Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 19, 1908, p. 263.
g Schrader, F. C., A reconnaissance of northern Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 20, 1904, p. 53.

McCARTHY SHALE.

CHARACTER OF THE FORMATION.

The term McCarthy Creek shale was used by Rohn to designate the black shales immediately overlying the Chitistone limestone, and the formation was described by him as "a series of soft, black, highly fissile shales and slates."[a]

The formation as it is exposed in the Nizina district is essentially a shale formation, although at its base are numerous thin limestone beds forming part of the transition zone at the top of the Chitistone limestone or the base of the shale. Thin beds of limestone are found interstratified with the shales wherever they are exposed within the mapped area, but are not abundant and form only a small proportion of the whole. The top of the McCarthy shale has not been recognized. Bedding is easily distinguished in most places either by the presence of the thin limestones or of thin limy shale beds with surfaces highly colored by weathering. Some of the smooth bare hilltops about the eastern tributaries of East Fork are marked with exceedingly intricate patterns produced by the colored beds, for the McCarthy shale is found to be intensely folded wherever it has been examined, and if the folds are cut by planes or curved surfaces making slight angles with their axes the patterns appear.

The folding in the McCarthy shale strongly contrasts with both that of the Chitistone limestone and that of the Kennicott formation. Pronounced folding took place in the upper thin-bedded part of the limestone in a few localities. It begins to be conspicuous in the transition beds at the base of the shale (see Pl. IV, *B*, p. 18) but was never found in the massive beds at the base of the limestone. The limestone beds were more able than the shale to withstand the pressure that tended to deform them, and that ability increased as the thickness of the beds increased. Another factor of strength lay in the massive flows of the Nikolai greenstone, which lent its support to the heavy beds of the limestone in resisting deformation.

DISTRIBUTION.

The principal area of McCarthy shale represented on the geologic map (Pl. III, in pocket) lies between McCarthy Creek and Nizina River, at the north edge of the sheet. This, according to Rohn, is the south edge of a succession of shales extending north in the McCarthy Creek valley for a distance of 6 or 8 miles and constituting the type locality for the formation. This is not only the largest area of the shales examined but it also shows a greater thickness than any other area, for it suffered less from erosion before the Kennicott formation was deposited.

[a] Rohn, Oscar, A reconnaissance of the Chitina River and the Skolai Mountains, Alaska: Twenty-first Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 2, 1900, p. 426.

The McCarthy shale and the shale-limestone transition zone below it form the base of the mountains south of Copper Creek. The formation is separated from the overlying Kennicott formation by a distinct unconformity, but the black shales of the two formations are so similar in appearance that they were not distinguished until the detailed work of 1909 was undertaken. Only the base of the McCarthy shale is exposed on Copper Creek. The upper part was removed by erosion before deposition of the Kennicott began. A smaller area of the Triassic shale forms the mountain top north of Texas Creek, and the formation is present in other places overlying the limestone north of Dan Creek but does not fall within the boundaries of the mapped area.

THICKNESS.

Accurate measurements of the thickness of the McCarthy shale were not obtained, because it is probable that only a part of the total thickness is exposed within the mapped area. It is possible, moreover, that the complete original section is no longer represented in this district, for a long erosion interval intervened between the deposition of the Triassic shales and the Jurassic shales. During this interval much of the Triassic sedimentary formations and of the Nikolai greenstone was removed. Another factor of uncertainty besides the amount of the shales that have been removed by erosion is the thickening and reduplication of beds that arise from folding and faulting. It is probable, however, that the McCarthy shale has a thickness nearly as great as the Chitistone limestone; possibly it is greater.

A thickness of about 1,500 feet of Triassic shale overlies the limestone on the west side of Nizina River. The shales near the center of the broad syncline in this locality have a horizontal position and are probably less distorted by folding than they are to the northwest. This measurement is considered the minimum and probably much less than the true thickness, for some of the shale has certainly been removed by erosion.

The mountains about the head of the East Fork of McCarthy Creek are made up of the black Triassic shales. They reach an altitude of 6,960 feet above sea level or 3,000 feet above the limestone shale boundary at the creek on the southwest. The shales are much folded about the upper part of the East Fork valley, and measurements are consequently uncertain, but it is probable that the thickness of the formation is at least 2,500 feet in this vicinity. No measurements of value were obtained in the Copper Creek section, for, as previously stated, only a part of the formation is present there.

It is evident from what has been said that the total thickness of Triassic sediments in the Nizina district is great and that it is prob-

ably not less than 6,000 feet. One-half of this figure represents a limestone whose thickness can be stated with a considerable degree of accuracy; the remainder represents a great shale formation whose thickness is stated only approximately.

AGE.

The McCarthy shale is of Upper Triassic age. Some of the beds are abundantly fossiliferous, especially those near the base of the formation and in the transition zone below, and fossils can usually be found in the higher parts of the formation if search is made for them. Shells of *Pseudomonotis subcircularis* (Gabb) are so plentiful in some of the shale beds between the thin limestones that the rock can not be broken without showing them; they appear, however, to be almost the only forms represented.

A list of fossil localities follows; the determinations are by T. W. Stanton.

McCarthy Creek:
6314—
Pseudomonotis subcircularis (Gabb).
Nikolai Creek:
6311—
Two or more undetermined ammonite genera represented by fragmentary specimens.
Dan Creek:
6317—
Pseudomonotis subcircularis (Gabb).
Copper Creek (two localities):
6323—
Pseudomonotis subcircularis (Gabb).
6335—
Pseudomonotis subcircularis (Gabb).

Areas of Triassic shale are scattered along the south slope of the Wrangell Mountains as far west as the Kuskulana and probably as far as the Kotsina also, but in the earlier work in this region the Triassic shales and the black Jurassic shales were not separated because the presence of an immense thickness of Jurassic shales in this valley was not known at that time. It is now certain that a considerable part of the shale areas of Chitina Valley formerly considered to be Triassic are in reality of Jurassic age.

No Triassic shale corresponding in thickness or other characters to the McCarthy shale is known in Alaska. Other regions of Triassic sediments of similar age have been pointed out (see correlation table, pp. 26–27), but the conditions under which they were deposited were different from those in the Nizina district, and although they may be in part contemporaneous the resulting formations are distinct.

JURASSIC SYSTEM.

KENNICOTT FORMATION.

CHARACTER OF THE FORMATION.

The name Kennicott was adopted by Rohn to designate the conglomerate and sandstone succession which he found resting unconformably on the Triassic shales of McCarthy Creek and correlated on fossil evidence with the light-colored arkoses, shales, and limestones between Lachina River and Kennicott Glacier. Rohn did not recognize the black shale south of Nikolai Creek as part of his Kennicott formation, but within the district under consideration the black shale is far more important in amount than the basal conglomerate and sandstone members.

The Kennicott formation as the term is here used consists largely of black shale, but it includes conglomerate, grit, sandstone, and impure limestone members and is intruded by great masses of light-colored porphyritic rock. It is the youngest of the consolidated sedimentary deposits represented on the geologic map (Pl. III, in pocket) and is more widely distributed within the mapped area than any of the formations previously described. One of the characteristics of the Kennicott is its variation in appearance and composition at different localities. This statement is more applicable to its basal than to its upper part and refers to features that resulted from changing shore conditions of sedimentation. These differences will be brought out by a description of the Jurassic rocks northwest of Nizina River, where the basal part is better represented, and southeast of Nizina River, where the middle and upper parts are better represented.

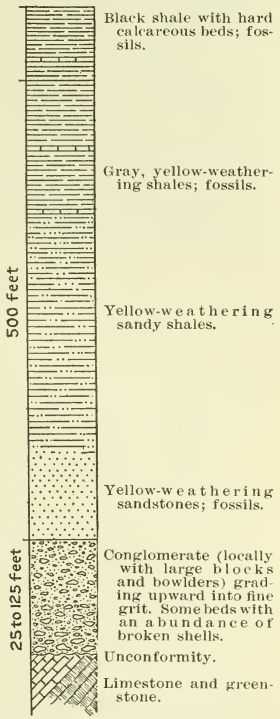

Black shale with hard calcareous beds; fossils.
Gray, yellow-weathering shales; fossils.
500 feet
Yellow-weathering sandy shales.
Yellow-weathering sandstones; fossils.
25 to 125 feet
Conglomerate (locally with large blocks and bowlders) grading upward into fine grit. Some beds with an abundance of broken shells.
Unconformity.
Limestone and greenstone.

FIGURE 2.—Columnar section of the basal part of the Kennicott formation exposed on Nikolai Creek.

The Kennicott formation where it is exposed about the head of Nikolai Creek may be subdivided into three members as follows: A basal member made up of conglomerate and sandstone; a second member consisting chiefly of light-gray, yellow-weathering shale; and an upper member of dark-gray or black shale interstratified with occasional beds of impure limestone or hard calcareous shale (fig. 2). The basal member shows notable differences in lithologic character and thickness as it is followed from one outcrop to another.

These differences, except in thickness, are dependent in large measure on the kind of rock immediately underlying the Kennicott. In nearly all places the lowest beds of the formation consist of conglomerate, but this conglomerate presents a different appearance in almost every exposure, for there is nearly every gradation between an even-grained grit whose well-worn pebbles are of uniform size and no larger than grains of wheat to a coarse agglomerate with blocks and bowlders up to 8 or 10 feet in diameter (Pl. VI, *A*). Such coarse material has probably traveled but a short distance from its source and may represent a shore-line cliff. It is not a constant feature of the basal Kennicott and its exposures are not extensive, for the very large bowlders are found in only a few localities. In many places it was noticed that most of the pebbles in the conglomerate are of the same material as the older beds on which the conglomerate rests—that is, where conglomerate overlies greenstone most of the pebbles are greenstone and where it rests on the Triassic shale most of the pebbles are shale. Limestone pebbles are not so numerous as pebbles of greenstone and shale, yet conglomerate of this formation containing a large proportion of rounded limestone fragments is found in other parts of the Chitina Valley. Some of the conglomerate contains a considerable number of diorite and porphyry pebbles, but it was not found in place in the vicinity of Nikolai Creek, where the basal conglomerate of the Kennicott is best developed within the area mapped. Nearly all of the fragments are well rounded and waterworn, and it is only in the very coarse conglomerate that angular outlines are noticeable. Even in such places the edges and corners of the blocks are usually worn away.

The filling between pebbles is finely ground material from the same source as the pebbles and is for the most part a greenish sandstone or graywacke. The average size of fragments composing the basal member of the formation decreases rapidly as distance from the base increases, until the conglomerate gives way to sandstone. In most localities about Nikolai Creek where exposures occur it is found that the upper half or three-fourths of the basal member consists of fine greenish sandstone or graywacke containing little quartz and seemingly derived largely from the Triassic shale and the greenstone. This upper part shows far less variation in character than the conglomerate, although in the base thin beds of graywacke alternate with thin beds of conglomerate. There are places where the fine conglomerate and graywacke contain considerable lime and become practically an impure limestone, but such beds are not persistent. Some of them consist in part of broken shells, yet it is difficult to find determinable fossils among them and still more difficult to secure the fossils when found, since they are in most cases partly decomposed and fragile.

A. BOWLDERS IN CONGLOMERATE AT BASE OF KENNICOTT FORMATION ON SOUTH BRANCH OF NIKOLAI CREEK.

See page 32.

B. SANDSTONE OF KENNICOTT FORMATION ON RIDGE SOUTH OF NIKOLAI MINE.

See page 33.

This lowest conglomerate-sandstone member of the Kennicott formation on Nikolai Creek has a thickness ranging from 25 to 125 feet, the greater part of which is graywacke, the remainder conglomerate or grit. In a few places the basal member appears to be entirely absent, although because of faulting and talus slopes its seeming absence may be explained in other ways. Furthermore, its persistence as a whole in many other places in spite of rapid changes in character and of variation in thickness makes it probable that if it is not seen in a particular locality the failure to find it is due to one of the causes mentioned.

The middle member of the formation on Nikolai Creek shows far less variation in character than the lower one, but it does not appear so conspicuously in other parts of the Nizina region. It consists of shale and shaly sandstone, but shale predominates. The sandy phases are more or less local, and the best exposures are on the ridge south of Nikolai mine (Pl. VI, *B*). A freshly broken surface of the shale shows a fine-grained rock of light color, but both shale and sandstone weather a bright yellow that makes them conspicuous wherever they are exposed. Both shale and sandstone break down into thin fragments under the influence of the weather, and the débris from their ledges give rise to prominent talus slopes. Occasionally fossils are found in the sandstone, and rarely a shell is seen in the shale, but fossils are not abundant and it requires some search to find any of value. The thickness of the yellow-weathering shales is as great as 500 feet in the mountain between Nikolai Creek and the East Fork of McCarthy Creek. At the head of Nikolai Creek 375 feet of yellow-weathering shale overlies the conglomerate, but some of the shale has been eroded away.

The highest member of the Kennicott in the Nikolai Creek vicinity consists of black shale, with interstratified hard, impure limestone and calcareous shale beds ranging in thickness from 1 inch to 2 feet. The hard beds form only a small proportion of the total thickness, probably less than one-tenth, but although jointed and broken they stand out in relief from the softer, crumbling black shales and form a conspicuous part of the whole. This black shale resembles closely the black shales of the Triassic. The hard beds assume a rusty-yellowish color on weathering, just as in the Triassic shales, and there seems to be no way, except by their stratigraphic position and their fossils, to distinguish them from the older shales. Fossils are fairly plentiful in some beds of this member, especially those in the hard beds, and are in a better state of preservation than those found lower in the formation.

From 125 to 150 feet of these shales are exposed north of Nikolai Creek, but the figures take no account of what has been removed by erosion or what has been caught up into the intruded porphyry.

Locally erosion has destroyed the upper member, leaving the basal and middle members. In some localities both the middle and the upper members have been removed, and without doubt the Kennicott was once present in large areas where no trace of it is now found.

The section of the Kennicott formation exposed on Dan Creek is many times thicker than the section that has been described. The Nikolai section represents a phase of the basal Kennicott that is thought to correspond more fully with the Kennicott observed west of Kennicott Glacier and still farther west in the Chitina Valley than does the Dan Creek section. An excellent exposure of the base of the Kennicott formation was found on Eagle Creek, in the Copper Creek valley. All the upper part of the long ridge separating Eagle Creek from Copper Creek is made up of lower Kennicott beds. They rest on the edges of thin limestone and shale beds that belong to the transition zone between Chitistone limestone and McCarthy shale. The limestone and shale beds have a dip about 20° greater than the overlying Kennicott, and the unconformity is shown in diagrammatic clearness. The basal beds of the Kennicott at this place consist of from 150 to 200 feet of fine conglomerate or grit overlain by sandstone. Black shale overlies the sandstone and forms the top of the ridge extending southeast to the main mountain mass. This basal grit was traced northwest in Copper Creek valley to the vicinity of the limestone area north of Idaho Gulch. It may be regarded as a constant feature of the Kennicott in the Nizina district. In most places it is somewhat fossiliferous. Pyramid Peak, at the head of Copper Creek, appears to be made up entirely of rocks belonging to the Kennicott formation. The lower part is black shale, but the top shows bedding lines that are thought to represent sandstones and impure limestones. Sandy shales and hard sandstones are interstratified with the black shales on Rex Creek, and the tops of the mountains between Rex Creek and White Creek contain a large amount of gray sandstone and impure limestone. Beds of brown-weathering nodular limestone in the shales high up on the slopes of these mountains contain ammonite shells 15 or 18 inches across. These mountains appear to be at the axis of a broad shallow syncline and give good sections of the formation.

A feature of geologic interest is presented by the sandstone dikes that cut the black shales east of Rex Creek. These dikes range in thickness from a fraction of an inch to 5 or 6 inches and cut the shales just as an igneous dike would. They are composed of angular fragments of quartz, feldspar, biotite, calcite, and pyrite mingled with fragments of shale. They are composed of the same material as some of the associated sandstone beds and are numerous in places.

Bedding in the black shales of Blei Gulch, on the south side of Chititu Creek, is shown by lines of small limestone concretions and

thin discontinuous calcareous beds. More than 4,500 feet of black shale dipping low to the southwest is exposed in Blei Gulch. Young Creek, south of Chititu Creek, flows in a shallow canyon whose walls are composed of black shale of the Kennicott formation. This shale forms the lower slopes of the ridge south of Young Creek, and it is probable that Kennicott sediments make up most of the ridge. The ridge was not examined in detail owing to lack of time, but a section up the first southern tributary of Young Creek east of Calamity Gulch shows rocks of the Kennicott formation. The section extends up the east branch of this creek. For a distance of nearly three-fourths of a mile from its mouth the creek flows over black shales with occasional limestone beds, all dipping southwest at angles of 30° or less. Thence for nearly a fourth of a mile are rocks that have been crumpled and much faulted. They consist of shales with interbedded calcareous shales and limestone, from which fossils were collected. In many places the strata of this disturbed zone stand on edge, and it is evident that displacements of importance have taken place. A peculiar feature of this locality is seen in the limestone nodules, which occur in beds and reach diameters of 2 or 3 feet. They consist of bluish-gray limestone and show parallel bedding lines crossing them. They were seen at a number of places on Young Creek. South of this faulted zone the creek flows for another three-fourths of a mile over black shales and thin gray and brown sandstones. The shale predominates but the sandstones form an important part of the whole. The dip of these shales and sandstones is steeper than is usual in the Kennicott formation of the Nizina district, ranging from 30° to 50°. A massive conglomerate succeeds the shale and limestone on the south at a point 1,500 feet above Young Creek. The conglomerate is several hundred feet thick and is made up of well-rounded pebbles loosely cemented together, many of which are 5 or 6 inches in diameter. It appears to have been deposited conformably on the underlying shale-sandstone beds, but there is reason to believe that movement has taken place along the contact at this locality. No proof was secured to show that this great conglomerate does not mark an unconformity in the Kennicott formation or between the Kennicott and a succeeding formation, but the relation appears to be one of conformity in other places west of this creek where the contact was examined. Flat-topped or mesa-like hills composed of conglomerate beds dipping low to the south are scattered along the top of this ridge both to the east and to the west of this section. According to Schrader's field notes of 1900, the conglomerate on the west end of the ridge south of Young Creek is interstratified with a few beds of arkose sandstone and probably does not exceed 500 feet in thickness. It contains granite bowlders up to 9 inches in diameter, dark limestone, flint, quartz, gray slate and grit, and green gneissic rock, but

Schrader did not find any pebbles of Nikolai greenstone. The arkose or sandstone underlying the conglomerate was measured by Schrader in a very favorable section, where the dip was low to the south-southeast, and was found to be between 2,000 and 2,500 feet in thickness.

There is no reason to doubt that this succession of shales, limestones, sandstones, and conglomerate found in the ridge south of Young Creek corresponds to the bedded rocks seen in the high mountains at the head of Copper, Rex, and White creeks. It therefore represents the upper part of the Kennicott formation as it is known at present.

The unconformable relation of the Kennicott formation to the older sedimentary rocks and the Nikolai greenstone is plainly seen in both the localities whose sections have been described and is shown in the view (Pl. VII, *A* and *B*) taken at the head of Nikolai Creek. Kennicott sediments there rest on the upturned and truncated beds of the Nikolai greenstone, the Chitistone limestone, and the McCarthy shale. The dip of the younger beds is low in most places, ranging from 10° to 20° W. or SW. On the other hand, the dip of the underlying sediments and the lava flows (Nikolai greenstone) are considerably greater and in a different direction, averaging about 30° or 35° NE.

One feature of the Jurassic sediments that is more noticeable on White and Young creeks than in other parts of the district is the rapidity with which they break down under the action of weathering. Such topographic forms as Blei Gulch and the gulches tributary to Young Creek are due to this cause. Blei Gulch in particular shows how readily the shales are attacked and how little they are able to resist the attacks as compared with the greenstone and limestone. The soft shale débris accumulates faster than the water can carry it away and the mouth of the gulch is choked with it.

The Kennicott was deposited on an old submerged land surface. In a broad way this surface on which the Kennicott formation of Nikolai Creek lies was flat, but it is readily seen on examining the contact that there were minor irregularities in it such as are present in any level country. The conglomerate and graywacke beds of the basal Kennicott sag down into hollows of the underlying surface, and at one locality pebbles and sand were seen filling old cracks in the Chitistone limestone.

DISTRIBUTION.

The Kennicott formation occupies probably three-fourths of the total area represented on the geologic map (Pl. III, in pocket), for if a line be drawn from the mouth of National Creek to Pyramid Peak practically all of the consolidated deposits south of it are Kennicott. It forms the high angular mountains between Dan and Chititu

A.

B.

UNCONFORMITY BETWEEN TRIASSIC AND JURASSIC FORMATIONS AT HEAD OF NIKOLAI CREEK.

a, Sandstone and shale of Kennicott formation; *b*, Chitistone limestone; *c*, Nikolai greenstone. The two views placed side by side would form a panorama. See page 36.

creeks and makes up the principal part of Porphyry and Sourdough peaks, although its presence is so obscured by porphyry intrusions in these two last-mentioned mountains that its amount is apt to be underestimated. It doubtless underlies also the gravel deposits of the lowland south of Nizina River.

Without question Jurassic sediments are far more widespread in Chititu Valley than was suspected before the field work of 1909 was undertaken. They extend eastward beyond the Nizina district into the upper valley of the Chitina and westward along the flanks of the Wrangell Mountains, where it is certain that they have not been fully differentiated from the Triassic shales, just as was true in the Nizina district. The separation of Jurassic from Triassic shales will require more detailed field work than has yet been given them.

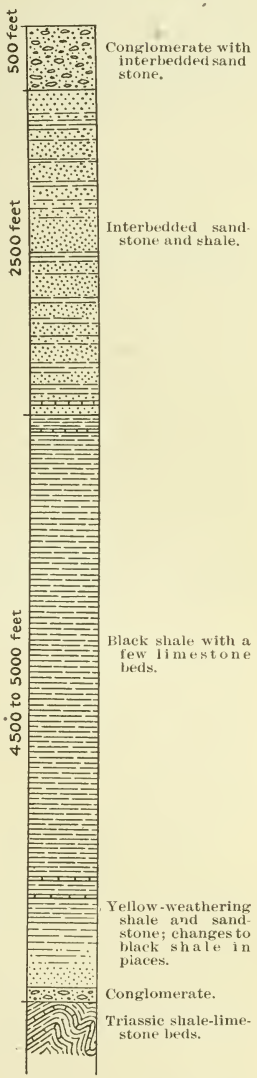

500 feet
2500 feet
4,500 to 5000 feet
Conglomerate with interbedded sandstone.
Interbedded sandstone and shale.
Black shale with a few limestone beds.
Yellow-weathering shale and sandstone; changes to black shale in places.
Conglomerate.
Triassic shale-limestone beds.

FIGURE 3. — Generalized columnar section of the Jurassic sediments in the Nizina district.

THICKNESS.

No such favorable section was found for measuring the thickness of the Kennicott formation as that furnished by the walls of Nizina River for measuring the Chitistone limestone, and the figures given are secured from a study of a number of sections at different localities (fig. 3). The total thickness given should be regarded as having only approximate accuracy.

The coarse fragmental beds, including conglomerate and grit at the base of the Kennicott, range in thickness from 25 to 150 or 200 feet. An intermediate figure of 100 to 150 feet is believed to represent a fair estimate for the thickness of these beds throughout the district. It seems proper to include the yellow-weathering shales and sandstones of Nikolai Creek with the black shales, since they are a local feature and contemporaneous in time of deposition with the lower part of the black shale south of Nizina River. On this basis the black shale member at the heads of Copper and Rex creeks has a minimum thickness of not less than 4,500 feet, yet the black shales of Williams Peak south of Dan Creek suggest a considerably greater thickness, possibly as much as 6,000 feet. This measurement includes all beds from the top of the conglomerate and grit to the begin-

ning of the interbedded shale-sandstone succession that forms the tops of the high mountains at the heads of Copper and Rex creeks and the upper part of the ridge south of Dan Creek. The shale-sandstone member has a thickness of about 2,500 feet. If, now, 500 feet, representing the heavy conglomerate of Young Creek, be added to the measurements already given, a minimum thickness of over 7,500 feet is obtained for the Kennicott formation in the Nizina district.

AGE AND CORRELATION.

Fossils have been collected from all parts of the Kennicott formation, but unfortunately the stratigraphic range of the forms is so great that they do not fix its age definitely. It appears most probable that the Kennicott formation was laid down in Upper Jurassic time, but there is a possibility of its being Lower Cretaceous. The probability of its Jurassic age rests in considerable measure on the presence of a species of *Aucella* collected first by Rohn and later by Schrader and Spencer and identified by T. W. Stanton. Schrader and Spencer collected fossils at other localities as well as in the Nizina district, and on the evidence of these fossils the formation was referred to "the doubtful series lying at the top of the Jurassic or at the base of the Cretaceous."[a]

The list of fossils follows.

Inoceramus eximius Eichwald?
Belemnites sp.
Halobia occidentalis Whiteaves?
Rhynchonella sp.
Pecten sp.
Avicula sp.
Aucella pallasi Keyserling?
Lytoceras sp.
Hoplites sp.
Olcostephanus? sp.
Gryphæa sp.
Sagenopteris sp.

Concerning *Inoceramus eximius* Dr. Stanton says:[a]

This form is represented by a single specimen collected on Chitty Creek. It may be distinct from Eichwald's species originally described from Turkusitun Bay, in Cook Inlet, and referred by him to the Neocomian. Eichwald described three other species—*I. ambiguus*, *I. porrectus*, and *I. lucifer*—all belonging to one section of *Inoceramus* from the same horizon in Alaska. The present shell does not agree perfectly with any of the figures, but it is most nearly like *I. eximius* and probably comes from the same formation. Similar forms occur both in the Jurassic and in the Cretaceous, but the evidence of the other fossils from this part of Alaska favors the reference of the Kennicott formation to the Jurassic.

[a] Schrader, F. C., and Spencer, A. C., The geology and mineral resources of a portion of the Copper River district, Alaska: Special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901, p. 50.

Of the form referred with a question to *Halobia occidentalis* Dr. Stanton says:

The specimens agree fairly well in sculpture and general appearance with some of the figures of Whiteaves's species from the Liard River and may be identical with it. They are, however, somewhat suggestive of *Hinnites linœnsis*, from the Jurassic(?) of Siberia.

Sagenopteris is a genus which occurs both in the Jurassic and in the Cretaceous, but the species is thought by Prof. Ward, to whom it was shown, to be near a species occurring in the Jurassic of the Pacific coast.

Concerning the general relations of the fossils from the Kennicott formation Dr. Stanton observes:

These fossils are all either Upper Jurassic or Cretaceous, with a suggestion of a somewhat younger age for a few localities. In the present state of knowledge and with these small collections it is not practicable to determine whether they represent one horizon or several. In my opinion, they probably all belong to the Upper Jurassic, though subsequent work may show the contrary. The question is connected with the still unsolved problem of the exact boundary between the Jurassic and the Cretaceous in the *Aucella*-bearing beds of Russia, Siberia, and the Pacific coast region of North America. The *Aucella* occurring in the Copper River district appears to be referable to a Russian Jurassic species, but it is also quite similar to the Cretaceous form in the lower Knoxville beds of California. The few other forms are mostly undescribed species of types that occur both in the Jurassic and in the Lower Cretaceous.

A single fossil collected on Chititu Creek in 1907 was referred to Dr. Stanton and described by him thus:

Chititu Creek:
4811; No. 26—
Perisphinctes, sp. This ammonite is not a typical Perisphinctes, but it is probably of Jurassic age, certainly not older than Jurassic.

The much larger collection made in 1909 was also referred to Dr. Stanton, who says of them: "The fossils from the Kennicott indicate that one fauna ranges throughout the formation and that its age is most probably Jurassic, though the types represented in the collection are not as definite as could be wished for determining between Jurassic and Cretaceous. The entire absence of *Aucella* is noteworthy in view of the fact that that genus has previously been reported from the formation." The list of fossils arranged by localities and with the catalogue numbers of the National Museum follows.

McCarthy Creek:
6301—
Inoceramus sp.
6313—
Lytoceras sp.
Phylloceras sp.
Base of Kennicott.

Nikolai Creek:
6302—
Inoceramus sp.
Base of Kennicott.
6304—
Rhynchonella sp.
Pecten sp.
Base of Kennicott.
6305—
Rhynchonella sp.
Terebratella? sp.
Exogyra sp.
Pecten sp.
Collected near 6304.
6307—
Phylloceras sp.
6308—
Inoceramus sp.
Lower part of Kennicott formation.
6309—
Rhynchonella sp.
Inoceramus sp.
6310—
Rhynchonella sp.
Terebratella? sp.
Base of Kennicott formation.
6331—
Rhynchonella sp.
Terebratella? sp.
Ostrea sp.
Rear base of Kennicott formation.
Sourdough Hill:
6315—
Inoceramus sp.
Dan Creek:
6316—
Inoceramus sp.
6318—
Bowlder in conglomerate of Kennicott formation.
Halobia superba Mojsisovics?
Copper Creek:
6322—
Rhynchonella sp.
Undetermined small Pelecypoda.
Natica sp.
Undetermined ammonite.
Base of Kennicott formation.
Texas Creek:
6334—
Phylloceras? sp.
Rex Creek:
6324—
Irregular echinoid, crushed specimens.
Pecten sp.

Rex Creek—Continued.
6324—Continued.
Terebratula sp.
Ostrea sp.
Anomia sp.
Inoceramus sp.
Nucula sp.
Arca sp.
Undetermined Gastropoda.
Phylloceras sp.
Shark's teeth.
Well up in the Kennicott formation.
6425—
Serpula sp.
Ostrea sp.
Pecten sp.
Arca sp.
Cyprina? sp.
Corbula sp.
Aporrhais sp.
Chemnitzia? sp.
Crioceras? sp.
6426—
Fragment of large ammonite.
Higher in the formation than 6324.
6336—
Undetermined fragmentary ammonite.
White Creek:
6327—
Ostrea sp.
Upper part of Kennicott formation.
6328—
Fragment of large ammonite.
High up in the Kennicott.
Young Creek:
6329—
Cyprina? sp. (fragment).

The absence of *Aucella* from the collections of 1909 raises a question concerning the Kennicott that can not be answered with the data at hand. If, as seems probable, its absence is due merely to the failure to find it, there is no reason to suspect any difference in age of the Kennicott sediments east and west of Kennicott Glacier. If, on the other hand, it does not occur east of Kennicott Glacier, the possibility that the basal Kennicott beds west of the glacier are older or that the sediments of the two localities are not correctly correlated is apparent.

It will be seen from the table of correlation (pp. 26–27) that Jurassic sediments are widespread in Alaska. They are found along the Pacific coast side from southeastern Alaska to the peninsula, and again on the Arctic slope, but are not known in the Yukon Basin.

Attention is directed more particularly to the Nabesna-White district, the Matanuska and Talkeetna district, and the region of Cook Inlet and the Alaska Peninsula.

The Nutzotin Mountains, northeast of the Wrangell group, consist of a great thickness of banded slates, graywackes, and conglomerates associated with limestone and sandstone beds in minor amount. Upper Jurassic fossils were collected from these beds, but the beds are very imperfectly known, and it is highly probable that they include also Triassic or even older beds. They are exposed in the canyon of Chisana River for a distance of 18 miles, and, although they are much folded, it is evident that their thickness is great.

Lower Middle Jurassic and middle and upper Middle Jurassic sediments occupy extensive areas in the region of Matanuska and Talkeetna rivers.[a] The lower Middle Jurassic rocks have a thickness of 2,000 feet, more or less, and consist of shales, sandstone, and conglomerate, with coal, associated with andesitic greenstone, tuffs, agglomerates and breccias, rhyolites, dacites, and tuffs. On these was deposited unconformably more than 2,000 feet of middle and upper Middle Jurassic shales, sandstones, conglomerates, tuff, and arkose, with coal. More than 1,000 feet of this is conglomerate.

The Jurassic rocks of Cook Inlet and the Alaska Peninsula were studied by Stanton and Martin in 1904[b] and again by Martin in the region of Iliamna Bay in 1909. They include rocks of Lower, Middle, and Upper Jurassic age. The deposits referred to the Lower Jurassic consist chiefly of water-laid tuffs, and are found at Seldovia, on the east side of Cook Inlet, and probably on the west side also. The Middle Jurassic sediments, called by Stanton and Martin the Enochkin formation, include shale and sandstone, with a few thin beds of limestone and conglomerate, and reach a thickness of 2,415 feet on the shore of Chinitna Bay. This section does not include the lower part of the Enochkin formation, yet the thickness given represents what is probably the average thickness of the formation. Upper Jurassic sediments succeeded the Enochkin formation. They were first described by Spurr[c] and received their formation name from Naknek Lake. The Naknek formation includes shale, sandstone, conglomerate, arkose, tuff, and andesite. A thickness of 5,137 feet of rocks belonging to this formation was measured by Stanton and Martin on the north shore of Chinitna Bay. Lower, Middle, and Upper Jurassic deposits thus reach a thickness of 7,500 to 8,500 feet in this region.

---

[a] Paige, Sidney, and Knopf, Adolph, Geologic reconnaissance in the Matanuska and Talkeetna basins, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 327, 1907, pp. 16 and following.

[b] Stanton, T. W., and Martin, G. C., Mesozoic section on Cook Inlet and Alaska Peninsula: Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 16, 1905, pp. 391–410.

[c] Spurr, J. E., A reconnaissance of southwestern Alaska: Twentieth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 7, 1900, pp. 169–171.

It has been seen from the brief description given that the Jurassic section is more nearly complete as it is traced westward from the Chitina Valley. The evidence is too incomplete to draw definite conclusions, but it appears that about the lower part of Cook Inlet Lower, Middle, and Upper Jurassic sediments are present, that in the Talkeetna and Matanuska district the Lower Jurassic is lacking, and that in the Chitina Valley both Lower and Middle Jurassic are absent. A possible explanation of this condition is that the invasion of the Jurassic sea was from the west and that the successive dropping out of the lower members from the stratigraphic section is evidence of progress in the eastward advance. This explanation, however, is not the only one, for the lower divisions of the Jurassic may yet be found in the Chitina Valley, or they may have been removed by erosion if ever present. In this connection, also, attention may once more be drawn to the fact that the known Jurassic sediments of Alaska are found on its Arctic and Pacific sides. They have not been discovered in the Yukon Basin.

QUATERNARY SYSTEM.

PREGLACIAL CONDITIONS.

So far as known, the region under discussion was elevated above sea level at the end of Eocene time and has ever since remained a land area. During and after the cessation of the mountain-building processes which raised the land to its present elevation stream erosion was active and well-developed drainage systems were formed, the area and distribution of which were perhaps very much as they are to-day. The topography of the land surface and the arrangement of the smaller drainage lines must, however, have been greatly different from those existing at present. The relief was developed by stream erosion, and in a region of such great relief the streams must have occupied narrow V-shaped valleys, with the spurs between the lateral tributary valleys overlapping in such a way as to give the streams a somewhat sinuous course around the points of the interlocking spurs. Furthermore, there must have been a heavy covering of residual soil and rock waste mantling the ridges. Stream erosion was the controlling factor in the development of the topography up to the beginning of Pleistocene time.

PLEISTOCENE ("GLACIAL") EPOCH.

CHARACTER AND EXTENT OF GLACIATION.

A change in climatic conditions inaugurated the Pleistocene epoch, with a lowering of the temperature or an increase in precipitation, or both. Ice began to form in the heads of the more favorably situated valleys, and with the gradual accumulation of ice glacial movement was started. The small glaciers which formed in the heads of a great number of separate valleys moved gradually down-

ward to meet and merge in the main valleys. Three primary glaciers existed within the limits of this district, two of them (in the Kennicott and the Nizina valleys) moving southward and one (in the Chitina Valley) moving westward.

It is possible that the Pleistocene epoch has been represented in these mountains by more than one great ice advance, with interglacial epochs in which the ice diminished greatly in area and may even have disappeared in large part. No direct evidence has been obtained that this was the case in Alaska, as the last great ice advance obliterated all evidence of previous advances. In other mountain regions in the United States and Canada a succession of ice advances has been established, and somewhat similar conditions have probably prevailed in Alaska. The effects of earlier ice invasions may have had an important influence upon the erosion of the deep glacial valleys of this region, but the immediate effects now remaining, such as the distribution of moraines and glacial gravels, are to be ascribed to the action of the last great glaciers which filled these valleys.

As already stated, the dissection of the area in preglacial time had been accomplished by normal stream erosion. Great quantities of soil and rock waste were ready at hand for the glaciers, and these materials were incorporated into the advancing ice tongues and served as abrasives for the glaciers to use in the further grinding out of their beds. As they advanced down their valleys they encountered opposition from the spurs which projected into the valleys, and as the ice was able to override these spurs it was upon them that its erosion was most effective. This selective erosion of projecting bodies of rock was carried on continuously, and the resultant is the broad, U-shaped, troughlike gorge which is recognized as the evidence of severe glacial erosion. Erosion in the valleys, however, was not confined to the removal of overlapping spurs. The rock fragments held in the bottoms of the glaciers and pressed down upon their floors by the weight of several thousand feet of ice formed admirably adapted tools for grinding down the floors and rasping away the walls. It is impossible to estimate with any degree of accuracy the amount of glacial deepening which the trunk valleys have undergone. The difference in elevation between the mouth of a hanging tributary valley and the floor of the main valley below may be considered to offer a fair basis for estimating this deepening, and in many places this discordance is from 1,000 to 1,500 feet. Some such figure may well represent the depth to which glacial scour has lowered the larger valleys.

At the time of the last great period of glaciation the Nizina region was invaded by an ice flood which covered it to such an extent that the surface relief within the area was not more than 4,500 feet as compared with more than 7,700 feet at the present time. Only

the high ridges between the principal drainage lines projected above the surface of the ice streams. The land areas were restricted to narrow, angular masses of irregular outline cut into on all sides by the smaller glaciers, which headed back toward the crests of the divides. An attempt has been made (Pl. III, in pocket) to outline the land areas which projected above the glaciers. This outline can not be considered as exact, but it must represent with a fair degree of accuracy the areas which stood up above the ice surface. Of the total area of the Nizina special map (300 square miles) only about 18 square miles remained unglaciated.

The depth at which the ice stood in the different valleys can in favorable places be determined rather closely by the present distribution of glacial moraines and erratic bowlders and by the shapes of the eroded valley walls. Certain mountains, we know, must have stood above the glaciers, because of the angular, rugged character of their summits, which fail to show the effects of the abrasive action of the ice. Other mountains, we know, must have been overridden by the ice, because of their smoothed and rounded outlines and because of the occurrence on their tops of glacial bowlders of rocks which occur in place nowhere in the vicinity of their present resting places. From such evidence it is found that in Nizina Valley, at Sourdough cabins, the top of the glacier must have stood more than 3,000 feet above the present river flat.

CHITINA GLACIER.

The Chitina Valley, which extends from the head of Chitina River near the international boundary in a west-northwest direction to the Copper River basin, is the channel which drained all the ice fields from the south side of the Wrangell Mountains as well as those from the north slope of the Chugach Range. Although only one edge of the Chitina Glacier lay within the area of the Nizina special map, it may not be out of place to give here some idea of the size of this ice tongue as a whole. At its maximum it was about 120 miles long in its own valley, and it joined the Copper River Glacier, the length of which below the junction of the Chitina is not known, although it must have been considerable. The ice field had a width for portions of its course of 20 miles and averaged about 12 miles, so that its total area was not far from 1,500 square miles, exclusive of all tributary glaciers. South of this area it was certainly close to 4,000 feet in thickness and may have been much thicker. On account of its great thickness the ice surmounted the divide between Chitina River and Young Creek and pushed to the northwest, covering the ridge between Young and Chititu creeks, so that the northern boundary of this great ice field was here the high mountain ridge north of White Creek. That it completely covered the high divides south of this

ridge is evident not only from the smoothed and subdued slopes of their summits but from the presence on them of scattered bowlders of rocks strange to this immediate vicinity. In Chititu and White creeks there are numerous bowlders of greenstone, although none occurs in place within this drainage basin. Their presence here as well as that of the native copper and silver found in the placer gravels is doubtless due to the transportation of glacial ice, the bowlders in White Gulch having been brought from the east by the Chitina Glacier, and the bowlders in Rex and Chititu creeks either by the same ice tongue or from the north by the Nizina Glacier. Much of the native copper and greenstone of Young Creek was brought in by the Chitina Glacier, although there may be greenstone in place at the head of this creek. There is still a large glacier at the head of Chitina Valley, though little is known of its length or appearance.

NIZINA GLACIER.

The head of the Nizina Basin is still occupied by a great glacier, which now terminates about 11 miles above the mouth of Chitistone River. The valley below, however, shows strongly the erosion of the former glacier which moved down it. Tributary ice tongues entered the valley from both sides north of the area here considered, but within it the large branches all came in from the east. The northernmost and by far the most important branch came down the Chitistone Valley. This stream drains a basin which extends northeast to Skolai Pass and east into a range of high glaciated mountains. That the valley was the outlet for a vigorous glacier is evident from the steep-walled trough through which the stream now flows. The valley floor near the mouth of the canyon is only three-eighths mile wide, but the ice in it once reached a depth of at least 3,500 feet and was able to keep its trough cut down to grade with the floor of the Nizina Valley. Toward the lower end of the Chitistone Valley the tops of the mountains on both the north and the south sides are flat and mesa-like, and, although the valley glacier did not extend up to these mesas, they were occupied by glaciers which must have extended to their edges and cascaded down upon the valley glacier below, so that only a portion of the steep cliffs at the upper limit of the valley walls were free from ice.

Five miles south of the Chitistone a tributary ice tongue fed into the Nizina from Dan Creek. This lobe drained the ice from a much smaller basin than the Chitistone and excavated its valley much less severely. In it the depth of the ice was great, but this was due more to the damming back by the great glacier in the Nizina Valley than to its own supply, and the movement must have been comparatively sluggish. Besides receiving ice from a large number of cirques, some

of which are still occupied by small glaciers, this lobe was fed by the ice sheet on the mesa to the north. This ice sheet still exists and covers most of the flat uplands, but now sends ice over its edge at only a few points.

The main valleys of Chititu and Young creeks were invaded by ice from the Chitina Glacier, which spread over the intervening ridges and made a continuous ice sheet from Chititu Creek to the south side of the Chitina Valley. Rex Creek, however, was separated by a high ridge from the Chitina ice and sent down a tributary tongue to join the great ice flood at the junction of the Nizina and Chitina glaciers.

KENNICOTT GLACIER.

The Kennicott Basin is occupied in its upper portion by a glacier which extends within 5 miles of the mouth of Kennicott River. The area of the Nizina special map includes about 10 square miles of the eastern edge of this ice tongue. A line drawn from Kennicott to the point of junction of the two principal branches of the glacier separates the white ice of the east fork from the moraine-covered ice of the lower portion. The west fork, which is the larger, heading on the flanks of Mount Blackburne, shows a banded, ribbon-like surface of lines of white ice alternating with long surface moraines. Below the junction of the two branches the white bands disappear and the glacier presents a chaotic surface of sharp hills and deep, wide-mouthed crevasses, all more or less thickly covered with débris. Part of the drainage from the melting ice runs off as streams, which flank the lower portion of the glacier on either side, but much the greater part of the water emerges from what is known as the "pothole," at the lower end of the glacier. The pothole is the mouth of a subglacial channel, and Kennicott River boils out of this opening as a gigantic spring. In winter the pothole has been known to freeze up, damming back the water until sufficient hydraulic pressure has been developed to break away the ice, when a torrent of water rushes down Kennicott and Nizina rivers, sometimes flooding the ice all the way to Copper River.

The severity of the earlier glaciation in the Kennicott Valley is comparable to that of the Nizina. The ice extended southward to join the great Chitina Glacier, which had already been swelled by the ice from the Nizina. The surface of the glacier at Kennicott then stood about 3,000 feet higher than it does to-day, and the severity of its erosion is shown by the straight lines of the contours along the mountain sides and by the complete absence of projecting spurs.

The Kennicott Glacier had within this area one important tributary, which occupied the valley of McCarthy Creek. Its course, like that of the Kennicott and Nizina glaciers, was from north to south, and its erosion was sufficient to reduce its valley to a straight, U-shaped

trough. Within the area of this map all the important tributaries to McCarthy Creek Glacier came in from the east, especially from the valleys of Nikolai Creek and East Fork. At one time the ice surface stood 1,000 feet above the divide at the head of South Fork of Nikolai Creek, and it is probable that some of the ice from the Nizina Glacier moved westward over this col and then down the McCarthy Creek valley. Below Sourdough Peak the Kennicott, McCarthy, and Nizina glaciers all joined the great Chitina ice stream and moved northwestward down the Chitina Valley.

In the preceding paragraphs the attempt has been made to describe the glaciers of the region at the time of their greatest development. The individual ice lobes and their interrelations would have been different at lesser stages of development. The arrows shown on the map (Pl. III, in pocket) represent the directions of ice movement in the different parts of the area.

RETREAT OF THE ICE.

In the earlier stages of glaciation of the region the ice no doubt built up lateral and terminal moraines, but further advances destroyed or obliterated all traces of the earlier deposits. It is only those deposits that were laid down at the time of or subsequent to the maximum advance of the ice that have been preserved, and in many places even this material has been removed by stream cutting or been covered with stream deposits. There are left only a few areas of distinctive terminal moraine, having the characteristic hummock and kettle topography. Some such moraine still exists west of the lower portion of Young Creek, and some east of lower Chititu Creek, with occasional more recent patches like that on Texas Creek near the head of Copper Creek. These areas often contain lakes which occupy undrained depressions in the glacial deposits. The absence of strong moraines in most of the valleys is due, in part at least, to the vigorous cutting of the streams, which have long ago removed them. The Kennicott Glacier, which terminates near the mouth of McCarthy Creek, has remarkably little moraine around its edges, and although the surface of the lower portion of the glacier is covered with detritus the streams have removed this as fast as it has been dropped by the ice and in many places are cutting into the glacier itself.

Glacial till or bowlder clay is rather widely distributed in this area along the lower slopes of the valley walls. Its surface is generally covered by a heavy growth of mosses and timber, but fresh exposures can be seen at many places along the banks of streams. It consists of a rather dense blue clay in which are embedded bowlders, pebbles, and angular fragments of many different kinds of rock, and it is characterized by unassorted materials and lack of stratification.

BENCH GRAVELS.

As climatic conditions became less favorable for glaciation and the ice diminished from its greatest thickness the glaciers in many of the smaller drainage lines tributary to the larger trunk valleys shrank until they no longer joined the main ice lobes below. Thus the lower part of McCarthy and Dan creek valleys were free from ice while their mouths were blockaded by the Kennicott and the Nizina glaciers. In like manner the ice in the Chitina Valley had shrunk so that it was no longer able to override the ridges on either side of Young Creek, and Chititu and Young creeks had lost their ice while the Nizina Glacier still stood high in the valley to the northwest. As a result the drainage in many valleys was impeded by the ice dams across their mouths, and the streams began to fill in their basins with gravel deposits. It may be that temporary lakes were sometimes formed behind the ice barriers, but the character of the gravel deposited indicates that if such lakes existed they must have been of short duration.

Gravel fillings behind glacier dams in many places reached a great thickness. In Young Creek valley, above the portion where the creek flows north, the gravels are in places more than 500 feet thick near the center of the valley and thin out at the sides. The upper limit of the gravels is difficult to determine on account of the thick coating of moss with which the surface is covered, but it probably lies for the most part between the elevations of 3,250 and 3,500 feet. In Chititu Creek, at the mouth of Rex Creek, a similar thickness of gravels was reached. At the point where Dan Creek emerges from the mountains a great bench more than 700 feet high shows that the stream floor was graded up to that level when the Nizina Glacier still filled the valley below. In the McCarthy Creek valley a broad area was filled with gravels deposited under similar conditions. An advance by the Kennicott Glacier of only 2 or 3 miles would be sufficient to cause McCarthy Creek to begin again the grading up of its valley with gravels like those of which the gravel benches are composed.

In all of the valleys mentioned the alluvial filling was due to the presence of an ice barrier which retarded the drainage and caused the streams to build rapidly. As the great glaciers retreated and their thickness decreased the barriers to the tributary streams were lowered and they began to cut into the gravel filling which they had laid down. They did not, however, remove the filling from the whole width of the valleys, but intrenched themselves in this filling and developed deep gorges with gravel banks. Throughout much of the upper part of Young Creek and in parts of Chititu, Dan, and McCarthy creeks the streams have now cut completely through the

gravels and into the rock below, leaving the valley filling as terraces or benches on either side of the streams. In Young Creek valley, especially, many lateral tributaries have also cut through the gravels, which now form interrupted benches along the slopes to the north and south of the stream.

PRESENT STREAM GRAVELS.

The larger glacier-fed streams of the area are in sharp contrast, both in appearance of water and in character of valley deposits, with the streams which do not head in active glaciers. The streams which are supplied only by melting snow and by the ordinary run-off are for the most part clear, and they are gradually cutting their valleys deeper. The glacier-fed streams, on the contrary, are supplied with great quantities of detritus by the glaciers, and during the warm season they are turbulent and heavily loaded, so that they are constantly building up their valleys with gravels and silts brought down from above. The Nizina Valley is a conspicuous example of this building process. The present flood plain ranges in width from one-fourth mile at the extreme western edge of the area mapped to more than 2 miles at its widest points. The flat is composed of gravel bars, for the most part bare of vegetation though some of the higher portions are timbered. The proportion of the flat that is covered by water at any one time not only varies greatly with the seasons, but often there is a great daily range as well. Since the water supply is largely furnished by the melting of the glaciers and of the snow on the mountains, the streams are highest in July, and in periods of high water a large part of the flat is covered. During the late fall and winter the rivers dwindle until but little water flows beneath the ice. The daily range, too, is largely controlled by the temperature, the streams being lowest in the early morning but on bright, sunny days increasing in volume until the late afternoon, when the flow is many times as large as it was early in the day.

All of these variations in volume are important factors in the transportation and deposition of débris. In high stages the streams are most turbulent and great quantities of gravel and silt are carried by them. In low stages the water becomes clearer and but little material is moved. As a result of their overloaded condition during the summer, the streams, which flow in some places as single streams and in others as intricate networks of channels, are constantly shifting their courses over the flood plains, building up bars in some places while cutting them away in others. In the Nizina Valley below Young Creek the present tendency of the river is to lower its bed, owing to the increased gradient given by the cutting down of Nizina Canyon below. Above Young Creek the valley floor is being built

up, the building proceeding most rapidly at the mouths of the tributary streams. Chititu Creek has a large low-grade fan below its canyon, but the edge of this fan has reached the Nizina flood plain at only one point. Dan Creek also has a low fan extending out to the Nizina bars. The largest deposit from a tributary stream is that at the mouth of Chitistone River. Here a wide fan of low slope has crowded Nizina River over against the rock cliffs on its west valley wall, where in places all the talus slopes have been removed and the flood plain extends flush up against the limestone cliffs. This fan has also been effective in retarding the current of Nizina River above it and in aiding deposition there.

McCarthy Creek flows for the lower 10 miles of its course through a more or less narrow valley intrenched into the gravel deposits and into its rock bed, but above this portion the valley floor is broad and gravel filled.

POSTGLACIAL EROSION.

The agencies of rock weathering and erosion are very active in this region of great daily ranges in temperature, high altitudes, and steep slopes, so that the amount of rock material which has been removed since the retreat of the great glaciers has been large. The timber line throughout the district lies at about 4,000 feet or lower, although willow and alder bushes flourish above this and are sometimes found up to an elevation of 5,000 feet. Above 5,000 feet vegetation is sparse and most of the surface is bare and exposed to the agencies of weathering. Large talus slopes occur below all steep cliffs. The greenstone is perhaps most resistant of all rocks in this vicinity, and the talus accumulations below greenstone outcrops are small as compared with those below similar cliffs of the more easily weathered rocks. The Chitistone limestone follows the greenstone in its ability to resist weathering, although, as is to be expected, there are often large talus slopes below the enormous cliffs which this limestone offers. The porphyry weathers much more rapidly than either greenstone or limestone, and the sides of those mountains which are composed of this rock are almost invariably buried beneath great talus aprons. In the steep-sided porphyry mountain between the Kennicott and McCarthy Creek the talus is so abundant that few outcrops occur below an elevation of 5,000 feet and only the upper craggy portion of the mountain is free from talus. Both Triassic and Jurassic shales weather readily, the latter with the greater ease on account of its freedom from hard beds of limestone. A great amount of postglacial stream cutting has been done in the Triassic shales between McCarthy Creek and the Nizina. In the Kennicott shales of Dan, Chititu, and Young creeks the amount of stream cutting near the gulch heads has been very large. There is

every reason to believe that on the south side of Chititu and on both sides of Young Creek the slopes were left smooth and free from gulches by the glacial ice. Since the ice retreated large gulches have been cut and a great amount of the easily eroded shale has been removed. The streams in these valleys have also succeeded in cutting through the thick gravels into the bed rock below.

Altogether, when the comparatively short time that has elapsed since the retreat of the ice from this area is considered, the work accomplished by erosional agencies has been surprisingly great.

ROCK GLACIERS.[a]

Among the important agencies of postglacial denudation in this district are the remarkable features which have been called rock glaciers (Pl. III, in pocket). These are rather widely distributed among the more rugged portions of the area, more than 30 occurring within the borders of this sheet. They are known to occur in other parts of the Wrangell Mountains, but here they attain exceptionally perfect development. An inspection of the topographic map shows at once many of the characteristics of the rock glaciers, but the important features, such as the surface markings, can not be shown with such a large contour interval. Although differing greatly among themselves in size, shape, and material, they have certain characteristics in common. They are usually long, narrow flows, many times longer than wide, confined in the bottoms of cirquelike valleys. Some have wide, fan-shaped heads and taper down to narrow tongues below; others are narrow above and spread out into spatulate lobes below; but the greater number are bodies of nearly uniform width, from one-tenth to one-fourth of a mile wide and from one-half to 2½ miles long. The surface slopes vary in different examples from 9° to 18° for the whole course of the flow.

On viewing one of the better-developed rock glaciers one is struck by its great resemblance to true glaciers. They all head in cirques and extend thence down the valleys. In cross section their shape is much like that of a glacier, being highest above the valley axis and sloping down sharply on the sides. Where confined in narrow valleys the rock glaciers are narrow tongues lying in the valley bottoms, but upon emerging from their restricting walls they spread out into broad lobes. Some have distinct lateral moraine-like ridges and all show a more or less well-marked longitudinal ridging.

The materials of which the rock glaciers are composed are the blocks and fragments of angular rock such as go to make up the ordinary talus slope, the fragments being derived from the walls of the cirque at the valley head. The variety of rock found in any

[a] Capps, Stephen R., Rock glaciers in Alaska: Jour. Geology, vol. 18, pp. 359–375.

rock glacier therefore depends on the materials found in the cirque walls—porphyry, limestone, greenstone, or shale, as the case may be. The individual rock fragments vary in size from fine stuff to blocks several feet in diameter in exceptional cases. Six inches would perhaps be the average size in these rock glaciers which are composed of porphyry, while in the greenstones and limestones the average is larger and in the shales it is smaller than this.

In many of the rock glaciers the fragmental rock extends all the way to the head of the cirque, with no ice visible and little or no snow on the surface. In several cases, however, the rock glaciers grade into true glaciers at their upper ends, without any sharp line of demarcation, so that there is a complete gradation between the two.

The surface markings are characteristic and in some measure are systematic in their arrangement. In the upper portions there are usually many parallel longitudinal ridges a few feet high, separated by troughlike depressions (Pl. IX, *B*, p. 56). Toward the lower end of each rock glacier which has an opportunity to spread out into a broad lobe the longitudinal ridges become less prominent and finally disappear entirely, giving place to concentric wrinkles which parallel the borders of the lobe. The sides of the flow below the cirque are usually separated from the rock valley walls by a sharp trough, and at their lower ends the flows steepen to the angle of rest for the material. The whole appearance gives one a decided impression of movement, as if the material had moved forward from the cirques in somewhat the manner of a glacier, the longitudinal lines simulating moraine lines.

The marked resemblance of these flows to glaciers led to the suspicion that ice must be in some way responsible for their movement. To determine if this were the case, a number of the rock glaciers, 7 or 8 in all, were dug into, and in each instance clear ice was found. This was not massive ice like that of a glacier, but interstitial ice, filling the cavities between the angular fragments and forming with the rock a breccia, with the ice as the matrix. The depth below the surface at which ice was found varied according to the elevation of the rock glacier and to the portion of it examined. Toward their lower ends the ice lay too deep to be found by any shallow excavations that there was opportunity to make. Farther up, toward the cirques in which they head, the ice was usually found within a foot or two of the surface if a depression was dug into. The surface of the ice-filled portion, being determined by the depth to which melting takes place, follows roughly the surface of the flow, so that along the troughs between the ridges running water could be found on a warm day following shallow channels in the ice-filled talus.

The rock glaciers are quite different from true glaciers, although in those cases where the rock glacier is a continuation of the lower end of a true glacier it may be impossible to draw a line separating the two. For the formation and existence of a glacier it is necessary that in the head of the basin occupied by ice there should be an annual surplus of snowfall over melt. When the amount of snowfall becomes less than the amount which melts and runs off, the glacier will dwindle and finally disappear. The greater number of rock glaciers, on the other hand, are found to head in cirques in which all or practically all of the winter snow disappears during the summer. In a true glacier, no matter how heavily moraine covered it may be, there is always a tendency to crevasse where the ice rounds a bend or passes over an irregularity of its bed, and great irregularity of surface is common at the lower end, where the melting ice allows the overlying moraine to cave in. In the rock glaciers no crevasses were seen, even in places where abrupt changes in the grade of the bed occur, and large cave-in pits are wanting. Irregularities of this kind, however, are not to be expected if the rock glaciers are composed, as they seem to be, of talus, with ice only in the interstices, for the talus itself is self-supporting without the ice, and the shape of the surface would be but little changed if the ice should all melt out. This is true, however, only of those flows which have not glaciers at their upper ends. Of those which head in glaciers, the upper ends would of course be profoundly altered by the melting of the ice, and these effects would be seen just as far down the flow as massive glacial ice had existed. The rock glaciers differ from true glaciers in that, although they advance spasmodically, they never retreat, for the flow retains its form even after the ice has melted out and motion has ceased. Little has been published concerning features of this kind. Certain "stone rivers" in the Falkland Islands have been described by Thomson,[a] Andersson,[b] and others, but according to Andersson's interpretation these "stone rivers," which are now streams of angular blocks of rock, were formerly composed of fine mud, with the blocks of rock buoyed up and carried along by the viscous flow of the mud. The movement has now ceased, and much of the fine material has been removed by running water.

The closest analogy to the rock glaciers seems to be found in the "rock streams" of the San Juan Mountains of Colorado, described by Cross and Howe[c] in the Silverton folio and more recently by Howe[d] in a separate publication. Both are composed of angular

[a] Thomson, Wyville, The Atlantic, p. 245.

[b] Andersson, J. G., Solifluction, a component of subaerial denudation: Jour. Geology, vol. 14, 1906, pp. 91–112.

[c] Cross, Whitman, and Howe, Ernest, Silverton folio (No. 120), Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey, 1905, p. 25.

[d] Howe, Ernest, Landslides in the San Juan Mountains, Colorado: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 67, 1909.

talus from high mountains, and the similarities of appearance and surface configuration are striking. The San Juan flows have been referred to in a textbook[a] as "talus glaciers," and the authors are of the opinion that in many cases snow and ice have had some part in their development. Cross and Howe formerly believed that the position and form of the rock streams were due to glacial transportation, but the absence of ice and some other considerations led them to the opinion which they now hold, that the rock streams were formed by landslides which came down "with a sudden violent rush that ended as quickly as it started." Up to the present time no opportunity has offered to prove conclusively by a series of observations extending over a considerable period of time that these rock glaciers are in motion or to determine their rate of movement. There are, however, a number of significant facts which seem to make this conclusion necessary.

Although on account of climatic conditions most of the cirques in which the rock glaciers head are unable to support true glaciers, they are on the border line of glacial conditions, and although the snows may all melt away on the surface during the summer the ground remains permanently frozen a short distance below the surface and ice in the interstitial openings of a talus mass may remain unmelted indefinitely. Furthermore, a few of the rock glaciers have true glaciers at their heads which extend downward as far as climatic conditions are favorable and are continued below by rock glaciers whose ice is protected from the sun by the heavy coating of débris, and into such rock glaciers it is probable that a tapering tongue of true glacial ice extends down a considerable distance. But this glacial ice is not necessary to their movement, as is shown by those rock glaciers which are unconnected with true glaciers. In addition to the favorable climatic conditions, the exceptionally perfect development of these features in the Nizina district is due to the rugged character of the mountains, with cirques having steep heads and sides, and to unusually favorable conditions for rapid rock weathering and talus accumulation.

The history of the rock glaciers of this district is considered to have been as follows:

As the ice of the last great epoch of glaciation began to retreat and its area to contract, the head and side walls of many of the cirques, steepened by glacial undercutting and by bergschrund sapping, were exposed to the rapid weathering characteristic of bare rock surfaces in the high altitudes of this region. In many of the cirques the rock waste streamed down from the cliffs upon the glacier below and was gradually carried away by the ice and concentrated at its lower edge. Here in the usual order of events it

[a] Chamberlin, T. C., and Salisbury, R. D., Geology, vol. 1, 1904, p. 220.

would have been deposited as a terminal moraine, though differing in character from the common forms of terminal moraine in the preponderance of angular, talus-like material and in the proportionately smaller amount of mud and rock flour which form so important a part of the moraines of active glaciers. Here the small, fast-dying glaciers were eroding but little and were almost overwhelmed by the débris supplied them from the cliffs above. Into the débris toward the lower edge of the glacier the waters from melting ice and snow and from rains sank and froze and gradually filled the interstices up to a point below the surface where melting equaled freezing. In these ice-cemented masses a sort of glacial movement was started. As the climate became still milder, in many cirques the winter snows all melted away during the summer, so that conditions for ordinary glacial activity no longer existed, but the bodies of talus which reached the cirque floors became filled with interstitial ice and the consequent movement of the mass in a glacier-like way has continued, although no doubt all true glacial ice has now disappeared from many of the rock glaciers. It is certain that much snow is still carried down upon the surface of the rock glaciers in slides of snow and rock during the winter and spring, and considerable quantities of it may become covered by débris and incorporated into the rock glaciers, but this snow probably forms only a small part of the total mass of the flow.

The succession of events outlined seems to be well established in this region, where are now to be seen all the stages, varying from apparently active glaciers with short rock glaciers below to long rock glaciers in which no glacial ice is seen, in valleys where all the snow disappears during the summer; yet in these latter the slow movement seems still to be in operation, the rate of movement in each flow being controlled by the supply of talus from above and by the shape and grade of the floor over which it moves. The rock glaciers are therefore the true successors of real glaciers.

The rock glacier which lies on the west side of McCarthy Creek, three-fourths of a mile above the mouth of East Fork (Pl. VIII), though by no means the largest in size, offers a most instructive example for study, as it presents in a typical way many of the characteristic features of all of the flows. It heads in a glacial cirque in a mountain composed largely of porphyry but having many inclosed masses of black shale, the peaks at the cirque head reaching a height of 6,315 feet. The rock glacier occupies the cirque floor below an elevation of 5,250 feet, with talus slopes extending upward above it for about 200 feet. Above the talus the whole face of the mountain is of bare, rugged cliffs of porphyry and shale, both of

ROCK GLACIER ON McCARTHY CREEK THREE-FOURTHS OF A MILE ABOVE MOUTH OF EAST FORK.

Showing the source of supply in the talus cones above, also the surface markings—longitudinal in the upper portion, concentric below. See page 56.

which weather easily, so that the formation of talus is unusually rapid. The elevation of the valley head is not sufficient for the maintenance of a true glacier, and during the summer practically all of the snowfall disappears. By July 4, the time of observation, only small snow banks remained in sheltered places.

The rock glacier heads in the talus cones which have been built up at the base of the steep rock cliffs. These cones, although constantly added to by waste from the rapidly weathering cliffs above, have nowhere been able to attain large size, the materials evidently having moved on down the valley as a rock glacier as fast as they were supplied from above. From the base of each of the more vigorous talus cones a smooth ridge extends down the rock glacier, seeming to show that the forward movement has on the whole been uniform and continuous. Parallel longitudinal ridges of this kind characterize the surface of the upper three-fourths of the flow. The cirque basin above an elevation of 4,000 feet is a hanging valley, but below this level it joins the broad U-shaped valley of McCarthy Creek with an abrupt change of gradient. As it passes over the lip of the hanging cirque the rock glacier cascades steeply down the valley side, and on reaching the gentler slope below, being no longer confined by restricting valley walls, it spreads out in a great lobe along the valley bottom. In this lower lobe the longitudinal surface markings dwindle out and disappear, giving place to a set of beautifully developed concentric wrinkles which parallel the borders of the lobe (Pl. IX, *B*). The origin of these wrinkles is not clear, but they strongly suggest rings of growth and may represent the amount of annual movement of the rock glacier.

At its foot the flow has pushed across the valley bottom to the base of the east valley wall, thus indicating clearly by its position that it was formed after the retreat of the McCarthy Creek Glacier beyond this point. The creek has been crowded to the east and occupies a narrow channel between the foot of the rock glacier and the rock valley wall. The foot of the flow is being rapidly cut away by the stream and in places shows a face 75 to 100 feet high in which the slope is about 35°, or the angle of rest for the material. The creek, although of large volume and steep gradient, has been unable to do more than keep its channel open along the foot of the rock glacier, and it seems evident that the flow is moving forward as fast as the stream can cut it back.

Another rock glacier which heads in the same porphyry-shale mountain as the one just described flows in a northwest direction into the valley of National Creek, a tributary of the Kennicott (Pl. IX, *A*). It is remarkable for the unusually strong development of the

longitudinal ridges in its upper portion, and these ridges show well their mode of origin in the separate talus slopes on the rock walls above.

The flow in Amazon Creek, just east of the Kennicott Glacier, and that in the north head of White Creek are notable for their great length as compared with their width and for the uniformity of their slopes from one end to the other. The surface of the former has a slope of 15° and that of the latter 12°.

The rock glacier which heads in the limestone mountain half a mile northeast of the Bonanza mine and flows eastward shows at its upper end all of the characteristics typical of these flows, but at the mouth of the hanging valley in which it lies it streams down to McCarthy Creek as a symmetrical talus cone (Pl. X, *A*). If the material had come down suddenly as a landslide, no such perfect talus cone would have formed, and its presence indicates that the material of which it is composed was supplied slowly. Furthermore, evidence that this rock glacier is still moving is given by the fact that the talus is still being supplied at the head of the cone and is invading the patch of bushes on its side.

The two large rock glaciers, one on the south and one on the northwest side of Sourdough Peak, are both of the type which originates in narrow cirques but spreads out into broad lobes below the point where the cirque walls restrict it. The glacier on the south side of this mountain is especially noteworthy on account of the great expanse of the flow below as compared with the narrow limits of the cirque in which it originated.

In conclusion, observation has led to the belief that these rock glaciers have moved and that many of them are still moving in much the same way as glaciers, and that, although glacial ice may be and doubtless is present in a few of them, it is not necessary to the movement, which may be due altogether to ice in the interstices. Furthermore, there is no evidence that the flows came down suddenly as landslides, but there are strong reasons for believing that they moved down slowly. The facts and considerations which have led to the conclusion that the flows did not come down suddenly but slowly and that some of them are now in motion are noted below.

1. The remarkable resemblance in position and form of the rock glaciers to true glaciers in the immediate vicinity.

2. The direct connection and perfect gradation between true glaciers above and rock glaciers below.

3. The presence of interstitial ice at no great depth below the surface in all the rock glaciers which were dug into.

4. The longitudinal ridges of the upper portions of many of the flows that can be traced directly to active talus slopes.

A. ROCK GLACIER IN A TRIBUTARY OF McCARTHY CREEK NORTHEAST OF BONANZA MINE.

At the mouth of its hanging valley it breaks down into a great talus cone. See pages 58, 59.

B. DETAIL OF SURFACE OF ROCK GLACIER ON TRIBUTARY OF McCARTHY CREEK.

The rounded ridges in the foreground are the concentric ridges which characterize the lower portion of the flow.

5. Nowhere have the talus slopes at the cirque heads been able to form any considerable accumulations upon the surface of the rock glaciers. This seems to be strong evidence that the talus has moved down valley as fast as it has been supplied.

6. Most of the rock glaciers have a steep slope at the lower end, where the gently sloping surface of the upper portion breaks down at the edge at an angle of rest as steep as the material will retain. On this steep face the rock fragments show bare surfaces, while the talus on the surface above is usually lichen covered. This seems to show that the material is moving forward fast enough to prevent erosion at the lower end from establishing drainage lines on the face of the flow and from reducing it to a low-graded slope.

7. McCarthy Creek, a swift stream of large volume, which is now actively cutting into the lower edge of a rock glacier on its west side (described on pp. 56–57) that has been in existence long enough for large spruce trees to grow upon its surface, has so far been unable to do more than keep open a narrow channel along the foot of the flow. There is no evidence that the rock glacier ever extended 75 feet farther eastward to the rock bluff on the east side of the valley. It would be surprising if this mass of material, coming down with a violent rush, should have failed by just the width of the creek to cross the valley, and if the stream, which is now actively cutting into the face of the flow, should have been unable to do more than keep its channel open. It appears more probable that the slowly advancing edge of the rock glacier had forced the stream to its present position and that the edge of the flow is now farther advanced than it has ever been before.

8. There is no evidence that large landslides have taken place in this region if these flows are not landslides. None were seen below the miles of prominent cliffs of the area, though ordinary talus cones are abundant.

9. The rock glacier on McCarthy Creek, northeast of the Bonanza mine (Pl. X, *A* and *B*), ends below in a well-developed talus cone. If the material had come down suddenly as a landslide, no such perfect talus cone would have been formed. The presence of the cone indicates that the material was supplied slowly, enabling the cone to grow symmetrically. The cone is still growing, as can be seen from the way in which the talus from above is invading the patch of bushes on its face.

10. Wherever two rock glaciers from adjacent cirques join to form a single flow the point of junction shows that the two branches have flowed together synchronously, without any evidence that the flow from one branch has come down and overridden that from the other.

IGNEOUS ROCKS.

TRIASSIC OR PRE-TRIASSIC.

NIKOLAI GREENSTONE.

CHARACTER OF THE FORMATION.

The Nikolai greenstone resembles a sedimentary formation in its structural features. It is made up of flows of basaltic lava that succeed one another like beds laid down in water. The beds or flows are usually of considerable thickness, measured in tens of feet rather than in single foot units, and the bedded appearance is more evident when a large mass of the greenstone is seen from a distance great enough to give a comprehensive view of its larger features.

The color of the weathered surface is grayish green, but in places it has a reddish hue. A fresh surface is dark olive or grayish green. In texture it varies from a dense, rough, fine-grained rock in which individual crystals can not be distinguished to a medium-grained porphyritic rock. Many of the flows are amygdaloidal and have a spotted appearance, due to the cavity fillings. Some of the spots or amygdules are light gray or almost white, like quartz or calcite; others are dark green or gray. Quartz is present but is not so frequently seen filling cavities as calcite, yet these two minerals are not the only ones that produce light-colored amygdules. Amygdaloidal greenstone bowlders in Chititu Creek contain large spherulitic aggregates of white crystals, believed to be thomsonite. This rock, however, was not seen in place. Dark-colored amygdules are more common than the light ones and for the most part consist of chloritic or serpentinous material. In many places the cavities of the lavas were elongated and distorted before their present mineral filling was introduced, so that the amygdules have peculiar irregular forms. The cavities appear to have been distributed throughout the flows from top to bottom, for no evidence of their being more abundant at the upper than at the lower surface was observed. This is one of the reasons for suspecting that the lava was poured out under water, since the weight of the water resting on the surface of the lava would prevent in large measure the expansion of included gases or steam; yet it is admitted that no proof of their submarine origin has been discovered. Interbedded tuffs and shales were not found in the greenstone. Frequently a weathered surface of the greenstone is seen where the amygdules have been dissolved out, leaving a vesicular rock that probably resembles closely the original lava flow.

A newly broken surface of the greenstone would hardly lead one to believe that chemical alteration had taken place to any considerable extent, for the rock appears to be fairly fresh, yet microscopic examination of the sections shows that the alteration is advanced and is general.

The Nikolai greenstone is less obtrusive in its topographic expression than either the shales or the limestone. It forms steep slopes and ragged mountain tops, but the greenstone mountains do not possess the sharp, angular outlines of the shale mountains or the high wall-like cliffs and the pointed spires of the limestone. Neither do the lower greenstone hills present the smooth, rounded contours of the glaciated shale ridges on either side of Young Creek. The greenstone resists decay, but it has numerous joints and fracture planes and rapidly breaks down under northern climatic conditions. This accounts for the roughness of its ridges, the absence of smooth perpendicular cliffs, and the vast quantity of angular blocks below its large exposures. Such blocks do not disintegrate like the shales, so that greenstone pebbles and bowlders form a conspicuous proportion of the gravels and other unconsolidated deposits. The greenstone, like the Chitistone limestone, resisted strongly the distorting forces that are so plainly expressed in the folding of the McCarthy shale. There is even less evidence of folding than in the limestone, but it is apparent from field observations that adjustment to pressure by faulting has taken place extensively.

PETROGRAPHIC DESCRIPTION.

Thin sections of greenstone studied with the microscope show that the rock is a typical diabase now much altered. The principal constituents are feldspar and colorless pyroxene. The feldspar is labradorite, occurring in lath-shaped crystals, and in nearly every section is more or less altered. Pyroxene fills the spaces between the feldspars. It has been less resistant to alteration than the feldspar and is largely altered to a serpentinous or chloritic material. Accessory minerals are magnetite or ilmenite and chalcopyrite; olivine and iddingsite are rare. The principal alteration minerals are serpentine or chlorite, calcite, and perhaps quartz.

Cavities in the greenstone were abundant, but have been filled with secondary minerals such as chlorite, delessite, calcite, and, rarely, quartz. Many of the amygdules show an outer coating of chloritic material and an inner filling of radiating delessite crystals, in some sections associated with calcite. An opaque decomposition product is common.

DISTRIBUTION.

The Nikolai greenstone underlies conformably the Chitistone limestone and took part in the folding and faulting that the lower part of the limestone underwent. Its distribution, therefore, is related to that of the limestone, and most of its outcrops represented on the map lie in a narrow belt on the south of the limestone belt that is practically continuous and extends southeastward from the north-

west corner of the mapped area to the head of Texas Creek. This belt has its greatest width on Nizina River. A branch extends eastward up Chitistone River and then southeastward into the valley of Glacier Creek, a northwestward-flowing tributary of the Chitistone just beyond the eastern limit of the area mapped. The ridge between Dan and Glacier creeks is capped by a broad, flat syncline of limestone pitching gently northwest, but the base of this ridge wherever it is exposed is greenstone. Greenstone is exposed on both sides of Chitistone River. It dips below the gravel floor of Nizina River north of the Chitistone but rises to view again on the west side and continues north half a mile or more till it is cut off by a fault beyond the limits of the area mapped.

In places only a veneer of conglomerate or shale of the Kennicott formation covers the Nikolai greenstone and small isolated patches of the greenstone appear where the thin covering has been removed. Such patches are seen about National Creek and south of Nikolai Creek. Two small patches of greenstone appear as islands in the gravels of Nizina River, and another, exposed through faulting and erosion, lies on the north side of Copper Creek.

THICKNESS.

It is impossible to determine the thickness of the Nikolai greenstone from observations in the area under consideration, for nowhere within this area is the base of the greenstone exposed. Furthermore, it is not certain that the base of the greenstone is exposed in other parts of Chitina Valley, although it is reported in the Chitistone River basin, and it seems probable that certain tuffaceous and shale beds in the Kotsina Valley may represent it.

The figures to be given represent, therefore, only that part of the formation exposed immediately below the Chitistone limestone—that is, the upper part. One of the best localities for measurements is on the east side of Nizina River, just north of Dan Creek. The dip of the limestone and greenstone is low to the northeast. Unless the greenstone is reduplicated by faulting, its thickness at this locality is at least 4,000 and possibly 5,000 feet. The conditions for measurement in the mountain on the west side of Nizina River are less favorable, but there appear to be not less than 4,500 feet of greenstone exposed there. About 2,000 feet are exposed on the east side of McCarthy Creek and 3,500 feet in the ridge on which the Bonanza mine is situated. Between Bonanza Creek and Kennicott Glacier a thickness of over 4,000 feet of greenstone is exposed. Faults are difficult to locate in the greenstone unless some of the other formations are present to give a clue to their existence, and it is recognized that faults of sufficient importance to impair the value of the measurements given may have escaped notice. It is highly probable,

however, that the thickness of greenstone in the Nizina district approaches 4,500 feet, and there can be little if any doubt that it is over 4,000 feet.

Schrader and Spencer estimated roughly the thickness of the Nikolai greenstone in the upper part of Kotsina Valley at 4,000 feet.[a]

AGE.

Inasmuch as the Nikolai greenstone is composed of lava flows and so far as known does not contain intercalated fossil-bearing beds, the determination of its age depends on its relation to the formations with which it is associated. The greenstone may perhaps contain intruded sills of rock similar in composition to the flows, but for the most part it is made up of lavas that were poured out before the Chitistone limestone began to be deposited. It can not therefore be later than Upper Triassic. Unfortunately no evidence has been collected to fix a lower age limit. North of the Nizina district, in the valley of Skolai Creek and about Skolai Pass and the head of White River, the massive upper Carboniferous limestone is overlain by thin shale beds, tuffs, and lava flows. These overlying beds are believed to rest on the limestone conformably. The lava flows increase rapidly in amount as the succession is followed upward until they finally predominate. There is a possibility that the Nikolai greenstone represents the upper part of these lavas overlying the Carboniferous limestone, in which case their age would be Triassic. Brooks and Kindle have presented evidence to show that Triassic sediments along the upper Yukon rest conformably on limestone of the same age as the limestone on White River.[b] There is therefore some degree of probability that a similar relation of Carboniferous and Triassic formations of the Wrangell Mountains may sometime be established. A comparison of the Nikolai greenstone with the rocks south of Chitina River is of interest but throws little light on the age of the greenstone. The rocks south of the Chitina are chiefly sediments, schists, graywackes, and limestones, all much metamorphosed rocks. Their age is not known but they are usually referred to the Paleozoic. The degree of alteration in them is far greater than in the greenstone, and if this fact may be used as evidence the greenstone is considerably younger. With our present knowledge it is hardly possible to say anything more definite concerning the age of the greenstone than that it is older than the Chitistone limestone and probably is Triassic.

[a] Schrader, F. C., and Spencer, A. C., The geology and mineral resources of a portion of the Copper River district, Alaska: Special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901, p. 42.

[b] Brooks, A. H., and Kindle, E. M., Paleozoic and associated rocks of the upper Yukon, Alaska: Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 19, 1908, p. 305.

JURASSIC OR POST-JURASSIC IGNEOUS ROCKS.

QUARTZ DIORITE PORPHYRY INTRUSIVES.

LITHOLOGIC CHARACTER.

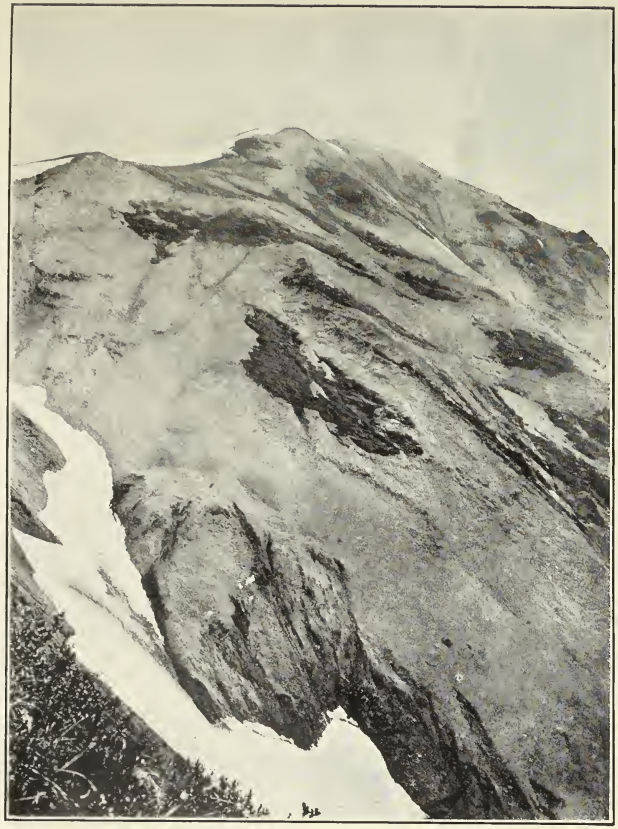
Light-colored porphyritic intrusive rocks are abundant in the Kennicott formation and are confined almost entirely to that formation, for it is a remarkable fact that intrusives are rare in the Triassic sediments and the greenstone. These intrusive rocks occur in the form of laccoliths, dikes, and sills. They show considerable differences in texture and vary from fine-grained, almost aphanitic phases to distinctly granular phases in which larger crystals or phenocrysts of feldspar and quartz are included. The color, too, varies from almost white to creamy white and various shades of gray and brown. Small phenocrysts of quartz with perfect crystal outlines are common, but as a rule the more abundant feldspar crystals are less distinct owing to chemical alteration that has taken place. It seems rather remarkable that the rock should be so fine grained as it is in some of the larger intrusives and that it should have had so litle effect on the shales into which it was intruded.

The porphyries show many stages of alteration, from intrusions that look perfectly fresh to those in which the feldspars are almost wholly decomposed and the rock has a dull, lifeless appearance. A curious banded arrangement of alteration products was noted in some of the light-colored, fine-grained intrusives. Different stages in the advancement of alteration are indicated by concentric zones of yellowish-brown and white color, which show that the chemical changes proceeded in an orderly way from the surface toward the center of each joint block.

In many places large masses of black shale have been caught up in the body of an intrusive and stand out in a most conspicuous way against the lighter-colored porphyry background (Pl. XI, *A*). Some of these intruded shale masses are half a mile in length along their outcrops and give the appearance of thin shale beds between very thick porphyry sills. In general, however, the included shale masses are much smaller.

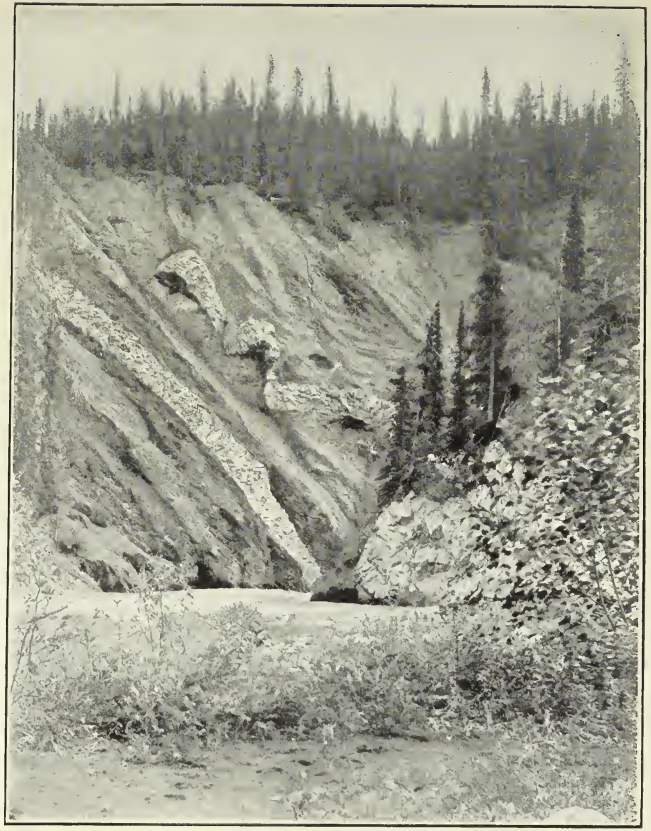
The porphyries resist decomposition but readily break down into slabs and angular fragments which give rise to extensive talus slopes, or "rock slides," as they are locally called. Such débris, because of its light color and its resistance to decay, gives character to slopes of loose material, and, although the dikes or sills from which it came may form only a minor portion of the rock mass, it almost completely hides the presence of shale or other kinds of rock.

Dikes and sills are numerous but present no unusual features further than that some of the sills persist for long distances and in



A. NORTH END OF PORPHYRY PEAK, SHOWING INCLUSIONS OF BLACK SHALE IN PORPHYRY.

See page 64.



B. PORPHYRITIC INTRUSIONS IN BLACK SHALE OF KENNICOTT FORMATION ON McCARTHY CREEK.

See page 65.

places take the form of long overlapping lenses. There is a marked tendency for the intruded rock to follow bedding planes rather than to cut across the beds, so that the sills are more numerous than dikes. Some of the sills in the black shales on the south side of Copper Creek valley continue uninterruptedly for several miles and are such distinct features that the prospectors have given them numbers, as the first, second, etc. They vary in thickness from a foot or two to 100 feet and give valuable aid in determining structure in the shales.

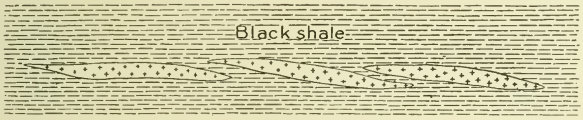


FIGURE 4.—Diagram showing the overlapping of lenticular porphyry sills in the black shales south of Copper Creek. Some of the lenses are 10 to 15 feet thick.

A good example of the way in which the porphyry dikes cut the black shales is given in Plate XI, *B*. (See also fig. 4.)

PETROGRAPHIC DESCRIPTION.

Microscopic examination of thin sections of the porphyry intrusives shows that perfectly fresh unaltered specimens are hardly to be found and that alteration products are practically always present. The rock has a fine-grained groundmass consisting chiefly of feldspar more or less altered and a little quartz in which are phenocrysts of feldspar and quartz. Various degrees of crystallization appear in the groundmass, but its perfection may be obscured by chemical alteration that has taken place since the magma consolidated. One or two of the sections studied are from specimens in which crystallization had not proceeded far when it was interrupted by cooling of the intrusive rock. These sections show a fine-grained groundmass, almost isotropic, filled with tiny forked skeleton laths or crystals of feldspar. Most sections, however, show a more advanced degree of crystallization. The feldspar is of the more acidic plagioclase variety. Zonal phenocrysts give an opportunity to determine that they belong mostly to the oligoclase-andesine series. Orthoclase appears in a few specimens. Quartz in rounded plates or with embayments is not uncommon, but for the most part the outlines are sharp and angular. Brown mica is usually present, as are also shreds and scales of colorless mica. Hornblende is the next most common ferromagnesian mineral. Many of the crystals are much altered, and in some sections the former presence of hornblende is known only by the decomposition products taking the form of the characteristic hornblende cross section. Pyroxene was found in one specimen. Most sections show a black metallic mineral like magnetite and brown iron-oxide stain.

Alteration begins in the feldspars and results in the production of fine scales of a highly refractory mineral, probably muscovite, that appear in fractures and along some of the zonal bands of the phenocrysts. Calcite is a common secondary mineral and results from the decomposition of hornblende and of feldspar, yet it may have been introduced in part by circulating water. Calcite resulting from decomposition of hornblende is associated with iron oxide.

DISTRIBUTION.

Porphyritic intrusions are present in the black shales of the Kennicott formation in all parts of the Nizina district, but they have their greatest development north of Nizina River. Porphyry Peak and Sourdough Peak are composed largely of porphyry, as is also the mountain north of Nikolai Creek. The upper parts of all three are made up almost entirely of porphyry in which are included masses of black shale. These laccoliths form a hard resisting cap on the softer shale base and doubtless have been an important factor in protecting the shale from erosion. There are no such large porphyry masses in the black shales southeast of Nizina River, but sills and dikes are numerous in all the shale mountains from Dan Creek to Young Creek. They appear to be more numerous on Dan and Copper creeks and about the head of Rex Creek than they are farther south, but the steep, bare sides of the mountains in the former locality give better opportunities for discovering them than the lower timber and moss-covered slopes of the latter. The preference shown by the intrusives for the black shales is considered as evidence that the molten rock was able to force itself into the black shales more easily than into the lower formations or the upper part of the Kennicott formation. It is remarkable, when one considers their number in the Kennicott formation, that so few intrusives are present in the Triassic sedimentary formations and the greenstone. Special attention was given to this point during the course of field work, since it was assumed that the intruding rocks must cut the older formations in order to reach the overlying younger formations and that traces of some of the conduits through which the melted rock rose would be found. A few dikes were discovered, but they do not seem to bear any proper relation in size and number to the amount of intruded matter in the shales, so that one is forced to conclude that the intrusives entered the shales through some channel not exposed.

AGE.

Intrusives in the Kennicott formation can not be older than the rocks into which they are intruded. Consequently they can not be older than late Jurassic or possibly early Cretaceous. No evidence bearing on their upper age limit was discovered in the Nizina district. It is perhaps true that the intrusions did not all take place at one time,

and there might be cited as bearing on this point the fact that there is considerable variation in the composition and alteration of the intruded rocks. These two facts, however, are not in themselves proof. Such evidence as the intersection of one dike or sill by another dike or sill was not found, and it seems probable that the quartz porphyry intrusions belong to one period of intrusion.

Paige and Knopf have presented evidence to show that the quartz diorites of the Talkeetna Mountains are later than Middle Jurassic but younger than the late Jurassic, and state that they are "thus contemporaneous in a general way with that great series of batholithic intrusions of late Mesozoic age which affected the entire Cordilleran region from the Straits of Magellan to the Seward Peninsula of northwestern Alaska."[a] Quartz diorites of equivalent age intrude Upper Jurassic sediments in the Nutzotin Mountains northeast of the Wrangell Group.[b] There is a strong presumption that the quartz diorite porphyries of the Nizina district are but one manifestation of a disturbance that was widespread and of much greater importance in many other localities than it was here.

STRUCTURE.

Reference has already been made in the descriptions of the different formations to most of the structural features of the district, but for the sake of clearness these facts are here brought together in one section. Examination of the geologic map (Pl. III, in pocket) shows that in a general way the formations lie in zones extending in a northwest-southeast direction. Two sections are placed on the map to interpret the structure of these formations. They show that the prevailing dip of the formations below the Kennicott is toward the northeast but that the prevailing dip of the Kennicott itself is toward the southwest, and, further, that in consequence of the greater disturbances that have taken place in the older formations their general dip is considerably greater. Section *A–A* shows the synclinal structure of the Nikolai, Chitistone, and McCarthy formations along the northern boundary of the mapped area west of Nizina River. A parallel section northeast from any point on Dan Creek to Chitistone River or Glacier Creek would have shown this synclinal structure but with the syncline much flattened out, and a comparison of such a section with section *A–A* and the map would show that the synclinal axis pitches gently northwest. Section *A–A* also shows the unconformable relation of the Kennicott to the older formations, its comparatively low southwesterly dip, and the fault that here displaces the basal beds of the Kennicott and the Nikolai greenstone. Section

[a] Paige, Sidney, and Knopf, Adolph, Geologic reconnaissance in the Matanuska and Talkeetna basins, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 327, 1907, p. 20.

[b] Moffit, Fred H., and Knopf, Adolph, Mineral resources of the Nabesna-White district, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 417, 1910.

B–B shows the Kennicott formation dipping gently to the southwest in broad open folds. The southwest dip is small but is sufficient to bring the interbedded shale and sandstone forming the upper part of the Kennicott formation well down on the slope of the mountains south of Young Creek, although these beds appear only on the tops of the high mountains south of Copper Creek and about the head of Rex Creek. At the northeastern end of this section the greenstone and the limestone lie almost horizontally, but a displacement has taken place by which the limestone is brought into contact with the black shale of the Kennicott formation, and it appears that near the fault plane the limestone dips to the southwest or toward the fault.

Faulting is of common occurrence in the Nizina district, but with the exception of the fault shown on the two sections most of the displacements are comparatively small in amount. The great fault just referred to is a strike fault—that is, its trend is the same as the prevailing strike of the formations and it extends from Copper Creek northwestward to McCarthy Creek. From work done in previous years it is known that this great fault continues westward beyond the Kennicott Glacier, but its course there has not been traced.

Good opportunities for studying the fault were found at two localities, one on the South Fork of Nikolai Creek and the other on Dan and Copper creeks. The north slope of the South Fork of Nikolai Creek is a dip slope formed by a thin veneer of basal Kennicott beds resting on greenstone. (See section *A–A*, Pl. III.) The south slope shows the basal Kennicott in the creek with a narrow belt of greenstone above it and above the greenstone a great thickness of Kennicott dipping to the southwest. The Kennicott and Nikolai formations in this locality were displaced by a fault in such a way that the rocks on the south side now have a relatively higher position than those on the north side. The fault dips high to the northeast and the displacement is about 800 feet. Very different conditions prevail on Dan and Copper creeks. Section *B–B*, Plate III, shows that the north slope of Dan Creek is formed of Nikolai greenstone and Chitistone limestone lying in a practically horizontal position. This condition does not hold on the south side; instead a great block of limestone abuts against black Kennicott shales and forms the point of the obtuse angle between Dan and Copper creeks. In this locality the displacement involves a raising of the north side relatively to the south side, exactly the reverse condition from that in the Nikolai Creek locality. This fault dips about 60° NE. on Dan Creek and, although complicated by minor cross faults, has a displacement that seems to be nearly or quite the thickness of the Chitistone limestone.

The same relative movement as that on Dan Creek took place on the two sides of the fault on the west side of Kennicott Glacier—that is, the formations on the north side were raised—yet no direct evidence

was discovered to prove the existence of the fault between the glacier and McCarthy Creek.

Faults of this kind in which the relative movements of the two walls are opposite in direction at two different localities are known elsewhere, yet, inasmuch as the gravels of Nizina River prevent the demonstration that the Dan Creek fault is continuous with that of Nikolai Creek, it should be stated that the conditions described might result from the dropping of a block between two parallel faults, in which case we should be dealing not with one but rather with two faults. No evidence was seen in the field to raise a suspicion that two closely spaced faults occur here. A perpendicular fault almost parallel with the Dan Creek fault traverses the Young Creek valley, and a third, whose strike is more nearly east and west, crosses Nizina River a short distance north of the limits of the area mapped. The Young Creek fault is probably of the same order of magnitude as that of Dan Creek but is more difficult to study, since only one formation is concerned in the localities where it was examined. It has a known horizontal extension of 5 or 6 miles and the zone of disturbance is a wide one. These displacements, however, throw no light on the problems of Dan and Nikolai creeks.

The three faults just mentioned are the most prominent ones of the Nizina district, but they are not the only ones. There is evidence in many places of movement of the greenstone and limestone formations along their plane of contact, but measurements of displacement under such conditions are difficult. Undoubtedly faults are present in many places where they have not been recognized, for it is only under favorable conditions that they are discovered. Such conditions are provided by the limestone-greenstone contact. The character and frequency of faulting are shown on the geologic map by the contact north of Dan Creek. Displacements of the kind occurring there are difficult to recognize and to trace where only one of the formations is present. Most of the observed minor faults make obtuse angles approaching 90° with the major strike faults and are vertical or nearly so. They are present in many places and are commonly of small displacement in comparison with the strike faults even when of considerable horizontal extension. The shear zone of the Bonanza ore body is of this class. It was traced in a direction N. 30° E. from the mine for a distance of 1 mile, but the displacement at the limestone-greenstone contact is only 2 feet. A parallel fault on the east side of McCarthy Creek has a displacement of over 500 feet. The numerous faults north of Dan Creek are vertical or nearly so and have displacements ranging from 10 or 15 feet to several hundred feet. Minor strike faults were also noted, but since they do not cut bedding or formation boundaries they are apt to be undiscovered, as are also faults of low dip, such as the horizontal frac-

ture planes of the Bonanza mine, along which slight movement has taken place.

In summarizing what has been said about faulting attention is directed to the fact that in a broad way the faults may be divided into two classes, those parallel to the prevailing strike of the formations and those that are approximately perpendicular to it. These may be referred to as strike faults and dip faults, for they are vertical or approximately so, and their strikes correspond in a measure with the direction of strike and dip of the formations.

The principal strike faults have given rise to great displacement of the rocks cut by them and persist for long distances horizontally. The dip faults are more numerous but the displacements are smaller. The effects of these faults on the rocks may be compared to the fracturing of the ice in a glacier. Blocks were formed which had to adjust themselves to surrounding conditions; some of them moved up, some down, as will be seen by examining the limestone-greenstone contact north of Dan Creek. In this way adjustments of great amount were brought about by many small, widely distributed displacements.

AREAL GEOLOGY.

The areal distribution of each formation has been indicated in the description of the formation. It now remains to bring these scattered facts together in one brief statement. Fully one-third of the mapped area is occupied by unconsolidated gravels, sands, etc., of glacial and fluvial origin (Pl. III, in pocket). Two-thirds of the remainder is given to the Kennicott formation. Consequently less than one-fourth remains to the rocks older than the Jurassic. The greenstone, the limestone, and the Triassic shales are confined strictly to a belt along the northeastern side of the area, but their territory is invaded in a few places by outliers of the overlying basal beds of the Kennicott formation. Triassic shales occupy only a small part of the area belonging to the older rocks, for the map does not extend far enough north to include the places of their greatest development. They are seen along the boundary of the mapped area between McCarthy Creek and Nizina River and in the vicinity of Copper Creek. The Nikolai greenstone and the Chitistone limestone form a narrow belt that extends northwest from Pyramid Peak to Kennicott Glacier. Nothing but Kennicott sediments and the igneous rocks intruded in them appears south of the Triassic formations. They appear in two principal areas on the two sides of Nizina River and are separated by a broad stretch of gravel deposits. Quartz diorite porphyries cut the Kennicott sediments in all parts of the district but find their greatest development in the black shales, particularly the shale area north of Nizina River. The por-

phyry sills of Copper Creek are conspicuous because of their persistence, but the intrusives of Porphyry and Sourdough peaks are so much greater in amount that they dominate in the upper parts of these mountains.

It may not be out of place to state here that the four formations of the Nizina region continue northwestward beyond Kennicott Glacier and that their areal relations there are practically the same as on the east side. Black Kennicott shales with numerous porphyry intrusives make up the mountains west of Porphyry Peak on the opposite side of Kennicott River, and the greenstone and Triassic sedimentary formations appear north of Fourth of July Pass. The mountain in the middle of the glacier, known as "The Peninsula," gives an excellent section of the greenstone and the two Triassic formations. Greenstone forms the southern point of "The Peninsula." On it lies the northeastward-dipping limestone, which is succeeded in turn by the Triassic shales. This locality is one of a few in this region where the limestone has been closely folded and much contorted.

It is known regarding the extension of these formations toward the southeast that the greenstone outcrops on Canyon Creek east of Young Creek, and it is probable that both greenstone and limestone extend still farther eastward into the Chitina Valley. Schrader traced the black Jurassic shales, which were at first thought to be Triassic, as far east as Canyon Creek, but beyond that there is no information concerning them.

HISTORICAL GEOLOGY.

SEDIMENTARY AND IGNEOUS RECORD.

In describing the formations of the Nizina district the rocks of sedimentary origin were considered in one group and those of igneous origin in a second. This treatment by family groups is not followed in the discussion of the historical geology of the district, but rather it is attempted to give in the order of their occurrence the geologic events connected with the different rocks.

The first event in the geologic history of the district concerning which we have evidence within the district is the outpouring of lavas that are now known as the Nikolai greenstone. This took place previous to the deposition of the Chitistone limestone, and consequently either in Upper Triassic time or in some period preceding it. It is not, probable, however, that the greenstone flows are older than the Triassic, since the best evidence at hand indicates that they are later than Carboniferous. The flows did not take place as a single event but were doubtless continued through a considerable time interval. There is some reason to believe that they may have been

poured out under water, although it is by no means established that such is the case; yet, whether they accumulated in the sea or whether they accumulated on land and were later carried below sea level by subsidence of the land, the beginning of deposition of Upper Triassic marked the complete cessation of volcanic activity for the time being. Deposition of the Chitistone limestone continued for a long interval of time without important changes in the character of the material laid down. At first the conditions of accumulation were relatively stable and the massive beds at the base of the Chitistone were formed, but later conditions changed, for the beds grew thinner, and finally thin partings of shale began to appear. The commencement of shale deposition marked the beginning of the transition from the Chitistone limestone to the McCarthy shale. As the shale beds increased in amount the limestone decreased, till finally shale predominated and limestone was no longer of importance in the formation. All these events that concern the sedimentary formations took place before the end of the Triassic period. They terminated with an elevation of the Triassic sediments above sea level, which was accompanied or followed by deformation and folding of all the sedimentary beds and the greenstone. Erosion of the new land surface began as soon as elevation took place and, unless part of the historic record has been lost or overlooked, continued throughout Lower and Middle Jurassic time. During this erosion period an enormous quantity of material was removed from the land and returned to the sea, but what became of it is not known. The beveled edges of the greenstone, the limestone, and the shale bear evidence of an areal extension of these formations beyond the limits now recognized and testify to the thousands of feet of material carried away.

Erosion was at last interrupted by the advance of the Jurassic sea. This advance probably took place from the west, where it began in Lower Jurassic time, as is known from the presence of Lower Jurassic beds on Cook Inlet. Upper Jurassic sea prevailed in the Chitina region long enough to permit many thousand feet of sediments to accumulate. This sea is supposed to have been a somewhat restricted one. The waters were shallow. Probably a land mass existed to the south in the region of the present Chugach Mountains and separated the sea from the ocean. The sediments deposited in the Jurassic sea are not all of one kind and were deposited under varying conditions. The Kennicott formation bears within itself evidence of many and important changes during the time when it was being laid down. Shore conditions are indicated by the basal conglomerate, but the gradual upward decrease in size of the pebbles that form the conglomerate and the transition from conglomerate or grit to sandstone and from sandstone to fine black shales tell of a progressive change in conditions that is difficult

to interpret, for it may have been caused in various ways. The great thickness of fine black shale, however, is evidence of long-continued stability in the source of supply and the manner of deposition of the materials composing them. Stability at last gave place to instability, and another great thickness of interbedded shales and sandstones followed the black shales till the last known event of Upper Jurassic deposition took place and the massive upper conglomerate was laid down. Deformation, elevation above sea level, and intrusion by quartz diorite porphyry are the next events recorded in the rocks of the mapped area, and they lead up nearly to the beginning of development of the present topography. Yet there is reason for assuming that the Kennicott formation does not represent the latest rocks of the Nizina district and that other younger sedimentary and igneous rocks may have once been present but are now entirely removed. This assumption is based on the presence of coal-bearing beds and still younger lava flows in the vicinity of Fourth of July Creek, west of Kennicott Glacier, and on the head of Chitistone River. Neither of these localities has been studied in detail. The coal of Fourth of July Creek is confined to a small area. It lies horizontally, is associated with black carbonaceous shale, and is overlain by arkose sandstone and an andesitic lava flow. Its relation to the great fault that cuts the Kennicott and older formations is such as to leave little doubt that it was deposited after faulting took place, and it is provisionally referred to the Tertiary. Coals associated with shales and sandstones and overlain by lava flows are exposed on Chitistone River. These beds also are referred to the Tertiary. The presence of these younger rocks in the immediate vicinity makes it appear highly probable that they may have extended into the region under consideration, since it is difficult to understand how they could have been deposited where they now appear without being much more widespread than they are. A coal-bearing formation consisting predominantly of coarse arkose and showing no evidence of marine conditions, but included between marine Tertiary formations, reaches a thickness of more than 2,000 feet in the Controller Bay region.[a]

More than 3,000 feet of fresh-water coal-bearing Tertiary sediments are exposed in the Matanuska region.[b]

These sediments comprise "a series of sandstones, shales, arkose, numerous coal seams, and a large volume of conglomerate." The Gakona formation of the Copper River basin[c] is a coal-bearing for-

[a] Martin, G. C., Geology and mineral resources of the Controller Bay region, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 335, 1908, p. 31.

[b] Paige, Sidney, and Knopf, Adolph, Geologic reconnaissance in the Matanuska and Talkeetna basins, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 327, 1907, p. 27.

[c] Mendenhall, Walter C., Geology of the central Copper River region: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 41, 1905, p. 52.

mation of fresh-water origin. It reaches a thickness estimated to be not less than 2,000 feet and includes 500 feet of conglomerate, together with shale, gravel, sand, and lignite beds. Other areas of supposedly Tertiary sediments appear in the Copper River valley, but very little is known about them. If the coal-bearing rocks occurring just north of the Nizina district are of Tertiary age, it is a reasonable presumption in the absence of definite proof that they, like the coal-bearing Tertiary formations of the Matanuska and Copper River basins, are of fresh-water origin, and that therefore there is no necessity for assuming a submergence of the region below sea level after the Kennicott formation was deposited. The element of doubt in this presumption lies in the uncertainty concerning the age of the coal, for it is known that the Upper Jurassic formations as well as the Tertiary formations of the Matanuska region carry coal.

PHYSIOGRAPHIC RECORD.

There is good evidence in many parts of Alaska to show that at the time when the Tertiary coal formations were deposited the land had a much lower relief than it has to-day. The present mountain ranges, although perhaps distinctly outlined, had not yet reached their full development. The coal formations were laid down in depressions of a land surface that must have lacked in large measure the rugged character that we now see. Probably this land surface presented many of the features of the present Copper River or Yukon valleys in their broader parts. Such appear to have been the conditions when the forces that resulted in the uplifting production of the present Chugach Mountains and the Alaska Range began to be felt. These forces doubtless acted slowly, but they acted for a long period of time, and they may be in operation yet. They brought about the uplift of the mountain areas and made it possible for the agents of erosion to initiate the work of forming the present mountain and valley features. They were accompanied by or were the cause of the extrusion of a great volume of lava that has continued almost to the present day and is the most characteristic feature of the Wrangell Mountains, the feature that distinguishes them from the Chugach Mountains on the south and the Alaska Range on the north.

Chitina Valley is a very old topographic feature and was formed by a stream that probably had an outlet by way of the upper Copper River valley either into the drainage basin of Cook Inlet or possibly into the Yukon Valley. Its axis coincides with the boundary line between the older metamorphic rocks of the Chugach Mountains and the younger, less-altered rocks on the north side of the valley. This boundary in part marks an unconformity of deposition and possibly also one of faulting, but in either case it appears to have been a

determining factor in locating the position of the valley. The valleys of Nizina River and the other streams of the Nizina district, like the Chitina Valley, originally represented the work of streams alone and were the result of normal stream erosion, but they have been profoundly modified by the action of glacial ice. This modification is represented chiefly by changes in valley forms due to straightening of the sides, alterations in the form of cross section, and lowering of the valley floors, together with changes brought about by the deposition of unconsolidated glacial materials. These modifications having already been described in the section on glaciation, it is unnecessary to repeat their description here. It is only necessary to say that the most conspicuous topographic features we see to-day owe their present appearance to recent glaciation, yet that subsequent stream cutting and rapid subaerial erosion due to the subarctic conditions have begun to modify the land forms left by the retreating ice. These later features are seen in the rock-walled canyons on the lower courses of all the streams, the deep gulches such as cut the Kennicott formation on White and Young creeks, and the great accumulations of loose material in the form of talus.

ECONOMIC GEOLOGY.

HISTORY.

The history of mining in the Chitina Valley begins with the rush of prospectors to Valdez in 1898. These men were influenced by the gold discoveries in the Yukon Basin during the preceding two years and came to Valdez in the hope of finding an easier route to the Yukon or new placers in the Copper River valley. Reports of copper on Copper River had circulated since the time of the Russians, who found in the hands of natives copper that probably came from the Nizina district, yet a majority of the prospectors were in search of gold, not copper. A few, however, turned their attention to copper and crossed from Valdez to the Wrangell Mountains, where their efforts received encouragement. In the following year (1899) the search for valuable minerals was resumed and prospecting parties ascended Chitina Valley as far as the Nizina district. It is doubtful if they attempted to go farther east in the main valley, and for that matter there has been little effort to prospect the upper Chitina region in the years since then. The Nikolai copper lode was shown to a party of white men by a native sent for this purpose by Chief Nikolai, of Taral, in July, 1899. Nikolai's house was at the mouth of Dan Creek, and the ore body was doubtless discovered by the natives on some of their hunting expeditions. It is usually difficult to reconcile the statements of different persons concerning the early events connected with the history of a new country, and the Nizina district is

no exception to the rule. It is said that gold was discovered on both Dan and Young creeks at about this time, but either the quantity found was small or the difficulties met prevented any immediate steps toward developing the property.

Work was begun on the Nikolai mine in 1900 for the purpose of securing a patent to the claim. Some of the men who were interested in the property devoted part of their time to further prospecting, and in this way the large body of chalcocite named the Bonanza ore body was discovered about the end of July or the first of August (1900) by C. L. Warner and Jack Smith. It was discovered independently a short time later by Spencer, of the United States Geological Survey, who was engaged in mapping the contact of the Nikolai greenstone and the Chitistone limestone. Up to this time interest in gold placers had been secondary to that in copper prospects, but the presence of gold on Dan Creek was not forgotten, and in 1901 the creek was staked by C. L. Warner and D. L. Kain for themselves and others. Mr. Kain was known to his companion as "Dan," and they named the creek after him.

The first men to find gold on Chititu Creek were Frank Kernan and Charles Koppus, who came to the creek in the first part of April, 1902. They were joined shortly afterwards by two others, Messrs. Rowland and Dimmet, and these men staked the creek for themselves and their partners on April 25. News of the Nizina strike quickly reached the outside, and by July of 1902 the stampede was under way. A new town sprang up on Chititu Creek and was quickly provided with all the usual elements of a thriving placer camp, but there was not enough placer ground to support all comers, and most of the population soon vanished. The richest and most easily mined gravels were largely worked out in the first years by pick and shovel, but since that time the claims on both Chititu and Dan creeks have become more and more consolidated in the hands of a few owners, who are preparing to handle their gold-bearing gravels on a larger scale by more economical methods.

A similar consolidation of ownership has taken place in the case of the Bonanza mine, so that now instead of 11 principal ownerships, some of them representing two or more persons, the property is controlled by a single strong corporation capable of supplying the large capital necessary to develop the ore body.

The mineral production of the Chitina Valley to the present time consists entirely of gold, which is practically all from Chititu and Dan creeks. Copper has not been produced in a commercial way because there is no means of getting it to the coast, so that all the copper brought out is that taken for samples and assays.

COPPER.

OCCURRENCE OF THE ORES.

GENERAL STATEMENT.

An examination of the copper prospects of the Chitina Valley was made by members of the United States Geological Survey in 1907, and a report of that work was published in bulletin form later.[a]

Since that time there has been considerable advancement in the development of some properties and a few discoveries have been made, yet the results of the work done have thrown no light on the nature of the changes which take place in the ore bodies as distance from the surface increases. This question, excepting that of the amount of ore present, is probably the most important one concerning the copper deposits of the region. A study of the copper deposits on the eastern side of the Wrangell Mountains[b] has shown that copper occurs there under much the same conditions as in the Chitina Valley and has suggested some further ideas as to the origin of the ores. The descriptions and discussion that follow, then, are based partly on previous work but have received such revision and addition as have been found to be necessary.

Copper ores in the Chitina Valley north of the river occur in three ways—as copper and copper-iron sulphides associated with the Nikolai greenstone and with the Chitistone limestone; as native copper associated with the greenstone; as placer copper accompanied by native silver and gold. The important copper minerals are chalcocite or copper glance, bornite, chalcopyrite, and native copper. In every copper prospect there is a small quantity of one or more of the oxidation products, such as green malachite stain, azurite, and less frequently the red oxide, cuprite. Chalcanthite, or blue copper sulphate, and the black oxide, tenorite, are rare. Covellite is associated with chalcocite in some localities.

The ore bodies occur as replacements of greenstone or of limestone or as fillings in cavities developed along fault planes, shear zones, or joint planes in greenstone or limestone. A few examples are known of ore bodies to which the term "fissure vein" might be applied in its popular sense, but by far the greater number of the copper deposits are aggregates of copper minerals forming ore bodies of irregular shape which are well described by the term "bunch deposits," yet even the "bunch deposits" are believed to owe their existence to the presence of faults or fractures that permitted the circulation of copper-bearing solutions. Aggregates of copper min-

[a] Moffit, Fred H., and Maddren, A. G., Mineral resources of the Kotsina-Chitina region, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 374, 1909.

[b] Moffit, Fred H., and Knopf, Adolph, Mineral resources of the Nabesna-White district, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 417, 1910.

erals are far more common in the greenstone than in the limestone, but the largest deposits that have been discovered up to the present are in limestone. Most of the deposits in limestone are near the base of the Chitistone formation, yet there are a few notable exceptions to this general rule. On the other hand, the attempt to show that deposits in the greenstone are most apt to occur near or at the limestone-greenstone contact was not successful, and the field evidence seems to indicate that copper occurs in nearly all parts of the formation and that the location of ore bodies is dependent only on favorable conditions of supply or for deposition.

COPPER SULPHIDE DEPOSITS IN GREENSTONE AND LIMESTONE.

Although this part of this paper is intended to deal only with the copper prospects of the Nizina district, it is necessary in the description of the ores to consider the district in its relation to the rest of the Chitina region. The best examples of copper sulphides in greenstone are not found within the region under consideration but to the west of it. The copper minerals are bornite, chalcopyrite, and chalcocite, with secondary alteration products, and they occur (1) in irregularly shaped ore bodies without any conspicuous amount of associated gangue minerals or (2) as well-defined veins accompanied by a gangue of calcite and quartz. Ore bodies of the first kind occur in shear zones or in jointed or shattered portions of the rock. The copper minerals fill fractures in the rock, or more commonly they replace the rock itself. Bornite and chalcopyrite are of more common occurrence than chalcocite, yet some of the most promising ore bodies in the greenstone consist chiefly of chalcocite.

A careful examination of the many copper prospects leads to the belief that most of the ore bodies are of the "bunch deposit" type and are a replacement of the greenstone by copper minerals carried in solutions that circulated along fracture planes produced by jointing, shearing, or faulting of the country rock. The mineralized parts of the greenstone are without definite boundaries in many places, and the ore grades from solid sulphides to disseminated grains or particles scattered through the greenstone, which grow fewer and fewer as distance from the fractures increases till they disappear altogether. Sections of ore examined under the microscope show that the two sulphides bornite and chalcopyrite are closely associated and are intermingled in such a way as to suggest that they were deposited at the same time. Chalcopyrite is practically always present, even in ore that appears to the naked eye as pure bornite. Chalcocite accompanies the bornite and chalcopyrite in some specimens, and the association is such as to suggest that the chalcocite was derived from the poorer sulphides, but this was not definitely proved. A few of the deposits in greenstone consist entirely of chalcocite.

The vein deposits accompanied by gangue minerals are associated with well-defined faults in all the best examples. The copper minerals are bornite and chalcopyrite, and the gangue is chiefly calcite accompanied by quartz. Epidote is commonly present also. The veins pinch and swell markedly in short distances and in all the localities where they were examined have been subjected to faulting or other movement since their deposition.

Copper deposits in limestone were formed by replacement of the limestone as a whole by copper minerals in solutions circulating along fracture planes such as faults, shear zones, or joints. The copper minerals are chalcocite and bornite, accompanied by malachite, azurite, and in places covellite as alteration products. As a rule, the boundary between ore and country rock is distinct, although the form of the ore body itself may be very irregular. This is particularly true where the copper mineral is chalcocite. In deposits of bornite in limestone a dissemination of the copper mineral through the adjacent country rock was noticed, and in such examples there is a gradation from ore to country rock similar to that in the greenstone deposits. One of the best examples of this kind shows a large proportion of chalcocite associated with the bornite, and the deposition of the copper was accompanied by a thorough silicification of the limestone. Large masses of chalcocite like that of the Bonanza property are distinctly replacement deposits in fracture zones. No fragments of limestone are included in the body of the ore, although isolated masses of chalcocite are scattered through the limestone. The ores are most frequent near the limestone-greenstone contact, yet some of them must be fully 1,000 feet above the base of the limestone. It is a notable fact that azurite is far more common as a secondary oxidation product in the limestone replacement deposits than malachite and that it is not common in the deposits in greenstone. Small veins of azurite with cores of chalcocite show distinctly that the azurite in the Bonanza mine was produced by the alteration of chalcocite. Covellite originated in a similar manner.

NATIVE COPPER ASSOCIATED WITH THE GREENSTONE.

Native copper is associated with amygdaloidal phases of the Nikolai greenstone and is also found accompanied by quartz or by quartz and epidote in veins cutting the greenstone. Most commonly it occurs as grains and small slugs in the amygdules and disseminated through the greenstone and as films or leaves and small veinlets cutting the greenstone. Tabular masses deposited in joint planes without much doubt indicate the way in which the large masses of native copper and the copper nuggets in the Dan and Chititu placers were formed. Such masses found in place on the head of White River are believed to have resulted from the alteration of chalcocite. In a few places

in the tributary valleys of the Chitistone and Kotsina rivers native copper occurs in amygdaloidal greenstone in association with a mixture of copper oxide and carbonaceous matter, filling vesicles and fractures in the lavas. Such native copper as is known in the Nizina district is probably due to the reduction of previously formed sulphides or oxides, yet primary native copper is known on the head of White River. There is a strong similarity between the native copper-bearing greenstone of Chitina Valley and the amygdaloidal copper ores of Lake Superior. Specimens from the two regions could be selected between which it is doubtful if close observation could distinguish. This similarity would also extend to the disseminated sulphide ores in greenstone if by any means the sulphides could be altered to native copper.

PLACER COPPER.

Native copper is associated with silver and gold in the gravels of Chititu and Dan creeks. It occurs in pieces that range in size from fine shot to masses weighing several hundred pounds. Two or three tubs of fine copper are secured at each "clean-up" of the sluice boxes on Chititu Creek and give much difficulty in cleaning the gold, since the finest of the copper has to be removed by hand. Many of the nuggets contain native silver, which shows that the copper and silver are here closely associated in origin. The remarkable similarity in form and appearance between the copper nuggets of the Nizina district and the larger masses of copper taken from the stamp mills of the Lake Superior region is evident to anyone who compares the two, since the chief differences are that the placer copper has a slightly smoother surface and an oxidized coating. The copper and silver are derived wholly or in part from the greenstone. Assays of chalcocite from the Bonanza mine and from other copper ores of the Nizina district have shown the presence of both silver and gold in the copper deposits. Small particles of native silver were found in a freshly broken specimen of greenstone from a bowlder on Chititu Creek, and an assay of the rock also showed its presence. The silver was associated with calcite in small fractures. Silver nuggets up to 7 pounds in weight have been found on Dan and Chititu creeks, but where silver is associated with copper in the same nugget copper predominates, and in general silver is seen only as small particles in the copper. Copper is found only in those tributaries of Dan and Chititu creeks where greenstone pebbles and bowlders form part of the stream gravels; consequently it occurs only where the gravels have been formed in part by streams flowing through greenstone areas or where there is a foreign element in the gravels that was derived from a greenstone area and brought to its present position by glacial ice.

ORIGIN OF THE COPPER DEPOSITS.

It is not yet possible to give a satisfactory account of the origin of the copper deposits, but some features of their history can be stated with a considerable degree of certainty, and it is desirable to do this, since it may be of value in future development work. A history of the present deposits is concerned chiefly with three problems—the source of the copper minerals, the manner in which they were brought to their present position and deposited, and the changes that have taken place in them since they were deposited.

It is believed that the source of the copper is within the Nikolai greenstone itself and that only a very small part, if any, is derived from an outside source. The chief argument in favor of this view is the widespread and almost universal occurrence of copper minerals in the greenstone wherever it is exposed. This is seen in hundreds of places in all parts of the formation, from the west end of the Chitina Valley to Nizina River and the upper Chitina. Wherever fractures in the greenstone have permitted water to circulate the green copper stain is apt to be found. Probably the copper was originally present in the form of sulphide in the lava flows, but this does not exclude the possibility of its also having been combined in other minerals of the rock. Pyrite and chalcopyrite are of common occurrence in the greenstone, as is proved by both the hand specimens and the thin sections examined under the microscope. This source is believed to be adequate for supplying all the copper concentrated in the present ore bodies.

An examination of the greenstone in many places has shown that considerable chemical alteration in its constituent minerals is universal. No fresh and unaltered specimens of the rock were found. Alteration began first and is greatest in the pyroxene, and in many places this alteration is complete, so that there now remains only a mass of chloritic or serpentinous material. The feldspar has suffered less, yet the changes are advanced. Opaque masses of brown iron oxide appear to represent original grains or crystals of pyrite or chalcopyrite. These changes have resulted in the production of chloritic and possibly serpentinous material, calcite, quartz, and delessite. In places zeolites as thomsonite have been produced, but they are comparatively rare in the Nizina district and the region to the west, although they are abundant in amygdaloids of the White River region.

Changes of the kind mentioned are usually considered to be accomplished through the agency of circulating water. Chemical changes in the minerals of the basalts were made possible by the presence of water and the substances carried in solution. By the same means copper minerals were taken into solution and redeposited

under favorable conditions. It is a noteworthy fact that the Wrangell Mountain region has been one of volcanic activity since Carboniferous time at least, and, although it has not been possible to establish a direct relation between the copper deposits and any igneous rocks of later age than the Nikolai greenstone, it is not unreasonable to suppose that the presence of heated rocks in the near vicinity may have had an important influence in promoting circulation in the greenstone and particularly in increasing the solvent power of the circulating water.

As to the manner of deposition, it is believed that the copper taken into solution by circulating water was carried into trunk channels and deposited there when the conditions were favorable. Speculations as to the exact chemical changes that took place are of very doubtful value with the present knowledge of the facts and will not be attempted. Most frequently deposition took place in the greenstone formation, but at times the copper-bearing waters passed outside the greenstone and into the overlying limestone before giving up their mineral load. As a rule, the ore bodies were not formed by the deposition of copper minerals in open cavities, although openings sufficient to permit a circulation of water were necessarily present. Most of the ore is a replacement of the country rock itself by copper sulphides. The replacement of greenstone is more nearly complete adjacent to the openings through which water passed and grows less and less as the distance from the openings increases. On the other hand, most of the limestone ores show a complete replacement of the limestone without any outside zone of disseminated sulphides.

Examination with the microscope has shown that bornite and chalcopyrite are usually associated in the greenstone deposits, even in bornite ores that show no chalcopyrite to the unaided eye. This fact, together with the manner in which chalcopyrite is scattered through the bornite, might be taken as presumptive evidence that the bornite was derived from chalcopyrite and is a secondary enrichment. This fact alone does not amount to proof, but the seeming increase in chalcopyrite as depth is gained in some of the bornite-chalcopyrite veins, such as the Nikolai vein, lends some weight to the presumption. The presence of native copper associated with chalcocite and bornite also points to the same conclusion, since native copper is usually regarded as of secondary origin. On the other hand, no evidence was found in the chalcocite deposits in limestone, such as that of the Bonanza mine, to indicate that the ore body has ever been anything other than what it is at present. The copper sulphide appears to have been deposited as such, and a careful examination of the ore has failed to discover the presence of other minerals than those produced by alteration of the chalcocite. It is doubtful if secondary enriched ores could form under the conditions now prevailing

at the Bonanza mine, since all openings such as are due to joints and other fractures are filled with ice, as is also the loose talus material below the mine on both sides of the ridge. Furthermore, the breaking down of the ore and of the limestone inclosing the ore body under the climatic conditions of this region proceeds faster than oxidation. The exposed ore on the ridge and loose broken-down ore on the talus slopes show only a thin film of oxidized material on the surface. Yet thin veins of chalcocite in the limestone and even large masses of chalcocite have been almost completely altered to azurite, which shows that oxidation has taken place either under present conditions or, more probably, under earlier and more favorable conditions, possibly before the late ice advance.

The ore of the Westover claim, on Dan Creek, is an intimate mixture of chalcocite and bornite in silicified limestone along a fracture zone. The copper and copper-iron sulphides are disseminated through the rock in small grains and in veinlets cutting the rock. Most of the disseminated grains are chalcocite, but the veinlets and the larger irregular masses are a mixture of chalcocite and bornite. The veinlets are later than the quartz inclosing them and possibly later than the disseminated grains in the quartz, yet the minerals of the veinlets appear to be contemporaneous. These examples show how unsatisfactory is the evidence concerning the nature of the deposits, but they have some importance in that they do not promise greater richness in copper as the ores are followed below the surface. This point is emphasized because of the belief on the part of many prospectors in the Chitina region that the deposits will grow richer as they are more fully developed. The contrary is more likely to be true, for although they may continue with their present richness they are more apt to grow poorer than to grow richer.

DESCRIPTION OF PROPERTIES.

PRINCIPAL GROUPS.

The better-known copper properties of the Nizina district may be divided into three groups—first, the group in the vicinity of Bonanza Peak, including the Bonanza mine, the Jumbo, the Erie, and the Independence claims, together with the properties known as the Marvellous and Bonanza extension claims; second, the Nikolai Creek group; and, third, the group that includes the Westover claim and other neighboring claims north of Dan Creek. Many other claims have been staked, particularly along the limestone-greenstone contact, but there has been little development work done on them and they contribute little to our knowledge of the copper deposits of the district.

BONANZA MINE.

The Bonanza mine is the most valuable[a] copper property now known in the Copper River region. It is situated on the east side of Kennicott Glacier, at the head of Bonanza Creek, and is the property of the Kennicott Mines Company. Bonanza Creek proper and its western fork head in a glacial cirque basin on the west side of the high divide between Kennicott Glacier and McCarthy Creek. Its two forks include the high ridge on which the copper deposit is situated. The stream is about 3 miles long and flows in a southwesterly direction to the Kennicott Glacier. A post-office called Kennicott has been established at the mouth of National Creek, half a mile south of the mouth of Bonanza Creek and 4 miles from the mine, and the company's main camp and office are located at that place. A wagon road leads from the mouth of National Creek to a point about 500 feet below the mine and another follows the edge of the glacier south to McCarthy Creek. An aerial tram with a capacity of 100 tons per day has been constructed and loading and delivery stations have been built, so that the mine is now practically ready to begin the production of ore, although the storage bunkers are not completed and no ore can be shipped till the railroad reaches Kennicott.

An examination of the geologic map (Pl. III, in pocket) will make clear the general geologic conditions. South of National Creek the high ridge between the glacier and McCarthy Creek consists of black Kennicott shale intruded by large masses of light-gray porphyry. The Jurassic shales and intrusives are separated by an unconformity and probably also by a fault from the greenstone and the overlying Chitistone limestone on the north. North of National Creek the greenstone and limestone appear. The strike of the limestone is northwest and southeast, and its dip averages between 25° and 35° NE. It therefore cuts diagonally across the main ridge from McCarthy Creek to the glacier. Still farther northeast the Triassic shales overlying the limestone appear, but are not of any importance in connection with the copper.

The Bonanza mine is situated on a spur that runs out to the southwest between the forks of Bonanza Creek from the main ridge. This spur is crossed by the limestone-greenstone contact at a point about one-third of a mile from the main ridge. Where the boundary crosses the crest of this spur it has an elevation of 6,000 feet above sea level or 4,000 feet above the point at the mouth of National Creek where the tramway will deliver ore. On the northeast the spur

[a] Since the Bonanza mine was visited in 1907 much work has been done toward surface development and equipment of the mine for shipping ore, but work on the ore body itself has not been such as to add greatly to the knowledge of the deposit. For this reason the description here given is based largely on the previous description published in Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 374.

WEST SIDE OF RIDGE AT BONANZA MINE.

The richest ore exposed on the surface is on the top and face of the ridge between the points indicated by arrows. See page 85.

rises rapidly till 1,000 feet in elevation is gained, but on the southwest its crest is almost horizontal for a distance of about one-third of a mile, beyond which it slopes away steeply to the forks of Bonanza Creek (Pl. XII).

The greenstone immediately below the ore body is variable in texture and general appearance. Part of it is amygdaloidal; porphyritic phases are also present. Amygdules are not confined to the top of the flows but are present throughout from bottom to top. In some places they have been dissolved out on exposed surfaces, leaving a vesicular rock that looks like a recent lava. A bed of red and green shale having a thickness of about 5 feet intervenes between the greenstone and the overlying limestone. This shale forms a narrow northward-sloping bench for a short distance along the northwest side of the ridge, but is everywhere covered with talus and is found only when the débris has been cleared away. The bench is clearly indicated by the snow banks in Plate XII. The base of the limestone consists of not less than 40 feet of coarse gray, slightly argillaceous rock, whose broken surfaces are covered in many places with flattened cylindrical bodies that immediately suggest organic material of some kind. Several specimens of these bodies were submitted to Dr. T. W. Stanton, who says that they are probably corals but are too obscure for identification. Over this basal limestone is a bed a few feet thick of impure shaly limestone, and this in turn is overlain by dark and light-gray massive beds which carry the ore bodies. The limestone dip at the mine is slightly variable but averages about 22° NE.

The limestone is broken by numerous faults and fracture planes, the most prominent of which are nearly perpendicular and range in strike from N. 40° E. to N. 70° E. A minor set of fault planes with about the same strike dips steeply to the west. Another set runs in a northwesterly direction, and in several places striations on slickensided surfaces or clay seams show that the movement was horizontal. Fault planes with low dips, some of them nearly horizontal, are also present. None of the faults observed give evidence of much displacement, but together with the numerous joints they afforded an opportunity for mineral-bearing waters to enter the limestone. The principal fault planes—those running from northeast to southwest—form what may be described as a sheeted zone in the limestone that was traced north-northeast from the Bonanza mine for 1½ miles. This zone has a width of 50 or 60 feet and extends through the shale bed into the greenstone below, but is less noticeable in the greenstone than in the limestone. A vertical displacement of 2 feet occurs in the limestone-greenstone contact along one of the fault planes in the shear zone and is the maximum displacement observed.

The copper ore is chalcocite. Considerable azurite has been formed by oxidation of the chalcocite, and covellite is reported also. Covellite was not found in the specimens of ore collected from the Bonanza mine by the writers, but good specimens of covellite were collected from the Marvellous claim half a mile to the northeast, and its occurrence at the Bonanza is not questioned. The chalcocite is in veins or tabular masses of solid ore up to 5 or 6 feet in thickness, in large irregularly shaped bodies, and in stockworks in the brecciated limestone. Two principal veins of chalcocite are seen on the surface. They stand almost perpendicularly, 12 to 15 feet apart, and strike N. 41° E., forming the comb of the sharp ridge but crossing it at a slight angle, as the ridge at this place has a more nearly north-south direction than the veins. On the surface the veins do not extend down into the lower impure part of the limestone but end abruptly on reaching it. In places the precipitous northwest face of the ridge is plastered over with masses of solid chalcocite for a distance of 50 or 60 feet vertically below the top.

Azurite appears on the surface of the chalcocite and also as a lining of small vugs in the chalcocite, but it is present chiefly as thin veins, that form a network in the limestone and are doubtless due to the alteration of original chalcocite veins, for some of the azurite has an inner core of chalcocite. Azurite is more conspicuous than chalcocite in the surface network of veins in the northern 150 feet of the ore body, but chalcocite forms the great mass of the remainder. The ore bodies formed along the northeast-southwest faults of the northern part of the deposit are not the direct continuation of the large chalcocite veins at the south, but lie in nearly parallel veins which cut the ridge at a greater angle, their strike being about N. 60° to 70° E. The very rich ore can be traced on the surface for a distance of about 250 feet. It ends abruptly on the south in a nearly vertical limestone wall, but on the north gives place to the lower-grade ores, consisting of small veins of azurite and chalcocite with scattered masses of chalcocite, some of them weighing several tons. This lower-grade ore shows on the surface for a distance of at least 150 feet northeast from the high-grade ores, and small scattered azurite veins extend still farther in that direction. The ore, as it shows on the surface, therefore, extends northeast and southwest along the strike for a distance of 400 feet. The thickness, however, is more indefinite, but the very rich ore, with its included limestone, as seen at the surface, has a width of approximately 25 feet, although the thickness of ore sufficiently rich to be mined may be greater.

A little chalcocite and less bornite are found in some of the shearing planes in the greenstone, but they do not extend far into the greenstone. The quantity is small and inconspicuous and might readily pass unobserved. A small amount of epidote is associated with it in

places. The main shear zone in the greenstone cuts an older set of quartz-epidote veins whose direction is about north-northwest. These veins do not intersect the limestone. They reach a maximum thick-

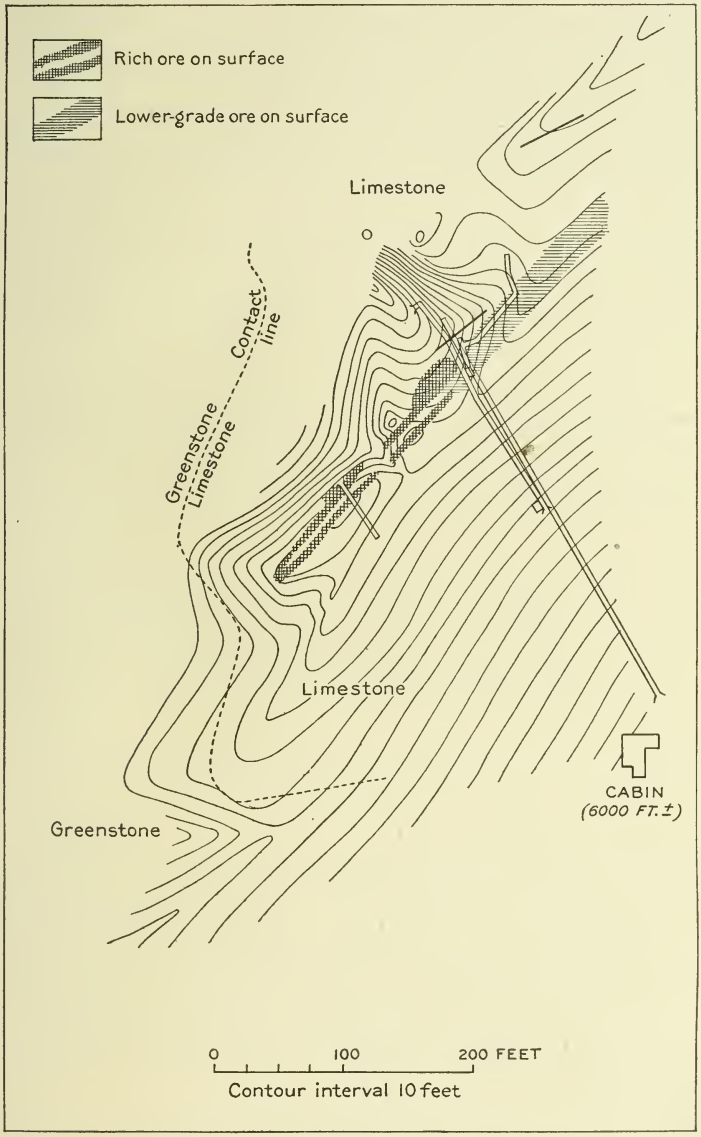


FIGURE 5.—Sketch map of the area near the Bonanza mine, showing the limestone-greenstone contact, the location of the richer ores on the surface, and the tunnels.

ness of 1 foot and carry small amounts of chalcocite, bornite, and native copper.

When the Bonanza mine was visited in 1907 two crosscuts (fig. 5) had been driven in the ore body in a direction N. 33° W. They are

therefore not exactly perpendicular to it. The longer tunnel starts on the east side of the ridge and 75 feet below its top; it is 180 feet in length and extends through to the west side of the ridge. The richest ore, consisting of large masses of chalcocite with some included limestone, is encountered at a distance of 90 feet from the tunnel's mouth and continues for a distance of 21½ feet as measured in the roof. There are smaller bodies of chalcocite, however, for a distance of 10 or 15 feet on either side of the main ore body. About 115 feet from the entrance to the tunnel a winze 33 feet deep was sunk in the ore, and from the bottom a drift zigzags northward approximately 110 feet.

In 1909 a new tunnel had been driven below this longer tunnel from the southeast side of the ridge and connected by a raise with the winze. The new tunnel is 78 feet below the upper one and parallel with it. In July, 1909, it had been driven 45 feet beyond

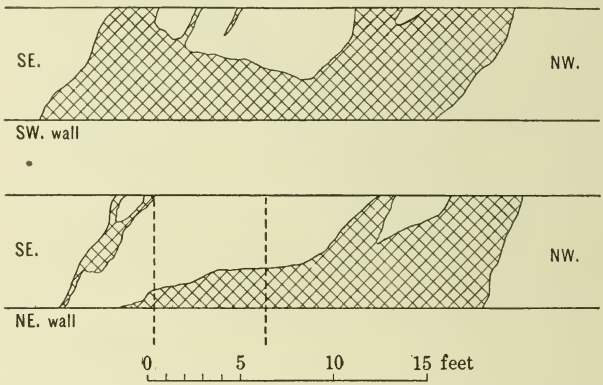


FIGURE 6.—Sketch showing form of ore body exposed in the upper northern tunnel at the Bonanza mine.

the raise but had not encountered any ore bodies as large as those of the upper tunnels. Several small lenses of chalcocite, the largest about 18 inches thick, were exposed in the tunnel itself, but the raise showed much more, for it cut the large body in which the winze was sunk. The absence of the large chalcocite bodies in the lower tunnel adds some weight to the opinion expressed after the visit of 1907 that the ore would probably not extend into the basal impure limestone beds.

About 120 feet southwest of this tunnel is a parallel tunnel driven from the west side of the ridge and 50 feet lower than the little saddle above it on the north. This tunnel starts in a face of solid chalcocite and extends S. 33° E. for 50 feet. The ore, which is chalcocite with a small amount of azurite, is exposed for 34 feet along the tunnel, but is interrupted by horses of limestone. The remainder of the tunnel shows limestone cut by small azurite veins and in places containing a small amount of chalcocite.

A better conception of the form of the ore bodies can be obtained by an examination of figures 5, 6, and 7 than can be given in a written description. The two main parallel surface veins afford only an imperfect idea of the deposit. Those two veins represent a total replacement of limestone along minor zones, where shearing was most intense. The two tunnels show that not only is the limestone replaced along the main shear zone but that mineralized waters followed minor fracture planes also, and thus yielded the low-lying ore bodies and great irregular masses seen underground. Between and around the large masses of chalcocite the limestone was shattered and filled with many small veins of ore, which formed a stockwork that is most noticeable in the winze tunnel and on the surface northeast of the main ore body. As a rule, the brittle chalcocite is very little fractured. The limestone, on the other hand, is greatly shattered and is filled with thin veins of calcite which are older than

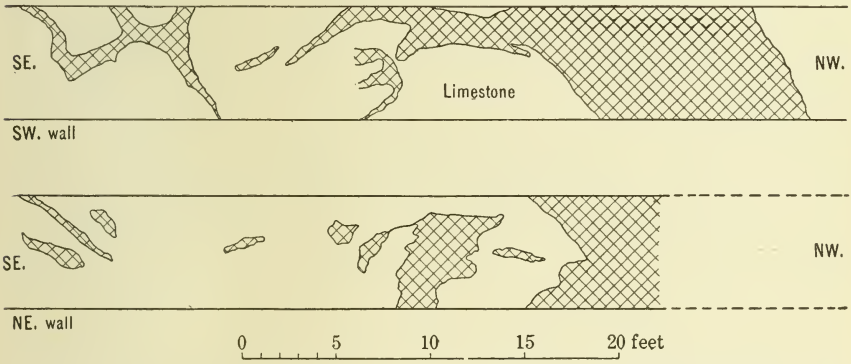


FIGURE 7.—Sketch showing form of ore body exposed in the southern tunnel at the Bonanza mine.

the ore deposition. Open cavities in the fractured limestone have been filled with ice, and both the country rock and the talus on either side of this ridge, except for a few feet at the surface, are frozen all summer. The talus slopes below the ore body contain a large quantity of chalcocite resulting from weathering of the veins above and are a valuable source of copper.

It is a suggestive fact that, although the main shear zone of the Bonanza mine extends from the limestone through the thin shale bed into the greenstone below, the large chalcocite bodies, so far as can be determined on the surface, end abruptly at the top of the impure shaly beds forming the lower 50 or 60 feet of the limestone. Copper minerals are associated with the shear zone in the greenstone, but only in small amount. Apparently the impure thin-bedded part of the limestone was a less favorable place for deposition than the purer massive beds above. This fact has a practical bearing on the quantity of ore present, for it is evident that if the same condition

continues underground it limits the downward extension of chalcocite in the limestone. The continuation of the ore body to the northeast will probably be limited chiefly by the continuation of favorable conditions for deposition in the shear zone in that direction. The exact conditions which determined the deposition of the Bonanza ore body are not known; possibly it was the presence of a shear zone favorable to circulation; but its occurrence, together with that of the Jumbo and the Erie chalcocite bodies to the northwest, next to be described, indicates that favorable conditions for deposition have been established in more than one place and offer encouragement for seeking other chalcocite bodies at the base of the Chitistone limestone.

JUMBO CLAIM.

From the Bonanza mine the Chitistone limestone continues northwestward in a succession of lofty cliffs as far as Kennicott Glacier. The base of these cliffs is at the greenstone contact and in many places contains veinlets and stringers of azurite or chalcocite. In at least two places the quantity of these two minerals, especially of the chalcocite, is so great as to make the deposits of commercial importance.

The ore body of the Jumbo claim is 4,600 feet northwest of the Bonanza, at the head of Jumbo Creek, and is located in limestone just above the greenstone-limestone contact on a small southwestward projecting spur or angle of the limestone cliff. South of it and nearly 200 feet below is the glacier in which Jumbo Creek heads and which must be crossed to reach the ore body. The Jumbo and Bonanza ore bodies are at practically the same elevation above sea level, approximately 6,000 feet.

The limestone at the Jumbo is made up near the base of slightly cherty beds ranging in thickness from 8 to 12 inches. The strike is N. 65° W., the dip 35° N. A tunnel 12 feet long was started on the south face of the ridge, 10 feet above the greenstone. The limestone is jointed or cut by minor faults parallel to the bedding and is crossed by veins of calcite from 1 to 2 inches thick. Thin veins of chalcocite and azurite accompany them and fill some of the fractures. Seven feet above the tunnel mouth is the east end of a large chalcocite mass which is well exposed on the axis of the ridge. As indicated on the surface, this body of ore is a mass of solid chalcocite 30 feet long, 6 feet by 4 feet 6 inches at the west end, and tapering to a diameter of 1 foot at the east end. It appears to be a rudely lenticular or possibly a conical body, but has irregularly shaped protuberances, as may be seen at the west end, where the steep west face or slope of the spur gives a cross section of the ore body. (See fig. 8.)

A little way east of the Jumbo tunnel is a second tunnel in limestone a short distance above the greenstone. The tunnel runs nearly

north or slightly to the northeast in limestone that strikes N. 65° W. and dips 25° N. In the tunnel, which is 12 feet long, the limestone is crushed and jointed. Small veins of calcite and azurite up to 2½ inches in thickness fill joint cracks, especially a set of perpendicular minor faults or slip planes running N. 70° W. No chalcocite is exposed in this tunnel, but it is believed that the azurite indicates its former presence. Fifty feet below the tunnel a lenticular vein of chalcocite 3 inches thick at its widest part and 3 feet long was found in the limestone.

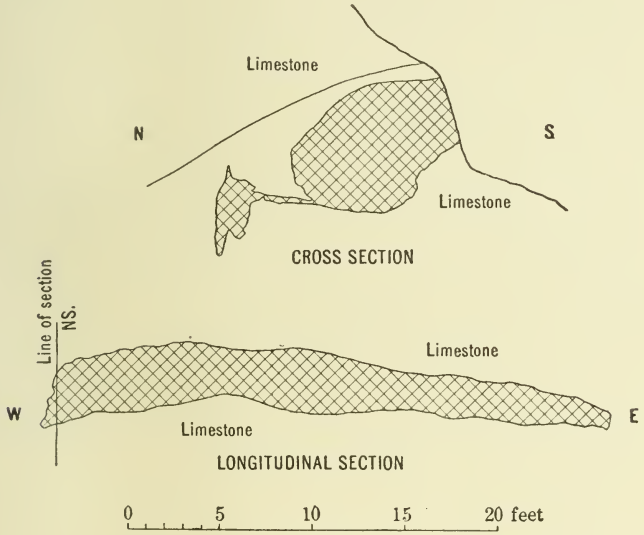


FIGURE 8.—Sketch of the ore body at the Jumbo claim.

ERIE CLAIM.

The Erie claim is the property of the Kennicott Mines Company and is situated on a steep mountain slope near the east side of Kennicott Glacier, 3¾ miles north of Kennicott, at the mouth of National Creek. The discovery point is a little more than 1,000 feet above the nearest point of the glacier and is at the limestone-greenstone contact, which here strikes N. 78° W. and dips 38° N. Between the limestone and the greenstone is a bed of greenish shale of variable thickness, but ranging from 12 to 18 inches. There is also a very thin bed of shale not more than 1 inch thick in the limestone 8 inches above the base. There appears to have been movement between the limestone and the greenstone along their plane of contact, and they were further disturbed by small faults cutting across the contact at high angles to the bedding in such a way that at one place a wedge of greenstone projects into the limestone. The larger shale bed contains many nodules of chalcopyrite from one-half inch to 2 inches in diameter, and with the chalcopyrite there is associated more or less

bornite in the larger nodules. Abundant scales of azurite are scattered through the shale. No development work has been done on this claim further than to clear away the débris and make an open cut along the contact so as to expose the copper-bearing shale.

INDEPENDENCE CLAIMS.

The Independence group of claims, belonging to the Kennicott Mines Company, is on the east side of the divide that separates the head of Bonanza Creek from McCarthy Creek and is from 900 to 1,000 feet lower than the saddle where the limestone-greenstone contact crosses the ridge. The copper minerals occur in small veins that contain considerable calcite and belong to a sheeted zone striking N. 38° E., thus crossing the contact almost at right angles. This zone passes from the greenstone into the limestone and has its greatest width (about 50 feet) at the contact. The ore is found in the greenstone only and consists essentially of chalcocite, which fills fractures and is disseminated through the greenstone. It is later than the calcite filling of the sheeted zone and gradually disappears with increasing distance from the zone of mineralization. The main shear zone intersects a system of quartz-epidote veins striking N. 78° E. and carrying a small amount of bornite. There is a marked similarity between the occurrence of copper sulphides in the greenstone at this locality and at the Bonanza mine, but there is no chalcocite body in the limestone of the Independence claim.

MARVELLOUS AND BONANZA EXTENSION CLAIMS.

The shear zone in which the Bonanza ore was deposited extends in a direction about N. 30° E. from the Bonanza mine for a distance of more than a mile. It crosses the saddle between Bonanza Creek and the glacier on the north and extends to the high point of the ridge running northeast from Bonanza Peak. It was not traced beyond that point. There is no evidence of displacement, but there is a shear zone of indefinite width made up of innumerable small parallel fractures filled with calcite and crossed by minor fault planes. These fault planes are believed to have had an important and perhaps a controlling influence in the deposition of copper.

All the Bonanza fault northeast of the Bonanza property is owned by the Mother Lode Copper Mines Company and the Houghton Alaska Exploration Company. The principal exposures of copper minerals are on the Marvellous claim, where a number of short tunnels have been driven. The Marvellous claim is on the north side of the glacier east of Bonanza Peak and is about 2,800 feet above the valley of McCarthy Creek.

At the south tunnel of the Marvellous the limestone is cut by numerous closely spaced parallel joint or shear planes, many of which

are filled with calcite and are conspicuous because they are lighter in color than the surrounding limestone. They strike N. 70° E. and dip 70° to 80° N. The tunnel is 15 feet under cover and exposes a vein of chalcocite from 3 to 6 inches wide striking N. 60° W. About 30 feet north of the tunnel's mouth and 25 feet lower is a vein of chalcocite in calcite that reaches a maximum thickness of 9 inches. It strikes N. 60° E. and dips 60° to 65° W. The vein is in a well-defined fault plane and can be traced for nearly 200 feet from the tunnel's mouth. In places it pinches to a thickness of 1 inch and carries no ore. Fine specimens of covellite in chalcocite were obtained from this locality. There is a second parallel vein 12 feet to the north, but it is not so long.

The main tunnel of the Marvellous is 300 feet northeast of the south tunnel and runs 100 feet S. 85° W. in dark-gray limestone. The vein is a stockwork of small calcite veins, with chalcocite and azurite in crushed limestone. About 20 feet from the face is a crosscut 9 feet long where there is a vertical fissure in the limestone striking N. 25° E. The fissure is filled with calcite and carries chalcocite and azurite. It has a thickness of 6 inches. The limestone is much discolored by iron oxide. Above the tunnel is a large mass of azurite formed by the oxidation of chalcocite whose downward extension the tunnel was expected to strike.

A third tunnel, called the north tunnel, was started on the Marvellous claim 200 feet northeast of the main tunnel and 100 feet above it. The copper minerals at this exposure occur along bedding planes of the limestone, which here strikes N. 40° W. and dips 35° E., and along fault planes that cross the bedding. The faults strike N. 10° W. and dip 44° E.

NIKOLAI CLAIM.

The Nikolai claim is located near the head of Nikolai Creek, $3\frac{3}{4}$ miles northeast of the junction of Nikolai and McCarthy creeks and 2,150 feet above it. The exposed ore body is situated near the top of the greenstone formation, about 150 feet below the base of the limestone, and is associated with a fault which cuts the limestone-greenstone contact at this place. It is composed mainly of chalcopyrite and bornite stained with oxidation products.

An examination of figure 9 will show the relation of the ore body to the associated formations. It will be seen that the limestone and greenstone beds, which here strike N. 60° W. and dip 30° NE., are cut by a fault running N. 50° E. and dipping vertically or high southeast. This fault makes an offset of 300 feet in the limestone-greenstone contact and has produced a vertical displacement of the beds amounting to 150 feet. The course that it follows in the limestone or in the greenstone at a distance from the contact is difficult

to trace, but the position of Nikolai Creek east of the Nikolai mine was probably determined partly by the fault, as was also the depression between the small knob on the south side of the Nikolai ore body and the hill slope still farther south. Open spaces between the limestone and the greenstone along the fault plane were filled with masses of coarse white calcite. This filling, however, was not seen where both walls of the fault are limestone or greenstone.

The main Nikolai vein makes a slight angle with the principal fault and lies to the north of it. It strikes N. 55° E. and dips 70° SE. The ore body was produced by deposition and replacement in a shear zone in the greenstone that has a width ranging on the sur-

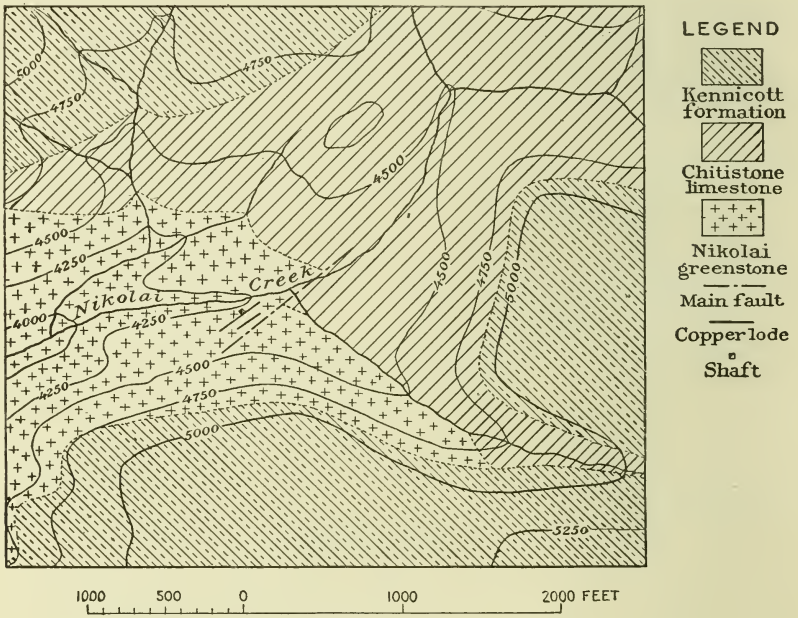


FIGURE 9.—Sketch map of area in vicinity of Nikolai mine.

face from 4 to 6 feet. Deposition of copper minerals was confined to a part of the shear zone that has a horizontal extent from northeast to southwest of 150 feet, but the shear zone itself can be traced 100 feet farther southwest and 350 feet farther northeast, making a total exposure of 600 feet.

Several open cuts were made on the vein and a shaft was sunk in the ore body near its northern end a few feet above the creek. Fifty feet south of the shaft two open cuts expose a second fault zone parallel to the first, along which copper minerals were deposited. It was traced for a distance of 50 feet on the surface. Moss and loose rock hide it beyond these limits, but it evidently is much more poorly developed than the fault zone to the north.

Another set of fractures or joints, with strike N. 15° W. and dip 70° W., is associated with the northeast-southwest faulting but does not appear to have resulted in any important displacement or to have offered favorable channels for circulating mineral solutions, although the openings near the main vein were followed. Still other fractures are present which were not recognized as belonging to any definite system.

The copper minerals that form the Nikolai ore body occur partly as a filling in preexisting cavities and partly as a replacement of greenstone near the cavities. The principal copper mineral is chalcopyrite, but with the chalcopyrite is associated considerable bornite. Where the copper minerals were deposited in cavities they are associated with other minerals—calcite, epidote, and quartz; where they replace greenstone the other minerals, if they can be distinguished at all, are less in evidence.

Deposition was greatest within the sheared and broken rocks of the fault zone, doubtless because the opportunity for circulation was best there. The greenstone walls, within a foot or so of the fault, are sheeted with innumerable tiny parallel fractures now filled with chalcopyrite, giving the rock a banded appearance. Deposition, however, was not confined to these veinlets. It took place also by replacement of the rock itself, so that the greenstone between the veinlets is impregnated with copper sulphide. Small veins from one-fourth to one-half an inch thick show a banding of minerals in places and give a clue to the order in which the minerals were deposited. The greenstone walls are covered by a multitude of small epidote crystals, with occasional crystals of quartz, and after them calcite was deposited. Grains and small lumps of chalcopyrite are scattered through both calcite and epidote. The ore taken from the shaft consists largely of chalcopyrite, and the dump shows that there is considerable calcite and quartz associated with it. Bornite decreases—a fact that is taken as evidence that this mineral belongs to the upper enriched part of the vein and that the ore will be found to consist of chalcopyrite as depth is gained. There has been some movement along the fault since the ore was deposited, but it probably has not produced much displacement.

WESTOVER CLAIM.

The Westover claim, which is owned by the Alaska United Exploration Company, is on the east side of Bowlder Creek, a little less than 2 miles north of the junction of Bowlder and Dan creeks. The discovery outcrop is a mass of bornite 3,500 feet above the flats of Nizina River and about 375 feet above the glacier moraine of Bowlder Creek valley. It is situated at the contact of the Chitistone

limestone and the Nikolai greenstone, but the ore body is, so far as now exposed, in the limestone. Most of the limestone-greenstone contact in the upper end of Bowlder Creek valley is covered by talus from the high limestone cliffs that form the valley walls, yet in a few places, of which this locality is one, the contact is exposed for short distances. The strike of the limestone beds and the greenstone flows is here N. 15° W. and the dip is 15° E. In half a dozen or more places within the valley appear small faults cutting across the contact of the two formations and causing displacements that in several instances amount to a hundred feet or more. One or two such displacements took place a short distance south of the Westover ore body, thus bringing the greenstone at the outcrop to a higher position with reference to its nearest exposures on the south than it would have otherwise had. Both limestone and greenstone near the ore body are broken by many joints and crossed by slip planes of little displacement. Locally the rocks are much shattered and break down in small fragments. One of the most prominent of the fractures has an important relation to the ore body. It is a fault, probably of small displacement, whose contact surfaces are warped surfaces rather than planes, so that the trace of the fault on the ledge is a curved line sloping from right to left as one looks at it. This fault strikes west-northwest and dips 45° NNE. The ore body lies on the north or upper side of the fault, but is not fully exposed because the talus has been but partly cleared away from its base and the actual contact of limestone and greenstone is not in sight. Copper ore is exposed along the face of the limestone cliff at the top of the talus slope for a distance of 35 feet horizontally and at the south end of the ore body for a distance of about 10 feet vertically. The south end of the ore body is rich massive bornite and chalcocite ore, which is sharply cut off from the limestone south of it by the fault and has been formed by an almost complete replacement of limestone by the copper sulphides. On following the ore body north the richness of the ore rapidly decreases, till finally bornite disappears and only silicified limestone is seen.

The copper-bearing solutions followed all the available openings in the limestone—joints, bedding planes, and faults—and the richest ore is near such openings, for here the lime carbonate was wholly replaced by copper sulphides. The amount of replacement varies inversely as the distance from these openings till, within a few inches or a foot, the grains and tiny veinlets of bornite can no longer be seen in the limestone. Where the limestone was greatly shattered the opportunity for replacement was greater; but in the more massive parts of the beds it took place sparingly, if at all.

The sharply defined contact of ore and limestone at the fault on the south suggests that the displacement is later than the ore deposi-

tion. If this is the case, the present exposure does not show a complete section of the original ore body and further prospecting may reveal the displaced part.

OTHER PROSPECTS.

There has probably been more prospecting for copper in the Nizina district than in any other part of Chitina Valley except the vicinity of Kotsina River. Prospecting was stimulated by the discovery of such deposits as the Bonanza, the Jumbo, the Nikolai, and other claims and by the presence of a greater number of prospectors. The limestone-greenstone contact has been examined with care wherever it is accessible, and most of it has been staked. Most of the copper found is of the class of disseminated sulphides in greenstone. Examples of this class are found in the Donohoe prospects in the greenstone on the east side of McCarthy Creek and the prospects of the Alaska United Copper Exploration Company on the west side of Bowlder Creek, opposite the Westover claim, and on the east side of Bowlder Creek north of Dan Creek. The copper sulphides of the last-named locality occur along joint or fault planes, some of which are nearly parallel with the major strike fault of the Dan Creek valley and some cross these at large angles. In 1909 a tunnel was being driven on the property about one-fourth of a mile east of Bowlder Creek and 275 feet below the limestone-greenstone contact to cut a fissure carrying copper minerals that was exposed 175 feet higher to the north. A belt of greenstone with disseminated copper sulphides is found at about this distance below the limestone and extends east along the north side of Dan Creek valley. It carries small amounts of bornite and chalcopyrite, and in places a little native copper is present. The native copper is believed to be a secondary alteration product derived from the sulphide. Bowlders of greenstone carrying native copper are not unusual in the gravels of Dan Creek. Not much work has been done on the native copper-bearing greenstone, and the quantity of copper there is not yet determined. The principal prospects of this kind are on the upper part of Dan Creek and are the property of the Dan Creek Gold and Copper Company.

A small deposit of copper carbonates, malachite, and azurite is found in the limestone only a few feet above the limestone-greenstone contact south of Chitistone River, a mile east of the Nizina River valley. The copper minerals were deposited in a crushed and faulted part of the limestone and the whole is much stained with iron oxide. Two short prospecting tunnels were driven in the limestone by the Houghton Alaska Exploration Company, to whom the prospect belongs.

GOLD.

PRODUCTION.

All the gold produced in the Chitina Valley has come from the placers of Dan, Chititu, and Young creeks. Chititu Creek is the principal producer, and after it comes Dan Creek. Young Creek has had only a small output up to the present time and may almost be disregarded as a contributor in past years, but with lower freight rates and cheapened cost of production it may become of greater importance in the future. The total gold production of Chititu and Dan creeks from 1903 to 1909, inclusive, may be estimated with a considerable degree of accuracy as between $450,000 and $500,000, or an average of about $65,000 a year. There is good reason to believe that with the installation of new equipment on the completion of the railroad this yearly average will be much increased.

SOURCE OF THE GOLD.

It may be said with certainty that the source of the placer gold of Dan, Chititu, and Young creeks is in the black shales of the Kennicott formation. This is clearly shown by the distribution of the gold itself. All the tributaries that flow into Dan and Copper creeks from the northeast, including Dan Creek above the mouth of Copper Creek, lie within the limestone-greenstone area and carry no gold. All the tributaries that flow into Dan and Copper creeks from the southwest head in the shale area and all carry gold. All the gravel deposits of Dan and Copper creeks except a part of the bench and stream gravels on lower Dan Creek are derived from sources within the drainage basin of these streams. No foreign material was found, and there is almost no possibility that any could be present, for the whole basin is surrounded by steep walls which probably never were below the surface of the ice fields during the time of greatest glaciation.

All the tributaries of Chititu Creek originate within the black shale area and all carry gold, but here, as on Young Creek, part of the gravels are of foreign origin brought in by glacial transportation. Rex Creek is the one exception to this statement, for its gravels, save in the lower mile of its course, are all derived from within its own drainage basin. The gravels of the upper Rex Creek valley are derived from the black-shale area and carry gold. No evidence was obtained to indicate any other source for the gold of Chititu and Dan creeks than the shales lying between Dan and Young creeks, although all the copper and probably all or nearly all the silver of Chititu Creek came from an outside source.

Many small quartz veins carrying pyrite and native gold have been found in the black Kennicott shales between Copper and Rex creeks.

They range in thickness from less than an inch to several inches and are believed to have a close relation to the porphyritic intrusions in the shales. Molybdenite is present and stibnite is also reported from these veins. The placer gravels contain, besides the metals gold, silver, and copper, such heavy minerals as galena, cinnabar, barite, pyrite, and possibly marcasite. Native lead with a white coating, thought to be cerusite, was found in the sluice boxes on Chititu Creek, but may have been introduced by white men or natives, for bullets and shot are common. Not all of these minerals have been found in place in the rock, but it is probable that they also are associated with the quartz veins and porphyry intrusions. Thin veins no thicker than a sheet of paper are common in joint planes of the hard argillite bowlders in the stream gravels. They contain quartz, pyrite, and in places free gold. A thin vein less than one-fourth of an inch thick was found in a porphyry dike on the upper part of Rex Creek, which consisted of quartz with molybdenite and pyrite and assayed 0.18 ounce gold and 12.80 ounces silver to the ton. The dike rock near the vein, although seemingly little altered, contained pyrite and showed a trace of both gold and silver. There is thus good evidence for the source of the gold aside from that furnished by its distribution in the gravels.

The gold in the stream gravels is in part a concentration from the bench gravels through which the streams have cut their channels and in part a concentration from the products of weathering derived directly from the shales and the auriferous veins. Probably the greater part is a reconcentration from the older deposits. Extensive accumulations of high bench gravels are present on both Dan and Chititu creeks. They are best developed on the lower parts of the streams but extend into some of the tributary valleys. The bench gravels of Dan Creek extend west from the neighborhood of Copper Creek and around to the west slope of Williams Peak,[a] where they reach an elevation of over 1,200 feet above the flats of Nizina River. The bench gravels of Chititu Creek reach an elevation as great as or greater than those of Dan Creek. In both places they represent a filling in old valleys through which the present streams have cut their channels and in so doing have reconcentrated a great volume of older deposits, derived partly from the upper Nizina Valley and the region east of the heads of White and Young creeks but chiefly from the drainage basin of Dan and Chititu creeks. When the bench gravels were laid down the two great ice streams that came down the Nizina and Chitina valleys were still in existence, although on the retreat. They formed the barrier behind which it was possible for such deposits to accumulate

[a] Williams Peak is named in honor of John M. Williams, a pioneer prospector of the Nizina district, who was killed in a snowslide on Bonanza Creek on April 7, 1909.

and brought to the bench gravels that part of them which is foreign to Dan and Chititu creeks. It is impossible to say what proportion of the gravels consists of foreign material, but it is believed to be the smaller part. Some of the bench gravels carry gold in sufficient quantity to be of commercial importance, as has been proved at a number of places. A reconcentration of such deposits accounts in part for the greater richness of the stream gravels. The process that brought about this concentration is exactly the same in principle as that carried on in the miners' sluice boxes on a much smaller scale but in a much shorter time. This concentration is probably slower at present than it was before the streams had cut through the deep gravel accumulations and intrenched themselves in the underlying hard rock, but it still goes on, for erosion of the bench gravels has not ended.

PLACER DEPOSITS.

DAN CREEK.

Dan and Copper creeks may well be regarded as one stream in spite of whatever accident or design resulted in their having different names and of the fact that the upper part of Dan Creek sometimes carries as much or more water than Copper Creek. A reference to the geologic map (Pl. III, in pocket) will show that the two streams follow closely the course of the fault that gave the older greenstone and the limestone on the north their relative elevation above the base of the Kennicott formation. With unimportant exceptions, the north side of the Dan and Copper creek valleys is in limestone and greenstone, the south side in shales of the Kennicott formation. Most of Copper Creek is in a broad glaciated valley, but at a point nearly 1 mile above its mouth the creek enters a narrow rock-walled canyon that opens slightly below Copper Creek yet extends down Dan Creek nearly a mile. Dan Creek valley below the canyon is narrow and shut in by steep mountains as far as the flats of Nizina River.

During the ice invasion the Copper Creek valley was swept clear of whatever unconsolidated deposits may have accumulated, and the form of the valley was considerably modified. When the ice was retreating some glacial débris was left on the valley floor, but it is of less importance in connection with the gold placers than the accumulations of stream gravels that have been laid down since the glacier disappeared. In this respect the placers of Copper Creek are different from those of Dan Creek.

All the tributaries of Copper Creek on its south side, as Idaho, Rader, and Seattle gulches, carry gold, but most of the output of the creek comes from near the mouth of Rader Gulch. Part of the gold is from the gulch itself and part is from Copper Creek, just

below the gulch. The gravels are all shallow. Those in the mouths of the gulches are composed almost entirely of shale, chiefly from the Kennicott formation but also in part from the McCarthy shale. They occupy narrow gulches and accumulate so rapidly that the streams have difficulty in removing them. The gravel deposits of Rader Gulch are of this character. They consist of loose shale fragments and occupy only a few hundred feet of the lower end of the gulch, for above them the grade is so high and the channel so narrow that the water removes loose material rapidly. The gravels of the main stream contain material from all the formations within the drainage basin. At Rader Gulch they form a narrow flood-plain area between the mountain slope on the southwest and a low ridge on the northeast. They contain considerable coarse material mingled with blocks and bowlders of glacial origin and much fine material derived from the shales. The gold is not a concentration from older, lower-grade deposits but is derived directly by weathering and by stream concentration of the products of weathering. The source of most of the gold is clearly indicated by its position in the gravels at and just below the mouth of Rader Gulch and the presence of workable gravels on the lower part of Rader Gulch.

Idaho and Seattle gulches resemble Rader Gulch in their form and the character of their gravel deposits, but they have not been found to carry as much gold.

Copper Creek is difficult to reach with supplies except in winter, for the canyon makes necessary a high climb of more than 1,000 feet around the side of Williams Peak. Men on foot, however, can follow the creek. Logs have been placed across the stream in the canyon and make it possible to avoid bad places. Mining on Copper Creek is done with pick and shovel. There is a small supply of timber for firewood and for sluice boxes, but it would not be adequate for extensive mining operations. Good timber for lumber can be secured along Nizina River, but the expense of carrying it to Copper Creek under present conditions, except in winter, would be great.

The gold of Dan Creek has a less simple history than that of Copper Creek. It is in part a reconcentration from older gold-bearing bench gravels and in part, like that of Copper Creek, a concentration from the products of later erosion. Old high-bench gravels are found on both sides of Dan Creek, especially on the lower part, but near the west end of the canyon they lose their prominence and disappear altogether at or below the mouth of Copper Creek. Dan Creek has cut its present channel down through this great accumulation of glacial and stream deposits and into the shales beneath. The stream gravels consist of greenstone, limestone, and shale. They form between rock walls a narrow flood plain overgrown with timber

and in many places of less width than a placer claim. A large part of the gravels consists of bowlders ranging from cobbles to masses several feet in diameter. Most of them, however, are not too large to be moved by hand. All the fragments are rounded. They were deposited by a rapidly flowing current and the bedding is poor. Buried spruce logs and fragments of wood are common. The gravel and its slight covering of soil range from 8 to 12 feet in depth.

Dan Creek gold is coarse and smooth and is accompanied by silver and copper. It has been concentrated on bed rock or within the lower 2 feet of the gravel. A large proportion, however, finds its way into the cracks and crevices in the shale, so that in places a foot or more of the shale has to be removed to recover all the metal. An unusual feature of the gravels of Dan Creek is the small quantity of fine gold found in them. Very little fine gold is recovered in the sluice boxes and practically none is found in panning. Numerous prospect holes show that the gold is well distributed across the channel and have failed to discover the presence of a concentration into a defined pay streak. Beside the holes sunk on the flood plain, tunnels have been driven along bed rock at the base of the bench gravels above the present flood plain. The depth to which the creek has incised itself in the shales is not constant but is rarely less than 10 or 15 feet. Thus the base of the bench gravels or the "rim" of the channel stands well above the creek. The tunnels driven in the bench gravels show the presence of gold in sufficient amount to be of commercial importance and in several places in sufficient amount to pay for extraction under the expensive methods necessary in prospecting the gravels, but the final test of value will come when an attempt is made to extract the gold on a large scale.

An old channel formerly occupied by Dan Creek lies in the bench gravels on the south side of the present stream. It runs on the south side of the small round hill west of the mouth of Copper Creek and follows the hillside to the west, but it has not been traced definitely. Doubtless much of it has been removed by erosion. Its gravels carry gold, and an attempt has been made to exploit them in a small way, but without great success.

Dan Creek is favorably situated with reference to timber for mining purposes and has a good supply of water. It is reached without any difficulty from the Nizina, and a wagon road for hauling timber and supplies has already been built. All mining to the present time has been by the simplest methods. The one employed for several years is to undercut the bank with a stream of water and by washing away the gravel to leave the gold. Bowlders and small rocks are piled parallel with the bank and only a few feet from it. Then water controlled by dam and gates is turned in and forced against the bank, undercutting it and carrying away most of the fine gravel. The large

rocks are piled back by hand and the remaining fine gravel and gold are shoveled into sluice boxes, after which bed rock is cleaned. Preparation has been made for installing a hydraulic plant on Dan Creek, and it will be put in place as soon as the railroad is completed and better facilities for carrying freight are established.

CHITITU CREEK.

Chititu Creek and its two branches, Rex and White creeks, lie wholly within the area of Kennicott sediments. These streams, like Dan Creek, have cut their present channels through the old valley filling and entrenched themselves in the black shales. The amount of this entrenchment is variable, ranging from nothing below the canyon on Chititu Creek to 60 or 70 feet on White Creek, but the increase is not uniform. It is about 30 feet at the mouth of White Creek, but is greater than that in places farther down on Chititu Creek. It decreases as Rex Creek is ascended and also on the head of White Creek. The canyon on Chititu Creek is due to the presence of a large porphyry dike in the black shales, which has protected them from rapid stream cutting and confined the water to a narrow channel. The canyon is small but marks the downstream limit of gold-bearing gravels that are now considered of commercial importance.

Above the rim of the shallow trench cut in the shales by the stream are steep banks of rudely assorted gravels. The top of the gravel bluff at Sunday Gulch is a little more than 500 feet above Chititu Creek. Half a mile downstream the top of the bluff is 750 feet above the creek, but from this point on the difference grows smaller till the bench gravels merge into the gravels of Nizina Valley a short distance below the canyon. Bench gravels are prominent on Rex Creek for a mile or more above its mouth, but they either were not deposited or have been removed from the upper end of the creek, where the unconsolidated accumulations are wholly glacial débris. A large part of the bench deposits of White Creek have been eroded away, yet they extend up the creek in conspicuous exposures for at least 2 miles.

The richest gold-producing gravels of Chititu Creek are the stream gravels; they include all of Chititu Creek above the canyon, together with a large part of Rex and White creeks. The most important parts of these creeks, viewed from the standpoint of gold production, are represented on the sketch map (fig. 10). The stream gravels cover the floor of the shallow rock-rimmed trench to a depth of 8 to 16 feet, depending partly on the form of the bed-rock surface and partly on the irregularities of deposition by a swiftly flowing current. They form a flat, originally covered with timber and underbrush, ranging in width from 200 to 700 feet. The gravels of Chititu and White creeks and of the lower part of Red Creek consist of

shale, limestone, sandstone, and quartz diorite porphyry, all of local origin, mingled with greenstone, diorite, and other rocks brought in by glacial ice from a foreign source. Shale, sandstone, and porphyry make up the fragmental deposits of the upper part of Rex Creek.

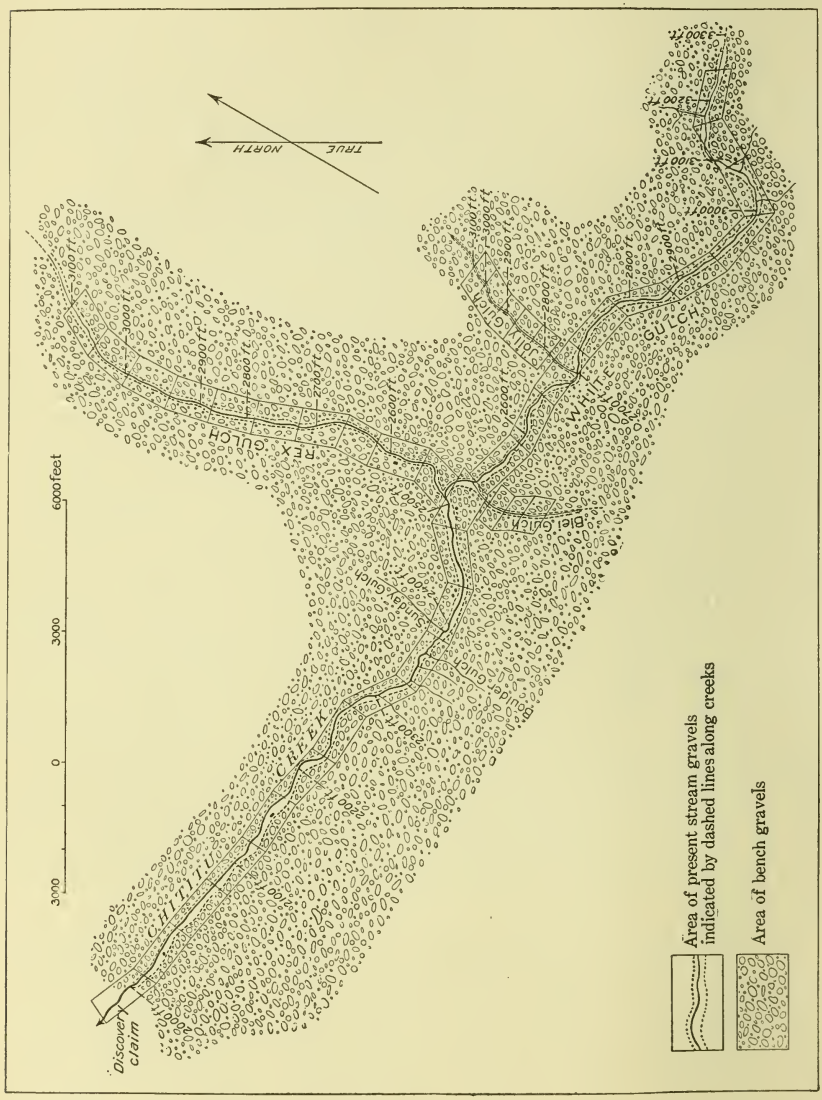


FIGURE 10.—Sketch map of a part of Chititu, Rex, and White creeks, showing the location of claims and the relation of bench and stream gravels.

Bowlders and large blocks make up a considerable portion of the gravel deposits, but not so large a proportion as on Dan Creek. Some of the glacial erratics are 6 or 8 feet in diameter. Most of the bowlders, however, can be sent through the sluice boxes, although it is necessary to break part of them with powder.

The gravels producing gold at present include those of Chititu Creek and of the lower part of Rex Creek. Very little work aside from that necessary to hold the claims has been done on White Creek for several years. In a general way the gold of Chititu Creek is distributed through the gravel from rim to rim of the rock channel, but it was found that at one place near the canyon there is a very well-defined pay streak, such as had not been found before on any of the claims farther up the creek. Most of the gold is on or near bed rock. Very little of it is found in the upper part of the gravel. The gold penetrates the bed rock through cracks and all openings, so that it is necessary to clean the rock carefully by hand after taking up the loose upper part to the depth of a foot or more. There are considerable differences in the character of the bed-rock surface, owing to irregularities in form and differences of hardness. In places the old stream has worn the rock smooth or has hollowed out cavities and depressions. Differences in the depth of weathering also add to the irregularities of the exposed surface, for the streams of water from the hydraulic giants cut away the loose rock and leave the harder parts standing in relief. Without doubt much of the gold of Chititu, Rex, and White creeks is a concentrated product from the bench gravels and the remainder is derived directly by weathering from the surrounding shales. All the bench gravels carry gold in some amount, and with decreased cost of mining it is probable that some of them will be exploited.

Chititu gold is finer and less worn than that of Dan Creek. It was found on the lower part of Chititu Creek that in a set of 4 screens ranging from 10 to 20 mesh about equal amounts of gold, by weight, were caught in each screen; at the mouth of Rex Creek it was estimated that from 25 to 40 per cent of the gold passes through a 16-mesh sieve. These results are in marked contrast with the heavy coarse gold of Dan Creek, yet both come from the same area of mineralization. There is, nevertheless, a little coarse gold on Chititu Creek, and several large nuggets have been found. The gold assays about $18.70 per ounce when cleaned. A large quantity of copper is obtained in the clean-up, and nuggets of native silver are common. Several other heavy minerals besides copper and silver are caught in the sluice boxes, such as pyrite, galena, stibnite, barite, and lead. Most of the lead was evidently introduced through the use of firearms, but some of the pieces examined did not resemble the battered bullets found in the sluice boxes and had a thick white coating of oxidized material. One of the largest of the native-silver nuggets was found in 1909; it weighed over 7 pounds but contained considerable quartz.

Native copper is a source of considerable difficulty and expense in mining. Several hundred pounds of fine copper are secured at every

clean up and many large masses are taken from the cuts. Occasionally a large piece goes through the boxes and into the dump, but the largest are too heavy to be driven out of the cut by the giant. All the gold is picked over by hand to remove the fine copper not separated in the sluice box. During the early days of mining no effort was made to save the copper, since the expense of carrying it to the coast was greater than its value, yet with railroad transportation it should now be worth considering.

For the first few years after the discovery of gold on Chititu Creek mining was conducted on Rex and White creeks as well as on Chititu Creek. Rich ground was found on all these streams, and the principal operations were on the upper half of Chititu Creek, the lower end of Rex Creek, and the upper part of White Creek. All the work was done by hand and attention was directed to the richest ground only. At present two hydraulic plants are in operation, one on Chititu Creek and the other at the mouth of Rex Creek. Most of the claims on Chititu Creek are owned by the Nizina Mines Company and a complete hydraulic plant has been installed to exploit

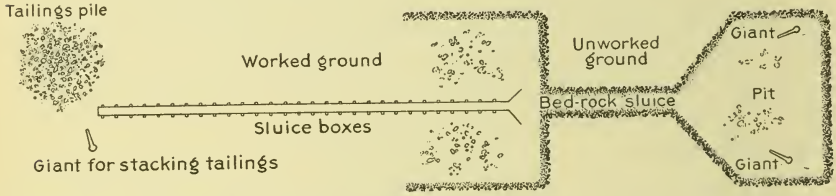


FIGURE 11.—Diagram showing the method of operating hydraulic giants on Chititu Creek.

them. This plant includes flumes, pipe lines, and giants, as well as a complete sawmill and an electric lighting system. The sawmill is equipped with planers and machinery for turning out standardized parts of flume and sluice boxes and riffle blocks and for putting them together. There is also a blacksmith shop and equipment for handling iron pipe. A very unusual feature for an Alaska placer mine is the complete system of accounting by which all expenses are charged in their proper place and the cost of any part of the operations is made known.

The method of handling gravel in the pit is shown in figure 11. When the sluice boxes have been put in place a bed-rock flume is carried upstream in the gravels as far as desired. Then the upper end of this cut is widened to 100 or 150 feet and a giant is placed on either side so as to drive the gravel along the sloping face into the head of the flume. By this method the force of the giants is added to the ground sluice water and a decided gain in efficiency is obtained over the former method of working against the face with the giants turned upstream and away from the sluice boxes. In practice

only one giant is used at a time, the opportunity thus being given for a gang of men to remove the large bowlders on the opposite side. A giant is also required at the lower end of the sluice boxes to stack the tailings and keep the end of the boxes clear.

Mining operations at the mouth of Rex Creek have been conducted by Frank Kernan with a smaller plant than that on Chititu Creek, but they have been carried on for a longer time. A small giant is used and water is brought from Rex Creek in a flume. The conditions here are about the same as on Chititu Creek, but the width of gravel between the rock rims is less. Some very rich ground has been found on the lower end of Rex Creek and just below that on Chititu Creek.

The canyon of Chititu Creek is 4½ miles from the flats of Nizina River, and the character of the country is such that a good wagon road could be constructed at moderate expense. Such a road in connection with a bridge over the Nizina River would make communication with the railroad at Kennicott River easy and would be of great advantage to the miners of Chititu Creek, since it would enable them to secure supplies at any time of the year at a reasonable cost. It would also do much to solve the problem of securing labor at the time when it is most needed and thus prevent the necessity of carrying a large force of men on the pay roll during the whole season. Labor is a large item in the expense of operation at present chiefly because of the large amount of time spent in winter freighting. Wages range from $90 per month and board to $5 per day, with an additional amount to foremen.

Chititu Creek has a sufficient volume of water for all the demands that are made on it by the hydraulic plant in operation. The supply on Rex and White creeks is naturally less and probably would be inadequate for a large plant at some seasons of the year. Chititu Creek has a fall of 180 feet per mile from the forks to the canyon. Rex and White creeks have a fall of 250 feet per mile in the lower 2 miles of their courses. Thus a good head of water can be secured on each of these streams. There is an abundance of good timber for lumber and mining purposes on Chititu Creek below the canyon.

YOUNG CREEK.

Young Creek resembles Dan and Chititu creeks in having cut its channel through an old gravel filling in a glaciated valley. The present stream flows in a trench cut in black shales and lies from 20 to 40 feet below the base of the bench gravels. Its channel is in reality a shallow canyon whose walls are shale at the base and gravel above. Young Creek valley was once occupied by a glacier which came into it across a broad low divide near its head and was an overflow branch of the great Nizina Glacier. The gravels of Young Creek

therefore contain a large amount of foreign material from the upper Chitina Valley in addition to rocks of the Kennicott formation and the greenstone from its own valley.

A large part of the creek has been staked for placer gold, although the production has not yet been enough to give much encouragement for mining. Two men were prospecting on the lower part of the stream in 1909. In previous years work was done on Calamity Gulch also, but the results were not sufficiently favorable to lead to its continuation.

Young Creek carries a large stream of water at all seasons of the year and has an average fall of 100 feet per mile above the Nizina flats. It is difficult to reach the upper part of the creek because of the canyon-like character of the stream channel and of the absence of trails above the creek on the hill slopes, and for this reason it is customary to cross the ridge from the head of White Creek and come down on Young Creek at the head of Calamity Gulch. This is the route always followed by prospectors bound for the head of Young Creek.

INDEX.

A.

Page.

Alaska, northern, rocks of, correlation of..... 26–27
Alaska, southeastern, rocks of, correlation of. 26–27
Alaska Peninsula, rocks of..... 42
rocks of, correlation of..... 26–27
Alaska Range, rocks of, correlation of..... 26–27
Alaska United Copper Exploration Co., prospects of..... 97
Amazon Creek, rock glacier on..... 58
Azurite, occurrence of..... 79

B.

Bibliography of area..... 13
Birch, Stephen, weather observations by..... 13
Blei Gulch, rocks on..... 34–35, 36
Bonanza Creek, fossils from..... 24
rocks on..... 62
Bonanza Extension Claim, description of..... 92
Bonanza mine, copper from..... 76, 80
description of..... 84–90
discovery of..... 76
faults at..... 69–70, 85
map of..... 87
ores of..... 86–90
section of, figures showing..... 88, 89
rock glacier near..... 58
view of..... 58
rocks at..... 62, 84–85
view of..... 84
workings at..... 84, 87–88
Bornite, occurrence of..... 78–79, 82
Bowlder Creek, copper on..... 97
Brooks, A. H., preface by..... 7–8

C.

Calamity Gulch, rocks near..... 35
Canyon Creek, rocks on..... 71
Capps, S. R., work of..... 13
Chalcocite, occurrence of..... 78–79
Chalcopyrite, occurrence of..... 78–79, 82
Chinitna Bay, rocks near..... 42
Chitina Glacier, description of..... 45–46, 48
Chitina region, copper of, survey of..... 7
Chitina River, description of..... 9
valley of, climate of..... 14
copper of..... 77–80
formation of..... 74–75
glaciation in..... 45–46
map of..... Pocket.
rocks in..... 25, 30, 32, 34, 37, 43, 62, 71
Chitistone limestone, age of..... 23–27
character of..... 11, 19, 20, 21–27
copper in..... 78–79
deposition of..... 72
distribution of..... 22–23, 70
fossils o 24–25

Page.

Chitistone River, copper on..... 80
description of..... 10
fan of..... 51
fossils from..... 24–25
rocks on and near..... 22, 61–62, 73
Chititu Creek, copper on..... 79–80
description of..... 10, 20
fan 51
fossils on..... 39
glaciation on..... 46, 47, 48, 49
gold on..... 76, 98, 103–107
gravels of..... 99–100
hydraulicking on, figure showing..... 106
map of, showing placers..... 104
rocks on and near..... 36, 37, 60, 103
Chitty Creek, fossils from..... 38
Climate, character of..... 13–15
Coal, occurrence of..... 73–74
Columnar section, figure showing..... 11
Cook Inlet region, rocks of..... 42–43
rocks of, correlation of..... 25, 26–27
Copper, discovery of..... 75
occurrence of..... 75–76, 105–106
mode of..... 8, 77–81
production of..... 76
source of..... 81–83
Copper Creek, fault on..... 68
fossils from..... 30, 36, 40
glaciation on..... 48
gold on..... 100–101
rock lenses on, figure showing..... 65
rocks on and near..... 9, 34, 37–38, 66, 100
view of..... 18
Copper properties, description of..... 83–97
groups of..... 83
Copper River, basin of, description of..... 14
basin of, map of..... 9
rocks in..... 73–74
climate of..... 14–15
Correlations, table of..... 25–27
Covellite, occurrence of..... 79
Cretaceous rocks, correlation of..... 26
Cross, W., and Howe, E., cited..... 54–55

D.

Dan Creek, copper on..... 79–80, 83, 97
description of..... 10
fan on..... 51
fault on..... 68–69
fossils from..... 30, 40
glaciation on..... 46
gold on..... 76, 98, 100–103
gravels on..... 49, 99–100
rocks on and near..... 22, 23, 29, 34, 36, 37–38, 61, 62, 66, 100
Diorite. *See* Quartz diorite.
Donohoe prospects, location of..... 97
Drainage, description of..... 9–10, 20

E.

Page

Eagle Creek, rocks on 34
Economic geology, description of 75–108
Elevations, altitude of 10, 18
Elliott Creek, rocks on 23
Enochkin formation, correlation of 26
description of 26, 42
Erie claim, description of 91–92
Erosion, effects of 51–52, 72
Explorations, description of 12–13

F.

Falkland Islands, rock streams in 54
Faulting, occurrence and character of 12, 68
Field work, extent of 13
Fissure veins, occurrence of 77, 79
Folding, occurrence and character of 12
Forage, character of 15
Fourth of July Creek, rocks on 73
Fractures, relation of, to copper 8
Freighting, cost of 17

G.

Geography, description of 9–10
Geology, description of 11–12, 20–26
Geology, areal, description of 70–71
Geology, economic, account of 75–108
Geology, historical, sketch of 71–75
Gerdine, T. G., work of 12
Glacial epoch, events in 43–48
Glaciation, effects of 18–19
Glacier Creek, rocks on 61
Glaciers, rock, description of 52–59
occurrence of 15
origin of 53–59
Gold, discovery of 76
placer deposits of, descriptions of 100–108
production of 98
source of 98–100
Gravels, occurrence and character of 20, 49–51
Greenstone. *See* Nikolai greenstone.
Greenstone-limestone contact, copper along 8

H.

Historical geology, sketch of 71–75
Houghton Alaska Exploration Co., copper prospects of 97
Howe, E., cited 54–55

I.

Idaho Gulch, gold in 100–101
rocks near 34
Igneous rocks, distribution and character of 59–67
intrusion of 11, 20
Independence claim, description of 92
Indians, homes of 16

J.

Jumbo claim, description of 90–91
ore body of, section of, figure showing 91
Jumbo Creek, fossils from 24
Jurassic rocks, character and distribution of 11, 31–43, 63–67
columnar sections of 31, 37
correlation of 26
gold in 8

K.

Page.

Kennicott formation, age of 38–43
character of 11, 19, 20, 31–42
columnar section of 31, 37
correlation of 26, 31
deposition of 72–73
distribution of 36–37, 70–71
fossils from 38–41
gold in 8, 98–99
views of 32, 64
Kennicott Glacier, breaking of 14, 47
description of 47–48
fault at 68–69
rocks at and near 22, 34, 62, 73
Kennicott River, description of 10
Knopf, A., and Paige, S., cited 67
Kotsina River, copper on 80
rocks on 23, 30, 62
Kuskulana River, rocks on 30

L.

Lead, occurrence of 99
Limestone contact. *See* Greenstone-limestone contact.
Literature, list of 13
Little Nikolai Creek, rock glacier on, view of 56
Location of area 9
map showing 9
Lowlands, deposits of 20
description of 20

M.

McCarthy Creek, correlation of 30
description of 10, 19, 20, 47
fan on, view of 18
fault on 69
fossils from 30, 39
glaciation on 47–48, 49
gravels on 49
rock glacier on 56–59
view of 56
rocks on 21–22, 23, 28, 29, 31, 33, 62, 70
valley of 51
McCarthy Creek glacier, description of 47–48
McCarthy Creek shale, use of term 22
See also McCarthy shale.
McCarthy shale, age of 30
character of 11, 19, 20, 28, 29–30
correlation of 27
deposition of 72
distribution of 28–29
fossils of 30
Maddren, A. G., and Moffit, F. H., work of 12, 13
Map of Copper and Chitina valleys 9
of Nizina district ..... Pocket.
Map, geologic, of Nizina district ..... Pocket.
Marvellous claim, description of 92–93
Matanuska district, rocks of 42, 43, 73–74
rocks of, correlation of 26–27
Mendenhall, W. C., work of 12
Mining, history of 75–76
Moffit, F. H., and Maddren, A. G., work of 12, 13

N.

Nabesna-White River district, rocks of, correlation of 26–27
Naknek formation, correlation of 26
description of 26, 42

Page.

National Creek, rock glacier on 57
view of 56
rocks on 62
Native copper, occurrence of 79–80, 105–106
Nikolai claim, description of 93–95
map of 94
Nikolai copper lode, discovery of 75
exploitation of 76
rocks near, view of 32
Nikolai Creek, fault on 68–69
fossils from 24–25, 30, 46
glaciation on 48
rocks on and near 22, 31, 32, 33, 36, 37, 62, 66
view of 32
Nikolai greenstone, age of 63
character of 11, 20–21, 59–62
copper in 77–80, 81
distribution of 61–62, 70–71
effusion of 71–72
Nizina district, copper of, survey of 7
geologic map of ..... Pocket.
map of ..... Pocket.
Nizina Glacier, breaking of 14
description of 46–47
Nizina River, description of 9, 20
flood plain of 50
glaciation on 46–47
rocks on 21, 22, 23, 28, 31, 37, 61–62, 66, 70
view of 22
valley of, formation of 75
Nutzotin Mountains, rocks of 42

P.

Paige, S., and Knopf, A., cited 67
Physiographic record, interpretation of 74–75
Placers, gold, description of 100–108
Pleistocene epoch, events in 43–48
Ponds, occurrence of 20
Population, character of 16
Porphyry Peak, rocks of 37, 66, 71
view of 64
Preglacial time, conditions in 43
Pyramid Peak, rocks of 34

Q.

Quartz diorite porphyry, age of 66–67
character of 63–66
distribution of 66, 70–71
intrusions of, views of 64
Quaternary deposits, character of 11, 20, 49–59
deposition of 43–59

R.

Rader Gulch, gold in 100–101
Railroads, construction of 17–18
Relief, description of 18–20
Replacement deposits, occurrence of 77–79
Rex Creek, fossils from 40–41
glaciation on 46, 47, 49
gold on 99, 103–107
gravels of 98
map of, showing placers 104
rocks on 34, 36–38, 66, 68
Rock glaciers, description of 52–59
occurrence of 19
origin of 53–59
Rohn, Oscar, work of 8, 12

S.

San Juan Mountains, Colo., rock streams in 54–55
Schrader, F. C., work of 71

Page.

Schrader, F. C., and Spencer, A. C., cited 62
work of 12, 25
Seattle Gulch, gold in 100–101
Sedimentary rocks, description of 20–59
Silver, occurrence of 80
Skolai Creek, rocks on 25
Skolai Pass, rocks in 25
Sourdough Peak, rock glaciers on 58
rocks of 37, 40, 66, 71
Spencer, A. C., and Schrader, F. C., cited 62
work of 12, 25
Stanton, T. W., fossils determined by 23–25, 30, 38–40
Stratigraphy, description of 20–67
Stream erosion, work of 43
Stream gravels, distribution and character of 50
Structure, description of 12, 67–70
map and sections showing ..... Pocket.

T.

Talkeetna district, rocks of 42, 43
rocks of, correlation of 26–27
Talus, fans of 19
Temperature, records of 13–15
Texas Creek, glaciation on 48
rocks on 29, 40, 61
Till, distribution and character of 48
Timber, character of 15–16
Topography, description of 18–20
Trails, description of 16–17, 20
Transportation, cost of 17
methods of 16–18
Triassic rocks, character and distribution of 11, 20–30, 59–63
correlation of 27
view of 18

U.

Unconformity, occurrence of 20, 29, 36
view of 36

V.

Vegetation, character of 15–16

W.

Westover claim, description of 95–97
ore of 83, 95–97
White Creek, fossils from 41
gold on 103–106
glaciation on 46
map of, showing placers 104
rock glacier on 58
rocks on 34, 36
White River, copper on 79–80
White River–Nabesna district, rocks of, correlation of 26–27
Williams Peak, rocks of 37
Witherspoon, D. C., work of 7, 12
Wrangell Mountains, description of 10
geology of 10

Y.

Young Creek, description of 10
fault on 69
fossils from 41
glaciation on 47, 48, 49, 50
gold on 76, 98, 107–108
rocks on and near 35–36, 38, 60, 66, 71
Yukon Basin, rocks of 41, 43
rocks of, correlation of 26–27

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
GEORGE OTIS SMITH, DIRECTOR

BULLETIN 449

A GEOLOGIC RECONNAISSANCE

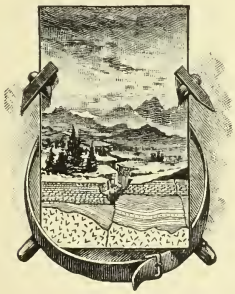
IN

SOUTHEASTERN SEWARD PENINSULA AND THE NORTON BAY-NULATO REGION

ALASKA

BY

PHILIP S. SMITH AND H. M. EAKIN



WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1911

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Preface, by Alfred H. Brooks	7
Introduction	9
Geography	11
Location of area	11
History of exploration	12
General topography	17
Drainage basins included	18
Yukon basin	19
Norton Sound drainage	20
Tributaries east of Koyuk River	20
Koyuk River	24
Tributaries west of Koyuk River	25
Kotzebue Sound drainage	28
Uplands	28
Coastal features	30
Vegetation and game	32
Climate	35
Temperature	35
Precipitation	36
Wind	37
Settlements and population	38
Descriptive geology	39
Undifferentiated metamorphic rocks	39
Area east of the Yukon	40
Southeastern Seward Peninsula	40
Character and distribution of rocks	40
Kwik River area	41
Area north of the Koyuk	42
Bendeleben Mountain area	42
Area south of the Niukluk	44
Area west of the Darby range	44
Summary	45
Paleozoic rocks	46
Area east of the Darby range	46
Fish River area	49
Omilak mine area	51
Bluff—Topkok Head area	52
Area at head of the Mukluktulik	53
Summary	54
Cretaceous sedimentary rocks	54
Ungalik conglomerate	55
Shaktolik group	57
Lower division	57
Upper division	60

Descriptive geology—Continued. Page.
Igneous rocks 60
Pre-Cretaceous 61
Metamorphic igneous rocks 61
Nonmetamorphic igneous rocks 64
Post-Cretaceous 70
Intrusive rocks 70
Effusive rocks 71
Veins 76
Unconsolidated deposits 76
Unsorted deposits 76
Deposits of transported material 77
Marine gravels 78
River gravels 79
Glacial deposits 83
Age of the unconsolidated deposits 85
Structural geology 86
Historical geology 93
Economic geology 100
Placers 101
Gold in areas of unmetamorphosed sediments 101
Conditions of placer formation 101
Placers of the Bonanza Creek region 105
Gold placers in areas of metamorphic rocks 109
Distribution 109
Koyuk River basin 110
Kwik River basin 115
Tubutulik River basin 115
Kwiniuk River basin 116
Fish River basin 116
Main stream 116
Council region 117
Bluff region 123
Buckland River basin 125
Kiwalik River basin 126
Summary 127
Lode prospects 127
Gold 128
Silver-lead 130
Copper prospects 134
Coal resources 136
Yukon basin 136
Norton Bay basin and southeastern Seward Peninsula 139
Conclusions regarding coal resources 140

ILLUSTRATIONS.

Page.

PLATE I. Reconnaissance map of southeastern Seward Peninsula---- In pocket.
II. *A*, Asymmetric valley, Shaktolik Basin; *B*, uplands between East Fork and Inglutalik---- 22
III. *A*, Characteristic mountain topography, Darby Range; *B*, East coast of Darby Peninsula---- 30
IV. Map showing distribution of timber---- 32
V. Geologic map of Nulato-Norton Bay region---- In pocket.
VI. Geologic map of southeastern Seward Peninsula---- In pocket.
VII. Geologic map of Omilak region---- 44
VIII. *A*, *B*, Paleozoic limestone, Darby Peninsula, intruded by greenstone and by granite---- 46
IX. *A*, Limestone and schist at Omilak mine; *B*, General view of Darby Range from south---- 50
X. *A*, Sandstones and shales of Shaktolik group on Shaktolik River; *B*, Concretions in sandstones of the Shaktolik group---- 56
XI. *A*, Surface markings on sandstones of the Shaktolik group, Inglutalik divide; *B*, Granite pinnacles north of Kwiniuk River---- 58
XII. *A*, Inclusions, east coast Darby Peninsula; *B*, Venation in limestone, east coast of Darby Peninsula---- 66
XIII. *A*, Folded limestone near Omilak mine; *B*, Folded and shattered limestone on Ophir Creek---- 90

FIGURE 1. Sketch map of northwestern Alaska, showing location of region considered---- 12
2. Arrangement of drainage due to geologic structure---- 23
3. Profile of hill north of camp C7, at head of Tubutulik River---- 29
4. Relation of greenstone, limestone, and slates, east coast of Darby Peninsula---- 62
5. Cliff exposures near mouth of Daniels Creek, Bluff region---- 63
6. Sketch map of the vicinity of the Omilak mine---- 64
7. Diagram showing relations of glacial material on Etchepuk divide---- 85
8. Diagrammatic section west of Traverse Peak---- 87
9. Diagram showing folding in two directions---- 91
10. Diagrammatic summary of geologic history of Nulato-Council region---- 100
11. Diagrammatic cross section of the Nulato-Norton Bay region during Cretaceous deposition---- 103
12. Sketch map of Alameda Creek---- 110
13. Sketch map and section of Daniels Creek placers---- 123
14. Map showing location of placer camps on Bear Creek---- 125
15. Diagrammatic section of impregnated zones, Bluff region---- 129

PREFACE.

By Alfred H. Brooks.

For several years after the organization of the Alaskan surveys in 1898 most of the appropriation was devoted to exploration. These exploratory surveys, although they had no high degree of accuracy, served to block out the larger features of the topography and geology, and the resulting reports and maps proved of great value to the pioneer prospector and miner. With the advance of the mining industry came a constantly increasing demand for maps which were based on a higher degree of refinement both with reference to geologic observation and to mensuration. To meet this demand areal surveys were begun first on a scale of 4 miles to the inch and later, where the mining interests warranted it, on a scale of 1 mile to the inch. The rapid industrial advancement in many parts of Alaska led to the expansion of surveys of this character almost to the exclusion of the purely exploratory work.

The progress made in reconnaissance and detailed surveys has seemed to warrant again diverting a part of the funds to exploring some of the little known regions. One of the largest of the unsurveyed areas in the more accessible parts of Alaska is roughly blocked out by lower Yukon and lower Koyukuk Rivers on the east and Norton Bay and Seward Peninsula on the west. This field was selected for survey because it was thought that the metamorphic rocks of the Seward Peninsula might occur within it, which would give presumption of the presence of auriferous deposits. The results of the investigation of this area are presented in this report.

In addition to exploring the region east of Norton Bay the party also extended the topographic and geologic mapping into the southeastern part of the Seward Peninsula, thus extending the surveys of Peters and Mendenhall, made in 1900. In this part of the field the results were sufficiently definite to warrant their publication in a map on a scale of 4 miles to the inch. The remainder of the survey, based as it was on foot traverses, which afforded little opportunity for areal mapping, seemed hardly sufficiently accurate to warrant the publication of maps on a larger scale than 16 miles to the inch.

Messrs. Smith and Eakin deserve great credit for the large amount of information gleaned during their very hasty exploration. The results form a notable contribution to the geology and geography of a region that was previously almost unknown. Though the economic results so far as most of the region is concerned are largely negative, they are, nevertheless, of no inconsiderable value. The geologic maps will indicate large areas which do not seem worthy of attention on the part of the prospector.

Besides covering the Norton Bay and lower Yukon region in an exploratory way, the report and its maps furnish the details about the southeastern part of the Seward Peninsula necessary to complete the reconnaissance work in that province. The publication of this report marks the close of the reconnaissance work in the Seward Peninsula which was begun a decade ago.

A GEOLOGIC RECONNAISSANCE IN SOUTHEASTERN SEWARD PENINSULA AND THE NORTON BAY-NULATO REGION, ALASKA.

By Philip S. Smith and H. M. Eakin.

INTRODUCTION.

West of Koyukuk and Yukon rivers a large area has long remained geologically unexplored. In a portion of this region an exploration party from the United States Geological Survey worked during the season of 1909, and the results of the studies there carried on and extended as far as Council, in Seward Peninsula, are set forth in this report. The party consisted of the writers, A. G. Winegarden, packer, and a cook. Supplies for a month were shipped to Nulato, the point from which the expedition set out, and the camp equipment and supplies were transported in the field by a pack train of four horses. Other supplies, sufficient to last the rest of the season, were sent to Nome and then transported, through the courtesy of the Wild Goose Company, to the mouth of the Koyuk and there cached to await the arrival of the party.

After many delays the party arrived in Nulato on the afternoon of June 24 and immediately began to get the outfit into condition for the trail. On the morning of June 26 active field work was begun. The route, as indicated by the location of the camps on the maps (Pls. I and V, in pocket), was westward to Ungalik River, thence northward to the Koyuk, which was reached on July 16. Here a halt was made until supplies from the cache could be obtained and the outfit put into shape for the next trip. On July 19 the party started northeastward along the divide between the Inglutalik and the Koyukuk drainage basins. This survey was carried eastward to the divide between Kateel and Inglutalik rivers. Return to the Koyuk was made along the divide between the drainage basins of the Buckland and the East Fork of the Koyuk, and a tie was made on the previous geological work of Moffit in northeastern Seward Peninsula. At the close of the trip the Koyuk was crossed near the mouth of East Fork, and the party arrived at the Koyuk cache on August 8. A severe storm and the work of replenishing supplies and making

necessary repairs delayed setting out again until August 12, when the party got under way and made a meandering traverse of the areas between Koyuk River and Norton Sound that had not been visited by Mendenhall in his expedition of 1900. Moving along the divide between the Koyuk and the Norton Sound drainage basins, the party swung around the head of the Tubutulik, thence crossed the divide into the Fish River drainage basin, and, following along the foothills, came to the Omilak mine. From the mine the course was southeastward to the Kwiniuk and thence along the coast to Walla Walla. Supplies had been sent to this point from the mouth of the Koyuk, so that the horses had been able to travel light. From Walla Walla meandering traverses were made westward to Cheenik, which was reached September 17. By this time the top of the ridges were snow covered, and a start was made the next day for Council by way of the Kachauik-Fish River divide. Council was reached and the fieldwork for the season was stopped on September 21.

Locations were kept by continuous foot traverses run by each of the geologists independently and elevations were frequently noted by aneroid barometers. The barometric observations, however, were unchecked and served principally to give relative elevations. The foot traverses were paced, directions being obtained by means of Brunton compasses. The results of the different traverses were platted in the office by making adjustments between known points which had been determined instrumentally either by the Coast and Geodetic Survey or by Peters on the reconnaissance trip of Mendenhall in 1900. So closely did the various traverses check on known points that it is believed that, after the adjustments were made and the map prepared, few, if any, points were more than a mile out of their correct positions. That this apparently rough method of pacing is capable of giving good results is shown by the fact that the difference between the position of Camp A15, near the Bonanza mine, on the Ungalik, as determined by the two geologists, after having made a linear traverse of over 130 miles, was less than 5 miles. This result was obtained on the erroneous premise that both were pacing 2,000 paces to the mile. When, however, an individual rating had been obtained by comparing the scaled and paced distance to the mouth of the Koyuk and this correction had been applied to the location of Camp A15, it was found that the difference between the two traverses was considerably less than 1 mile.

Hearty acknowledgments are due to Mr. A. G. Winegarden, of Gardiner, Mont., who acted as packer throughout the various trips, for his unceasing activity in furthering the aims of the expedition and his willingness to perform more than his share of the camp work in the face of rather discouraging conditions. Thanks are also expressed for the friendly assistance of Mr. C. H. Munro, of the Wild

Goose Company, and to Messrs. Thomas Moon and John Lindburg, prospectors, in distributing supplies at appointed places and thus facilitating the movements of the party.

The writers desire also to express their appreciation of the work of the earlier geologists and engineers who have visited portions of the region or contiguous areas, and from whose published reports and manuscripts they have borrowed to supplement their own observations. Among those to whom the writers are most indebted for scientific information are Messrs. J. L. McPherson, W. C. Mendenhall, F. C. Schrader, F. H. Moffit, and A. H. Brooks; for the determination of the fossils collected they are indebted to the paleontologists of the United States Geological Survey.

GEOGRAPHY.

LOCATION OF AREA.

The area in which new geographic and geologic information has been obtained may be inferred from the description of the itinerary of the expedition of 1909. It has seemed feasible, however, to so extend the area actually visited as to include contiguous regions which throw light upon parts of the region visited in 1909 or in which the results of 1909 serve to confirm or explain problems raised by other investigators. The area treated in this report is therefore in the main rectangular and may be roughly described as bounded by parellels 64° and 66° north latitude and by meridians 156° and 164° west longitude. Described in terms of places and natural objects, the southern margin is near the settlement of Unalaklik, on the east coast of Norton Sound, and the eastern end of the northern margin is a short distance north of the big bend of Koyukuk and Kateel rivers and the western end is a short distance north of the town of Candle on Kiwalik River in the northeastern corner of Seward Peninsula. On the east the region is bounded by a north and south line passing a little east of the junction of the Melozitna and Yukon rivers; on the west the best known point to which to refer the margin is the town of Council on Niukluk River. The area can be best comprehended by reference to the general map of northwestern Alaska (fig. 1), and to the more detailed maps, Plates I and V. For several reasons it has been decided to show the eastern part of this region separately from the western. This has been done mainly because better information has permitted mapping of the western portion on a scale of approximately 4 miles to the inch, whereas the eastern portion is shown on Plate V on a scale of approximately 16 miles to the inch. A division of this sort separates the great sandstone shale area of the east from the more highly metamorphic areas of the west. In this report the eastern area, the one represented by

Plate V, will be referred to as the Nulato-Norton Bay region, and the western part (Pls. I, VI) will be called southeastern Seward Peninsula.

HISTORY OF EXPLORATION.

Prospectors and trappers have without doubt wandered over the region described in this report, but there is little or no record of their journeys and the facts that they learned have been lost. Other classes of travelers seldom ventured far from the main avenues of intercommunication; consequently, until within the last 10 or 15 years there have been few published references to any part of the

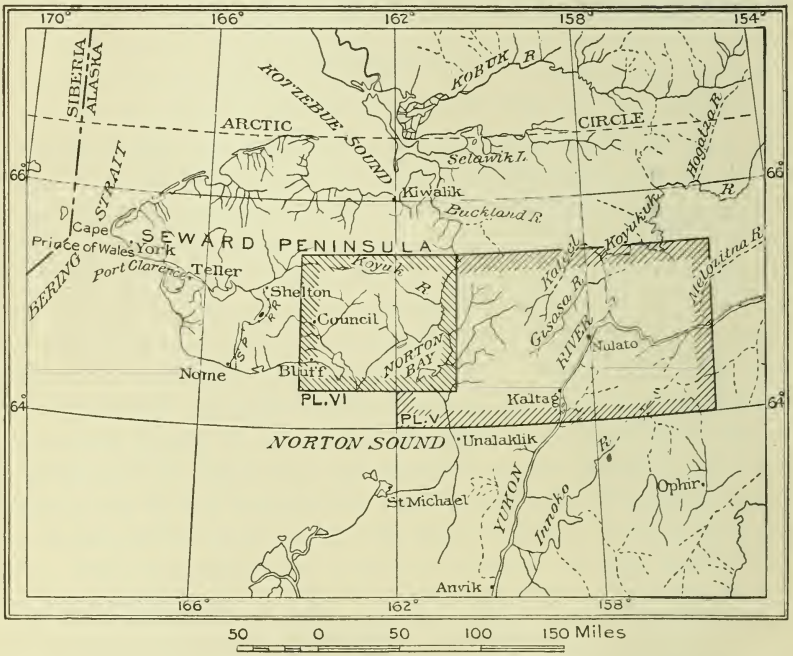


FIGURE 1.—Sketch map of northwestern Alaska, showing location of region considered.

region except the coast line, the Yukon and Koyukuk rivers, and the Kaltag portage. It is not intended at this place to give an account of all the exploring expeditions that have visited the waters surrounding Seward Peninsula, Norton Sound, and Bering Sea, and the reader who desires a more complete historical sketch is referred to the papers of Brooks[a] and Dall.[b]

The oldest settlement in this part of Alaska was at St. Michael, where, according to Dall,[c] Michael Tebenkoff, an officer in the Rus-

[a] Brooks, A. H., Geography and geology of Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 45, 1906.

[b] Dall, W. H., Alaska and its resources, Boston, 1870, 627 pp. and map.

[c] Idem, p. 9.

sian-American Trading Company, established a post in 1833. From this point trading was carried on with the surrounding country. Soon other posts were established. Thus in 1838,[a] Malakoff, a creole, explored the Yukon as far north as the present town of Nulato and established a small settlement at the mouth of Nulato River. He left this post undefended during the winter of 1838–39 and it was destroyed by Indians. Soon afterward, in 1840, a trading post and fort were established on Norton Bay near the mouth of Unalaklik River and called by the name of the stream. This town, according to the 1900 census, had a population of 241.

In spite of the destruction of the first settlement at the mouth of Nulato River the Russian-American Trading Company, appreciating the importance of this place as a point giving ready access to the Koyukuk basin, sent Dérabin in 1841 to rebuild the fort. This was done, and in 1842 Lieutenant Zagoskin of the Russian navy visited the place. His visit is of interest because he made several short journeys into adjacent areas and published the results of his observations.[b] Although his accounts are fragmentary and imperfect, they show that he visited portions of Yukon River as far upstream as the mouth of the Melozitna, explored Koyukuk River as far as the mouth of the Kateel, and made a side trip up the Kateel to assure himself that the native reports of an easy route into the Buckland drainage basin were correct. Unfortunately the maps published with his report are not based so much upon his direct personal observations as upon reports heard by him, and consequently many of the features are indicated only in a most general manner.

In 1851 the trading post and fort at Nulato were burned and some of the inhabitants were massacred by Indians from the Koyukuk. When the town was rebuilt it was moved a mile or more up the river to its present location on a low gravel bench between Nulato Slough and Nulato River.

About 1850 the great activity among many of the different nations, notably the English, in searching for the Franklin expedition resulted in several ships wintering in the waters of Kotzebue Sound. From these ships several exploring parties visited neighboring areas and added geographical data. Of these expeditions few prepared maps of sufficiently large scale to portray any but the most general features of the region explored. Among the overland trips were the exploration of Selawik Lake and vicinity by Surgeon Simpson of H. M. S. *Plover*, the trip from Chamisso Island by way of Buckland and Koyuk rivers to St. Michael by Lieutenant Pim of the same

[a] Dall, W. H., Alaska and its resources, 1870, p. 48.

[b] Zagoskin, L. A., Travels on foot and description of the Russian possessions in America from 1842 to 1844 : Ermans Archiv für wissenschaftl. Kunde von Russland, vols. 6 and 7.

ship, and the exploration of Buckland River by Captain Kellett and officers of H. M. S. *Herald*. Accounts of the voyages of the *Herald*[a] show that the last-named expedition went up the Buckland for 30 miles (probably measured along the circuitous course of the river) in a whaleboat and then about 30 miles farther in lighter boats. The Pim journey is also described in the same publication, but the narrative is more a recital of hardships than of geographic or geologic data and is not accompanied by a map.[b]

A later impetus to exploration was given when in 1863 the Western Union Telegraph Company undertook to build a telegraph line through Alaska to connect the settled parts of America and Europe. In 1865 Kennicott, who was in charge of the scientific work of this company, crossed the Kaltag portage and surveyed the route to Nulato. During the same year J. T. Dyer and R. D. Potter, according to Dall,[c] made a very hazardous and successful exploration of the country between Norton Bay and the mouth of the Koyukuk River on the Yukon. Unfortunately no map of this trip was published, and the data collected, although undoubtedly used by Dall,[d] have never been available. In 1865, also, another party under the leadership of Baron von Bendeleben explored the route for the line from Norton Bay to Port Clarence, but the results like those of the other parties have never been published.

The death of Kennicott in 1866 caused the leadership of the scientific corps to pass to W. H. Dall. It was the work accomplished while in charge of the telegraph exploration and during the year succeeding the abandonment of the enterprise that enabled Mr. Dall to write the most authoritative general book on Alaska that had appeared up to the time of the discovery of valuable gold deposits. All branches of geography and geology received some attention from this investigator and many of his observations will be quoted in more detail in subsequent portions of this report.

A period of ten or fifteen years elapsed during which few notes of value were collected and published concerning the Nulato-Council region. In 1885 Lieutenant Allen made his famous trip, during which a portion of the Koyukuk was mapped and also the portage from Kaltag to Unalaklik. About this time explorations by the Revenue-Cutter Service were begun. The explorations of this branch of the government service which directly concerned the Nulato-Council region were by Purcell in the vicinity of Selawik Lake and by Zane along the Koyukuk to Nulato.

[a] Seeman, Berthold, Navigation of H. M. S. *Herald* during the years 1845–1851, vol. 2, London, 1853, pp. 119–120.

[b] Op. cit., pp. 130–148.

[c] Dall, W. H., Alaska and its resources, p. 357.

[d] Op. cit., map.

In 1889 Prof. I. C. Russell[a] ascended the Yukon, and his report of this trip furnished many facts, both of geologic and geographic significance.

With the discovery of gold in the Klondike an influx of prospectors and others into Alaska followed, and soon afterwards the United States Geological Survey was able actively to undertake geographic and geologic investigations of the district. One of the earliest of these surveys was conducted by Spurr,[b] mainly in the basin of the Kuskokwim. The geologic and topographic map published with his report covers the area between the Koyukuk and the Koyuk and from the mouth of the Kateel southward, and is consequently the first geologic map of the eastern half of the area studied in 1909. Most of the information concerning the Nulato-Council region was compiled or gathered from reports of prospectors, and very little geographic significance, outside of the distribution of the different geologic groups, was added.

Schrader[c] in 1899 came down the Koyukuk and the maps published in the report of his trip, which were made by T. G. Gerdine, afford a much more detailed representation of the region than had hitherto been available. No traverses of the country away from the river were made, so that details regarding the region between the Yukon and Norton Bay were not acquired. At the close of the field work in the Koyukuk region Schrader went to Nome and with Brooks made the first examination by Survey geologists of Seward Peninsula.

In 1900 two main parties were dispatched to Seward Peninsula. One in charge of A. H. Brooks investigated the region as far east as Council; the other in charge of W. J. Peters, with W. C. Mendenhall as geologist, investigated the southern part of the peninsula as far east as the Koyuk. The field studies of the Peters party cover the western part of the area visited by the expedition of 1909 and will be referred to in detail in succeeding pages of this report. In the main, however, the results may be summarized as follows: A delineation of the major features of the topography by maps, the publication of data on various geographic subjects such as climate, vegetation, and fauna, and the statement both verbal and graphic of the areal, historical, and economic geology.[d] The studies of Mendenhall were carried on mainly from the streams; the three larger ones, the Fish, the Tubutulik, and the Koyuk, he ascended in canoes.

[a] Russell, I. C., Notes on the surface geology of Alaska: Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. I, pp. 99–162.

[b] Spurr, J. E., A reconnaissance in southwestern Alaska in 1898: Twentieth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 7, 1909, pp. 31–264.

[c] Schrader, F. C., Preliminary report on a reconnaissance along Chandlar and Koyukuk rivers. Alaska, in 1899: Twenty-first Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 2, 1900, pp. 441–486.

[d] Mendenhall, W. C., A reconnaissance in the Norton Bay Region, Alaska, in 1900, a special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901, pp. 183–222.

During 1901 Schrader made a trip to northern Alaska and visited portions of the Koyukuk drainage basin.[a] In the same year Mendenhall[b] explored the Kobuk River, and although this region lies considerably to the north of the Nulato-Council area the information secured throws considerable light on the problems of the latter. In the reconnaissance by Schrader, a geologic map was published showing the different formations along the Koyukuk northwestward from latitude 66° north, and this map and the notes on the lower part of the river already referred to on page 15 afford a continuous section from the Yukon northward.

Of the other survey expeditions that have visited contiguous areas the party under Collier in 1902 and the Atwood party of 1907 are the only ones that require specific reference here. The main object of these expeditions was to study the coal resources of portions of Alaska. A publication has appeared setting forth the results of the investigations by Collier,[c] but Atwood's report has not yet been published, though many of the manuscript notes have been kindly furnished to the present writers.[d]

In 1906 a traverse from the mouth of the Koyukuk to the shores of Norton Sound and thence to Council was made by a party sent out by the War Department. The object of the survey was to determine the feasibility of a land route from the navigable waters of the Tanana to the vicinity of Council City. The maps accompanying the report of this survey were the first to give accurate information concerning a strip of country 5 to 10 miles wide extending from the mouth of Koyukuk to the mouth of the Koyuk, and are replete with facts of geographic interest. J. L. McPherson was in charge of the field work and prepared the text of the report.[e] Specimens of the various formations crossed were collected and submitted to the United States Geological Survey for study. On this account it was not necessary to cover the area surveyed by McPherson's party again when the Nulato-Council region was visited in 1909. Reference to this report will be made in more detail in subsequent pages of this paper.

In 1908 A. G. Maddren made an exploratory survey of Innoko River and contiguous areas. His report on this trip, with the accompanying maps, affords considerable information concerning the

[a] Schrader, F. C., Reconnaissance in northern Alaska in 1901: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 20, 1904, 139 pp.

[b] Mendenhall, W. C., Reconnaissance from Fort Hamlin to Kotzebue Sound, Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 10, 1901, 68 pp.

[c] Collier, A. J., Coal resources of the Yukon, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 218, 1903, 71 pp.

[d] Atwood, W. W., Geology and mineral resources of parts of the Alaska Peninsula: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 467, in preparation.

[e] McPherson, J. L., Reconnaissance and survey for a land route from Fairbanks to Council City, Alaska: Sen. Doc. No. 214, 59th Cong., 2d sess., 1907, 22 pp., 7 maps, 6 plates.

country south of the Yukon. Practically all the features shown on Plate V south of the Yukon were taken directly from his maps.[a]

GENERAL TOPOGRAPHY.

Throughout the Nulato-Council region the relief is relatively low. Few hills over 3,000 feet occur and the larger part of the upland area is only about 2,000 feet above sea level. Although there are no high ranges, steep slopes lead from the flat river bottoms to the highlands. In the Nulato-Norton Bay region there are numerous parallel northeast-southwest ridges, the highest of which forms the divide between the Inglutalik-Ungalik and the Kateel-Gisasa river basins. The hills to the north of the East Fork of Koyuk River are low and rolling, without pronounced direction. Farther west, in Seward Peninsula, there are three ranges forming prominent landmarks; these are the hills between Buckland and Kiwalik Rivers, and the Darby and the Bendeleben Mountains. The higher points of the first range rise to elevations of about 2,500 feet; in the Bendeleben Mountains the highest point is a little over 3,700 feet, and in the Darby Range the highest peak is about 3,000 feet. In the two last-named ranges precipitous slopes more than 2,000 feet high give a very rugged topography.

Outside of these three higher areas the uplands are rolling, with elevations from 1,000 to 2,000 feet above sea level, unforested, well drained, and covered with angular fragments of frost-riven waste. Pinnacles of the underlying rocks form fantastic knobs here and there.

The drainage of the region studied flows into the Yukon, into Norton Bay, into Norton Sound, or into Kotzebue Sound. The streams belonging to the Yukon drainage and to the eastern part of Norton Bay show pronounced parallelism with the geological structure, and long, narrow valleys are the result. The gradients of the main valleys are low, but those of the small side streams rise rapidly headward. In places the streams flow through narrow rock-walled canyons of slight depth, but in others flat flood plains and gravel deposits occur. In the headward portions of the basins complex relations of the streams on opposite sides of the divide are noted, and it is by no means possible at long range to foretell the direction of the drainage. In Seward Peninsula, where the geologic structure is more complex, the effect on the streams is not well marked and irregular courses are the rule. In this part of the area the longer streams, such as the Koyuk, the Kiwalik, and the Tubutulik, flow more or less parallel

[a] Maddren, A. G., The Innoko gold-placer district, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 410, 1910, pls. I and II.

with the mountains, but Fish River and its larger tributaries flow at right angles to the Bendeleben Range.

Almost all the valleys show signs of having been eroded entirely by stream action. In the headwaters of the rivers rising in the Bendeleben and the Darby Ranges, however, there are glacial cirques and valleys. Here the present streams form irregular threads on the broadly open floors of valleys with very steep sides. At the mouths of the streams flowing into Norton Bay many of the streams, instead of showing erosion features, have filled the former valleys, which have been depressed, with sand and gravel. Examples of this kind of topography are found at the mouth of the Kwik, the Tubutulik, and the Kwiniuk Rivers, where numerous lakes and sloughs form an untraversable network during the summer.

The coast line presents numerous examples of different types of shore topography. From the Reindeer Hills to the Koyuk a coastal plain, recently emerged, affords a relatively straight shore with such slight depths of water off the coast that approach for large vessels is impossible. Of course, under such conditions, harbors do not exist. On the western side of Norton Bay the sinking of the land and the attack of the waves have resulted in a rugged coast with cliffs and harbors. This part of the coast is formed by the Darby Range, which rises in abrupt slopes from the sea and forms a long southward pointing peninsula. West of this range the deep reentrant of Golofnin Sound and Bay, which probably represents the submerged portion of an old valley similar to that of Fish River, affords a good harbor. Still farther west rocky headlands with intervening beaches produce a diversity of forms. On the depressed portions of the coast there are sand spits, such as the long point extending east from near the mouth of the Kwiniuk.

DRAINAGE BASINS INCLUDED.

All the streams flowing through the Nulato-Council region may be considered as belonging to one of three main basins, namely, the Yukon, the Norton Sound, and the Kotzebue Sound. Of these the first two include by far the greater number of streams. Roughly computed about 50 per cent of the area shown on the maps, Plates I and V, is drained by the Yukon and its tributaries, 45 per cent by tributaries to Norton Sound, and 5 per cent by streams flowing into Kotzebue Sound. In the description of these different basins no attempt will be made to enumerate all the streams belonging to each, for that sort of information may be better gathered from the maps (Pls. I and V), but rather to present the particular features not easily legible on topographic maps of such scales as those adopted for publication.

YUKON BASIN.

The portion of the Yukon considered in this report extends from slightly east of the mouth of the Melozitna on the northeast to near the mouth of Kaiyuh Slough on the southwest. In this distance the main tributaries are the Koyukuk, the Nulato, the Kaltag, and the Khotol. Regarding these various streams, with the exception of the first two, no new data of geographic interest were received during 1909, and as the facts already known about the Kaltag and the Khotol are indicated on the map accompanying these reports, no further description of them will be attempted.

Kateel and Gisasa rivers formed the portions of the Koyukuk drainage that were visited and mapped, but only the upper 30 to 50 miles of each stream were seen in any detail. McPherson, who crossed the Gisasa near latitude 65° North, describes the valley as follows:[a]

> The Gisasa River is a stream from 70 to 150 feet wide, with gravelly bottom. Along the river banks on the north side of the valley is a heavy growth of spruce. Along the south side of the valley timber grows in scattered bunches, the intervening ground being to a considerable extent marshy and niggerhead tundra.

From the survey of 1909 it was found that the Gisasa Basin was a peculiar, narrow one, lying between the Nulato on the southeast and the Kateel on the northwest. The river from mouth to head near Camp A9 must be nearly 70 miles in a direct line. In this distance few or no tributaries much more than 10 miles in length are received. The basin is thus probably less than a score of miles wide in its widest part, and in the headward 50 miles it is generally much less.

As will be shown in a later portion of this report the direction and the general physical features of the Gisasa Valley are due to the geologic structure of the region, which trends northeast-southwest. Although in portions of its course the river flows on a flat gravel plain essentially at the level of the stream, in other parts it has rock walls through which the stream has cut narrow canyons. These canyons are not continuous, but appear at irregular intervals along the valley. None of the canyons are deep, only a few of the rock walls, if any of them, reaching a height of 50 feet. Above the steeply incised walls a more open valley is usually found, which indicates rather recent minor deformation of an anterior topography.

The Kateel Basin was seen in less detail by the writers, but its general features are essentially similar to those of the Gisasa, except that its valley is wider and it has longer tributaries. From the survey of McPherson it was determined that Arvesta and Caribou creeks are tributaries of the Kateel. The former, where it was crossed, near latitude 65° north, is from 50 to 70 feet wide and from 1 to 3 feet deep. The latter is much smaller and runs at an elevation

[a] McPherson, J. L., op. cit., p. 17.

about 500 feet higher. Prospectors who crossed the region somewhat north of McPherson's route state that the volume of the Kateel is much smaller than that of the Gisasa.

A general idea of the Kateel Basin was afforded by a view from Traverse Peak, though the weather was unfavorable for a thoroughly satisfactory observation of the topography. From this point it was evident that the northeasterly trend observed in the Gisasa Valley was still dominant. The divide along the western margin of the basin ran nearly north and south, so there is a considerable area tributary to this river. Low passes lead from the Kateel into the Ungalik, or into the Inglutalik, and probably into the Buckland. The pass from the Kateel to the Buckland was not actually seen, but enough of the drainage arrangement was evident to show that some of the western tributaries joining the Kateel below its junction with Arvesta Creek head in the low hills east of the Buckland, so that an easy route undoubtedly exists between the two rivers.

The Nulato River Basin is long and narrow, being formed by two large streams occupying strike valleys that coalesce a few miles from the Yukon and below this point are transverse to the structure. The main branch is about 50 miles long in a straight line. Its valley has a broad gravel-filled floor on which the stream meanders in irregular pattern. It will be seen from the map of this valley that, although lying parallel with the Yukon and not more than 20 or at most 25 miles away from that stream, it drains northeastward, whereas the Yukon in that part of its course flows southwestward. This results in a more than right-angled turn near the mouth of the Nulato, and suggests that the physiographic development of the streams has been complex. Smooth slopes rise steeply from the valley floor to the relatively even uplands. On the southeastern side high hills scored by narrow gulches preserve the snowfall late in the summer. The volume of water carried by the main branch is therefore more constant throughout the season than is the case of those streams dependent upon the rainfall. Passes easily traversable by horses lead from the Nulato Basin to that of the Gisasa, of the Shaktolik, and probably also of the Unalaklik.

NORTON SOUND DRAINAGE.

TRIBUTARIES OF NORTON SOUND EAST OF KOYUK RIVER.

East of Koyuk River the main streams belonging to the Norton Sound drainage from south to north are the Unalaklik, the Shaktolik, the Ungalik, and the Inglutalik. All of these rivers show pronounced angular bends on a large scale, most of which are to be accounted for by the geologic structure of the region. This condition is best illustrated by the three northern streams, whose basins are almost completely mapped. It will be seen from the map that

for the first 5 or 10 miles[a] in a straight line from the coast the rivers flow in winding courses at a right angle to the shore. Upstream from this point the course abruptly changes, and for the next 10 to 30 miles the rivers have a nearly north-south trend. Still farther upstream the direction again changes, and the streams flow from the northeast or even from the east-northeast.

Taken as a whole, the three rivers have narrow, rather contracted basins in the middle or north-south part of their courses, because few tributaries enter from the east and west; in the upper part, however, because the main streams are flowing more or less across the geologic structure, the side streams are long and the area tributary to the main streams is therefore more extensive. Rock-walled canyons, separated from each other by gravel-filled basins, bear witness to recent crustal movements throughout the area.

Unalaklik River was not visited by the survey party in 1909, but portions of it are well known, because the portage from the Yukon to St. Michael follows the lower part of this stream. A long branch joining from the north heads against the Shaktolik River, and it is probable that an easy pass across the hills to Nulato River exists. The northeast-southwest trend of the drainage and the intricacy of stream arrangements make it difficult to interpret the topography at long range. It is possible, therefore, that the Shaktolik may extend farther around the head of Nulato River than was evident at a distance, so that there may be more than one divide between Nulato and Unalaklik rivers.

North of the Unalaklik is a rather small stream, the Iguik, which drains the triangular area between the Unalaklik and the Shaktolik. Its drainage basin is at most only a few hundred square miles in area.

Although previously mapped as a rather unimportant river, the Shaktolik drains a considerable territory between the Ungalik on the north and the Unalaklik on the south. Its course is so irregular that it can with difficulty be recognized at any considerable distance. The Shaktolik was first seen in detail near camp A10. At this place its course was nearly due north, giving the impression that it flowed northward into the Ungalik. Near camp A13, however, it joined with a branch from the south and formed a good-sized stream. From the small increase in the size of the northern branch between camp A10 and its junction east of camp A13 it seems certain that only a few tributaries enter between these two places.

Near camp A10 the river is incised in a narrow rock-walled canyon about 30 feet deep. Above the canyon walls the topography opens out into a broad older valley which had reached maturity before the uplift took place by which the present cycle was started. The floor

[a] The figures given represent measurements in an air-line and not along the circuitous courses of the streams.

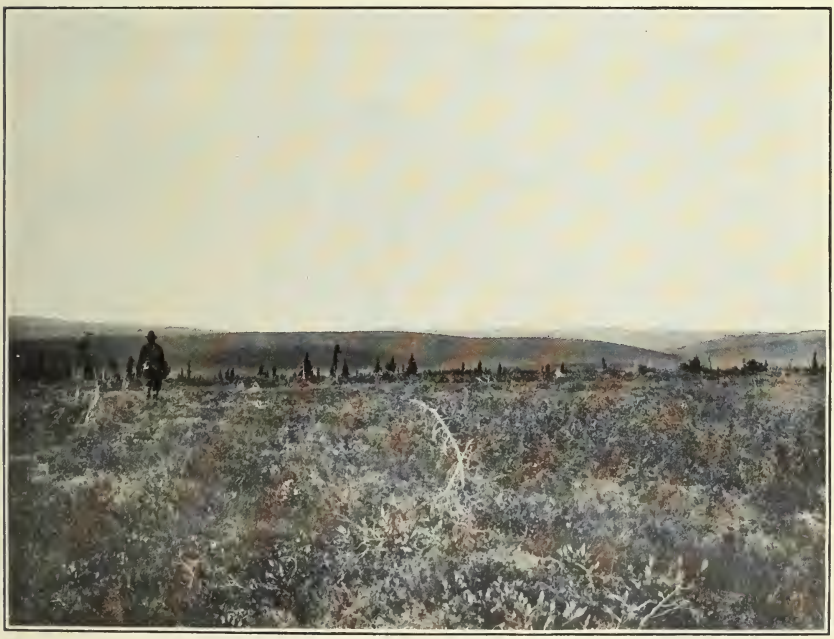
of this older valley is in large measure rock cut with a relatively small amount of gravel covering. Well-rounded material, however, is practically universally present and affords indisputable proof of the presence of stream erosin at this higher level. Near camp A13 the canyon-like character is wanting. Four or 5 miles below camp A14 incised meanders, with radii of from one-half mile to 1 mile, occur. Here the walls are, for the most part, gravel, with the bedrock not exposed. It is believed that the differences in the amount of filling and incision noted along this stream are due to the undulatory character of the most recent uplift.

No accurate determinations were made of the volume of the Shaktolik, but from float measurements near camp A12 it was found that the discharge was between 150 and 200 second-feet. The tributary from the north joining east of camp A13 was of about equal volume, and below camp A14 the amount of water had increased to such an extent that the stream could be crossed only with difficulty. In this connection it should be noted that 1909 was an exceptionally dry season, so that a greater volume is to be expected during a year of normal precipitation.

Ungalik River shows the same characters as the other streams tributary to Norton Bay from the east. Its basin shows the three distinct parts previously referred to, namely, an open east and west course through the coastal plain province, a narrow north and south portion parallel to the geological structure of the region, and a northeast and east-northeast course in the headward portion. In this upper part the basin shows the same feature previously noted on the Shaktolik, namely, that the tributaries from the south are longer than those from the north, so that the basin, if the main stream be considered as its axis, is decidedly unsymmetrical. This lack of symmetry seems to be due to three causes, namely, structural control, climatic conditions, and tilting. Asymmetrical valleys are common in Alaska, and have previously been described by different authors. An epitome of the various causes with reference to a specific region has been published by Goodrich.[a] It was pointed out by this geologist that the effect of insolation differs according to the condition of the stream as to load; thus, if the stream is overloaded, the tendency will be for the waste to push the stream toward the side receiving the least sun, whereas, if the stream is not carrying all the material it can the reverse tendency will dominate, and the stream will migrate toward the side receiving the most sun. Plate II, *A*, shows one of the tributaries of the Shaktolik below camp A12, which is migrating toward the north because the stream is underloaded and the south-facing slope receives more warmth than the

[a] Goodrich, H. B., Cause of asymmetry of streams: Eighteenth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 3, 1898, pp. 285–289.

A. ASYMMETRIC VALLEY, SHAKTOLIK BASIN.



B. UPLANDS BETWEEN EAST FORK AND INGLUTALIK RIVER.

other. In a consideration of the development of the drainage it should be borne in mind that types due to one cause alone are practically absent and that complexity of origin, rather than simplicity, is normal.

From Ungalik River passes may be found into the Inglutalik to the north or to the Kateel on the east, or into the Shaktolik on the south. None of these passes are over 3,000 feet above the sea, and many could be found at elevations below 2,500 feet. The saddle by which McPherson crossed from the Kateel to the Ungalik was only a little over 2,000 feet.

As regards size, the Ungalik is not so large as the Shaktolik. Two miles below camp A16 the stream could be crossed in less than 2 feet of water, and farther upstream it was still shallower except for occasional deep holes. Lower downstream, however, in the coastal plain portion of its course, it becomes deeper and sluggish, and instead of a hard gravelly bottom it has a soft mud bottom that makes crossing difficult without a boat.

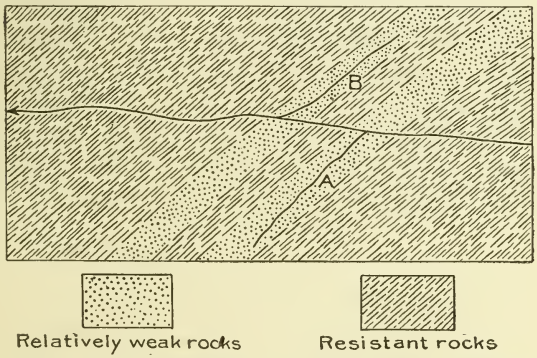


FIGURE 2.—Arrangement of drainage due to geologic structure.

Inglutalik River derives its name from the Eskimo words meaning "river of bones," in reference to the number of mastodon and other bones found in the terrace of gravels along its course. It is at least 60 miles long and appears to have a greater volume of water than either the Shaktolik or the Ungalik. Below camp A18, in the coastal plain province, the river can not be forded; at camp A18 is the first riffle, and on it good crossing in about 2 feet of water is afforded. Poling boats have been taken as far as camp B9, and during seasons of normal precipitation could undoubtedly be worked still further upstream.

In the upper part of the Inglutalik Basin the drainage is very complex, and many readjustments have taken place, so that at a distance of 5 or 6 miles it is impossible to tell whether the river drains toward the north or the south. Backhand or barbed drainage is common. It should be noted, however, that this feature is not always to be accounted for by capturing, but in many instances is due to the geological structure. Figure 2 indicates in diagrammatic manner how a normally developed subsequent stream (A) may have a barbed junction with the main stream without capturing having taken

place. In this same figure stream B is also a normally developed subsequent stream, but as the soft bed on which it has developed forms an acute angle with the course of the main stream the tributary enters without the barbed junction.

Low passes easily traversed by horses lead from the Inglutalik into the Kateel basin to the northeast; into the Ungalik on the south; into the Koyuk on the west; and into the Buckland on the north. It is reported, although it was not confirmed by personal observation, that part of the Selawik drainage also heads against the Inglutalik. There are no known facts which would make such a condition unlikely, but the region in question is so entirely unexplored that conjectures as to the drainage are hardly warranted. The only information on this subject is Zagoskin's trip up the Kateel to near the big bend, in 65° 30′ north latitude. According to this traveler a low pass leads from near this point northwest to the Buckland. It should be realized, however, that Zagoskin did not attempt the passage; that there may have been a misunderstanding as to the river on the western side of the divide, and that it is possible his informants were not correct in their geography. From the present status of knowledge it seems more likely that a pass northwest of the big bend of the Kateel would lead into a north-flowing branch of the Selawik than to a west-flowing branch of the Buckland.

KOYUK RIVER.

Koyuk River enters the northern reentrant of Norton Bay and is a river over 80 miles long. For the first 15 miles from the mouth it has a nearly southerly course, but above this point it flows more or less directly from the west toward the east. For 60 miles or so its tortuous meanders make measurements along the river many times the air-line distance. Mendenhall and Peters in 1900 traversed the river as far west as the head of canoe navigation a few miles above Knowles Creek, and the details of their map have been taken for the course of this stream. In 1903[a] Moffit and Witherspoon, mapping the northeastern part of Seward Peninsula, added many facts concerning the Koyuk basin north of the main stream and concerning the river itself beyond the point reached by Mendenhall and Peters in 1900.

From the observations of the earlier geologists and topographers, supplemented by the field work of 1909, it appears that the Koyuk basin is unsymmetrical. Of the various tributaries, East Fork undoubtedly drains the largest territory. Its basin is about 30 miles long, heading against portions of Buckland and Inglutalik river basins. Many low passes lead from the East Fork basin into the

[a] Moffit, F. H., The Fairhaven gold placers, Seward Peninsula: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 247, 1905, pls. II and III.

Buckland. Probably the lowest pass is by way of the branch on which camp B12 was located. The elevation of this camp was approximately 300 feet above the junction of East Fork and the Koyuk, and as there is a strong upstream current, due to the tides, as far as the mouth of Peace River, it is safe to assume that the mouth of East Fork is practically at sea level. North of camp B12 there is a broad abandoned valley in which there are several lakes. Some of these drain northward and some southward. The elevation of these lakes is not more than 100 feet above the camp, so it is certain that there is a route across Seward Peninsula from Norton Sound to Kotzebue Sound, nowhere more than 400 feet above sea level.

TRIBUTARIES OF NORTON SOUND WEST OF KOYUK RIVER.

West of Koyuk River the main tributaries of Norton Sound from east to west are Kwik, Tubutulik, Kwiniuk, and Fish rivers. All of these streams are mainly within the area occupied by metamorphic rocks of complex structure and consequently do not show by their courses the striking structural control noted in the rivers farther east. Because of the greater amount of information available concerning the region west of the Koyuk, the map of southeastern Seward Peninsula (Pl. I) shows the distribution and character of these rivers in greater detail than was possible on the smaller scale map adopted for the Nulato-Norton Bay region (Pl. V).

Kwik River is a small stream about 20 miles long flowing in the main on a very flat slope in a circuitous course in a gravel-filled basin. It heads in the divide between Norton Bay and the east-west portion of the Koyuk. Passes lead across this divide at low elevations. The lowest pass is by way of the branch on which camp C4 was located. At this point a broad, open saddle at an elevation of only a little more than 600 feet affords an easy route from one basin to the other. The most characteristic feature of this basin is the flat lowland through the lower three-quarters of the area and the short, rather steep gradients of the streams above the point where they enter the flats.

Tubutulik River had previously been traversed by Mendenhall and Peters, so that few notes concerning the stream arrangements were collected in 1909. In the main this basin is parallel with the igneous intrusions of the Darby Range, but above Lost Creek, where the granites disappear, the course for several miles is more nearly east and west. Above this point its general direction is north and south. In this part of its course is a lowland, locally known as Death Valley, which is elliptical in outline and about 7 miles long by 5 miles wide. North of Death Valley the headwater streams rise in the high eastern extension of the Bendeleben Mountains and flow on steep gradients into the Death Valley Basin. The lower 5 to 10 miles of the Tubutulik

basin is formed by swampy lowlands similar to those at the mouth of the Kwik. In fact, the area between the lower portions of these streams is practically undivided, and it would be almost impossible to determine just what portion of the flat was tributary to one stream and what to the other.

Measured in a straight line from its head to its mouth, the Tubutulik is about 40 miles long, but its numerous meanders make the distance along the river much greater. Several low passes lie between the Tubutulik and the Kwik on the east, the Koyuk on the north, and the tributaries of the Fish on the west. The ridge between the Tubutulik and the Kwik nowhere exceeds 1,000 feet, so that at the heads of the tributaries are many places where passages at elevations of 600 to 800 feet may be found. Between the Tubutulik and the Koyuk there are two low saddles where the elevation does not exceed 1,000 feet. The most important of these saddles is the one east of Death Valley, where the trail from Nome to Candle crosses the divide. At this place the elevation is only a little more than 800 feet above sea level. The low saddle is north of the north fork of the Tubutulik and leads into Timber Creek, a tributary of the Koyuk. This pass is broadly open and has several small lakes scattered on the flat divide. Between Tubutulik and Fish rivers there are two or three low passes, but the one taken advantage of by the telephone lines is perhaps the lowest. North of this one, however, near camp C8, there is a saddle at an elevation of about 1,000 feet, by which horses can easily cross from the Tubutulik into the Fish River basin.

Southwest of the Tubutulik the Kwiniuk River drains an area of approximately 100 square miles. It has an extremely irregular course, its bends in the main being dominated by the general north-south geologic structure. It has many side streams joining it in backhand manner. This is especially true in the portion around camp C14. About 2 miles south of this point there is a long tributary coming in from the west which makes a sharp bend and cuts across the prevailing structure to join the Kwiniuk; 2 miles north of camp C14 also there is a stream flowing almost due south until it enters the northeastward-flowing Kwiniuk. It is believed that some of these abnormal features may be explained by the obstruction of the drainage by deposits formed by valley glaciers from the Darby Range, which have prevented a former direct course to the sea.

The Kwiniuk basin is about 30 miles long and is on the whole rather narrow. In places rock walls constrict the river, but in other places there are gravel-filled basins of small extent in which the river splits into many separate channels. At the mouth, the river flows on the broad gravel deposits (which probably represent basin filling) that merge with the flats at the mouths of Tubutulik and Kwik

rivers. In this part of its course the basin is characterized by an intricate network of sloughs and channels impossible to traverse in summer.

Fish River is the largest stream west of the Koyuk. Between it and the Kwiniuk many streams heading in the north-south Darby Range flow in short courses eastward into Norton Sound or westward into Golofnin Sound. Fish River, like the Koyuk, was ascended by Mendenhall and Peters in 1900, and the form of the main river has been taken directly from their map. It is an extremely tortuous stream in its lower and middle course, but in its headward part and for a short distance in the so-called Fish River gorge it is an actively degrading stream. In the lower part the river splits into numerous distributaries on the delta, and its flow is so sluggish that it is difficult to distinguish the main channel from blind sloughs. Steam river boats ascend the river as far as White Mountain, but above this point as far as Council, on the Niukluk, or as far as Mosquito Creek, on the main river, horse boats are used.

Above the junction of Niukluk and Fish rivers the valley of the main stream is constricted and the river flows through a gorge with rather steeply sloping walls for a distance of about 10 miles. Upstream from the gorge the valley opens out and the floor is a flat gravel-covered plain 15 miles wide parallel with the direction of the stream and 30 miles long transverse to this direction. This part of the basin is an unexplained physiographic feature. The plain is dotted with lakes and sloughs slightly sunk below the general level of the surface. Here and there, irregularly distributed, are low gravel mounds from 10 to 50 feet in height, that seem to mark former deposits so dissected that perhaps not one-hundredth of their original extent is preserved.

The main tributaries from the west are Niukluk and Pargon rivers. The former rises in the Bendeleben Mountains and the hills to the south about 20 miles west of the mapped area. The Pargon, sometimes incorrectly called the Parantulik, rises in the high east-west range which forms the eastern extension of the Bendeleben Mountains. It flows along the southern margin of the Fish River basin for nearly 20 miles before entering the main stream. From the east the main tributaries of Fish River are, from south to north, Etchepuk and Rathlatulik rivers and Mosquito Creek. All of these rise in the high Darby Range that forms the eastern border of the Fish River basin. In their headward portions they all flow in rather youthful valleys with fairly steep gradients, but as they cross the flats their slopes decrease, and they flow in sinuous courses slightly incised below the level of the plain.

KOTZEBUE SOUND DRAINAGE.

The only portion of the Buckland or other Kotzebue Sound drainage seen was between camps B5 and B13. In this region only the headward part of some of the streams belonging to the Buckland were observed near at hand, and therefore few additional data as to the larger features of the basin as a whole were obtained. It seems, however, that the area of this basin has been in large measure exaggerated. From the mouth of the Buckland to the divide between that river and the East Fork of the Koyuk in a straight line the distance is between 50 and 60 miles, and from the mouth to the divide near camp B5 is only a little over 60 miles.

Like many of the other basins which have been carved mainly on bedded sediments of Mesozoic age in this part of Alaska, the basin of the Buckland tributary streams shows pronounced structural control. This results in an irregular distribution of narrow valleys parallel to the geological structure of the region, with transverse gorges. In this kind of topography the recognition of the true direction of the drainage from a distance is almost impossible. The western branch of the Buckland, visible from Bear Creek (north of camp B13) flows in a broad, flat valley, the average gradient of the stream from mouth to head probably not exceeding 6 to 8 feet a mile. In the descriptions of Quackenbush[a] and of the earlier surveys by Captain Kellett and other officers of H. M. S. *Herald* and *Plover*, it is stated that the Buckland is navigable in light boats for about 60 miles as measured along the river's course, that is, as far as the forks of the stream about 20 miles north of the Koyuk-Buckland divide.

The low pass from Buckland to the east fork of Koyuk River has already been described. A pass from the Buckland into the Kiwalik basin by way of Bear Creek has been utilized by a road from the mining camp on Bear Creek to Candle. The divide between the Buckland and the Inglutalik is low, and, although usually covered with dense brush, it offers no considerable obstruction to crossing from one drainage basin into the other.

UPLANDS.

As has already been stated, the relief in the Nulato-Council region is relatively low. Few hills are more than 3,000 feet high, and the larger part of the upland is probably not more than 2,000 feet above sea level. There are, therefore, but small differences in elevation between the uplands and the lowlands and still less between different portions of the upland. This results in producing a sky line uninterrupted by any considerable inequalities.

[a] Quackenbush, L. S., Notes on Alaskan mammoth expeditions of 1907–8: Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., vol. 26, 1909.

Smooth, rolling uplands are particularly characteristic of the East Fork-Inglutalik divide. In this part of the field the features are slightly dissected, rounded domes, with gentle slopes merging with the present valley walls by a series of benches. Plate II, *B* (p. 22), shows a typical portion of this upland and is characteristic in a broad way of the divides between most of the minor drainage basins. On such uplands traveling is good, as the surface is well drained and the frost-disintegrated fragments afford good footing. Not only are uplands of this type found in the regions where unmetamorphosed sedimentary rocks form the bed rock, but they are also characteristic of parts of the schist region—as, for instance, at the head of Kwik River.

Even the higher and more rugged divides here and there show a somewhat flat-topped character. Thus, on both sides of the Koyuk-Buckland lowland there are numerous flat-topped hills, some a mile or so in width, carved on materials very different both in composition and in apparent resistance to weathering. This feature is also seen in the hills north of Death Valley on the Tubutulik. On one of these hills north of camp C7 a profile similar to figure 3 was observed which

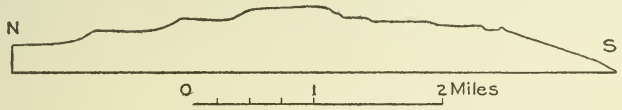


FIGURE 3.—Profile of hill north of camp C7, at head of Tubutulik River.

showed at least five flats from a quarter to half a mile wide. These have been produced on a complex structure of schists, thin limestones, and granites.

The two main mountainous regions are (1) the divide between the Yukon and the Norton Bay drainages, called by McPherson the Brooks divide, and (2) the Darby and Bendeleben mountains. In the former the general trend is north and south, with the highest points only little more than 3,000 feet in elevation and the average much less. Conical peaks rising 500 to 800 feet above their neighbors afford easily recognizable landmarks, visible for long distances. A few steep, rocky crags were seen, but all are easily scalable. In the Darby and the Bendeleben mountains the trend of the former is predominantly north and south and of the latter east and west, so that together they form a crescentic highland area. The crest line of this range is ragged and irregular, being in places close to the north and west side of the range and at others close to the south or east side. Here and there the crest line is so narrow that passage even on foot is hazardous, and blocks of waste disturbed in passing roll hundreds of feet down the slope before finding lodgment. This is true particularly of the Bendeleben Mountains, where glacial action of the alpine type has

been effective in the past. In certain parts of the Darby Range also this same agency has produced similar uplands. Plate III, *A*, shows a portion of the Darby Range much dissected by glaciation and illustrates the narrow pinnacled character of the upland that results. Such divides are not due to valley glaciers having covered the upland, but are the result of headward erosion on opposite sides of the ridge.

Regarding the origin of the uplands, there has been no clear evidence found to indicate the effective causes. As will be explained in detail later, it is known that the deformation which took place after the deposition of the Cretaceous sediments was so great that any topography formed prior to this event must have been so changed as to have little or no effect on the present topography. The surface therefore has been formed between the Eocene and the present time. It is known that none of the mountains indicated by the dips of the strata formed by the folding are preserved at the present time in this region. The upland surface has therefore been produced by erosion, and the present hills owe their height rather to greater resistance to erosion than to original constructional uplift. Whether this erosion resulted in a nearly plain surface approximately at sea level, which has subsequently been uplifted and again dissected, or whether the erosion took place at considerable elevations above sea level and leveled without base leveling the tops of the hills, is a question that must await much fuller investigation. There are the following objections to the interpretation that the present upland surface represents a formerly nearly base-leveled surface subsequently uplifted—the absence of any water formed deposits on the surface of the upland; the lack of deep-rock weathering; the number of flats separated from each other by sharp scarps similar in all characters to the uppermost one, which require similar explanations; the absence of drainage arrangement that would correspond to the hypothetical earlier surface; the indications that present-day processes are responsible for leveling without base leveling. On the other hand, the main objection to the idea that the upland does not mark an old erosion surface nearly at base level is the lack of known processes capable of producing a nearly plain surface on rocks of different resistances to erosion. It seems wise therefore to suspend judgment as to the origin of the uplands, as further information is required before their genetic classification can be effected.

COASTAL FEATURES.

Soundings made by the Coast and Geodetic Survey[a] and others have shown that nowhere in Norton Bay and Sound within the areas represented on Plates I and V is there a depth of water exceeding

[a] See chart 9380 of the Coast and Geodetic Survey, edition of 1908.

A. CHARACTERISTIC MOUNTAIN TOPOGRAPHY, DARBY RANGE.

B. EAST COAST OF DARBY PENINSULA.

100 feet, and over much of this water area the depth averages about 50 feet. In general the 5-fathom line lies several miles from the coast, so that vessels find no harbors and have to discharge cargoes on lighters. A few exceptions to this rule occur, most notably along the east side of the Darby Peninsula and at Golofnin Sound. At the former locality the coast is rocky and landing places for vessels of sea-going size are wanting. Plate III, *B*, shows a typical portion of the eastern coast with the waves beating directly on the cliffs and with a beach so slightly developed that it is impossible for a man to walk around the shore. With such topography it is evident that shelter for vessels is wanting.

Golofnin Bay, on the other hand, presents a fairly good harbor for vessels drawing less than 20 feet, as it is sheltered by high hills from the strong winds. The channel, however, is crooked and the bay is constantly filling up with the detritus brought down by Fish River. Ocean-going vessels from Seattle call at this place irregularly during the season and discharge cargoes near the mission on lighters. Without recourse to dredging, however, this harbor would be of slight value in the general economic development of the region. It is, moreover, some distance from the productive gold areas and so is not much used, although during the boom days of the Council region it gave promise of being important and even now it is the gateway by which most of the supplies for Council and vicinity enter the country.

Kotzebue Sound on the northern shores of Seward Peninsula is also a relatively shallow sea, few if any places having a depth of 100 feet. One of the latest incidents in the geology of the region was a slight depression of the land, so that the submerged lower courses of some of the larger streams afford shelter for light-draft vessels. The shallowness of the basin as a whole and the crooked and constantly changing channels leading to these harbors make navigation difficult.

Tides in Norton Sound are relatively slight in their range but increase toward the bay heads. No accurate measurements of the tides have been made in this part of the region, and as the wind has a considerable effect on the change of water surface it is impossible to make any short-period observations of value. It is probable, however, from determinations made at Nome, that the tides seldom have a range of more than 2 feet along the east side of Darby Peninsula. Judged by the way in which the Koyuk was backed up by the tide near camp A20 the tidal range near the head of Norton Bay probably exceeds 3 feet.

As has been already noted, lagoons are found along portions of Norton Sound. These owe their formation mainly to shore currents blocking the mouths of streams. Sand reefs, such as occur near Solomon and at many other places in western Seward Peninsula, are

absent in the area studied. Many of the lagoons are filled with drift timber, a good deal of which has doubtless been brought down by the Yukon and cast upon the shore by the currents.

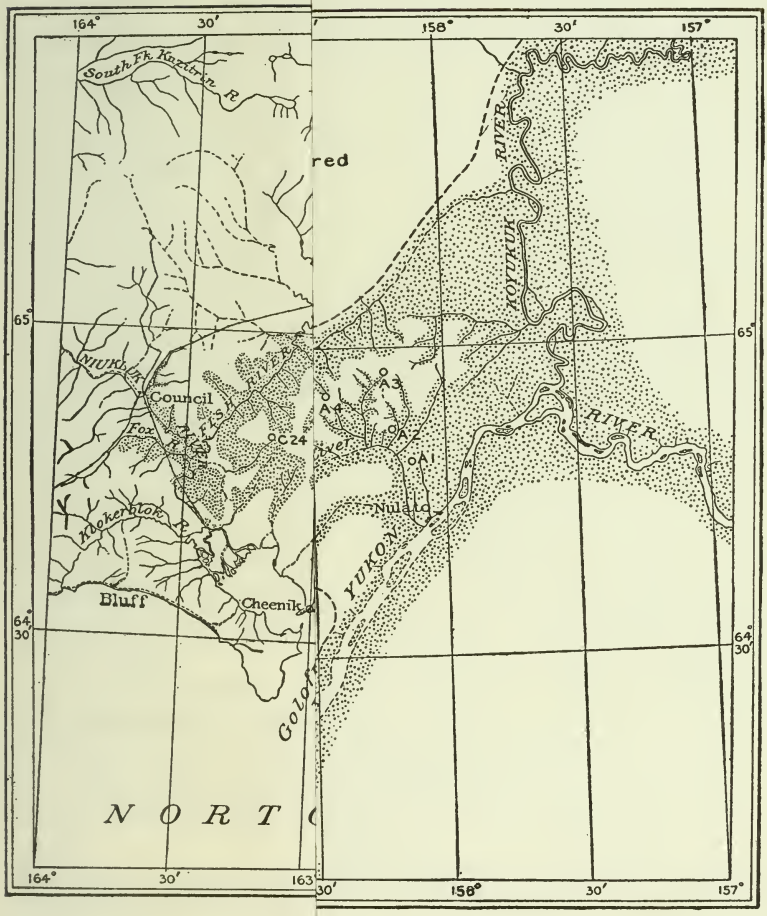
The currents are complex and have been determined mainly by the effect they have exerted on the land forms. Near the mouths of the Kwiniuk and the Tubutulik the long spits with their free ends pointing east give clear evidence that the currents there are flowing from west toward the east, but, south of camp C17 for 4 or 5 miles the apparent direction is southwest. At Carson Creek, however, the general direction seems to be northeast. On the east side of Norton Bay, near the mouth of the Inglutalik, the shore forms seem to have been made by currents flowing toward the north, whereas near Island Point the dominant current seems to divide, the southern part flowing southward and the northern part northeastward. From the south end of the Reindeer Hills the long south-pointing sand spit seems to show that the direction of currents there is in general southward.

VEGETATION AND GAME.

As the main object of the expedition of 1909 was to acquire information concerning the geology of the region traversed, little attention was paid to extraneous matters. A few notes on the general character of the vegetation and game may, however, be included.

Of the evergreen trees spruce is the only one of sufficient importance to be considered. The trees seen probably average 10 to 12 inches in diameter. Spruce extends as far west as Council, but beyond this point is practically wanting. In the eastern part of the area, near the Yukon, it grows at elevations close to 2,000 feet, but farther west, toward Norton Bay, at lower elevations, so that west of the Brooks divide it is seldom found above 1,000 feet. West of the Koyuk it rarely is found above 800 feet, and only in the valleys along the streams. In the western part of the Fish River drainage basin, spruce does not grow on any of the streams north of Mosquito Creek. Spruce is found along the eastern coast of Darby Peninsula up to elevations of about 800 feet, but west of the range it seldom grows at more than 500 feet above the sea. Plate IV shows the general distribution of timber in the region.

Birch, used by the natives for sled frames and similar gear, is found in many places in the Yukon basin, but it gradually disappears farther west until the last birch seen on the Koyuk was near Kenwood Creek and the last sizable trees in the Darby Peninsula were on the eastern slopes of Mount Kwiniuk and on the lower slopes of Mount Kwiktalik or Haystack Mountain. White birch is found in the Yukon basin, but does not occur notably to the west of this area. The Seward Peninsula birches are the yellow and the black birch. The low pros-


164°
30′
158°
30′
157°
South Fk Kuzitrin R
red
KOYUKUK RIVER
65°
NIUKLUK
Council
Fox
C24
A3
A4
A2
A1
Nulato
YUKON RIVER
Kaiyerblok R
Bluff
Cheenik
64°
30′
NORT
163°

MAP SHOWING DISTRIBUTION OF TIMBER.

trate birch, which has little or no fuel value, is much more widely distributed and can be found throughout Seward Peninsula.

Willows are common along almost all the Seward Peninsula streams. The willows are of several different kinds, from prostrate varieties to trees 8 or 10 feet in height, the latter being the main source of fuel throughout the western portion of southeastern Seward Peninsula. Alders are most numerous along the eastern shore of the Darby peninsula, where they form a dense undergrowth of half recumbent interlocking branches, through which passage can be effected only by chopping a trail.

No statement of the vegetation would be characteristic without mention of the abundant berries, which grow mainly above the tree zone. Blueberries are particularly prolific, the low bushes forming in places a mat of vegetation. Salmon berries, much prized by natives and prospectors, grow under essentially the same conditions as blueberries and are especially abundant on rolling low uplands, such as those between the Buckland and East Fork of Koyuk River. Currants are found, but are not abundant.

Several kinds of grasses and forage for horses are found and are generally sufficiently plentiful, so that they do not have to be specially sought until late in the season. The pack horses used by the Survey party were particularly fond of the so-called "goose grass," a kind of equisetum that grows on well-drained areas near the banks of the streams where trees do not form a thick shade. By the first of September frosts so impair the vitality of the grasses that forage must be sought with care in the protected valley heads facing south, and it becomes necessary to place camp with considerable thought as to the feed supply.

Flowers are abundant and give brilliancy to the landscape in the spring and summer. Some fifty varieties were noted, but no collections were made, and therefore no specific determinations were possible. The general impression, however, was that flowers were abundant, but that they were limited to relatively few genera and families.

Birds and animals are fairly abundant throughout the region, although they are not so plentiful that game can be relied on for food. In the higher hills between the Yukon and Norton Sound numerous caribou signs showed that the mosquitoes had driven these animals into the highlands during the early part of the summer. Farther west caribou are almost entirely wanting, although probably a few may still be found in the unfrequented region north of the Koyuk. Domesticated reindeer, held either by government or private ownership, are herded near the mouth of the Shaktolik and south of Cheenik. These herds are moved from place to place, and sometimes the animals stray away and become wild.

Bears are comparatively numerous in the less frequented parts of the region. Well-trodden bear trails run along the Shaktolik for many miles, where the animals fish during the salmon season. Along the ridge between Kwik and Tubutulik rivers, also, bear signs are abundant, especially while the blueberries are ripe. In the upper part of the Kwiniuk basin near camp C14 the sand bars are covered with bear trails. From the reports of prospectors and trappers it is said that most of the bears are rather large and brown, few black bears being found. The only bear that was seen by the Survey party was a very light brown.

Caribou and bear are the only two large animals in the region but there are several small animals that are caught either for their fur or as food. A few rabbits are found in Seward Peninsula, but none were seen in the Nulato-Norton Bay region. Red foxes were seen, and cross foxes are reported. Some marten, muskrat, and other small skins are taken by trappers in the Yukon basin contiguous to Nulato, but the number of skins is yearly decreasing. Porcupine were seen in the Inglutalik and Tubutulik river basins. Ground squirrels common in the less-forested regions of Seward Peninsula are almost entirely absent throughout the greater part of the area east of the Koyuk River.

Of the birds, ptarmigan are perhaps the most abundant throughout the region as a whole, but they are seldom found near the coast and are yearly becoming fewer and fewer. Early in the season these birds are found hiding in the brush with their young, but later in the summer flocks of fifteen or so may be flushed in many of the blueberry patches. After the berries begin to fail and cold weather approaches, the ptarmigan move from the higher land and congregate on the sand bars of the streams. A little later they begin to gather into the large coveys so often seen after the snow has begun to fall.

Along the coast where ponds and lagoons occur ducks, geese, and other water fowl are plentiful. The southward migration of the geese in 1909 took place the last of August and the first of September, and during this time thousands of birds passed over Norton Bay. Cranes were seen, some living on the low swampy country of the coastal plain province and others apparently making their homes on the dry rolling uplands. Robins, crows, and many other birds living in more southern regions were also observed but not minutely noted. Owls, both barred and snowy, are common, and their regurgitations may be found on almost every knob that gives a lookout over the surrounding country. A few eagles and hawks were seen. Spruce or "fool" hens were especially noted in the Darby peninsula country south of the mouth of the Kwiniuk, but they are also found in many other parts of the region.

Fish are almost always plentiful and can be relied on by travelers for food. Grayling are the most common of the fish and are found in all streams of sufficient size. In length they range from a few inches to about 20 inches. They will take a fly hook at almost all times during the summer. Trout of several varieties live in the clear swift waters of the mountain streams and may be caught with a fly hook. Salmon usually run up the larger streams and are much used for food by trappers, prospectors, and natives for themselves and their dogs. Salmon were seen on the Inglutalik as far upstream as camp B9, on the Koyuk above East Fork, on the Kwiniuk above camp C14, and on the Niukluk far above Council. The season of 1909, however, was a particularly poor salmon season, and only a few fish were caught in any of the Norton Bay streams considered in this report.

Salt water forms of life are abundant in Norton Bay and are used for food and clothing. The tomcod, a small, bony fish, and the herring are caught by natives and whites. From the fur of the hair seal much of the clothing of the natives is made, and the skin of the oogruk, a thick-skinned seal, furnishes almost all of the homemade footwear (the mukluk) of the inhabitants. Walrus is sometimes caught near the edge of the ice pack in the spring, and its flesh is used for food.

CLIMATE.

Continuous records of the various elements of climate have not been made in any part of the region for sufficient length of time to afford accurate data for describing the prevailing conditions. The nearest observation stations, at Nome and at St. Michael, are both situated on the coast and give but little information concerning the interior. At present, therefore, there are few records available for the Nulato-Council region except scanty observations extending over only short periods.

TEMPERATURE.

At Nome the highest temperature recorded during 1909 was 70° F., but it is probable that in the interior, where the temperature is not so much affected by the sea, higher records would have been obtained. The work of the Survey party was carried on in the higher hills during the hottest part of the summer, so that the temperatures were much lower than they would have been near sea level. Ice one-quarter of an inch thick formed on water in a pail during the night of July 24 at an elevation of about 1,500 feet at camp B5. On August 5 ice remained on the small pools of water along Peace River at an elevation considerably less than 1,000 feet until after 10 a. m. The hills north of Mosquito Creek and the head of the Fish River valley were

heavily covered by snow on September 1, and on September 16 snow covered the ground down to 800 or 900 feet on the southern end of the Darby Range and remained on hills above 1,000 feet for the rest of the season.

The mean annual temperature at Nome for 1907 was 24° F., and for 1908 it was 25° F. As it seems fully as warm at Nome as in the region to the east at the same time, it is probable that the mean annual temperature is not far different for the two localities. The summer temperatures are higher in Nulato-Council region because of the absence of sea control, which would also make the winter temperatures lower, so that these two factors would tend to balance each other. Further data on the temperatures are afforded by a few observations made at Nulato and at the Omilak silver mine, and published by Abbe.[a]

Extreme ranges in temperature (°F.) at Nulato and at Omilak mine, Alaska.

	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
Nulato:								
Maximum	23	29	44	50	71	47	28	31
Minimum	−62	−60	−33	−23	7	−13	−36	−54
Omilak mine:								
Maximum	43	36	43	55	63	36	32	.....
Minimum	−33	−52	−36	−24	16	− 2	−29	−29

The observations at Nulato from which this table was compiled were carried on for 12 months, from October, 1894, to May, 1895, and from January to April, 1896; those at Omilak mine were also carried on for 12 months, from January 2 to May, 1884, from October 18 to December, 1884, and from January to April 16, 1885. In the report it is noted that in the fall of 1894 the Yukon was closed at Nulato on October 16, and opened in the spring of 1895 on May 22. Near Omilak mine, Fish River opened on May 21, and was closed by ice on September 25, 1884; in 1885 this river opened on May 9.

Dall,[b] who spent a winter at Nulato, has published the following table of temperatures for the different seasons at that place:

Range of temperature at Nulato, Alaska, by seasons.

	° F.
Spring	29.3
Summer	60.0?
Fall	36.0?
Winter	−14.0
Year	27.8

PRECIPITATION.

During the summer of 1909 the precipitation in the western part of Seward Peninsula was abnormally low, and it seems probable that

[a] Abbe, Cleveland, jr., Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 45, 1906, pp. 133–200.
[b] Dall, W. H., Alaska and its resources, p. 436.

the amount of rain received by the Nulato-Norton Bay region was also less than usual. There were less than a dozen really rainy days from the latter part of June to the end September, but in this period there were 38 days on which it showered.

The following table gives the results of previous instrumental observations at Nulato and at the Omilak silver mine.[a]

Mean precipitation, including melted snow and mean number of days with days with 0.01 inch or more precipitation at Nulato and Omilak mine, Alaska.

	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
Nulato:								
Mean total	0.68	0.91	1.46	0.16	0.36	1.36	1.20	1.42
Days	5	7	12.5	2	4	8	6	8
Omilak mine:								
Mean total	0.40	0.32	0.15	0.07	0.02	0.23	0.45	0.18
Days	3	3	3.5	4	2	.....	3	3

The record for Nulato was for 10 months, from October, 1894, to May, 1895, and from January 3 to March, 1896; the record for Omilak mine was for 9½ months from February to May and from October 18 to December, 1884, and from January to March, 1885.

From what is known of near-by areas, it may be stated that the amount of precipitation during the 8 winter months is roughly between one-half and one-third of the total for the year. If a factor of this value be applied to the tables so as to correct the total for the year on the basis of the entire 12 months, it follows that the annual precipitation at Nulato is between 15 and 20 inches and from 10 to 12 inches at Omilak mine. This would make the Fish River region about equivalent in moisture to the region near Nome and the region around Nulato much more moist. The region as a whole, however, would be classed as semiarid and similar to a large part of the States of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, and Colorado. As the larger part of the precipitation comes from June to September, the impression gained by a summer traveler is of a region of much greater rainfall than is actually the case.

WIND.

Throughout the region the northerly winds are the fair weather winds, whereas those from the south usually bring rain. During 1909 the predominant wind direction was from the north, and the weather was accordingly dry for the greater part of the time. Owing to the absence of a heavy cover of vegetation over most of the upland area, the force of the winds is strong and the effects are marked. On the bare limestone hills pieces of detritus are moved by the wind, and the small sand grains are quickly removed from the places where

[a] Abbe, Cleveland, jr., op. cit., pp. 162–165.

they are formed by disintegration. In many places the foliage on the lower lands is covered with the wind transported dust.

Dust whirls caused by convectional currents of air induced by overheating the lower layers were seen several times along river bars. One such whirl started on the Shaktolik River with such explosive violence that it threw up sun-baked pieces of mud several inches in diameter and scooped out a shallow depression. Several dust whirls were noted on the lower part of East Fork and Koyuk rivers and could be traced for several miles across country.

SETTLEMENTS AND POPULATION.

The only villages in the Nulato-Council region are Nulato, Kaltag, Cheenik, Bluff, and Council. Road houses are, however, numerous along the coast and form a complete line from east to west. During the summer there is but little travel, but during the winter the mail and travelers furnish patronage to road houses along the coast at Carson Creek, Walla Walla, Kuiuktulik, Miniatulik, Moses Point, Isaacs Point, Ungalik River, and Shaktolik River. Along Fish River there are road houses between Cheenik and Council, at the mouth of Fox River, and at the mouth of the Niukluk. On the Yukon River are numerous road houses from Kaltag eastward.

A few scattered cabins are the only other habitations in the region, and these are occupied but a short time each year, mainly by trappers. On the lower part of the Inglutalik, 6 or 8 miles from the coast and on this same stream near camp B7, are cabins of this sort.

The mining and prospecting centers of settlements are principally in the vicinity of Bluff and Council on Ophir, Melsing, Mystery, and Goldbottom creeks. There are several cabins, however, on Bonanza Creek occupied by placer miners who hold ground on this stream. At the Omilak silver mine on Omilak Creek, a tributary of Fish River, a mining camp has been established since the early eighties and, although now practically abandoned, at different times has had more than a score of inhabitants. On Bear Creek, a tributary of the Buckland from the west, there has been a small settlement of placer miners since 1902. Two cabins near Alameda Creek, a tributary of Koyuk River from the west, mark a small placer settlement. Ditch camps with one or two men each have been established along the Candle ditch line on Kiwalik River, but are vacant during the winter.

Native encampments are found principally along the coast and belong almost entirely to Eskimos. Along the Yukon are Indian villages, generally established on the outskirts of the white men's villages. The Indians, as a rule, have a more or less permanent abode, but the Eskimos migrate along the coast and are seldom found several seasons in the same place. There is an exception, however,

in the case of those owning reindeer. These people usually summer in nearly the same place, but during the fall and winter they are constantly moving their herds from one pasture ground to another. The largest reindeer settlements are near Shaktolik and Cheenik, where the Government herds are located. These herds are mainly tended by natives.

No attempt was made to obtain a count of the population, but, from the best estimates it has been possible to make, it is probable that there are between 1,000 and 1,500 whites and natives in the Nulato-Council region.

DESCRIPTIVE GEOLOGY.

In the Nulato-Council region there are two major geologic provinces, namely, the Cretaceous basin and its inclosing rim. In the mapped area only portions of the western borders of the basin were studied, and neither the northern nor the southern boundaries were determined. In the Cretaceous areas only exploratory surveys were made, and the eastern rim was not visited by the party of 1909. By reason, therefore, of the relatively slight amount of geologic information, this field is shown on the comparatively small scale map, Plate V (in pocket), of the Nulato-Norton Bay region. Farther west, however, the previous work of Mendenhall, Moffit, Collier, Brooks, and Richardson, supplemented by the surveys of 1909, has warranted publication on the larger scale of Plate VI (in pocket), the geologic map of southeastern Seward Peninsula. It should be pointed out that neither map presents the details of the geology, for there are many problems which must await much more searching investigation than the hasty trip of 1909 would permit.

The rocks or deposits of the region may be assigned to six main groups—the undifferentiated metamorphic rocks mainly of pre-Silurian age, the Paleozoic rocks, the Cretaceous sedimentary rocks, the igneous rocks mainly pre-Cretaceous but in part later than that period, the veins, and the unconsolidated deposits mainly of Quaternary age. Each group shows individual characters which are described in the following pages and the areal distribution is indicated on the geologic maps, Plates V and VI. Plate VI is the more serviceable for showing the distribution of the metamorphic and igneous rocks, and Plate V for showing the nonmetamorphic consolidated sediments, but both maps are necessary for a complete idea of the areal extent of the different geologic members.

UNDIFFERENTIATED METAMORPHIC ROCKS.

The greater part of southeastern Seward Peninsula and the southeastern part of the Nulato-Norton Bay region are formed of a series of metamorphic rocks, much folded, sheared, and so changed that

in but few places are their original characters preserved. This complex consists of a variety of different rocks grouped on the basis of structure or lithology as schists, limestones, and quartzites.

AREA EAST OF THE YUKON.

The eastern area of metamorphic rocks has not been studied in detail, but the following quotation from Maddren [a] will serve to describe the general lithology:

> The oldest group of sedimentary rocks consists of the quartzite and mica-quartz schists, with associated crystalline limestones, garnet schists, and fine-textured slaty schists or phyllites that form a large part of the Kaiyuh Mountains and extend northeastward across the Yukon to the basin of Tozitna River and possibly southwestward to the Haiditarod. Succeeding this belt of schistose sediments is an extensive group of ancient diabasic effusive rocks that appear to be stratigraphically associated with the schistose rocks. These diabasic rocks have not been deformed nearly so intensely as the schistose group. In places they show greenstone schist phases, but for the most part they have not been greatly altered. Their contact relations to the schists are not known in this region. They appear to flank both the northwest and the southeast sides of the schist belt in the Kaiyuh Mountains, where they extend southwestward to the Innoko, and they have extensive development toward the northeast north of the Yukon as far as Gold Mountain and beyond. No statement as to the thickness of this diabasic group can be made at present.

SOUTHEASTERN SEWARD PENINSULA.

CHARACTER AND DISTRIBUTION OF METAMORPHIC ROCKS.

The schists form the greater part of the metamorphic complex and may be described according to the mineral or minerals characteristic of them. The schists most commonly found are quartzose, graphitic or carbonaceous, biotitic, feldspathic, and calcareous. Gradations between different types are frequent and the differentiation is by no means certain. It appears, however, that the present lithologic differences are in considerable measure due to original characters, so that in a broad way identity of lithology may be taken as indicating deposits formed at essentially the same time. This is generally true of the graphitic schists, is sometimes true of the calcareous schists, and is seldom true of the biotite schists.

Owing to the complexity of structure and the insufficient examinations of parts of the field, it has not been possible to indicate on the map consistently the areas occupied by the various types of schist. It has been found necessary to show areas which, for want of a better name, have been called "undifferentiated metamorphic rocks." These undoubtedly contain representatives of some of the rocks that have

[a] Maddren, A. G., Innoko gold placer district, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 410, 1910, p. 43.

been differentiated as well as others, but, as stated above, either the scale of the map or the absence of definite data has precluded accurate mapping. In a measure the lumping together of diverse units has obscured geologic relations, and on the map it frequently happens that the undifferentiated metamorphic rock symbol terminates some other symbol in an abnormal manner. As a specific instance of this kind may be cited the region for 10 miles north and west of Bluff. Detailed traverses along the western margin of this area showed the presence of the feldspathic schists of igneous origin, but no other data are available south of Fox Creek, except in the immediate vicinity of Bluff. Therefore, although it is probable that much of the region is of the feldspathic schist type, it seems unsafe to map the distribution in this 100 or more square miles on such slight evidence. Thus at the risk of obscuring the important fact that the feldspathic schists along the western margin of the map are continuous with the feldspathic schists of the Bluff and Fox Creek regions it has seemed best to adopt the more noncommittal course of showing that the rocks have not been adequately differentiated.

As shown in Plate VI there are five main areas of undifferentiated metamorphic rocks—(1) around Kwik River, (2) between the two lava flows north of the Koyuk, (3) the Bendeleben Range from the head of Death Valley westward, (4) the western part of the mapped area south of the Niukluk, and (5) along the western flanks of the Darby Range extending southward across the head of Kachauik River to the coast of Norton Bay east of Bluff.

KWIK RIVER AREA.

The schist area at the head of Kwik River shows few exposures in place, and practically nothing was learned regarding the structure and relationship of the rocks of the region except that they are quartzose schists. Toward the east or near the limestone area at the head of Kenwood and Mukluktulik creeks the schists are predominantly very dark and somewhat graphitic, and the rocks may be the equivalent of some of the black slates and quartzites found in places intimately connected with dark limestones. Farther west, however, the similarity to the carbonaceous schists is not so marked, and it is possible that one of the other types of schist is represented.

This schist is highly quartzose in all places, contains some chlorite, practically no garnet or feldspar, and few specimens of it effervesce with acid. Numerous cubical cavities show that it contained pyrite in considerable amounts. It finds topographic expression in a series of massive, slightly dissected hills with gentle slopes covered with waste and devoid of outcrops. Owing to the absence of structural determinations no statement can be made of the thickness or relations of

the member. Looked at in detail, however, the minor structures show that the rocks have been so deformed that schistosity has been produced throughout. On the flat-topped, massive hill east of camp C4 the float shows in almost all instances clearly marked evidence of two structures—that is to say, the plication of a previously developed cleavage and color banding. As this structure was not seen in place, however, the relation of the two structures in age could not be determined. The only fact bearing on this point is the occurrence of a shattered anticline west of camp C3, the axis of which strikes northwest-southeast and pitches strongly to the northwest.

AREA NORTH OF THE KOYUK.

The area of undifferentiated metamorphic rocks north of the Koyuk was not visited by the party of 1909. From the manuscript notes of Moffit, who studied the region in 1903, it is evident that a number of different types of schist were found. East of Kiwalik Mountain black slates and carbonaceous schists are closely associated with the limestone area. As the granite contact of Kiwalik Mountain is approached biotite forms an important constituent, although it is of no stratigraphic significance, as it is undoubtedly due to the intrusion of the granite. West of Kiwalik Mountain the schists, according to Mendenhall's field notes, are mainly calcareous, with some greenish schists which may correspond to the feldspathic schists to be described later. Quartz-chlorite schists are abundant in places, but their stratigraphic position, with respect to the others, has not been determined.

BENDELEBEN MOUNTAIN AREA.

According to the geologists who studied contiguous areas in 1900, the metamorphic schists of the Bendeleben Mountains were considered distinct from the other schists of the region and were therefore given a name and assigned to a more or less definite stratigraphic position. In 1908 the senior writer of this report made a cross section of the range along the western margin of the area, and in 1909 the party had the opportunity of studying the section north and west of Death Valley, where rocks previously considered as belonging to the Kigluaik group are exposed. These studies have caused considerable doubt as to the desirability of retaining the stratigraphy as outlined formerly, and these rocks will therefore be treated as "undifferentiated metamorphic rocks."

Mendenhall[a] mapped the Bendeleben Range as two large areas of massive intrusives, mostly granite, with a metamorphic series sep-

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., A reconnaissance in the Norton Bay region, Alaska, in 1900, a special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901.

arating the two. In the text the following statement [a] of this schist area is made:

About the head of Fish River the mountains are chiefly granitic, but along their flanks and sometimes extending through them in belts of varying breadth which mark the passes are areas of schistose sediments.

About a mile above the camp of July 20 along the creek is an outcrop of a rusty and very graphitic schist associated with more calcareous phases. Five miles farther along the right bank of this same branch of Fish River is an outcrop of bluff slates with very little calcareous matter, while 2 miles farther northwest in a gap between two branches of Fish River the series is represented by a white, coarsely crystalline marble. This narrow belt of the crystalline series between two great intrusive granitic masses expands to the northwest.

Collier [b] states in a report published in 1908, the field work for which was completed in 1903:

The only section across the Bendeleben Range which has been examined by the writer is along Parantulik (Pargon) River and Ella Creek, between the heads of which there is a low pass. The structure here appears to be anticlinal and the prevailing rocks are dark-colored quartz-biotite schists and gneisses similar to those of the Kigluaik Range. Sills and dikes of coarse-grained granite or pegmatite are also present. White crystalline limestones containing scattered grains of graphite occur in beds 20 feet or more in thickness interbedded with the schists along Parantulik River from a point near its head to the edge of the Fish River lowland.

Smith in 1908 studied a section along the upper Niukluk across the range to the northern margin. The examination showed that the section was composed of quartzose schists, a few much dislocated limestones, a complex and very numerous series of granitic intrusives, and black carbonaceous slates and schists. All of the rocks were highly biotitic. North of Birch Creek black slates and calcareous schists predominated. All the rocks were much sheared and original structures were not discoverable, but the diversity of trends of the cleavage noted were such as to lend but slight support to the idea that the structure is in general east and west.

The observations of the party in 1909 in the Bendeleben Range were confined to the extreme eastern part and consisted of a study of the 2,200-foot hill northwest of camp C7, and of the 3,000-foot hill north of camp C8. On the first traverse were found biotitic schists with some thin limestone members and greenstone schists, all thoroughly cut up by granitic intrusions of later date. On the second traverse the same kinds of schists were also found, but in addition there were some carbonaceous schists and greenstones were more abundant.

---

[a] Op. cit., pp. 200–201.

[b] Collier, A. J., and others, The gold placers of parts of Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 328, 1908, pp. 67–68.

Southwest from camp C8 to C9, 3 or 4 miles from camp C8, the schists are not much intruded by granites and belong almost entirely to the group of feldspathic schists with here and there a few limestones and a little black slate. These schists appear to be fully as metamorphosed as those to the north and strongly suggest a trend more nearly north and south than east and west.

On account, however, of the small amount of investigation in the larger part of the Bendeleben Mountains it seems unsafe to differentiate the schists on the map. They are characterized as a whole by the presence of biotite, but this is of late origin and is not stratigraphically significant. Otherwise all the various kinds of schists and other metamorphic rocks have been recognized, and the series therefore can not be regarded as a unit.

AREA SOUTH OF THE NIUKLUK.

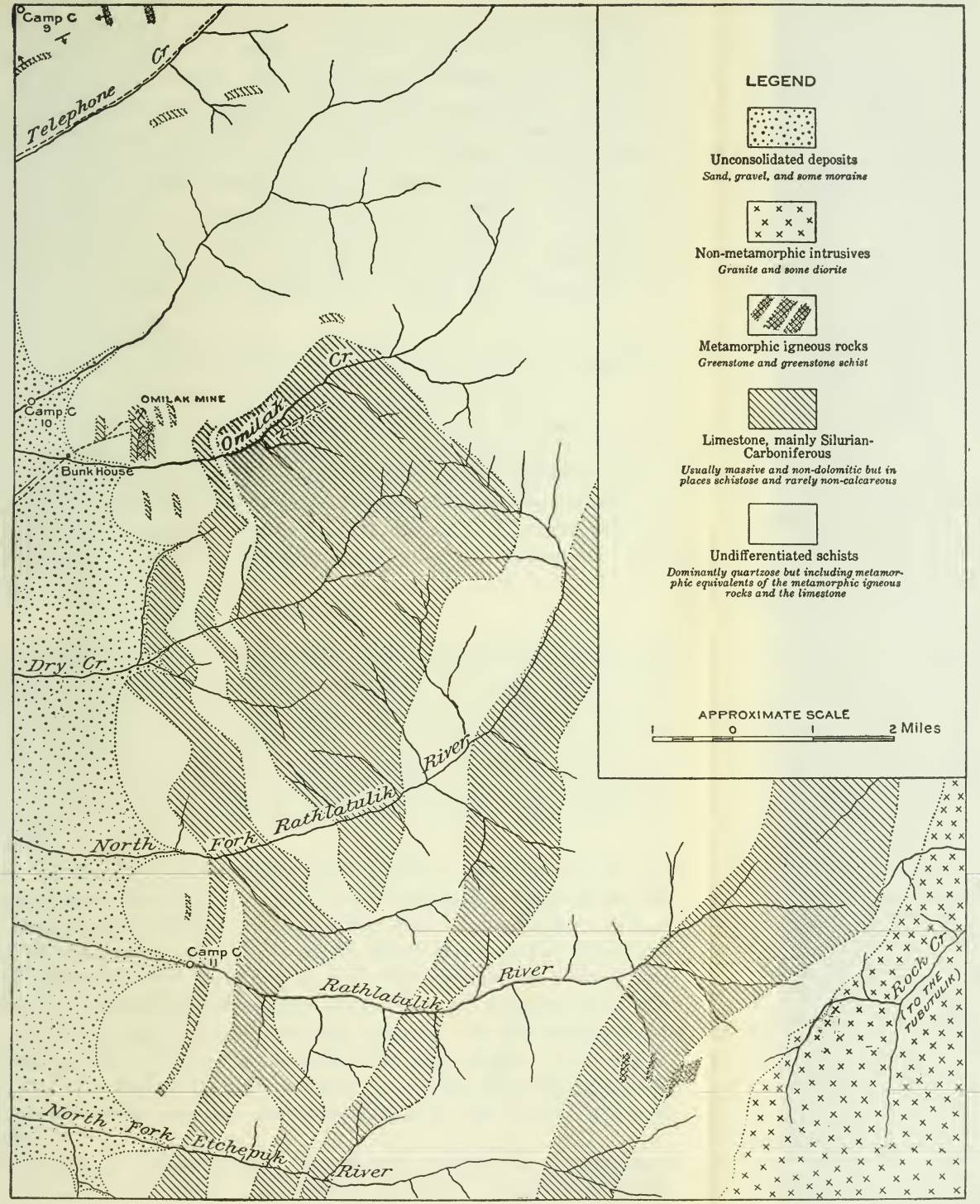
The undifferentiated metamorphic rocks along the western margin of the mapped area south of the Niukluk have been studied in detail where they enter the Solomon and Casadepaga quadrangles. From this study it was determined that the schists were mainly of the quartz chlorite type and that they underlay the limestone near the head of Fox Creek. North of the Niukluk, however, younger schists, called in the region to the west the Puckmummie schist,[a] consisting mainly of black slates and thin limestones, probably overlie the limestone. These rocks seem to merge with the black slates that form the southern flanks of Mount Bendeleben and would indicate enormous deformation not recognizable by surface features.

West of the belt of greenstone schists the rocks show many different lithologic types, but black quartzitic schists, quartz chlorite schists, and calcareous schists predominate in such complex relations that no separation of them has been made. Undoubtedly some of the quartzose schists correspond to the older schists to the west, but some are the sheared equivalents of the heavy limestones and others may belong to the black slate series, which will be described later. In the southern part of this western area a large part of the undifferentiated metamorphic series is the equivalent of the greenstone and feldspathic schist series, but this part has not been closely examined.

AREA WEST OF THE DARBY RANGE.

The fifth large area of undifferentiated metamorphic rocks is along the western flank of the Darby Range and extends southward along the head of Kachauik Creek to the coast west of Rocky Point. In this area schists of a great variety of lithologic types are found in such intricate interrelations that considerable generalization is re-

[a] Smith, P. S., Geology and mineral resources of the Solomon and Casadepaga quadrangles: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 433, 1910, pp. 62–66.



GEOLOGIC MAP OF OMILAK REGION.

quired in mapping them. Plate VII shows a part of this region south of the Omilak mine on a scale of 2 miles to the inch and indicates the geology in some detail. For the present the main interest in this map centers in the arrangement of the various schist and limestone bands. Even on this larger scale map, however, it is impossible to show the actual complexity of the geology. Schists of many different lithologic characters are found in the area covered by this map, but practically all of them are more or less biotitic. Some carbonaceous schists and quartzites suggest the presence of younger members of the schist series, whereas the relations of others show that they are older than the limestones which are believed to be higher in the series.

In the undifferentiated schist area at the head of Kachauik Creek the schists are biotitic, chloritic, and sometimes calcareous, and discrimination of the various types is impossible with the poor exposures. Southward, however, schists lying below the limestone at White Mountain have been recognized by Mendenhall and Collier on Fish River. Similar schists extend southward and probably form most of the hills in the low divide between Norton Sound and the Golofnin Bay drainage. Unfortunately, however, this area has not been studied in detail and the differentiation of the rocks must await further investigation.

SUMMARY.

The undifferentiated metamorphic rocks are highly sheared and cleavage is the dominant structure observed. In many parts of the field the cleavage is at a low angle. In many outcrops where an earlier structure is recognizable the two structures do not coincide, and it is believed that this is the general rule. Faulting is also common in the schists, but the amount of dislocation is generally not determinable on account of the absence of clearly defined horizon markers.

In the typical schist areas where igneous intrusions have not afforded more resistance to erosion, the topographic forms produced are smooth and rolling. Characteristic schist topography is dominant in the eastern part of the Kwik River Basin and is typical of a considerable part of southeastern Seward Peninsula. Here and there on the summits of the ridges rocky knobs of irregular form rise 10 to 30 feet above the surrounding uplands. In the mountainous regions the schists form rugged hills with steep slopes. As a whole, however, the schists are less resistant to erosion than the limestone or igneous rocks and are therefore found in the lower land and passes.

Intrusive activity of several periods has affected the undifferentiated metamorphic rocks. Greenstones, granites, diorites, and other

igneous rocks cut these schists and have each had a share in the metamorphism and obliteration of the original characters and distribution of the schists.

As the undifferentiated schists as mapped include several stratigraphic units of different origin, form, and age, no general statement can be made of the relation of these rocks to the others of the region. It is clear, however, that some of these schists are older than the limestones and other rocks which will be described later, for they underlie them. The question of age and relationship will be discussed more fully in the section on historical geology. For the present, however, it seems justifiable to state that, taken as a whole, the area of undifferentiated metamorphic rocks is composed of rocks older than any of the other areas indicated on the map and is chiefly pre-Silurian.

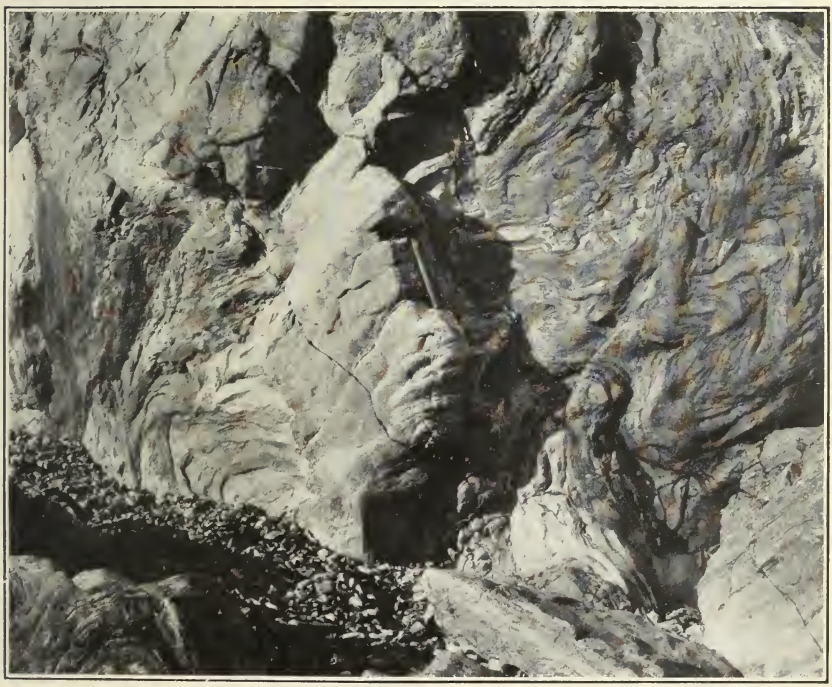
PALEOZOIC ROCKS.

There are five main areas of rocks which are presumably of Paleozoic age, and, although more detailed investigation will undoubtedly show that parts of the undifferentiated metamorphic rocks are of similar age, the lack of information and the complexity of the structure forbid closer correlation at this time. Characteristically all the known Paleozoic rocks are metamorphosed and lithologically consist of limestones and schists complexly folded and faulted. As indicated on the map (Pl. VI), these five areas are as follows: The ridges east of the Darby range extending from the coast of Norton Sound on the south to beyond the Koyuk on the north; the hills east and west of the Fish River gorge from the head of Kachauik Creek to Ophir Creek, including the limestone hills on Fish River near White Mountain; the region south and east of the Omilak mine; the area exposed on the seacoast from Bluff to Topkok Head extending inland an undetermined distance; and the hills at the head of the Mukluktulik. In addition to these larger areas there are smaller areas, some shown on the map and others included in the undifferentiated metamorphic rocks.

AREA EAST OF THE DARBY RANGE.

Along the eastern flank of the Darby Range a group of rocks, consisting mainly of limestones with some schistose bands and closely associated with black slates and quartzites, was noted by Mendenhall in 1900, and studied in some detail by the survey party in 1909. This belt extends from the seacoast with a general northerly trend across Kwiniuk River and along the Tubutulik, forms the eastern divide of Death Valley, and is exposed north of the Koyuk in the hills east of Kiwalik Mountain. Although it probably extends still farther north, its obvious continuation ceases at this place. In this distance the average width of the belt is from 4 to 6 miles. Capital

A.



B.

PALEOZOIC LIMESTONE, DARBY PENINSULA.

A, Intruded by greenstone; *B*, Intruded by granite.

exposures are afforded along the seacoast from the mouth of the Miniatulik southeast nearly to Carson Creek. Studied in detail, the exposures show a great thickness of limestones, considerable dolomite, black carbonaceous slates, and schists, all cut by greenstones, granites, and diorites.

The limestones are in places grayish blue but in other places nearly black. Associated with them in such intimate and complex relations that they can be separated only by refined investigation are dolomites usually of a light-gray, slightly pinkish color. Light-colored dolomites have been recognized in the sea cliff exposures, in the hills between the Kwiniuk and the Miniatulik east of camp C15, and in the hills near camp C5, and east of Death Valley. No measurement of the thickness has been made, but it seems certain that not less than 1,000 feet are required to account for the field distribution.

Although highly metamorphosed, poorly preserved fossils were found in the light-colored dolomite 2½ miles east of camp C15 on Kwiniuk River. According to Kindle, who examined the collection—

> Lot 9AS130, locality 9AS180, Kwiniuk divide, is represented by a single specimen. This is the now well-known though undescribed thick-shelled lamellibranch which has generally been compared with *Megalomus canadensis*. This fossil indicates a late Silurian age for the bed from which it comes. It is interesting to note that it occurs here as at White Mountain (and at the Ramparts of the Yukon) in a highly magnesian limestone. The indexical value of this fossil rests upon our knowledge of its faunal associations in southeast Alaska, where it occurs in association with various late Silurian fossils.

At this place the areal relations are indeterminate. There is some very dark-colored limestone which seems to be either a thin band between two dolomitic bands or else unconformably overlies the dolomite. Northward, however, near camp C5, at the head of Lost Creek, the dolomite lies to the east; that is, apparently on top of the dark limestone. This may be due to intense folding or faulting, or it may be normal depositional sequence.

The limestones associated with the Silurian dolomite range in color from light bluish gray, nearly white, to dark gray, almost black. They are exposed at a number of places in the mapped belt, but the most significant outcrops are those found in the divide between the Kwiniuk and the Tubutulik and along the coast from camp C16 to camp C19. In all places the limestone is folded and contorted with many faults and with calcite and some quartz veins. It has been intruded by greenstones, granites, and diorites. Plate VIII, *A* and *B*, show exposures of these limestones in the neighborhood of the intrusions and afford a fairly good idea of the general characters. Plate VIII, *A*, especially shows the well-marked bedding of the limestone, emphasized by the alternation of bands of light and dark colored limestone. Plate VIII, *B*, shows a more schistose phase,

with the bedding marked by the color banding particularly evident in the right-hand portion.

At many places along the sea cliffs poorly preserved fossils were found, and, although none of them was sufficiently perfect or distinct to permit specific determination, there seems to be no question that they represent a higher horizon than that of the dolomite already described. According to Kindle, who examined the collections, a Devonian or Carboniferous horizon is represented, and in his opinion the higher rather than the lower portion is more probable. Ulrich, who examined the fossils hastily, also agreed with the probable Devonian or Carboniferous determination, but appeared to think the lower rather than the higher position was the more probable. There does not seem, however, to have been any marked difference between the amount of metamorphism or deformation undergone by the Silurian and the Devonian-Carboniferous rocks.

In the limestone hills south of the Kwiniuk River conditions similar to those noted on the coast were observed, and it is evident that the same group of rocks is represented. The higher hills are usually formed of limestone, but the saddles are here and there formed of feldspathic schists presumably of later origin. Owing to the scale of the map it has not been practicable to indicate these later schists except in a most general way, but it should be stated that these schists and greenstones are principally of igneous origin; they are not included in this group of sedimentary rocks, but will be described later under the igneous rocks.

In the region between the coast and Kwiniuk River there are, however, slates and schists of sedimentary origin which at the present time are not to be separated from the Paleozoic limestones already described. The precise relation has not been satisfactorily determined and fossils have not been found in them. There is small reason, however, to doubt that they are closely related to the Devonian-Carboniferous group.

These schists and quartzitic slates are perhaps most extensively exposed in the upper part of Mount Kwiniuk, but their structure and other characters are most clearly seen in the coast section. Usually these rocks are of a black color due to the presence of finely divided carbonaceous matter which, in some places at least, is graphite. The rocks are very quartzose and are low in other minerals. Cleavage is commonly developed, but schistosity is not so pronounced as in the older schists. Apparently schistosity is more common in the less quartzose parts of the rock. In the normal quartzose phases the rock has fractured and has had jointing developed, which causes the rock to disintegrate into a talus of small rectangular blocks. No measurements of the thickness of the slate-schist member were obtained, but it must be at least several hundred feet.

From the foregoing description, it is evident that a large mass of Paleozoic sediments which have undergone more or less fully the same general history lies east of the Darby Range. These rocks, which are complexly folded, faulted, and metamorphosed, consist mainly of dark-colored limestones with subordinate thicknesses of dolomite, black slates, and schists. They are cut by intrusives of greenstone, granite, and diorite and in age include members ranging from Silurian to Devonian or Carboniferous, with neither the overlying nor the underlying rocks exposed in close relationship. They have a thickness of at least 2,500 feet and, if considerable reduplication has not occurred, their thickness possibly exceeds this amount many times. They form bold prominent hills with scanty vegetation, covered with an angular frost-riven talus of float, and are widely developed throughout Seward Peninsula.

FISH RIVER AREA WEST OF KACHAUIK CREEK TO OPHIR CREEK.

In the hills east and west of the Fish River gorge from the head of Kachauik Creek to Ophir Creek, including the limestone hills on Fish River near White Mountain, is an area of Paleozoic rocks to be correlated with the rocks of the Kwiniuk region. The most definite data regarding the geology of this field are afforded by the exposures near White Mountain. Fossiliferous beds were found here by Mendenhall in 1900 and have been further studied by Collier, Hess, Kindle, and Smith, but were not visited by the party in 1909. In the description of the exposures on the lower Fish River it will not be possible except at great sacrifice of brevity to credit the particular contributions of each of the different geologists, but it may be remarked that the present writers are acting more in the rôle of compilers than contributors.

Three miles southeast of White Mountain micaceous, highly metamorphic schists dipping north underlie, probably unconformably, the rocks farther up the river. There is a considerable area of river flood plain in which exposures are lacking, and then come white dolomite hills from which the settlement of White Mountain is named. The dolomite is lithologically identical with the dolomite of the Kwiniuk region, and furthermore contains the same thick-shelled lamellibranch (*Megalomus canadensis*) together with certain other Silurian forms; the correlation seems therefore well founded. Less schistosity has been developed in the dolomite than in the rocks to the southeast, and for that reason there is believed to be an unconformity between the two.

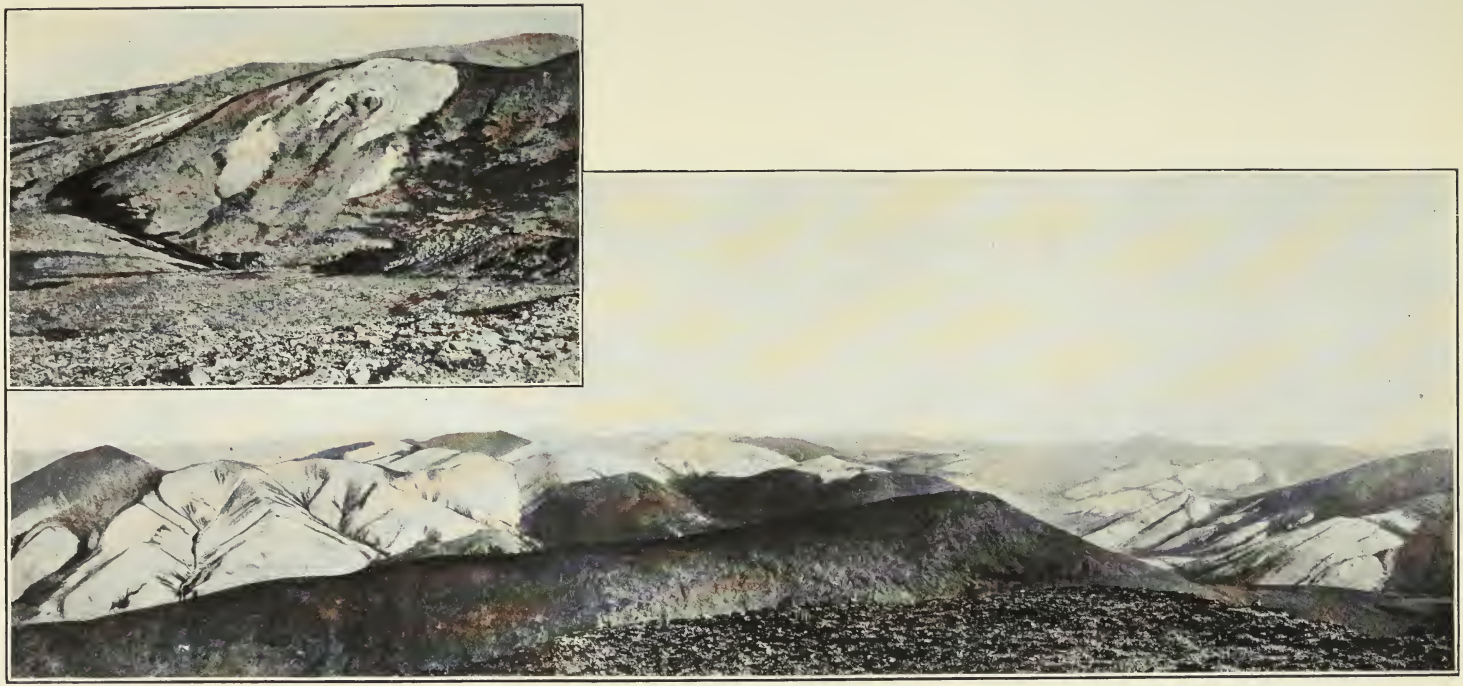
Farther upstream and—if the apparent structure of the rocks is the true structure—overlying the dolomite is a series of schists. Considerable doubt is felt as to the relation of these schists, and it

has been deemed expedient in this report to place them among the undifferentiated schists rather than to express their possible correlation with the Paleozoic black slate of the Kwiniuk region, though the latter is by no means impossible. Still farther upstream near the point where Fish River makes an east-west bend south of Steamboat Slough fossil corals have been found in a nearly black limestone. This limestone is lithologically identical with the black limestone of the Kwiniuk locality, and the fossils have been determined to be analogous. As a whole the rocks on lower Fish River are less metamorphosed than in the Kwiniuk region. Near the black Devonian or Carboniferous limestone are black graphitic slates the relation of which is not determinable, but they seem to be lithologically similar to the slates on Mount Kwiniuk in the more eastern locality.

Along the divide between the Fish River lowland and Golofnin Sound from camp C23 west to the head of Mystery Creek limestones with black slates form the country rock. None of the beds, however, were recognized as dolomitic. As a whole the rocks from camp C23 to Fish River are more schistose than their equivalents at White and at Black mountains, but the dominant north-south trend seems to be strong reason for connecting the rocks at the two places. Apparently, the dip of these beds east of Fish River is to the west at rather high angles, but original bedding is seldom recognizable, and the occurrence of diverse dip at places where the two structures have been determined points strongly to the conclusion that the great thickness represented by the surface exposures is due to reduplication through folding.

West of Fish River gorge the schistose character of the limestones is less pronounced, the rock becomes more massive and, although shattered and deformed, shows not much cleavage and but few secondary minerals. Immediately beneath the limestone at the head of Mystery Creek lies a considerable thickness of black quartzitic and graphitic slates. These have not been adequately differentiated in the field, and it is probable that part of the undifferentiated schists on Melsing Creek may belong to the same schist series as those in the Kwiniuk region, for black graphitic slates closely associated with limestones are known to occur at many places in the basin of this stream.

Whether the Paleozoic rocks extend northward across the Fish River flats and are represented by the limestone-slate group at the head of Fish River and Boston Creek has not been definitely proved. It is assumed, however, in the absence of conflicting evidence, that the two areas are the same, and it is on this basis that they have been represented by the same pattern on the geologic map (Pl. VI). According to Mendenhall's field notes the eastern part of this area



WESTERN FLANKS OF DARBY RANGE.

A, Limestone and schist at Omilak mine; *B*, General view from south.

consists mainly of white crystalline limestone associated with graphitic and rusty schists. So far as his records show, the predominant dip is to the west and the strike northwest.

In 1909 F. F. Henshaw traversed the lower slopes of the hills north of the Fish River lowland from Pargon River as far east as Boston Creek and the geology for that part of the range is represented according to his observations and is only approximate. Whether this belt of limestones may not continue still farther north across the range is not known because of the absence of any field investigation. Although such an interpretation is probable, it has been deemed expedient to truncate abnormally the Paleozoic pattern by representing the northern part of the range as formed of undifferentiated rocks.

In the vicinity of the mountains the Paleozoic rocks are cut by granite dikes and are locally as well as dynamically metamorphosed. South of the Fish River lowland the Paleozoic rocks are also cut by granites and in addition are intruded by greenstones. The latter undoubtedly would be found in the northern area also if more of the region had been examined. It should be noted that where mica-like minerals occur in the Paleozoic rocks near the granitic intrusives the mineral is usually biotite, whereas in the parts remote from the influence of the granite the mineral is chlorite, and biotite is absent.

OMILAK MINE AREA ON WEST SLOPES OF DARBY RANGE.

East of the area of Paleozoic rocks just described there are limestones which resemble in many features those of the Kwiniuk region, and although the correlation is by no means conclusive, it is the closest that can be made with the data now available. No fossils have been found in these rocks and their structure is so complex that any relation between the various units may be postulated. The correlation between the limestones east and south of the Omilak mine has been based almost entirely on lithologic evidence. The geologic map of the Omilak region (Pl. VII, p. 45) shows the distribution of the rocks in greater detail than the general geologic map (Pl. VI). Even this scale, however, fails to express the complex character of structure and areal distribution of the rocks. Plate IX, *B*, shows a view northward from a point on the divide between the two branches of the Rathlatulik about 3 miles east of camp C 11. The white areas in the view are limestones and the darker parts are schist. Some of the schists are undoubtedly derived from rocks of igneous origin, but others were unquestionably deposited as sediments. Most of the limestones are ordinary calcareous rocks, but some are dolomitic. In the view above referred to at several places in the eastern or right-hand belt of white rocks light-colored dolomites have been found. This

fact points strongly to the conclusion that these beds represent the dolomitic portion of the Paleozoic rocks of the Kwiniuk region.

With these limestones black graphitic quartzites have been found here and there similar to those on Mount Kwiniuk. This type of rock is not so abundant as at the other places. Its apparently small extent is believed to be due in part to the greater amount of deformation and contact metamorphism whereby it has been transformed into a biotite schist or into a nearly white quartzite.

BLUFF-TOPKOK HEAD AREA.

The westernmost mapped area of rocks correlated with the Paleozoic rocks of the Kwiniuk region occur near Bluff and appear at several points along the western border of the area. Unfortunately, this part of the field has not been thoroughly surveyed, and considerable areas which, if more fully known, might belong to this series have been placed in the undifferentiated metamorphic rocks.

The Bluff region was not visited in 1909 and the account here given is taken from a summary report by Brooks[a] in 1906.

> Richardson, who through his acquaintance with adjacent areas had a broader knowledge of the Bluff region than the writer, divided the bedrock terranes into three groups—(1) a massive gray crystalline limestone, (2) a mica schist with some interbedded graphitic limestone, and (3) a formation of massive limestones and mica schist. The writer's observations hardly bear out the correctness of this succession of beds, for it appears to him that there is only one massive white limestone which is succeeded by a mica schist and graphitic limestone formation. Some facts are presented below which would indicate that the mica schists are, in part at least, altered intrusives and hence do not mark any definite stratigraphic position.
>
> The larger structures of the Bluff region appear to be simple, but there are many minor complications. The heavy limestone has been uplifted into a low dome, whose longer axis stretches approximately N. 70° E. About 3 miles northeast of Bluff this structure carries a limestone underneath the younger mica schists.

It is evident from this description that lithologically the same rocks are represented here as in the Kwiniuk region, namely, limestones, some of which are dark-colored, suggesting the Devonian-Carboniferous limestone and black graphitic slates. The fact that these rocks are cut by intrusives of greenstone is also indicative of a similarity between the two regions. Although Brooks correlated these rocks with the Port Clarence limestone, the fact that Devonian-Carboniferous rocks, as well as Silurian and possibly older ones, may be represented makes it undesirable to continue that correlation, and these rocks are therefore mapped as Paleozoic.

---

[a] Collier and others, The gold placers of parts of Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 328, 1908—The Bluff region, pp. 285–286.

AREA AT THE HEAD OF THE MUKLUKTULIK.

The fifth and last large area represented on the southeastern Seward Peninsula map as belonging to the Paleozoic rocks is the eastern area in the Mukluktulik divide. This belt trends north and south. On the south it forms Bald Head or Isaacs Point where it is cut off by the sea. To the north a prominent hill locally called Haystack Mountain, on the north side of the Koyuk Valley, marks the farthest extent in that direction; beyond that point more recent igneous rocks have cut or covered the formation.

At the eastern margin of the area is a belt of white quartzite a mile or so in width. This is cut off by basic lavas that form the hills east of Alameda Creek. It is believed that the quartzite is equivalent to the black quartzitic and graphitic slates of Mount Kwiniuk, so metamorphosed locally by the igneous rocks that the carbon has been destroyed. West of the quartzite ridge there is a considerable thickness of calcareous schist with some white limestone bands, but on the divide at the head of Coal Creek a white, completely recrystallized limestone forms knobs trending a little east of north. Sink holes 500 to 600 feet above the sea are common, and some of them show ledges of limestone. This limestone has a strong fetid odor when freshly broken, and shows no original bedding or signs of organic remains. Farther west, about 7 miles from camp B17, at the mouth of the Koyuk, alternations of black graphitic quartzitic slates or schists and limestone beds form an intricate complex about 2½ miles wide trending northeast. The dips, so far as observed, were all to the east, but the arrangement of the different lithologic units is such as to suggest extensive faulting or overturned and crumpled folds.

Northwest of this belt of alternations of black slates and limestones for 4 miles is a series of dark limestones and calcareous schists dipping southeast and striking northeast-southwest. Exposures in this field are rare and unsatisfactory. The western part of this area is formed of a belt 2 miles wide of black carbonaceous slates and schists. No outcrops in place were observed, but the unmixed character of the float points to the conclusion that this is the country rock. It is in all essentials lithologically identical with the slates in the belt farther east already described, and slight hesitation is felt in ascribing it to the same series. More detailed work would undoubtedly permit further differentiation of these two distinct lithologic phases. For the present it may be stated that whereas if, on the one hand, the dip is considered to be dominantly to the east the section shows a black slate and quartzite at the base, succeeded by a thick limestone and limestone-schist member, succeeded by an alternating series of limestones and black slates, succeeded by another thick series of limestones with some schistose phases, and this in turn followed by a mas-

sive quartzitic horizon. On the other hand, there are strong reasons for believing that reduplication through faulting and folding may occur, hence there may be only one limestone and one black slate member. No dolomite was observed in this section.

Mendenhall, who saw the section of these rocks near Bald Head, says:[a]

> Along the west side of Bald Head gray and white marbles occur infolded with thin-bedded limestones and schists, and blocks of these rocks cover the beach. The point of the promontory is a mass of heavy black graphitic beds, and the eastern face exhibits a slaty and schistose phase, the rocks being generally dark. Dip and strikes are variable and the relations are obscure, but evidently complex.

SUMMARY.

From the foregoing description it is evident that there is a group of limestones, dolomites, and quartzose graphitic schists which, from the few fossils found, is known to include Silurian and Devonian-Carboniferous horizons. These rocks are on the whole less metamorphosed than certain quartz-chlorite schists on which they are supposed to rest. In general, the trend of the formation is north-south, with complex folding and faulting. No signs of a conglomerate were noted in any part of the section, and it is presumed that the Paleozoic rocks were laid down at some distance from the shore line. This conclusion is further suggested by the wide distribution of lithologically identical rocks over the southeastern part of Seward Peninsula where the metamorphic rocks outcrop. Further investigation might lead to a more precise differentiation of the various lithologic units, but such subdivision would probably not add greatly to the understanding of the economic problems connected with this group of rocks.

CRETACEOUS SEDIMENTARY ROCKS.

In the eastern part of the Nulato-Council region a large area, extending from Norton Bay and Koyuk River on the west to beyond the Yukon on the east, is occupied by a series of sedimentary rocks, including conglomerates, grits, sandstones, shales, and thin lignite beds. These deposits extend north and south beyond the field investigated. The only other rocks within this area are a few dikes near Bonanza Creek, the intrusive massif of Christmas Mountain, and relatively small areas of Tertiary effusives on the Koyuk and near the mouth of the Koyukuk.

Beds similar to certain of those found in the main sedimentary area are exposed at the mouth of Koyuk River and on its north bank at a point about 4 miles west of the mouth of East Fork, also

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., A reconnaissance in the Norton Bay region, Alaska, in 1900, a special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901, p. 202.

in the long ridge which forms the Kwik-Tubutulik divide. These outlying areas of sedimentary rocks comprise only a few square miles.

The unmetamorphosed, consolidated sedimentary rocks of the region apparently comprise a single conformable series of great thickness. Two distinct types of deposits are recognized and will be described in their order of occurrence as follows: First, a basal conglomerate called in this report the Ungalik conglomerate; second, an overlying group of sandstones and shales called the Shaktolik group. The Shaktolik group is separated into two divisions, the lower distinguished by a preponderance of sandstones over shale, and the upper in which shales are in excess.

UNGALIK CONGLOMERATE.

The lowest member of the Cretaceous sedimentary series, a basal conglomerate of marine origin, is called the Ungalik conglomerate, after the river of that name, along whose lower course it was first noted. This formation occurs along East Fork of the Koyuk River and on the Kwik-Tubutulik divide. (See Pl. V, in pocket.)

The Ungalik conglomerate is exposed in steep-faced cliffs along Ungalik River and forms most of the prominent range of hills between the river and the coastal plain from Bonanza Creek north to a point about a mile below camp A17. Here the strike changes and the conglomerate appears in the hills east of the river. Its eastern limit was not determined, but its characteristic pinnacled topography does not extend far beyond this point.

In this locality the conglomerate ranges in texture within moderate limits, the coarsest phases carrying bowlders up to 3 feet in diameter. Assortment and bedding are poor. The most characteristic materials are a variety of porphyritic rocks and abundant angular feldspar crystals in the sandy matrix. A strong red coloration on weathering indicates an abundance of iron. The bedding is so indefinite and obscure that no conclusive evidence as to the attitude or thickness of the formation could be obtained. However, a thickness of at least several hundred feet is certain.

That deformation has been intense is indicated by the abundant slickensides developed both in the conglomerate and at its contact with other members. On the Ungalik east of camp A16 it is faulted against black slates which represent a much higher horizon in the series. At this point the slates are approximately vertical. In the bluff on the Ungalik south of camp A16 are several dikes intruded in the conglomerate. They are much faulted and indicate the amount of deformation which has occured throughout the vicinity. The conglomerate area is characterized by a rather rugged topog-

raphy. Where there is considerable relief the hilltops and sharp ridges are often marked by bare, rugged pinnacles.

The conglomerate is the basal formation of the sedimentary series. It is made up of rounded débris derived from the older formations, on which it rests unconformably. It chronicles a period of more or less gradual advancement of shore conditions.

On East Fork the conglomerate occupies a belt about 8 miles wide, trending north and south. It is similar to that in the Ungalik Valley in texture and in the lack of assortment and bedding. The materials include a variety of igneous rock types in the outcrops near camp B11. Farther west, near camp B12, it consists of a variety of granitic rocks of local derivation. No conclusive evidence as to the attitude or thickness of the conglomerate in the East Fork region was available, but the relief developed in the formation indicates a thickness of at least several hundred feet.

Along the Kwik-Tubutulik divide the Ungalik conglomerate belt has a width of from 3 to 5 miles. The main ridge forming this divide and its northward extension into the Koyuk drainage basin is composed almost entirely of limestone. The bowlders are smaller as a rule than those in the Ungalik and the East Fork localities. There is also greater variation in texture, the deposits including grits and limy sandstone layers. Some of the latter furnished fossil plants of Cretaceous age. Fossil corals taken from a limestone bowlder in the conglomerate on the Kwik-Tubutulik divide about 5 miles south of the camp C4 were of Paleozoic age.

Along the col at the head of Lost Creek the conglomerate is relatively free of limestone and schist material, being made up mainly of igneous rocks and quartz. Vertical dips were observed at a number of places and probably represent the general attitude of the beds in most of this area. The high dips and the fact that the conglomerate area is surrounded by Paleozoic rocks show that the younger beds have been folded or faulted downward from their former relative position, and indicate the extensive removal of Cretaceous sediments from areas which they formerly occupied. As in the other occurrences, the conglomerate marks a period of littoral erosion and deposition, and being derived from the rocks upon which it rests, its relation to them is that of unconformity.

Mendenhall notes[a] the occurrence of unaltered sediments at two points along Tubutlulik River. He says:

> Eleven or twelve miles above the mouth of the Tubutulik some bluish and shaly sandstones and fine quartz conglomerates, entirely unaltered, but dipping 50° or 60° NE., outcrops along the river bank. Two or three miles above this exposure is another of soft, brown sandstone and fine conglmerate with blue clay shales.

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., Reconnaissance in the Norton Bay region, Alaska, in 1900, a special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901, p. 205.

A. SANDSTONES AND SHALES OF SHAKTOLIK GROUP, SHAKTOLIK RIVER.

B. CONCRETIONS IN SANDSTONES OF SHAKTOLIK GROUP.

Being immediately adjacent to the conglomerate area and having suffered similar deformation, these sediments probably belong with the conglomerate in the same general series.

About 70 miles east of Nulato, below the mouth of Melozitna River, a series of conglomerates, grits, and shales is exposed along the Yukon. According to Spurr[a] these beds overlie Paleozoic rocks and are made up of materials derived from them. Farther down the Yukon the conglomeratic beds are less important and the series consists mainly of grits, sandstones, and shales.

The determination of fossils collected by Atwood in 1907 from a number of horizons of this series refers them all to the Upper Cretaceous. The Melozitna locality may be regarded as having been at one time the eastern margin of the area of Mesozoic deposition, as the conglomerate areas near Norton Bay indicate the one time western margin.

An exact correlation of the conglomerates of Melozitna River and of the Norton Bay localities is not advocated, though by no means impossible. The similarity of deposits means that the same conditions which prevailed at one time at one of the localities prevailed at some time during the same general period at the others, littoral condition necessarily existing throughout the life of the Mesozoic Basin.

SHAKTOLIK GROUP.

The Shaktolik group, so called after the river of that name, which affords a good section of the beds, includes a thick series of sandstones, shales, and grits. This name is used to designate all the beds between the Ungalik conglomerate and the top of the sedimentary series. Beds of this group are widely distributed in the sedimentary area and occupy most of its space.

For convenience of description a separation into two divisions is made, the lower characterized by abundance of sandstones, the upper by the predominance of shales. Each will be treated separately in the order of stratigraphic position and localities.

LOWER DIVISION OF THE SHAKTOLIK GROUP.

Shaktolik River and westward.—Along Shaktolik River and westward the Shaktolik group is made up of alternating beds of sandstone and shale, the latter aggregating only a small part of the total thickness. (See Pl. X, *A*.) The sandstones are usually fine grained, dense, and compact, and in some places resemble fine-grained igneous rocks so closely in apearance and in constituent minerals that their

[a] Spurr, J. E., Geology of the Yukon gold district, Alaska: Eighteenth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 3, 1898, p. 189.

true character was determinable only with the aid of the microscope. Near camp A10 some of the beds exhibit a peculiar concretionary structure, large spherical masses breaking down in concentric shells under the blows of a light hammer. (See Pl. X, *B*.) Another unusual structure shows in the form of weathered surfaces seen at a number of places in the sandstone area, especially near camps A12 and B6. The surfaces mentioned were marked by linear striations and flutings and by lobate forms suggesting surface flow. (See Pl. XI, *A*.) Whether these structures are original or have been developed by postdepositional movements between beds is not known. Ordinary ripple marks are absent in the same localities.

Microscopically, the sandstones show a very even texture. The sand grains are seldom well rounded and are especially sharp in the finer-grained beds. In composition they include feldspars, quartz, calcite, pyroxenes, amphiboles, micas, and fragments of dense igneous rocks. Most of the material of the sandstones could be derived from the rock types that are found in the Ungalik conglomerate. Some of the lower sandstone beds resemble the matrix of the conglomerate closely, pointing to continued sedimentation from the same source. Other beds approach limestone in composition, the sand grains being mainly calcite derived from older limestones. Calcite deposited from solution is the principal cement. Locally, secondary minerals of a serpentinous character, due to the post-depositional alteration of femic minerals, forms the cement, giving the rock a speckled or mottled appearance. Such alteration, however, is not general, the sandstones being remarkable for the unaltered condition of the minerals they contain. The rocks are not highly colored as a rule, shades of gray being most common in fresh specimens. Many of the finer deposits are colored black by carbonaceous matter which they contain. Others have reddish and reddish-brown tones, due to iron oxides. Iron staining is common on weathered surfaces.

The beds have been extensively deformed, close folding along northeasterly and southwesterly axes having occurred. The dips are very high over most of the area, varying within a few degrees on either side of 90° along the Shaktolik. The stronger beds often find topographic expression in prominent ridges, but much of the topography has smooth rounded forms in which both lithology and structure are obscured.

Where good exposures were observed much faulting was noted. In other places, where the structure was obscure in detail, the relation of beds indicated extensive displacement. It is safe to assume that faulting on both a large and a small scale has been an important part of the deformation of the group. Schistosity has been developed locally in places near the structural axes, especially in the fine-grained carbonaceous members.

A. SURFACE MARKINGS ON SANDSTONES OF SHAKTOLIK GROUP, INGLUTALIK DIVIDE.

B. GRANITE PINNACLES NORTH OF KWINIUK RIVER.

The actual thickness of the Shaktolik group at any point is not known. A partial section exposed on the headwaters of the Inglutalik River gives an apparent thickness of tens of thousands of feet. Due allowance for the repetition of beds by faulting being made, the group is still of very great thickness.

The lower or sandy division of the Shaktolik group overlies the Ungalik conglomerate in apparent conformity, and probably grades upward without a break into the upper division of the group, which consists mainly of black shales, and though recognized as distinct in type, could not be differentiated from the lower beds in mapping without more detailed survey.

Near Nulato.—A group of sandstones, shales, and grits with minor lignitic beds outcrops along Yukon River near Nulato. These beds have been known as the Nulato sandstone since first visited by Dall in 1866. They are only a part of a great series of similar deposits which are included in the Shaktolik group. The work in this region has not been sufficiently detailed to determine whether it will be possible to retain the name Nulato for one of the formations of this group.

The early writers, Dall and Spurr,[a] considered these beds of Tertiary age, but subsequent visits of Collier (1902), Hollick (1903), and Atwood (1907) and the study of their collection by Stanton and Knowlton have shown them to be of Upper Cretaceous age. The investigation of 1909 indicates that not only are these beds of Cretaceous age, but that a thickness of several thousands of feet of beds of undoubtedly Cretaceous age overlies them.

In the Nulato section sandstones predominate over the shales, grits, and lignite beds that make up the rest of the group. Notes furnished by Atwood[b] show that different types of beds alternate in close succession. Fossil plants, lignite deposits, cross-bedding, and ripple marks indicate shallow water conditions during part of the period of deposition, but alternating with these are beds bearing marine shells and worm borings. Some of the sandstones are of the even-grained, dense type common in the Shaktolik region and also noted near camp A2. On the whole, the sedimentary rocks near Nulato show a greater variation in type and indicate more changeable conditions of deposition than the rocks of the localities farther west.

The structure near Nulato is rather simple, the beds dipping in general to the northwest at angles up to 40° or 50°. Locally the beds are much faulted and crushed along the axes of minor folds. No definite measurement of the section was attempted, but it must be many thousand feet in thickness. The relations of these beds to the

[a] Dall, W. H., Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 84, 1892, pp. 247–248. Spurr, J. E., Eighteenth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 3, 1898, p. 196.

[b] Unpublished information; report in preparation.

underlying formations are not evident at this locality. They occupy the area west of the Yukon to the locality of camp A5, where they are overlain, probably conformably, by the black shales which form the upper division of the Shaktolik group.

Bishop Rock.—Bishop Rock is a low, rocky knob on the Yukon about 10 miles above the mouth of the Koyukuk. It is composed of compact limy and shaly sandstones. Fossils collected here by Atwood in 1907 were determined as Upper Cretaceous.

Near Melozitna River.—Overlying the basal conglomerate correlated with the Ungalik conglomerate near the mouth of the Melozitna River and downstream for 30 miles or more a series of sandstones, grits, and shales outcrops along the Yukon. In lithology, fossils, and relation to the basal conglomerates these beds are similar to the Shaktolik group farther west and are regarded as belonging to that group.

UPPER DIVISION OF SHAKTOLIK GROUP.

The upper division of the Shaktolik group occupies the central part of the sedimentary area along the Nulato-Gisasa divide and westward to the head of Shaktolik River. It consists predominantly of black shales, but contains subordinate beds of calcareous sandstone. Some of the latter 5 miles west and 2 miles south of camp A5 furnish invertebrate fossils of Upper Cretaceous age.

This group of beds probably represents a vertical gradation into finer sediments upward in the series, though lateral gradation is not impossible. The shales are very carbonaceous, indurated, and on weathering in places break down into pencil-like fragments. Schistosity has been developed locally near structural axes in some of the more carbonaceous members. The more resistant members stand out in strong ridges; the slopes are steep, covered with fine talus, and almost barren of vegetation. Structurally the shales agree with the underlying standstones, with which they are conformable. Black shales accompany the sandstones throughout the Shaktolik group, but the part of the group in which they predominate strongly enough to be distinguished as a separate division probably does not include more than a few thousand feet.

IGNEOUS ROCKS.

From the foregoing description of the sedimentary rocks it is seen that the Cretaceous deposits give a good horizon to which to refer different geological activities. The pebbles in the conglomerate at the base of the Cretaceous show what rocks were in existence when the beds were deposited, and all igneous rocks cutting the Cretaceous must be later than the beds they cut. For this reason the igneous rocks of the region have been divided into pre-Cretaceous and post-Cretaceous. Each of these main subdivisions contains rocks of differ-

ent mineralogic composition and field relations and was formed under different conditions; both show intrusive and effusive rocks and afford much material for detailed petrographic studies, which, however, have not been attempted in the preparation of this report.

The larger areas of pre-Cretaceous igneous rocks are the flanks of the Kaiyuh Hills, the Buckland-Kiwalik divide, the Bendeleben and Darby ranges, the region around Bluff, and numerous small areas in the metamorphic complex. The larger areas of post-Cretaceous igneous rocks in the Yukon Valley are at the mouth of the Koyukuk and south of Kaltag; in Seward Peninsula they are in the Koyuk River Basin, especially in the central portion, extending to the head of Kiwalik River; at the very head of the Koyuk, extending to Noxapaga River; and at the lower part of East Fork, extending into the Buckland River basin.

PRE-CRETACEOUS IGNEOUS ROCKS.

In the long time represented by the pre-Cretaceous history of the region there are two distinctly marked periods of much geological significance. One of these preceded the dynamic metamorphism of the region and the other followed it. Rocks formed in the earlier period show structures due to this deformation, whereas those formed afterwards have not been much metamorphosed. A division of the pre-Cretaceous igneous rocks into two groups, metamorphic and non-metamorphic, may be made, and this grouping will be followed in this report.

METAMORPHIC IGNEOUS ROCKS.

Rocks of igneous origin earlier than the period of metamorphism have been recognized in many parts of the region. The four larger areas mapped are in the Kaiyuh Hills, east of the Darby Range, in the belt extending northward from Bluff in the western part of the area, and north of Omilak Creek. All of these areas have features more or less in common, but it is by no means certain that all of them have been formed at the same time or are mineralogically identical. Furthermore, there is but little doubt that other metamorphic igneous rocks might be recognized if investigations had been carried on in greater detail, and doubtless some of the area mapped as undifferentiated metamorphic rocks is formed of igneous rocks.

Reference has already been made on page 40 to the belts of metamorphic igneous rocks occurring on both flanks of the Kaiyuh Hills. These were described by Maddren as consisting of diabasic rocks of probably effusive character. They are less metamorphosed than the older sedimentary rocks which form the Kaiyuh Hills on which these ancient lavas probably lie unconformably.

In Seward Peninsula the metamorphic igneous rocks are usually greenish in color, and differ much in degree of foliation; in the central part of the peninsula they are high in soda and low in quartz. Usually, where schistose, the rocks have had secondary albite developed and become greenish feldspathic schists. Although the feldspathic character may be produced in other ways, as, for instance, by the contact effect of igneous rocks, it is believed that in a large way the presence in this field of highly feldspathic schists is strongly suggestive of the igneous origin of the rocks in question, and this is assumed to be true if contradictory evidence was not observed.

The clearest evidence concerning the greenstones and associated feldspathic schists is afforded by the cliff exposures along the east coast of the Darby Peninsula. Along this part of the coast are numerous dikes and sills of basic composition cutting the Paleozoic rocks. A particularly clear example of a greenstone intrusion of this sort is shown in Plate VIII, *A* (p. 46). At this place, which is between

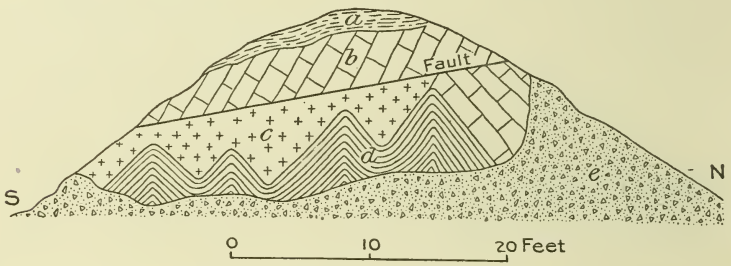


FIGURE 4.—Relation of greenstone, limestone, and slates, east coast Darby Peninsula. *a*, Soil and waste; *b*, limestone; *c*, greenstone; *d*, black slates; *e*, talus.

the Kuiuktulik and Walla Walla, light and dark banded Paleozoic limestones have an unusually low dip. These have been intersected by nearly vertical cleavage, and parallel to this cleavage the greenstones have been intruded. The large white masses shown in the picture are calcite veins of later formation, probably contemporaneous with the succeeding period of mountain building.

The structural relations of the greenstones are in places complex and show that these rocks have been subjected to considerable disturbance. Figure 4 illustrates an exposure of slates, limestones, and greenstones on the eastern coast of the Darby Peninsula about midway between the mouth of the Miniatulik and the Kuiuktulik. The greenstone intruded slates and limestones and has subsequently been folded into a number of appressed folds. Thrust faulting then took place along the plane indicated so that the south-dipping limestone was superposed on the greenstone and the slates giving a section as indicated in the figure. The axis of folding at this place is about N. 70° E. and the folds pitch toward the west.

In many places the deformation and accompanying metamorphism of the greenstones has gone so far that the original characters of the rocks are obliterated and it is not certain what origin is to be assigned. Brooks, in a study of the Bluff region, found schistose rocks which seemed to show by their areal relations igneous rather than sedimentary characters. Concerning these schists he says:[a]

> Mica schists occur as irregular masses within the limestone belts and although they do not differ lithologically in any very essential way from the schists believed to be of sedimentary origin, their mode of occurrence strongly suggests that they are altered intrusions. The most striking example of this is seen in the cliff exposures just east of the mouth of Daniels Creek (fig. 5). Here an irregular mass of mica schist is inclosed in limestone walls. Lines of faulting have obscured the original relations of the two rocks, but the outline of the schist mass is very suggestive of an intrusion. Further evidence of the intrusive character of some of these schists is found in the fact that at various localities the limestone walls near the contact with the schists are more or less metamorphosed. These facts, together with the irregular distribution of the schists, indicate an igneous origin, though it must be confessed that the evidence is by no means conclusive.

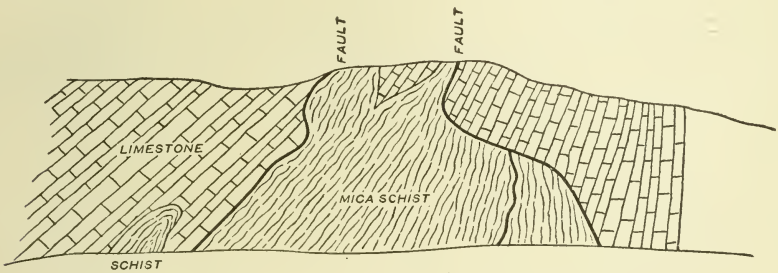


FIGURE 5.—Cliff exposures near mouth of Daniels Creek, Bluff region.

At several places the actual gradation from an unquestionably igneous rock into a green feldspathic schist has been observed. Here and there in the hills south of camp C15 are examples of this sort, and although it is not intended to assert that all the feldspathic schists are of this origin, it is certain that many if not most of them are formed in this way.

An exposure of metamorphosed igneous rock is afforded near the Omilak mine. Figure 6 shows the general geology in the neighborhood of the mine, with the intrusive cutting across the western limb of the limestone. Plate IX, *A* (p. 50), supplements this map by showing the general appearance of the same hill from the south. In this view the dark area in the center of the view is the igneous rock, and an apophysis is represented by the dark band which cuts across the right-hand limestone area. From a study of this rock under the

[a] Collier and others, The gold placers of parts of Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 328, 1908—The Bluff Region, pp. 285–286.

microscope it has been determined that it consists of olivine, a light-colored amphibole probably tremolite, very abundant light-green garnet and muscovite, with some accessory ilmentite and apatite and secondary serpentine. This is an unusual phase of the greenstone series and has not been recognized elsewhere.

NONMETAMORPHIC IGNEOUS ROCKS.

There are three large areas of pre-Cretaceous nonmetamorphic igneous rocks to which attention should be called. These are the Darby Range, the Kiwalik-Buckland divide, and the Bendeleben Mountains. In addition, several smaller areas, such as Kiwalik Mountain, are found in the region, but as they show the same features

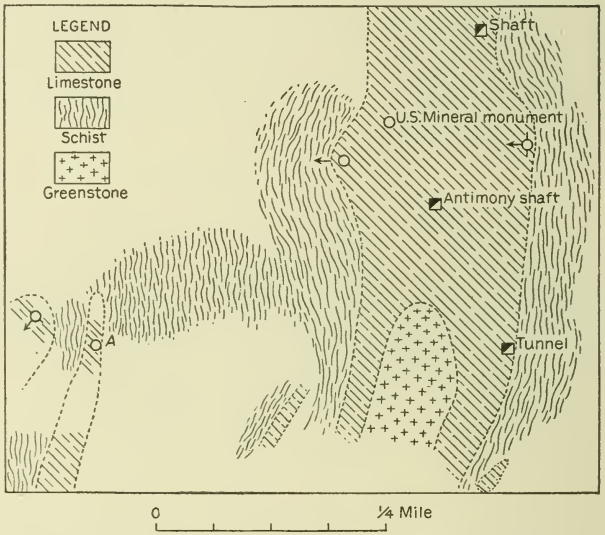


FIGURE 6.—Sketch map of the vicinity of the Omilak mine.

as the igneous rocks in the larger areas they will not be described separately.

Mendenhall, who studied portions of the Darby Range in some detail, says:[a]

> Cape Darby and a broad belt of country extending 55 miles northward from it with a maximum width of about 12 miles is occupied by a great intrusive body of granite and granitized rock which exhibits considerable variation in texture and mineralogical composition, but is regarded as belonging to one geological body.
>
> A few miles below Cheenik, along the eastern shore of Golofnin Bay, the rock is diorite porphyry with large tabular phenocrysts of andesine or andesine-oligoclase, some colorless pyroxene, and abundant hornblende in part at least secondary. Quartz is present but often in very inconsiderable amounts, and

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 204.

titanite is an inconspicuous accessory. This phase or a slightly more acid one is rather largely represented in this portion of the mass extending at least 5 to 6 miles east from its western border.

Near the eastern edge of the northern part of the area in the Tubutulik Valley the rock appears as a coarsely crystalline aggregate of pale brownish orthoclase and smoky quartz with a little biotite. A gneissoid phase of the same rock occurs along the western side of its western limit.

Distinct contact phenomena in the schists and slates while sometimes present are not so abundant as one would expect. The inference is that the intrusion was slow and deep-seated and affected the intruded rock generally, rather than locally. This inference finds support in the coarse texture and porphyritic character of the diorite even at its borders.

In 1909 it was the intention of the party to avoid revisiting the areas already studied by Mendenhall, so that in but few instances does the work overlap. From this later study it was found that the areal distribution as already given by Mendenhall required but slight modification, but that the number of different kinds of rock was more complex than his report indicated. There are at least two distinct types of granite, one with marked porphyritic development and the other of even grain.

The largest area of the porphyritic granite is in the Kwiniuk basin extending from a little east of camp C14 to at least 4 miles north of camp C15. In addition, the same rock was found on the seacoast at the mouth of Carson Creek and is probably the same as the granite with brownish feldspar described in the northern end of the belt. This rock is characterized by a coarse-grained mass of quartz, orthoclase, and a little biotite, the various grains averaging about 0.2 inch in diameter, with large orthoclase crystals averaging about 1½ inches in length scattered abundantly through the rock. A few inclusions of diorite were found in the porphyritic granite, one of which showed calcite-filled cavities, probably amygdaloidal in origin. Typically the porphyritic granite weathers into fantastic knobs and pinnacles similar to those shown in Plate XI, *B* (p. 58). This feature is also shown more extensively developed in Plate III, *A* (p. 30), the pinnacles shown being probably of granite of this type.

The even-grained granite may be of the same age as the porphyritic granite. If this is the case the two may have consolidated under different conditions. It does not seem evident from the field relations, however, that the porphyritic rock cooled under essentially different conditions except that the porphyritic granite forms larger masses than the finer-grained type. Mineralogically the even-textured granite consists of quartz, both orthoclase and plagioclase feldspar and biotite. Dark-colored silicates, although present, form but a relatively small amount of the rock. It occurs usually in rather narrow dikes, and no large area of this type is known in the Darby Range. Dikes of this granite have already been noted in previous

pages as cutting the Paleozoic rocks at many places. Plate VIII, *B* (p. 46), shows a nearly vertical granite dike, the light-colored rock (on which the hammer rests) cutting across the structure of the metamorphic limestone and sending apophyses into it.

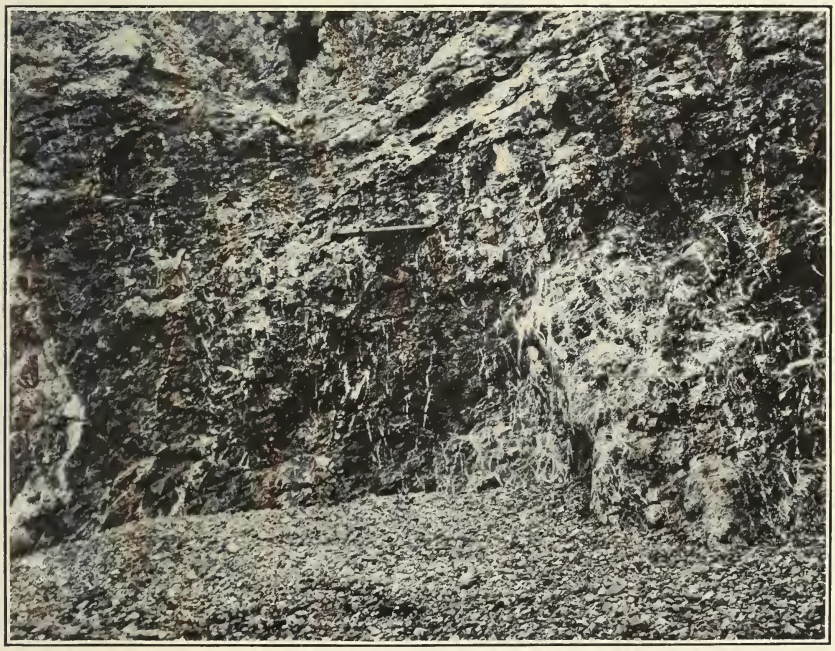
Diorite also occupies large areas in the Darby Range. In composition it ranges from a normal amphibole plagioclase rock to one containing quartz and orthoclase in addition to the usual constituents. The plagioclase is apparently andesine-oligoclase; that is, about midway in the soda-lime series. Accessory apatite, titanite, muscovite, and metallic minerals in small amounts were noted in several examples of this rock studied microscopically.

From the fact that inclusions of diorite are found in the porphyritic granite, it is assumed that the latter is younger than some of the diorite. Plate XII, *A*, however, shows that there is more than one diorite represented in the region. In this view the large light-colored area on which the hammer rests is porphyritic granite with numerous inclusions of diorite. Unfortunately in this picture the further fact that the porphyritic granite itself is an inclusion in the dark igneous rock which forms the lower left-hand portion of the view is not shown, although this fact is clearly proved by the exposure in the field. It should further be noted that in this later diorite intrusion are inclusions of the older diorite. Although the similar color makes the two diorites difficult to distinguish in this view, several of the older diorite inclusions may be recognized at the extreme left below the porphyritic granite-diorite contact.

In addition to the granites and diorites there are several other types of rocks, the distribution and relations of which are not sufficiently clear to allow their differentiation. One of these rocks is a quartz porphyry with double terminated quartz crystals and plagioclase as phenocrysts in a ground mass of quartz and orthoclase in a micropegmatitic intergrowth. Accessory green hornblende, apatite, and magnetite with secondary kaolin, muscovite and chlorite were also present. This type of rock was found particularly in the hills south of camp C13 in the divide between the Kwiniuk and the Etchepuk.

Another unusual type of rock forms a large area in the Kwiniuk divide south of camp C13, extending westward an undetermined distance and southward to beyond camp C14. It is dark colored, with lath-shaped phenocrysts an inch or more in length of orthoclase feldspar. The groundmass is composed of orthoclase, albite, oligoclase, green hornblende, ægirine augite, and biotite, with accessory titanite in great abundance, and some apatite. Usually the pyroxene forms cores around which amphibole has been developed, probably by the alteration of the pyroxene. The absence of quartz and the high soda content distinguish this rock from the others already described.

A. INCLUSIONS, EAST COAST OF DARBY PENINSULA.



B. VENATION IN LIMESTONE, EAST COAST OF DARBY PENINSULA.

Another unusual type of igneous rocks was found on the hill about three-fourths of a mile north of camp C22 on a branch of Kachauik Creek. It is rather closely associated with rocks of the fine-grained granite type, but the precise relations are not known. It is a light-colored fine-grained rock with a few scattered phenocrysts of nepheline and sanidine. In the ground mass, which is very fine-grained, are albite, nepheline, sanidine, ægirine augite, fluorite, eudialyte, riebekite, and biotite. The high soda content suggests correlation with the other soda-rich rock previously described, which was also wanting in quartz.

Rocks similar to the Darby range intrusives, with the exception of the last three phases, have been found in the pebbles of the Cretaceous conglomerate, and no hesitation is felt in ascribing them to an age prior to the Cretaceous. It is also evident from the studies in the field that all of these rocks cut the Paleozoic series and have not been dynamically metamorphosed to any marked extent. That there have been several periods of intrusive activity is shown by the relations of the diorites and porphyritic granites described on page 66. Whether, however, these periods were separated by any considerable time interval or whether they really mark only one major period of intrusive activity has not been determined.

Few new facts of importance have been added to those already published by Moffit concerning the igneous rocks of the Kiwalik-Buckland divide. According to this geologist [a]—

> Much the larger part of the undissected mass which forms the divide between the drainages of the Kiwalik and the Buckland Rivers, and contains the highest elevations of the northeastern part of the peninsula, is made up of light-colored granular rocks and andesites associated especially toward the outer portions of the area with basalts and diabases.
>
> In crossing the main part of the mass from the westward after leaving the highly metamorphic rocks of the Kiwalik Valley one meets first with basic rocks of the basaltic and diabasic type, followed by andesites which are well developed and form a large part of the ridge; finally, in the central portion of the complex, and forming a core for the whole, are discontinuous areas of more siliceous rocks, including a number of different varieties of granites, monzonites, and quartz diorites. Hornblende is the prevailing dark mineral of the granites, but at times biotite takes its place. By a decrease in the amount of quartz the granites approach syenites in composition, such phases being characterized by the abundance and larger size of orthoclase crystals, which usually show Carlsbad twinning and have a rough parallel arrangement with the small intervening spaces filled with hornblende, biotite, and a small amount of quartz. Titanite is abundant.
>
> An unusual and highly interesting type was observed in the most southerly area of the granular rocks. The hand specimens show a dark-gray rock, composed of abundant large tabular feldspar crystals with a small amount of dark-

[a] Moffit, F. H., The Fairhaven gold placers, Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 247, 1905, pp. 27–31.

greenish fine-grained filling. In thin section the rock is seen to consist of large crystals of orthoclase feldspar with a microscopic intergrowth of parallel plagioclase plates embedded in a groundmass of ægirine-augite, melanite, and small scattered plagioclase. The three last-named minerals fill spaces between the large orthoclase crystals, which are very subordinate in volume to the spaces occupied by the crystals themselves. Titanite and apatite are present, and a cloudy zeolitic decomposition product appears at times. The rock corresponds very closely in appearance and composition with the garnet-pyroxene maligniites, which Lawson has described, from Maligne River in Ontario.

The diorites present no unusual features. They are nearly always of a light-gray color and are sometimes porphyritic. The prevailing feldspar is plagioclase with zonal structure. Some quartz is always present and the dark mineral is usually hornblende, but at times biotite. In one or two instances a well-developed flow structure was seen in large blocks of the diorite which were cut by small granitic or aplitic dikes largely feldspar.

Monzonites intermediate in composition between granites and quartz diorites are frequent. Orthoclase and plagioclase predominate while hornblende, biotite, and quartz are present; also titanite, magnetite, apatite, and occasionally zircon. All the granular rocks of this region are abundantly supplied with titanite which may often be easily seen in the hand specimen and is very noticeable under the microscope.

Andesites are abundant in the Kiwalik-Buckland divide and are probably the surface representative of an igneous magma corresponding in composition to the deep-seated diorites and monzonites. As already stated, they occupy, where observed by the writer, a position intermediate between the basic rocks of the western side of the ridge and the central acid ones and form a large part of the watershed. They are of a dark-gray or greenish color and on an exposed surface have a spotted appearance due to the alteration of the feldspar phenocrysts. Both hornblende and pyroxene varieties were seen, the latter containing considerable olivine in addition to pyroxene and showing the secondary mineral iddingsite. Alteration of pyroxene to hornblende was also observed. The feldspar is a basic variety, labradorite or sometimes anorthite, giving as alteration products chlorite and epidote.

Andesite breccias were found at various localities.

Little can be added from the work of 1909 to these descriptions and, although it has been possible in a measure to extend the mapping of these rocks, the additional data are so clearly evident on the map that further description is not required, except to note that the extension south of the Koyuk is formed mainly of rocks of the effusive rather than of the intrusive type. It should also be pointed out that whereas the intrusive rocks, which form the core of the Kiwalik-Buckland divide, are in all respects similar to the igneous rocks in the Darby Range, the effusive rocks which occur along the flanks have no recognized representative in the latter mountains.

The igneous rocks of the Bendeleben Mountains so far studied belong mainly to the group of granites, and, although here and there these rocks show gneissic phases, it is believed that, as a group, they are essentially contemporaneous and are later than the post-Paleozoic deformation. Lithologically the granites are indistinguishable from

the granites of the Darby or Buckland-Kiwalik ranges, and it is assumed that such close similarity could not have occurred unless all these rocks had been derived from essentially the same magma at nearly the same time. It is on the basis of this assumption that the pre-Cretaceous age of the granite masses in the Bendeleben Mountains is postulated.

In the Bendeleben Mountains the geologic mapping is extremely conventionalized and the reader should regard this part of the map as suggesting the kind of geology probably to be expected rather than as a faithful portrayal of the actual areal distribution of the different types of rock. As mapped, however, this area serves to bring out the fact that there are numerous large bodies of igneous rock, in places many miles in diameter, and also that there is a most complex network of small dikes and sills, many of which are from a few inches to a few feet wide. The lithology and mineralogy of the two types, however, do not materially differ. Some of the small sills and dikes have as coarse texture as the more central parts of the larger masses. Both modes of occurrence are typically quartz-feldspar granites with some dark silicates and various accessory minerals. Even in the gneissic phases, Collier[a] states the structure must either be original or else the whole rock has recrystallized, for the microscopic examination shows little, if any, evidence of distortion or dynamic movement. In other places it is evident that the apparent gneissic structure is due to the replacement of adjacent schists, some of which are so thoroughly saturated by the igneous rock that much of the original character has been destroyed.

The contacts between the granites and the schists, however, are not always vague and ill defined, but in places are sharp and clear-cut. These differences are probably to be explained by the variations in composition of the wall rocks and also by the different depths of burial of the schists when the intrusions took place.

Associated with the normal granites are a few rocks of pegmatitic and aplitic phases which seem to have marked the later or closing stages of the intrusive period. In the pegmatities tourmaline is in places an important accessory mineral. One such pegmatite in particular was noted on Birch Creek near the pass to the head of Niukluk River. Mica in plates sometimes 6 inches or more in diameter is found in the pegmatites. A locality where particularly large mica plates have been reported is near Oregon Creek, a tributary of Fish River heading on the south slopes of the Bendeleben Mountains, and some attempts have been made to develop a commercial deposit.

At a few places dark basic dikes have been reported cutting the granites. Whether these belong to the pre-Cretaceous igneous rocks

[a] Collier, A. J., and others, The gold placers of parts of Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 328, 1908, p. 104.

similar to the latest dioritic intrusion noted in the Darby range or whether they are post-Cretaceous is not known. They form relatively narrow dikes and occupy such small areas in the Bendeleben Mountains and so little is known about them that they will not be treated further in this report.

POST-CRETACEOUS IGNEOUS ROCKS.

Later than the deposition of Cretaceous sediments, intrusive and extrusive igneous rocks have been formed. As has already been noted, the main areas of the latter are in the Yukon and Koyuk basins and the only area of the intrusive rocks studied is in the lower part of the Ungalik Valley.

INTRUSIVE ROCKS.

Christmas Mountain, east of the lower part of Ungalik River, is the only center of post-Cretaceous intrusion noted. This prominent landmark is formed of an igneous complex, the relations of the various members being uncertain. The series of rocks grade according to texture from augite andesite to augite diorite. The main mass of the mountain is of the more granular type, in the coarsest phases having crystals up to 3 millimeters in diameter. This coarse phase contains abundant plagioclase, which has been determined to be albite, andesine, and labradorite. Augite, biotite, and olivine are also present as important constituents. Among the accessory minerals are magnetite and apatite, the latter being notably pleochroic. Secondary biotite, chlorite, sericite, and serpentine have also been recognized in this section.

Associated with the diorites in the western part of the area, probably in the form of a dike, is a porphyritic rock composed of orthoclase, plagioclase, biotite, and augite as the essential constituents, and with pyrite and calcite as accessory or secondary minerals. The phenocrysts in this rock are mainly feldspar, but a few are of light-green pyroxene.

The clearest evidence concerning the age of these rocks is afforded by exposures along the Ungalik, near camp A16, where dikes of essentially similar composition are found cutting the Ungalik conglomerate. Subsequent faulting has dislocated the dikes, but the amount of displacement indicated is not more than a few yards. Thin sections of specimens from these dikes show a light-colored porphyritic rock with phenocrysts of oligoclase and a monoclinic amphibole. In the main the ground mass has a trachytic texture and is composed largely of oligoclase and albite, with accessory apatite. Calcite, quartz, magnetite, kaolin, muscovite, and limonite, all probably secondary, were recognized. The limonite is in more or less rectangular patches, which points to its having been derived from

the alteration of ferromagnesian minerals originally in this rock. At Bonanza Creek an intrusion of similar character cutting the black slates was found.

On the Shaktolik, at camp A12, a fine-grained quartz porphyry was recognized in the float, but the fragments were well rounded, as though they had been carried far, and there is no clue as to where the rock outcrops. The presence of this float, however, strongly points to the conclusion that it is from an intrusive later than the Cretaceous sediments. It is probable that a more extensive exploration of this region would show intrusive centers like that of Christmas Mountain in other parts of the Nulato-Norton Bay region.

EFFUSIVE ROCKS.

Effusive rocks of late geologic age are found at many places. All of these flows are probably not contemporaneous, but when they are considered in a broad way it is believed that they mark essentially one period of volcanism. Thus, though many years may have elapsed between successive flows, even in the same district, there seems to be strong reason for correlating them together as one group and regarding them all in a geologic sense as synchronous. Although the rocks described in this section are essentially lavas or surface flows, there are, of course, here and there dikes by which these rocks were brought to the surface. All of these rocks are characteristically olivine basalts with a vesicular structure.

The eastern locality of the post-Cretaceous effusives, the one near the mouth of the Koyukuk, was first carefully described by Spurr,[a] from whose account the following quotation is taken:

> Megascopically (the rock) is dark green and amygdaloidal, the amygdules being partly quartz and calcite. Under the microscope a large vesicle whose walls are lined with serpentine is filled with barite in interlocking plates. Many small ovoidal vesicles are lined with serpentine and filled with chlorite. These are comparatively large phenocrysts which are now pseudomorphed by calcite and serpentine, but were probably originally olivine. The structure of the groundmass is as if originally composed of holocrystalline plagioclase and augite. The augite is abundant and not greatly decomposed but the plagioclase crystals have been replaced by pseudomorphs of some other mineral in part, at least, isotropic. The rock is evidently a true olivine basalt considerably altered and decomposed.

Although the lavas represented in the Yukon Valley to the south of this place have not been described in detail they probably belong to the same period of volcanic activity. Similar lavas have been reported by Collier along the river south of Kaltag, but their extent has not been determined and there are no published descriptions of

[a] Spurr, J. E., Geology of the Yukon gold district, Alaska: Eighteenth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 3, 1898, pp. 245–246.

the occurrences. It seems probable, however, from the wide-spread distribution throughout the lower part of the Yukon basin of rocks of this same lithologic character that they must have formed extensive sheets.

Along the eastern border of Norton Bay volcanic rocks of a relatively recent age have been reported at many places. Within the region covered by this report two areas of vesicular lavas have been orally reported to the writers by Mr. J. T. Watkins, of the Coast and Geodetic Survey. These two areas are the Reindeer Hills and Besboro Island. No collections were made, but the description of the rocks clearly points to the conclusion that they are both to be included within this group. They probably mark a connecting link between the well-known volcanic flows of St. Michael on the south and of the Koyuk Valley on the north.

Concerning the lavas along the Koyuk, Mendenhall says:[a]

> The lava is a green, gray, or black rock, the color depending in part upon its freshness. It is compact or vesicular and usually porphyritic, olivine being the most conspicuous of the phenocrysts, although plagioclase is recognizable megascopically in some instances. Sometimes the vesicles are filled with opal; more frequently they are without filling. The rock varies in texture, having sometimes a very glassy groundmass and in other cases showing a coarse, well-defined, interstitial arrangement with almost no glass. * * * The basalt beds have not been disturbed since they were poured out. They are horizontal wherever their attitude is determinable and overlie all the other rocks. * * *

Moffit, who studied portions of the large lava sheet occupying the northwestern corner of the mapped area, as well as numerous other flows in contiguous areas to the north, writes as follows concerning these basalts:[b]

> In color the lavas are dark gray, green, or nearly black. They are usually very cellular or even spongy in appearance, but at times compact and without the amygdaloidal cavities. Outcrops of the older lavas in place are not plentiful, and the edges of the sheets where cut through by streams are marked by tumbled heaps of blocks resulting from the jointed columnar structure of the lava. In a few places they form flat-topped hills or mesas from 20 to 50 feet high, very conspicuous when viewed from a distance, and evidently the remains of partly eroded sheets. Agglomerate breccias were observed at several points. A study of the numerous specimens collected shows them to be made up of diabase and basalts, both rich in olivine. In the basalts, especially, olivine phenocrysts are abundant and very noticeable even in the hand specimens. Iddingsite is not infrequent as an alteration product of the olivine.
>
> That a succession of outbreaks of lava has taken place is shown in a number of places, but probably most plainly in the region about the head of Kuzitrin River, where positive evidence is afforded in the terraced condition of the different flows, three distinct benches occurring in one locality.

---

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 206.

[b] Moffit, F. H., The Fairhaven gold placers, Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 247, 1905, pp. 31, 32–33.

Observations made by Collier on Noxapaga River showed these more recent lavas overlying gravels which are cemented near the contact by indurated clays and contain pebbles of an older flow—conclusive evidence that considerable time must have elapsed between the first outbreak and the solidification of the flows just described. The source from which the recent basalts of Noxapaga and Kuzitrin rivers were discharged lies to the southwest of Lake Imuruk, this being shown by the scattered lava cones as well as by the direction of movement of the flows themselves.

On the upper part of Koyuk River a similar relation of basalts and gravels was observed by Mendenhall. He found on the truncated edges of the schist 5 feet of gravel made up of schist, vein quartz, and granite; this in turn was covered by an undisturbed horizontal sheet of olivine basalt, which has been but little affected by the erosive action of the stream since it came to rest and was, therefore, believed by him to be of Pleistocene age.

During the field season of 1909 little detailed study of the lavas was made, and although the areal distribution of this group of rocks has been extended in certain places the additions are mainly concerning details rather than essentials. It seems evident that in the main they occupy the lowlands of the period in which they were formed, so that a thorough understanding of the distribution of the lavas would indicate the former topography. It is probable that more extensive investigations might show that these basalts occupy a greater area than is shown on the maps. For instance, the lava area at the head of the Mukluktulik probably connected at one time with the lava areas represented to the north of the Koyuk west of Peace River, and if the exposures were better in the gently sloping spurs west of Kenwood Creek it is highly probable that remnants of this sheet might still be found overlying the undifferentiated schists and the Paleozoic rocks. This patch of lava is probably older than those very late effusives that overlie gravel deposits of recent date, but, as before stated, it is believed that they both belong to the same general geologic group and were poured out on the deformed and eroded surface of the Cretaceous and older rocks.

Another small area of recent effusive rocks was reported by Mendenhall in the hills near Grouse Creek, a tributary of the Tubutulik. It covers the contact of the granites and Paleozoic sediments. This fact strongly suggests that the contact, being a zone of weakness, had been topographically a lowland, in consequence of which the lava flowed into the depression and being thickest there had remained, whereas the thinner parts had been entirely eroded away. There is no direct evidence as to the direction from which this lava came, but as no near-by areas of similar rocks are known except to the north it is assumed that this is the direction from which they flowed, although it is realized that this is little more than a working hypothesis.

On Bear River west of Council a small area of recent lava has been reported and specimens of the rock have been examined. It is a

vesicular basalt similar in lithologic character to those from the Koyuk. There is probably only a small amount of the rock present, but little is known of the manner of occurrence or the areal relations.

VEINS.

Veins of different mineralogical character formed at different times and under different conditions have been noted at many places. They are abundant in the areas of metamorphic rocks, but are practically absent in the greater part of the area occupied by the Cretaceous sediments. Based on mineralogical composition there are two main types of vein filling; in one quartz predominates, in the other calcite. The former are of widespread distribution and are found in all the various kinds of rocks; the latter class, however, is almost entirely limited to the immediate vicinity of the limestone areas.

The veins in which calcite is the main filling are seldom extensive either horizontally or vertically. They appear to be formed usually as the result of shearing and infiltration of the calcite derived from the adjacent limestones. Plate XII, *B* (p. 66), shows a portion of the Paleozoic limestones on the east coast of Darby peninsula, where an intricate network of calcite veins forms a stockwork through the brecciated limestones. Although the veins are slightly more numerous in this view than in the majority of exposures, the arrangement and general characters are quite typical. Plate VIII, *A* (p. 46), already referred to, shows other calcite veins of the same general mode of occurrence near a greenstone intrusive. Some of these veins are undoubtedly younger than the intrusion of the greenstones, as they cut them or occupy joint planes in them, and it is believed that most of the veins were produced either during or subsequent to the deformation of the Paleozoic rocks.

Calcite is practically the only mineral found in the calcite veins. No sulphides or other metallic minerals have been noted in them, and they are consequently, in this region, of no economic importance.

At least two distinct series of quartz veins have been recognized in the region; in one the veins are much contorted and sheared, in the other crystalline quartz with characteristic comb structure is found. This difference in structure is to be explained by the difference in age of the two types. It seems evident that to have been crushed, sheared, and otherwise deformed the veins must have been in existence at the time of the post-Paleozoic deformation, whereas on the other hand the slightly sheared, relatively undisturbed character of the other group of quartz veins points to the fact that they were formed subsequent to that period. Although these two main groups have been recognized, it is almost certain that the older ones include veins of at least two different ages, one earlier than the Silurian and one later than the Carboniferous, but this point has not been definitely

settled and will be difficult to prove owing to the great amount of post-Paleozoic deformation.

So far as can be determined the content of both classes of quartz veins are nearly identical. Sulphide mineralization is usually absent and, although a few copper or iron stains are found at places, the larger part is formed of white quartz seldom even iron stained. Both classes in places carry small quantities of gold. This has been determined mainly by chemical means, for the gold is in the native state and is usually in too small particles to be recognized by the eye. Pieces of quartz from both the older and the younger quartz veins, however, have been seen in which gold was visible. Assays from different auriferous quartz veins have yielded widely varying values, but there is no evident difference between the quantity of gold carried in the two groups. Although the gold content of the older and the younger veins does not seem to be materially different, the fact that the older ones are more shattered and discontinuous renders them on the whole less adaptable to economic development than the younger veins.

Few of the contorted and sheared veins are more than a few inches in width and are usually lens-shaped. Here and there, however, much thicker lenses have been noted, and Mendenhall calls attention [a] to a conspicuous example a few miles north of Cheenik, which is 30 feet by 10 feet by 15 feet. It is described as compact and barren, and exhibiting a brilliant fracture. Other large lenses were seen in the Darby Range and in the Bendeleben Mountains, but they seem to hold no promise of economically valuable minerals. Mendenhall also notes a vein 6 feet wide striking north and south in the sea cliff 4 or 5 miles from Rocky Point, but in this vein the quartz was rusty, as though sulphides were originally present but had been decomposed.

The younger quartz veins are less sheared and shattered than the older veins already described. It should not be concluded, however, from this statement that they have not been subjected to deformation, for they are faulted and discontinuous. Probably like the older veins they may belong to more than one period of formation, but evidence concerning this point is not conclusive. The terms "younger" and "older" quartz veins are therefore to be regarded as purely relative, though in a broad way the former are pre-Paleozoic, whereas the latter are post-Paleozoic. Some of the younger quartz veins cut the pre-Cretaceous granites so that a clue to their age is afforded. No quartz veins have been found in the more recent olivine basalts, and thus the upper limit of their age is determined.

Like the older veins the more recent quartz veins are usually narrow and seldom can be traced for long distances. They are particu-

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 211.

larly numerous in the black quartzites and slates of the Paleozoic rocks and in that relation form an intricate network of veinlets, many of which are only a fraction of an inch in width. Sulphides, although on the whole relatively unimportant even in the later veins, are more abundant than in the older group. They are usually iron and copper pyrite, but galena, arsenopyrite, and stibnite are found. The latter minerals, however, where found in considerable quantities, as at Omilak and Bluff, are not associated with quartz veins but seem to fill fractures in the country rock.

Considering the metamorphic area as a whole, it may be stated that the mineralization is widespread, but that the veins are seldom individually continuous. The mineralization is more in the form of a stockwork or mineralized zone than in sharply defined single veins. Owing to this disseminated character of mineralization the localization of ore bodies is not pronounced, and it is believed that, if commercially valuable deposits are found, they will be more or less similar to the Juneau type of deposits.

Further consideration of the veins which have been prospected will be given in a later part of this report dealing with the economic geology of the region (pp. 127–136).

UNCONSOLIDATED DEPOSITS.

Unconsolidated deposits occur throughout the Nulato-Council region and are important because some of them contain economically valuable minerals. In the following section the distribution and general characters of the different types will be described, the economic features being left for separate treatment in the later chapter on the economic geology of the region. For this reason specific description of the different creek gravels will be omitted here and the main attention will be directed to the more general features of these deposits.

Broadly considered, the unconsolidated deposits may be divided into two classes; in one class the material is practically unsorted, whereas in the other the material has been transported, mainly by water, and deposited at some distance from the place where the waste originated. To the first class belong the talus of frost-riven material and hillside waste covering the surface of most of the upland region; to the second class belong the gravels of various origins and also, for the purposes of this paper, the glacial deposits. There are gradational phases between the two classes, but the main difference on which emphasis is placed is that the latter are in the main water sorted, whereas the former are not.

UNSORTED DEPOSITS.

As has already been stated, the main characteristic of this group of deposits is that they have been little, if at all, affected by running

water. Some sorting has, of course, been effected by the gravitative, downhill creep of the material, but this is relatively unimportant. These deposits are, therefore, normally made up of angular material derived from the ledges directly up the slope from the place where they are formed, or they are the frost-shattered fragments of the country rock immediately beneath the surface.

Deposits of this sort are particularly characteristic of the uplands, where the strong temperature changes allow rapid disintegration of the underlying rock. Plate XI, *B* (p. 58), shows a typical view of this sort of deposit in the granite area north of the Kwiniuk, and might be duplicated by pictures from all parts of the field. Of course the waste is not always as coarse as is shown in this view, for the size of the fragments depends upon the physical features of the rocks from which the material was derived. Therefore, in the sandstone shale regions the float is in smaller pieces than in the places where the bedrock is granite.

When the disintegration takes place on a hillside, as shown in the plate (XI, *B*), instead of on top of a hill, the waste as it is formed spreads down the slope and forms a mantle of rock fragments similar to that shown on the hillsides across the valley in Plate III, *A* (p. 22). The foreground of this view shows the general character of this waste sheet on the near side of the valley. Waste sheets of this sort are usually coarser and thinner toward the ridge and become gradually finer and thicker toward the valley floor.

The deposits of unsorted rock waste are so universal that if they were shown on the geologic map they would obscure all the other patterns; hence they have not been represented. This course is further justified by the fact that they have no economic value and are therefore unimportant to the present study. If, then, the reader desires to reproduce the surface features of the Nulato-Council region precisely it would be necessary to imagine practically all of the area not occupied by gravels as covered by the unsorted deposits, except here and there where bedrock outcrops. Such ledges, however, probably do not form one per cent of the entire area.

DEPOSITS OF TRANSPORTED MATERIAL.

The deposits of transported material may be divided into marine deposits, nonmarine water-laid deposits, and glacial deposits. Typical examples of each of these three classes have been recognized in the field, but the gradations between the different classes and the absence of detailed investigations prevent the separation of the three groups on the map. The marine and the nonmarine water-laid deposits show examples of deposits formed at more than one time, so that these two are further divisible into older and

younger gravels. The glacial deposits have not been so thoroughly studied as the others and only one division has been recognized. It is by no means improbable that with further investigation these deposits also might be subdivided. It should be noted that the terms "older" and "younger" refer to the relative age within the group and that it by no means follows that one of the older marine deposits is equivalent in time of formation to a particular example of an older deposit of nonmarine water-laid gravels. Such refined correlations must await future investigation. Broadly speaking, however, the group of older marine sediments are equivalent in age to the group of older nonmarine water-laid deposits.

MARINE GRAVELS.

Lithologically the younger marine gravels present great diversity depending in large measure upon the material of which the shore line is composed. The topography also exercises a considerable influence on the physical characters, for in the bights between headlands the materials are fine-grained, whereas near the promontories bowlders and coarse gravels predominate. Near the mouths of the larger streams the mixture of fluviatile and marine deposits is so complex that it is impossible to separate the two. On the present shore line from the mouth of the Koyuk to Cheenik the marine gravels present a great diversity, ranging from fine muds to bowlders 10 feet or more in diameter. Here and there sea stacks interrupt the continuity of the gravels so that the floor on which the present deposition is taking place is irregular. In the sheltered stretches of the coast enormous quantities of drift wood, probably brought down by the Yukon, are accumulating and are being buried as part of the marine deposits. Marine shells, except near the mouth of the larger streams, are not abundant in the deposits being formed at the present time. Garnet and magnetite sand so common along the beach from Topkok westward is almost entirely absent in the eastern part of the coast line.

Marine deposits now somewhat elevated above the position in which they were laid down and consequently belonging to the class of older gravels have been found at many places. These deposits are perhaps best shown by the coastal plain east of Norton Bay north of the Reindeer Hills. Few sections of these gravels have been made, so that their depth and character are not well known. A prospect hole near the mouth of the Ungalik was sunk nearly 100 feet without reaching bed rock. The fact, however, that bed rock outcrops at Island Point only a few miles away shows that the floor on which these sediments have been deposited is uneven.

On the east coast of Darby Peninsula old sea caves 20 to 30 feet above present sea level were recognized at a number of places and are shown in Plates III, *B* (p. 22), and XIII, *B* (p. 66), already described.

Mendenhall also observed evidence of former higher stands of the sea, for he says,[a] "On the west shore of Golofnin Bay raised gravels were observed capping the schistose bluffs at Rocky Point. From this point westward evidence of uplift is increasingly abundant and consists of terraces, high gravels, and superposed streams." From this evidence it follows that at a time not remote geologically the sea stood in places at least 25 feet above its present position, so that considerable areas now dry land were formerly covered by the sea. Therefore marine gravels are to be expected inland from the present shore and have been recognized at many places. Some of these deposits have, however, been subsequently reworked by the streams, so that their marine characters have been obliterated. There is but little question that parts of the gravel deposits at the head of Golofnin Bay and in the bight between the Miniatulik and Isaacs Point are of marine origin, but the transition between the evident marine material and the equally evident fluviatile gravels is so gradual that no line of separation can be drawn without numerous sections not now available.

Not only are there evidences of former higher levels of the sea, but at Bluff a beach line is developed several feet below the present sea level so that at an earlier time the marine gravels did not extend inland so far as they now do. This emphasizes the point that the various members of the unconsolidated marine deposits are not of the same age, but that the sea level has oscillated considerably during a long period.

RIVER GRAVELS.

Every stream in the region is forming gravel deposits and examples of this class are abundantly represented. Owing to the scale of the map, however, only the larger deposits have been shown, so that in reading the map this fact should be constantly borne in mind and it should also be remembered that even in the headwater branches of the smallest streams water-transported gravels are found. As has already been pointed out the creek gravels may be divided into an older and a younger group. These two may so grade into each other that no sharp line of demarcation can be drawn. In this report, however, the lower bench gravels up to 10 or 20 feet above the stream are considered as belonging to the younger group.

The lithologic character of the stream gravels depends very largely on the kind of rocks exposed in the valley in which they occur. Thus in the case of a small stream flowing in a valley carved in only one kind of rock the pebbles are entirely of this kind of rock, whereas in the case of the larger streams, such, for instance, as the Yukon, the

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 210.

gravels have been derived from a great variety of different rocks outcropping within the basin and show a great diversity of lithologic character. So far as has been determined almost all of the younger stream gravels are of local origin; that is, have been formed in the valleys in which they now occur. This point, however, requires considerable additional study, for similarity of rock types and the large area covered are likely to give an appearance of simplicity not justified by more searching examination. An exception to this rule is afforded by the gravels of Melsing Creek, where granite bowlders derived from the Bendeleben Mountains are intimately associated with gravels of distinctly local origin.

On the smaller streams the thickness of the gravel is only a few feet, but on the larger streams, especially those that have undergone a complex geologic history, the gravels may be more than 100 feet thick. These deeper gravels undoubtedly belong, in part, to the older ones, but as they grade directly into the present creek gravels differentiation can not be made here, and they will be described at this place. On Mystery Creek, midway between its junction with the Niukluk and the point where it leaves the hills, a shaft penetrated gravels to a depth of 102 feet. The gravels were but slightly waterworn and contained small shells in a perfect state of preservation. Bearing on this same question is the fact that in 1906 a hole was sunk midway between Bear and Fox Creeks west of Council in a bench deposit about 50 feet above the river. This drill hole reached a depth of 250 feet, all this distance being in gravel. Such a depth would make the bottom of the hole at least 50 feet below sea level. As bedrock outcrops within 2 to 3 miles of this place, this thick deposit of gravels strongly suggests the probability of having been formed by an earlier stream which carved its channel when the land stood relatively higher with respect to the sea than it does now.

Another deep gravel deposit has been located in the hills west of the Koyuk near camp B16. At this place a shaft 192 feet deep was sunk all the way through well-rounded gravels. The bottom of the deposit is a considerable distance below sea level and points to a change in respect to sea level since the channel was carved. This channel was probably due to the effusion of some of the post-Cretaceous lavas which obstructed a former stream course, but the fact that the bottom of the channel is far below sea level can be explained only by assuming that since it was formed the region has been relatively depressed. A further description of this deposit is given on pages 110–113.

Although practically nothing is known of the depth of bedrock in the bottom of the Yukon Valley, there are many things which lead to the conclusion that the gravel filling may in places be very thick. This is also true of the Koyukuk and of the lower parts of the

Kateel, the Gisasa, and other large tributaries. It is possible that these deeper gravels are not solely of fluviatile origin, but data are too few to permit a final analysis of the problem.

In addition to the gravels known to belong to an older group, because they underlie the present stream gravels, there are also older gravels whose age is determined by the fact that the stream has cut its valley down into them. In other words, there are bench deposits which mark either a relative uplift of the land or a change in the erosive power of the streams in the recent past. In elevation above the adjacent streams the benches range from only a few feet to several score feet, the higher, of course, being more obliterated by having been exposed to erosin a longer time than the lower.

Russell,[a] who ascended the Yukon in 1890, called attention to certain obscure indications of terraces or sea cliffs at an elevation of 1,500 or 2,000 feet on a number of the hills below Nulato. In traversing these ridges in 1909 the party found no traces of gravel at such high elevations, and it is believed that the appearance of nearly horizontal benches is due to the beveling of the stratified rocks of the Cretaceous, which outcrop in these hills. Lower down, however, at an elevation of about 50 feet above the river, silts and sands form pronounced benches. Although these deposits have not been studied in detail, their position and topographic expression suggest that they mark former river-laid gravels and sands subsequently dissected by the relative down cutting of the present river.

Bench gravels are found in the Shaktolik Valley and were especially noted near camp A10, where a broadly open older valley floor covered with gravels has been dissected by the narrow rock-walled canyon of the present stream. Much of this bench gravel is heavily iron stained. This feature was also noted at several places farther downstream near camp A13. From the topographic similarity it is probable that bench deposits corresponding to those noted on the Shaktolik occur also in the Gisasa and Kateel valleys, but they were not searched for.

In southeastern Seward Peninsula bench gravels are by no means uncommon along the lower slopes of many of the valleys. The deep holes on Alameda Creek and on the Niukluk were started to explore some of these bench deposits and part of the other gravels belonging to this class, but as they grade insensibly into the lower gravels they have been described with the older ones. There are, however, many places, as, for instance, along Ophir Creek, in the Council region, where bench gravels only a few feet thick have been found. Some of these are auriferous and some are not.

[a] Russell, I. C., Notes on the surface geology of Alaska: Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 1, p. 139.

The geologic significance of the finding of bench deposits at different elevations widely distributed throughout the entire Nulato-Council region is that there have been frequent oscillations of the streams with respect to sea level. These oscillations may have been due in part to climatic changes, but in part they are to be accounted for only by assuming movements of the land with respect to the sea. Although the presence of benches above the streams at the present time shows that there has been an uplift of the land, the fact that some of the larger streams have their rock-cut floors below sea level shows that the sum of the recent upward movements indicated is not at present equal to the sum of the downward movements in the recent past.

A peculiar type of gravel deposit, in part fluviatile in origin, but probably also produced by other agencies, is found in the basin lowlands, such as Death Valley and the Fish River lowland north of the gorge. Sections in these basins have not been made, and little can be determined from the examination of their surficial aspects. Mendenhall states [a] that the Fish River lowland is filled with deposits, "coarse near the borders and fine near the center of the basin. The depth of this filling is purely conjectural, but presumably is not great. No islands of bedrock exist within it, as far as known, but sand and gravel prominences, rising in some instances 30 or 40 feet above the general level, are abundant over it, and are interpreted as remnants of a slightly higher level generally destroyed by the meanderings of the stream." Brooks [b] attributed the origin of these basins to warpings of the crust, whereby depressions were formed, which have been subsequently filled. So long as the topography of the floor on which the gravels rest has not been determined, it seems unsafe to attempt an explanation of their origin. The fact, however, that the uplands are so abruptly cut off by the lowland suggests that the basin is mainly due to erosion rather than to deformation. The question of the origin of the basin is not important in this discussion, for under either view the flats are believed to have been formed by the filling of a depression either by fluviatile or lacustrine deposits.

Owing to the high northern latitude, many of the deposits are permanently frozen, and as the presence or absence of frost in the ground has an important effect upon mining enterprises a general statement of the distribution of the ground ice may be made. Generally the older gravels are permanently frozen and some of the bench deposits contain beds of clear ice in places a score or more feet thick. So far as is known, the presence or absence of trees on the gravels is no sure indication that the ground is thawed, for many

[a] Mendenhall, op. cit., p. 207.

[b] Brooks, A. H., The geography and geology of Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 45, 1906, p. 282.

instances are known of trees of large size growing on frozen ground. For instance, at Nulato, as Russell[a] states, a well 25 feet deep went through clay and sand beds, which were frozen solid with the exception of certain dry sandy layers, and yet spruce was abundant in the neighborhood before it was cut off. Although most of the older gravel deposits are frozen, those near the present streams are usually thawed. Whether this condition is due to the better drainage of the present stream gravels which prevents the formation of ice is not known. There is a strong suggestion, however, that the frozen condition is due to past climatic controls and is in a way an inheritance rather than a process now in progress. This possibility receives some support from the distribution of ground ice in the marine gravels. In the present beach deposits permanent frost is unknown, whereas in the older ones it is almost universally present.

GLACIAL DEPOSITS.

Glacial deposits are limited to the mountain regions, and there is strong reason for believing that the Nulato-Council region has not been covered by a large ice sheet in sufficiently recent time to have had any effect on the general topography or on the unconsolidated deposits. Near the Bendeleben and Darby highlands, however, there are indisputable evidences of former valley glaciers of the alpine type. Deposits formed by this agency are of three kinds—in one the materials are unsorted and are dumped in irregular heaps essentially as they were deposited when the ice melted away; in another the glaciers obstructed the normal drainage and thus formed lakes on which ice-rafted bowlders were transported and deposited; in the third the morainic material was transported away from the melting ice by water and so, although originating through glacial action, the present form of the deposits is characteristic of stream deposition.

A particularly clear example of the unsorted morainic material has been reported by Henshaw in the Pargon River valley. At the edge of the mountains where the stream debouches into the Fish River lowland a long spur on the east side of the valley marks the margin of a former glacier. West of this stream, near the same place, the low divide between the Pargon and Ophir Creek is also formed of morainic material, with small kettle holes or depressions irregularly distributed over its surface. Farther up Pargon River a moraine from McKelvie Creek extends out into the main valley and shows characteristic morainic topography. This same condition is also true of Helen, Decatur, and many of the other tributary creeks. The absence of frontal moraines marking the recessional stages of the main glacier is probably to be explained by assuming that the

[a] Russell, I. C., op. cit., p. 129.

material was washed away by the water from the melting ice and not allowed to accumulate. According to this interpretation, part of the gravels of the Fish River lowland and of Pargon River are of glacio-fluviatile origin. The presence of granite bowlders in the gravels of Melsing Creek is probably due to this period of glacio-fluviatile activity when the ice stood sufficiently far south to allow a discharge from its front across the low divide at the head of Melsing and Ready Bullion creeks.

In the upper Niukluk Valley, near Mount Bendeleben, glacial deposits were observed, in 1908, on both the north and the south sides of the range. Moraines are also reported on Baker Creek and Oregon Creek, so that glacial phenomena are observable throughout the Bendeleben Mountains; but the consensus of opinion by all observers is that these glaciers were never very extensive.

Around the higher parts of the Darby Range there are also strong evidences of local glaciation in the past. Marginal moraines, however, have not been recognized beyond the front of the hills and it is probable that they were not deposited. Whether their absence means that they were not allowed to accumulate because of the rapid removal of débris by the water flowing from the front of the glaciers or whether the ice did not extend beyond the front of the mountains has not been determined.

Near camp C13, where the branch of the Etchepuk makes an abrupt angular turn from a southwest to a northwest course, there is abundant evidence of a morainic ridge which is probably responsible in part for the sharp bend in the stream. Although there is no clear proof of the conclusion, it is believed that at one time there may have been a discharge of this branch by way of the Kwiniuk basin. Although the evidence is conflicting, there is a possibility that the Fish River lowland also may be due to glaciation, but this interpretation requires much more detailed investigation and is advanced with many reservations.

That glaciation has considerably modified the topography within parts of the Darby Range by the deposits of glacio-fluviatile material is well shown by the ridges south of camp C11, which form part of the Etchepuk divide. These ridges are mainly due to the work of glaciers that occupied the valleys on either side, but the presence of water-worn cobbles intimately associated with angular ice-transported débris shows that both agencies were operative in the deposition of the material. From the topography it seems probable that this morainic deposit accumulated, as is indicated in fig. 7, where the tongues of ice are represented by CC, with nunataks, or islands of the underlying rocks (AA), separated by low saddles now filled with moraines (BB). The elevation of the top of the morainic material above the floor of the present stream is about 400 feet. East

of this point and farther up the ridge there is no evidence of glacial deposits, and bare rock ledges outcrop.

All of these examples of glaciation have been taken from the west side of the range, the one to which the main attention of the party of 1909 was paid. Apparently glaciation is more notable on this side than on the eastern, for Mendenhall says:[a] "Many of the higher areas have not been examined in detail and it is possible that small local glaciers may have existed in the heads of some of the valleys, but no evidence of their existence was gathered during the summer, and views into the mountains from levels but little below their highest points revealed no forms suggestive of ice work."

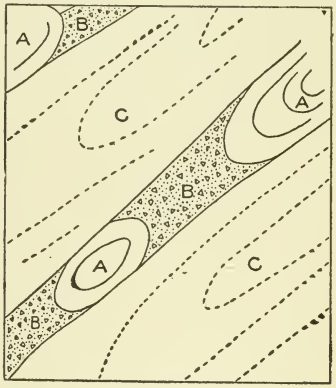


FIGURE 7.—Diagram showing relations of glacial material on Etchepuk divide. (A, Rocky knobs. B, marginal glacial deposits. C, Valley glaciers.)

AGE OF UNCONSOLIDATED DEPOSITS.

A consideration of the unconsolidated deposits as a whole indicates a great diversity of age, represented by the different types. It is not possible as yet to correlate these various deposits definitely, but in a broad way they are more or less closely related; the larger part are Quaternary, but probably none are older than the upper Tertiary. From that as the maximum age they grade down to the present day as the minimum. Assuming that the period of maximum glaciation was practically contemporaneous in the northern hemisphere, the glacial deposits already noted may be regarded as Pleistocene. Certain bench deposits contain mastodon and mammoth bones, which show that they, too, may have been deposited during Pleistocene time. Gravels containing bones of this age have been reported in the Buckland Valley, near Candle, on Ophir Creek, and along the Inglutalik, where they are numerous.

From the accounts of Henshaw, the well-recognized moraine, at the point where the Pargon River leaves the hills, has been deposited on top of the gravels of the Fish River lowland. Whether this means that all these gravels are older than the glaciation or whether the recognized moraine may only be one of the recessional stands of the ice after a much farther southward advance has not been determined, so that no statement of the age of the two types of gravel can be made. From the meager evidence, however, it seems probable that these gravel-plain deposits are in part contemporaneous with the

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 208.

glacial deposits and in part older than the period when the ice stood at the point where Pargon River leaves the hills.

Concerning the age of the marine gravels there is considerable uncertainty. Direct observations in this actual area reveal no evidence, but from analogy with better-known parts of the peninsula there are grounds for regarding them in part, at least, as late Tertiary. The evidence bearing on this point is as follows: In the coastal plain near Nome, which topographically resembles the coastal plain east of Norton Bay, fossils which, according to Dall, are of Tertiary age have been found; furthermore, glacially striated rocks at Nome in the upper part of the deposit indicate that this part was contemporaneous with the period of glaciation. In other words, the lower part of the coastal-plain deposits may be Tertiary and the upper part Pleistocene, and perhaps still more recent gravels rest on top, deposited as the former sea bottom emerged from the water and took on its present relation to sea level. As has been already pointed out, however, a long time is required for the various oscillations of the coast, so that the marine deposits have a considerable range in age.

STRUCTURAL GEOLOGY.

From the foregoing description of the various rocks in the Nulato-Council region it is evident that the structures they present are complex. Already the facts have been brought out that there are a group of metamorphic rocks which were dynamically deformed before the laying down of the Cretaceous sediments, that the Cretaceous rocks have themselves been folded and deformed, and that, latest of all, there have been undeformed lava flows and gravel deposits. It is thus evident that at least two periods of mountain building and deformation have affected the older rocks, and that their present distribution and characters are the resultants of these perhaps opposed actions. These actions have produced enormous dislocation and folding, which can only be vaguely realized and which can not be represented in section except so diagrammatically as to obscure the facts. Furthermore, precise details of complex structure can not be gained on an exploratory survey. It has seemed best, therefore, not to draw cross sections with the appearance of finality, but rather to call attention to the geologic maps (Pls. V and VI, in pocket), from which sections may be constructed. In this way the hypothetical condition will be more clearly discriminated from the actual facts.

The large scale structural features of the region are folds and faults. Many examples of each were observed in the field, and many others must be assumed in order to explain the areal distribution of the various rock groups. In the areas of metamorphic rocks the

structure seemed to be simple in places where outcrops were scarce, but was found to be very complex in places where outcrops were frequent or continuous, as, for example, along the seacoast of the Darby peninsula; profound disturbance alone could explain the facts there revealed. In the areas of post-metamorphic rocks, on the other hand, the structures, although deformed, showed larger scale and consequently less complex relations. For this reason the two areas may be treated more or less independently.

The folds and faults produced by the post-Cretaceous deformation are most strongly marked in the Nulato-Norton Bay region. Here the predominant structure trends northeast-southwest and is very pronounced. This structure has had a marked effect upon the

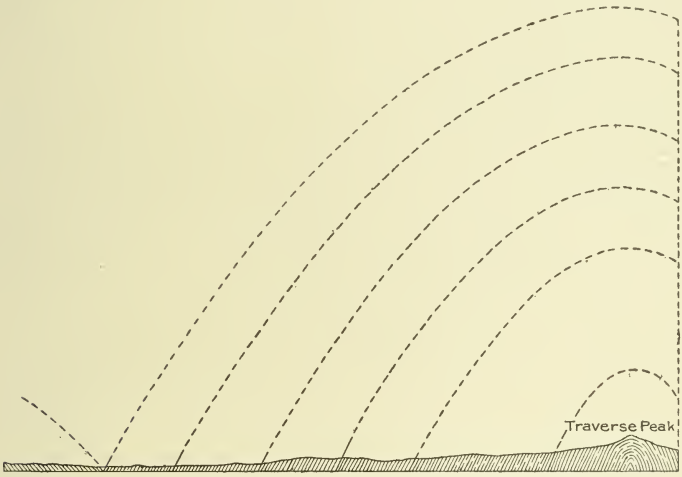


FIGURE 8.—Diagrammatic section west of Traverse Peak.

distribution of the topographic features, such as ridges and valleys, which are dominantly parallel to this direction. Although the trend of the ridges is undoubtedly due to the structure, the surface in no way corresponds to the surface of the old folded structure; for, although some of the ridges are anticlinal, many are synclinal. Such a condition, of course, would not be produced unless long-continued erosion had dissected the hills. In the part of the divide between the Yukon and the Norton Bay drainage near Traverse Peak the structure is distinctly anticlinal, but the present surface of the hills must be many thousand feet below the former surface. Figure 8 shows in diagrammatic fashion the observations made eastward from near the forks of the Inglutalik, 2 miles below camp B8, to the top of Traverse Peak. The observed dips are indicated by the heavy lines, whereas the implied consequences are shown by dotted lines. In this

figure the vertical height of the structure is undoubtedly somewhat too great, for faults of greater or less displacement are to be expected. While, therefore, the diagram is not to be taken too literally, it indicates that an enormous cover has been removed; hence the divide is an erosional rather than a constructional feature. In this connection, it should be pointed out that the thickness of the Shaktolik group, indicated in this diagram, can not be taken as indicating the total thickness of the cover, for the top of the group is not exposed near the forks of the creek in the bowl of the syncline, and there is no evidence as to the distance to the upper surface of the group that has been removed by erosion.

Considered in a broad way the region from the Buckland-Kiwalik divide eastward to the Kaiyuh Hills is synclinal, the folding having a general northeast-southwest trend. It is complicated by numerous folds and faults, so that when examined in detail its larger features become obscured, and in general it shows a rim of the oldest Cretaceous rocks near the margins, with younger rocks toward the center of the synclinorium. In the central part of the area the post-Cretaceous deformation has been expressed mainly by folding, but toward the western part of the region, at least, faults of enormous throw seem to have resulted. This fact is clearly shown by the relation of the Ungalik conglomerate near the Tubutulik. This block, isolated from the rest of the Cretaceous area by a belt of schistose rocks of Paleozoic age or older, appears as a down-faulted remnant of the former extension of the Ungalik conglomerate of the East Fork of Koyuk River. So also the Cretaceous area west of the mouth of the Koyuk seems to be an inset block of sandstone dropped down so far that the conglomerate which should underlie it is not exposed. The absence of the conglomerate at this place shows conclusively that the beds could not have been folded into their present condition, but must have been inset by faulting. No estimate of the displacement represented by this fault was obtained, but it was at least many hundred feet and was possibly several thousand feet.

As suggested in the preceding paragraph, it is believed that many if not most of the larger faults in the area dominantly occupied by the Cretaceous rocks were produced at the same general period as the folding in the central part of the region. Folds passing into faults are well-known phenomena, and it seems reasonable that where the deformation was greatest the beds would be more apt to rupture and produce faults. That the regions outside of the great Cretaceous area were the most uplifted is indicated by the fact that sediments of this age have been removed by erosion more extensively than in the Nulato-Norton Bay region. It is not believed that the absence of Cretaceous rocks over much of the area of metamorphic rocks which form the rim of the present basin is owing to their not having been

originally deposited there. The reason for this belief rests on the inset blocks on the Tubutulik and at the Ramparts of the Yukon as well as at many of the less well known localities. It seems that these blocks point conclusively to a former much greater extension of this rock system, which has been gradually decreased as erosion removed the higer parts and exposed the underlying rocks. As to the position of the former shore line of the maximum extent of the Cretaceous sea there is no known evidence, and it is doubtful whether proof can be obtained, as erosion has so extensively removed the traces.

To return to the faults in the Cretaceous area—it has been suggested that many of the larger faults have been the result of the post-Cretaceous deformation, and the reasons for this belief have been stated. Although the validity of this argument may be questioned, as it rests so much on hypothesis, there can be no doubt that certain faults belong to this period. Numerous examples were observed along Shaktolik River where closely appressed folds have been broken and faults have been produced by the deforming forces. It is a notable fact well shown by the excellent exposures along the canyon walls of the Shaktolik that, where the deformation is most intense, as indicated by the close folding, faults are most numerous. Of course, it is only at intervals that the age of these faults with respect to the folding can be determined by direct observation. The intimate relation, however, of faulting to areas of close folding and the observed passage of folds into faults make it almost certain that much of the folding and faulting were contemporaneous.

That there has been faulting in the Cretaceous area subsequent to the main period of deformation is clearly shown by the fact that faults have been observed cutting the post-Cretaceous dikes which form apophyses of the Christmas mountain intrusion. Faults of this age were observed near camp A16, on the Ungalik, and there was evidence that larger movements had taken place elsewhere. It is to be borne in mind, however, that the opportunities for obtaining data on the age of the faults are infrequent, and it is by no means improbable that faults later than the post-Cretaceous deformation may be more common and widespread than the single faulted area noted indicates. So far as known, however, it is certain that none of the later faults exercise a direct effect on the present topography.

As has already been pointed out, the period of post-Cretaceous deformation was one of mountain building, and its effects were not confined to the Cretaceous area between the Yukon and the Koyuk, but were extended to the already greatly deformed rocks of Seward Peninsula. Traces of this folding may still be recognized in the dominant north-south trend of many of the structures. An illustration of this trend is seen in the band of Paleozoic rocks along the east side of the Darby Range and also in the various limestone bands

west of this range. Although this direction is also the trend of the Darby Range and of the highland of the Buckland-Kiwalik divide, the rocks in both of which are older than the Cretaceous, it seems probable that this form is a post-Cretaceous feature, so that the intrusions were not controlled by this structure. According to this explanation the Darby and the Kiwalik hills are due to the post-Cretaceous deformation, and the fact that the igneous rocks of the two areas are not continuous or aligned gives support to this interpretation. It is not intended, however, to assert that these hills necessarily mark the axes of the deformation, for it is believed that these areas are highlands mainly because the rocks of which they are formed have been strengthened and made resistant by the intrusives which characterize them.

A difficulty in the way of the acceptance of this interpretation is the undeformed character of the granites and other igneous rocks of these areas. Although on the face this is a vital objection, the incontrovertible fact that these rocks form the bowlders in the Ungalik conglomerate makes them certainly older than the post-Cretaceous deformation. Either, then, these rocks were unaffected during this period of mountain building or else they passed through it without marked folding and shearing. That a belt of rocks, averaging in width only about 6 miles and nowhere over 12 or 14 miles wide, should have withstood pressures great enough to fold perhaps 6 miles of Cretaceous sediments into great waves as one would fold the leaves of a magazine is almost inconceivable. It seems far more probable that the deformation that occurred in this part of the field was characterized by faults rather than by folds. According to this explanation great blocks practically undeformed may have been uplifted and oriented in a north-south direction without having been folded or without having had pronounced shearing induced.

With such pronounced post-Cretaceous deformation noted so widely throughout the region, it is evident that the untangling of earlier structures is possible only by the most detailed investigation. Inasmuch as such studies have not yet been made, it follows that interpretations are to be regarded as tentative and as indicating the kind of structures to be expected rather than as stating the precise structure at any particular locality. In order to emphasize the complex character of some of the pre-Cretaceous deformation a few examples of field observation may not be out of place.

Plate XIII, *A*, shows one of the closely appressed folds in the immediate neighborhood of the Omilak mine and very clearly illustrates the point in hand. This illustration is, of course, only one of the smaller folds, for, as is indicated by the hammer, which is about 18 inches long, the outcrop is only about 10 to 12 feet high. It should also be noted in this view that although the folded character of the

A. FOLDED LIMESTONE NEAR OMILAK MINE.

B. FOLDED AND SHATTERED LIMESTONE ON OPHIR CREEK.

beds is very clearly shown in the central and left-hand portion of the picture, the beds on the opposite sides of the axis in the right-hand portion are so nearly parallel that except under favorable conditions of exposure the divergence might be attributed to minor faults or might even pass undetected.

Where the beds are so closely folded it is evident that it is very difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish between the two or more periods of deformation known to have affected the region. For instance, the fold shown in Plate XIII, *A*, has a strong pitch to the west—that is, away from the point of view. Whether this pitch is due to the same deformation which overthrew the fold toward the north (to the right) or whether the overturned fold has itself subsequently been folded parallel to a north-south axis is not known. Figure 9 shows in diagrammatic manner the conditions probably existing at this place, the right-hand part of the diagram representing the part of the area shown in Plate XIII, *A*. As the north-south folds of the post-Cretaceous deformation are the latest mountain building in the region, it follows that the east-west trend noted in the vicinity of the Omilak mine preceded that period and was later deformed by the forces producing the north-south trend. On the other hand, it is entirely within the bounds of reason to suppose that in a period of deformation such as that which followed the laying down of the Cretaceous deposits the dynamic forces would not be equal over the entire area; hence the sag shown in the diagram might occur at a place marking inequality of the deforming force.

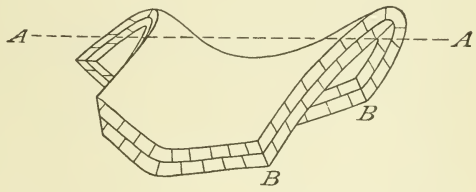


FIGURE 9.—Diagram showing folding in two directions.

Whatever the final determination may be as to the origin of this structure, the fact remains that it is by no means uncommon in the region. The irregular distribution of the different formations seems to suggest a structure of this kind. For instance, if the present erosion surface be indicated by a plane passing through the dotted line AA in figure 9, it is evident that the limestone bed BB would be exposed in the field by two isolated outcrops in which the fold, if it was as closely appressed as the one shown in Plate XIII, *A*, would probably escape detection, owing to the close parallelism of the two limbs.

The reverse of the condition shown in figure 9 might also occur where the field relations would be as though the diagram were looked at upside down and the erosion surface were still represented by the dotted line AA. Under this condition only the synclinal bowls where the rocks had been folded down lowest in the latest period of deforma-

tion would be preserved. This condition might, of course, expose either anticlines or synclines of the earlier period of deformation, so that a single observation would afford no conclusive idea of the relations.

With each subsequent folding some of the earlier features are obliterated and structures formed in the previous period of deformation become contorted. Plate XIII, *B*, shows a limestone outcrop about a quarter of a mile above Dutch Creek on Ophir Creek in the Council region that has very evidently been folded so that now the dominant structure is standing vertical. When this exposure is studied in detail it is evident that the thing which has been folded is a previous cleavage and not the bedding. In places, of course, the bedding corresponds to the cleavage, but in this picture it is evident that it is a cleavage that has been folded. This indicates that two periods of folding have taken place; in one the cleavage was produced, and in another it was folded.

Examples of this twofold structure are to be seen in all parts of the field and are not limited to any particular kind of rock, except that two structures are never seen in the later igneous rocks nor in the Cretaceous sediments. Evidences of two structures are particularly notable in the schists and limestones, but the black quartzites of the Paleozoic rocks seem to have fractured rather than folded in the post-Cretaceous period of deformation. Usually in the schists the later folding is recognized by minor transverse plications. The small hand specimens are the miniatures of the larger features, and the reason for the difficulty in recognizing the larger ones is the complexity of the structure and the absence of clearly distinguishable horizons in the schist complex. On the 1,200-foot hill east of camp C4 almost every piece of float gives striking illustration of this double plication.

Of the existence of the two periods described there can be no doubt, for they have been recognized not only in this field but in many other parts of Seward Peninsula. Moffit, who studied the region to the north where the rocks are similar in many respects to those found in the southeastern part of the peninsula, says:[a]

> This complex (the metamorphic group), both sedimentary and igneous in origin, was affected by the two movements mentioned, which acted in very different directions. One produced a structure in which the axes of the folds extend in an east-west direction, and is most plainly expressed in the uplift constituting the Kigluiak and Bendeleben mountains. * * * This east-west structure corresponds in the direction of its folds with the main structural lines of the whole of western Alaska, and is believed to have been produced before the deposition of the coal beds; that is, before Cretaceous or lower Tertiary time.
>
> The second movement resulted in the production of folds whose axes have a general north-south direction and are the dominant structural feature of the northern portion of the peninsula.

[a] Moffit, F. H., The Fairhaven gold placers, Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 247, 1905, p. 35.

It has already been suggested that the schists which underlie the Paleozoic rocks were probably deformed prior to the deposition of that member of the stratigraphic sequence and that the later rocks lie unconformably upon them. This is a difficult thing to prove and is advanced tentatively. There is no place where the underlying and the overlying rocks occur so intimately associated that the possibility of faulting is precluded, and, although the underlying rocks are much more schistose and apparently more deformed, there is necessarily the uncertainty as to the weight that should be given to this evidence when applied to lithologically different rocks. In spite of these objections it is believed that there was a period of profound pre-Silurian deformation. Definite proofs of this event have been, in the main, removed by the two subsequent periods of mountain building, but the constant greater metamorphism of the supposedly older schists, the field relations of the two groups, and the presence of certain structures in the older schists not found in the Paleozoic rocks lead to the conclusion that there was a period of pre-Silurian deformation.

If this hypothesis proves to be correct, it follows that an exceedingly complex arrangement of the lithologic members of the older schists is to be expected, and that the final determination of the succession in that group will be accomplished with the utmost difficulty. For the purposes of this paper, however, it will be sufficient to point out that the effect of each period of deformation has been to make the distribution of the older rocks more and more irregular, and, if the term may be applied to distribution, smaller "textured." As to the trend of the deformation of the oldest folding, there are no data available on which to base even an approximation.

HISTORICAL GEOLOGY.

To one who has followed the preceding descriptions with geologic insight the successive events which occurred in the region have already been given. As the facts for making a relative chronology, however, have been scattered through many pages, it seems desirable to collect these details into sequential order which shall give an epitome of the geologic history of the Nulato-Council region.

The oldest recorded event from which a start can be made was the laying down of quartzose and calcareous sediments over much of what is now western Alaska under presumably marine conditions. No definite age for this event can be given. It was, however, undoubtedly earlier than the Silurian. From the evidence secured by Kindle in the York region of western Seward Peninsula, where the Ordovician and Upper Cambrian seem to form a continuous relatively uninterrupted sequence overlying similar rocks, there is some

warrant for considering the oldest rocks as possibly pre-Cambrian. This suggestion as to the age is to be regarded only as a working hypothesis and is by no means definitely proved.

After the deposition of these sediments there were probably some veins formed which are now represented by the knotted and contorted quartz strings found in the older schists. Either coincident with this venation or following it, probably the latter, a period of mountain building ensued in which the quartzose and calcareous sediments previously deposited were consolidated and deformed and cleavage was probably developed. Erosion followed and sediments from this old land were carried out and deposited in the sea. This process must have continued for such a long time that the highlands were reduced by erosion and the region subsequently became depressed below the marine waters, for the rocks formed of the waste thus washed from the land were apparently deposited unconformably on the underlying rocks. If the tentative assumption of the pre-Cambrian age of the oldest sediments is correct, this period of mountain building may mark the gap between the Paleozoic and the pre-Paleozoic. In this period undoubtedly many oscillations and minor deformations may have occurred which are now unrecognizable.

After the period of mountain building the material eroded from the land mass was deposited in the marine waters off the coast. The land from which this waste was derived was remote from the area under consideration, for the sediment derived from it that now covers part of Seward Peninsula was laid down as limestone. In the Nulato-Council region this deposition corresponds with the laying down of the Paleozoic rocks. In the western part of the peninsula, however, as has already been pointed out, there are limestones containing Cambrian and Ordovician fossils, and as there is no known break between these limestones and the Silurian-Devonian-Carboniferous (?) rocks of this region it is assumed that the period of deposition may have continued practically uninterruptedly from the Cambrian to the Devonian or Carboniferous. During most of this time limestones were being laid down, but the intercalation of highly quartzose carbonaceous sediments, such as those now found near Mount Kwiniuk, indicates movements of the sea floor and changes in relation to the source of waste supply.

After the deposition of the Paleozoic rocks there was probably an uplift, for the next event recorded was the intrusion of greenstones, some of which formed surface flows. Such flows could hardly have taken place while the limestones were being laid down, and it is therefore necessary to believe that a part of Seward Peninsula was at that time dry land. This period of greenstone intrusion was well marked through many parts of Alaska and has been recognized not only in Seward Peninsula, but also in the northern part of the

Koyukuk, in the basin of the Melozitna, and in the Kaiyuh hills. If the extrusions of greenstone materials took place on land they must have unconformably overlain the older rocks. In the Nulato-Norton Bay region none of the effusive types were recognized, but farther west effusive character was strongly suggested by the exposures in the Solomon-Casadepaga quadrangles. In the central Yukon region the age of the greenstone intrusion is Devonian. For this reason it is possible that in the determination of the fossils from the sedimentary rocks as either Devonian or Carboniferous, preference should be given to the older rather than the younger system. In the Copper River region and in southeastern Alaska, on the other hand, a period of greenstone effusion has been described as Carboniferous or later, so that correlation by analogy is inconclusive.

With the intrusion of the greenstones there was some local or contact metamorphism of the rocks they penetrated, but the effects were slight. There was also the formation of some veins, but many of the older veins were already in the Paleozoic rocks before the intrusion by the greenstone, for in places the veins are abruptly cut off by the later rock. With the greenstone probably a little mineralization was introduced, but its effects upon the metalliferous resources of the region were slight.

After the formation of the greenstones a period of mountain building ensued in which the previously formed rocks were metamorphosed dynamically and profoundly faulted and folded. When this occurred can not be told with definiteness owing to the uncertainty of the ages of the Paleozoic rocks and the greenstones. From the evidence afforded by other parts of Alaska there are two dates to which the deformation may reasonably be assigned—one is in the late Devonian, and the other is in the early part of the Mesozoic. If the Devonian instead of the Carboniferous age of the sedimentary rocks is assumed, it follows that either of these periods will fulfill the requirements of the field evidence. If, on the other hand, however, the upper part of the deposits is Carboniferous it is evident that the period of mountain building following the deposition and consolidation of the Paleozoic sediments and their intrusion by the greenstones must have been the one occurring in the Mesozoic. No conclusive evidence on this point has been obtained, and the question must still remain an open one.

As a result of the deformation, the rocks were cleaved and folded and probably high mountains were formed. As soon as they were formed, erosion began to wear them down and to transport the material toward the sea. No clear idea is possible of how long this process continued uninterruptedly, for the only part of the Mesozoic represented by stratified rocks in this field is Cretaceous. An interruption occurred some time after the mountain building and prior

to the deposition whereby igneous activity became dominant. There is no evidence as to whether during the early part of this vulcanic cycle the region was land or was beneath the sea, but for the purposes of the present report this is not of great importance.

The first recorded intrusion of this period was the formation of diorites, which were subsequently intruded by granites, and these in turn were intruded by other diorites. Although these various phases could not have been formed within a short time of each other (for each of them had cooled and consolidated sufficiently before the next succeeding intrusion so that they broke into angular fragments), from a geological standpoint they were closely associated in age and may be considered as a unit. Evidence as to the age of these rocks is afforded only by analogy with other parts of Alaska. In the Matanuska-Talkeetna region of south central Alaska, Knopf and Paige determined the age of the great granodiorite-diorite intrusions as later than the Middle Jurassic and earlier than the deposition of the late Jurassic strata.[a] The Wrights in southeastern Alaska stated that, although the date of the major period of intrusive activity (the time of the Coast Range intrusion) was in doubt, it continued at least until late Middle Jurassic time.[b]

Although long-range correlations of this sort are clearly liable to gross errors, the absence of other data is sufficient justification for tentatively accepting the only available facts at hand. On this assumption the most reasonable age determination of the intrusives of the Darby and Bendeleben mountains is that they are Middle Mesozoic.

In the section dealing with the descriptive geology of the pre-Cretaceous igneous rocks it was stated that in the Kiwalik-Buckland divide there were ancient effusives along the flanks of that highland. It is practically inconceivable that effusive rocks of geologically the same age as granular intrusives should occur in contact with those intrusives. The granular rocks by their texture require relatively slow cooling under considerable cover. It follows, therefore, that when the intrusives of the Kiwalik-Buckland highland were injected there had been a considerable thickness of strata over the region, which was removed before the effusion of the older lavas. No precise measure of the time required for eroding the superincumbent rocks can be made, but it must have taken a long time. After erosion had exposed the plutonic rocks of the mid-Mesozoic, andesitic lavas were extruded.

During the latter part of this period this portion of Seward Peninsula, at least, must have been land. Gradual submergence occurred

[a] Paige, Sidney, and Knopf, Adolph, Geologic reconnaissance in Matanuska and Talkeetna basins, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 327, 1907, p. 20.

[b] Wright, F. E. and C. W., Ketchikan and Wrangell mining districts, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 347, 1908, p. 76.

and marine waters beat against the shore forming a heavy conglomerate which, as time went on and the shore line gradually encroached farther and farther on the land, was buried in the deeper parts of the basin by finer sediments. At no time, however, was the water in the basin very deep, for mud-flat markings and cross bedding are observable at many places. Probably by stages more or less equal with the filling of the basin with detritus the bottom sank until a great thickness of sediment was deposited. Where the farthest encroachment of the sea on the land occurred is not known, but marine waters must have covered the larger part if not the whole of what is now Seward Peninsula. In this sea the deposits accumulated and covered the pre-existing topography that had not been effaced by the beat of the sea upon it.

The geologic age of the sediments deposited during this period is Cretaceous. As has already been stated, on page 56, the Ungalik conglomerate at the base may be Lower Cretaceous, but the upper part, or Shaktolik group, contains no fossils other than of Upper Cretaceous age. In other parts of Alaska there has been reported a pronounced break between the Upper and the Lower Cretaceous and the two are in uncomformable relations. In this province no break was noted. If, however, subsequent studies should show a period of diastrophism between the Upper and the Lower Cretaceous it would seem rather conclusive evidence that the Ungalik conglomerate is of Upper Cretaceous age, for the fossil evidence which seemed to indicate a Lower Cretaceous age is very weak. Under such conditions the Lower Cretaceous would be represented in Seward Peninsula by the erosion interval at the base of the Ungalik conglomerate.

Succeeding the period of Cretaceous deposition was the last epoch of mountain building. By this deformation enormous folds and faults were produced which must have made mountain ranges of great height. There is no direct evidence as to the time when this folding occurred. From analogy with other parts of Alaska, however, it is known that there are two possible ages to which the epeirogenic movements may be referred. In southwestern Alaska the Kenai or upper Eocene is unconformable on the Upper Cretaceous.[a] This unconformity is marked by a break in faunas rather than by mountain building, but the fact that in places the Kenai is known to rest directly upon the Jurassic indicates a long period of changes. The other period to which the great orogenic movements of the post-Cretaceous may be referred is later than the deformation of the Kenai. There is but little to show which of these is the correct correlation, for there is no Kenai in the region studied. With full

[a] Stanton, T. W., and Martin, G. C., The Mesozoic section on Cook Inlet and Alaska Peninsula: Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 16, 1905, p. 410.

recognition of this uncertainty it is believed that a pre-Kenai age for the period of orogenic movement, which closed the Cretaceous deposition, fits more of the known facts than any other interpretation. According to this hypothesis the larger outlines of the geology of western Alaska were marked out before the Kenai and the sediments of the latter period were deposited mainly on the eroded surface of the earlier rocks and mostly as fresh water deposits.

After the great post-Cretaceous deformation, intrusion of granular rocks, such as those of Christmas Mountain, occurred. It is unsafe to assign a more specific age for this period of volcanism than the middle Tertiary. Whether the mountain building was closed before the intrusion is not definitely proved. The fact that some of the dikes from the Christmas Mountain mass are faulted shows either that the deformation had not entirely ceased or that the dikes were formed at a later time.

With the conclusion of the period of granular intrusions and of the great post-Cretaceous deformation, the region as a whole has been a land area subjected to erosion which has continued down to the present time. An enormous amount of erosion is indicated before the next recorded event in the history of this complex region. As a result of this erosion valleys were cut and the region was reduced from a mountainous country to one having something like the present topography. Then volcanic activity began and continued spasmodically from the later part of the Tertiary almost down to the present. The recent basaltic lavas of the Yukon and of the Koyuk and its environs bear witness to this period. As has already been pointed out some of these lavas are so recent that they overlie the gravels of the Noxapaga basin, whereas others are so much older that they stand at least a hundred feet above the present streams, which have carved their valleys through them.

Many of the lavas flow down the lowland areas of the preexisting topography. In these depressions they were consequently thicker and have therefore been less thoroughly removed by erosion. From the distribution of the residual patches it is therefore possible to reconstruct in a measure the former topography, and it is from this reconstruction that one is able to state that much erosion must have affected the structure produced by the post-Cretaceous deformation before the effusion of the lavas.

While the volcanism was in progress, erosion still continued over much of the area and the highlands were degraded and deposits were formed off the coasts. The erosion, however, did not proceed uniformly, for there were undoubtedly movements of the earth's crust whereby certain parts were uplifted and others depressed. On the whole, however, these movements were gentle, broad, regional uplifts and were not acute mountain-building deformations. Because of

uplift movements the streams were at times forced to cut their channels deeper into the bed rock of their valleys, but at other times, because of depression, they found the rock floors too deep and were forced to lay down some of the waste they were transporting, and thus aggrade their courses. Changes of this sort, however, did not exercise any considerable effect on the form of the region except to reduce the relief consistently.

After erosion and deposition had been in progress for a long time a change in the climatic conditions resulted whereby glaciation of the valley type was developed in the highland areas. Apparently this event took place when the sum of the preglacial movements had resulted in the region standing relatively lower than it does now with respect to sea level and grade level. The main result of the period was to scour out the mountain valleys and distribute the waste thus formed beyond the area occupied by the ice. From fossils associated with the deposits formed at this time it seems probable that this occurred in the Pleistocene, which was also the period of maximum glaciation in other parts of the northern hemisphere.

As the vigor of glacial conditions abated, the glaciers receded into the hills and finally disappeared. A long time, however, is required for this process, as is shown by the various moraines in the Pargon Valley and elsewhere in the mountain region. All this time deposits of glacio-fluviatile, fluviatile, and marine origin were being formed in the areas not occupied by the ice where the conditions were favorable. Lava flows may also have occurred at this same time in the areas not occupied by the ice.

With the close of glacial conditions oscillations of the crust similar to those preceding the period of glaciation again become evident. It is not intended to imply that these oscillations ceased during glacial time, but the evidence is so obscured that the movements were not recognized. The general result of these postglacial uplifts has been to raise the region somewhat above the relative position it occupied during the Pleistocene. Apparently, however, the sum of the recent upward movements has not yet equaled the sum of the earlier downward movements, so that the floors of many of the larger streams are still below sea level. The general recent uplift is shown in the rock-walled shallow canyons in which many of the streams flow.

Although the late Tertiary to Recent movements have been described as resulting in certain general conditions, it should be distinctly understood that these movements were such that while depression was taking place in one part of the region uplift may have taken place in another. Hence it appears that deposits at the same elevation above or below sea level are by no means synchronous and may be entirely unrelated in origin. Contemporaneity of the various deposits can only be determined by careful and detailed investiga-

tions of the region. Inasmuch as many of the problems of economic importance are connected with the correct correlation of the different deposits, it is necessary that such correlations should be searchingly investigated and not be based on superficial examination or upon apparent similarity of factors known to be variables.

In order to summarize the history of the region as determined the table shown in figure 10 has been prepared. It is at best but a graphic representation of the facts already given, and has the disad-

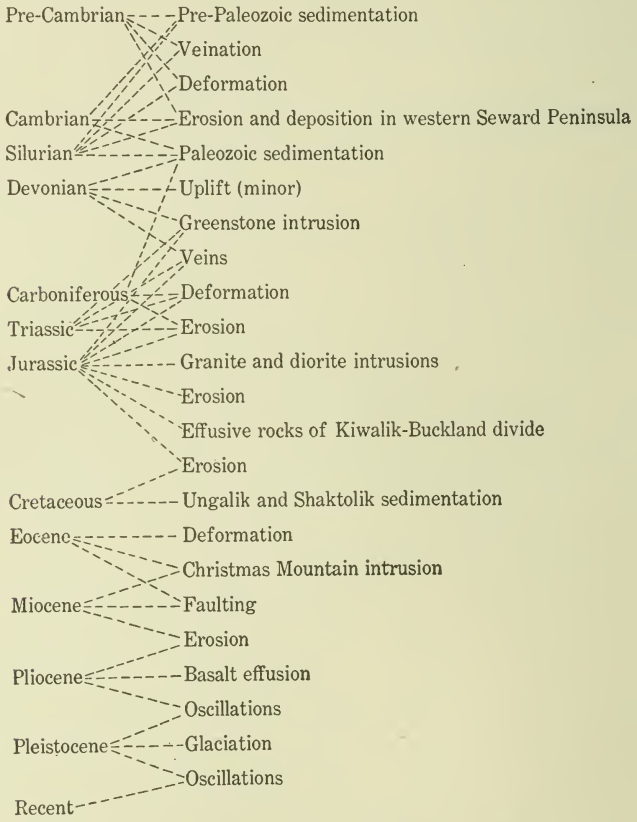


FIGURE 10.—Diagrammatic summary of geologic history of Nulato-Council region.

vantage of giving an appearance of finality to the correlations, some of which the text has shown to be founded on insufficient data; for these reasons it should be regarded as a summary and should not be used independently of the text.

ECONOMIC GEOLOGY.

In the preceding description of the areal geology of the region it has been shown that east of Koyuk River the country is formed of late sedimentary rocks that are little if any metamorphosed, whereas

the region to the west of this stream is predominantly one of schists, limestones, and igneous rocks. So far as has been indicated by mining in contiguous areas the metamorphic rocks are those in which deposits of gold may be sought with some promise of success, whereas the unmetamorphosed sedimentary rocks are the ones in which deposits of coal may be found.

PLACERS.

GOLD IN AREAS OF UNMETAMORPHOSED SEDIMENTS.

CONDITIONS OF PLACER FORMATION.

In the unmetamorphosed sedimentary deposits the chances of finding economically important gold deposits are relatively slight, except under local conditions. The Cretaceous and Tertiary deposits, the unmetamorphosed sediments, were formed of material eroded from the earlier rocks and deposited on the sea floor and in estuaries and marshes in essentially the same way that sediments are being deposited at the present day off the coast. Some of the present-day sediments, however, are auriferous, and it might be asked why similar placers should not be found in the older sedimentary deposits. Gold placers should occur in the Nulato-Norton Bay region under conditions similar to those prevailing in the coastal plain at Nome, but there are few places where similar conditions exist.

In order to make clear the different conditions in the two regions it is necessary to point out the salient facts concerning the productive placers of the coastal plain—for instance, those at Nome. A discussion of the character of the surface of the bed rocks is omitted as not important in bringing out the point of the following paragraph.

The known placers are not more than 3 or 4 miles from the old land from which the sediments were derived; the depth of gravel covering the bed rock is seldom over 100 feet; the gravel is as a whole fairly coarse; the rich ground occurs in ancient beaches, which mark concentration by the sea; and the country immediately adjacent to the rich placer is heavily mineralized. Consider the physical and geographic conditions which these facts entail. First, the short distance from the ancient shore line suggests that the gold did not travel far seaward from the place where it might have been formed. This is, of course, a conclusion which would have been reached by anyone accustomed to the action of gold in a sluice box. It might be safely assumed that in general the farther from the source the less gold there would be, other conditions being equal. Evidence of the proximity of the placer deposits to the old land is shown by the second criterion, namely, that the depth of gravel is seldom over 100 feet. This condition, like the preceding, is valuable in establishing the nearness of the gold to its source. The third fact also is of value in further

establishing this conclusion, but it is also important as showing that the agencies by which this material was transported were of sufficient strength to permit considerable sorting of the gravel and thus to allow concentration of the particles of gold. As the coastal plain placers are found along old strand lines it follows that in order to make a deposit of economic importance it is necessary to have a marked concentration of once disseminated particles. It is, of course, unnecessary to have this concentration effected by the sea, for streams would do it equally well, as is shown by the numerous creek placers. Perhaps the most important condition which must be fulfilled in order to make a rich placer is the presence of a highly mineralized area in the more or less immediate vicinity. Without this, the other conditions are ineffective.

It has also been pointed out by others that certain physiographic conditions are essential for the production of placers, such as long continued subaerial erosion followed by rapid sweeping off of detritus by revived drainage. As the physiographic history of northwestern Alaska has not yet been worked out in sufficient detail to permit the application of this criterion it can not be critically applied in this discussion.

If now the Nulato-Norton Bay region is considered in the light of the premises enumerated above it at once becomes evident that few of its conditions are analogous to those enumerated. It is true that there are places where the Cretaceous basin is in immediate contact with the old land. This has been proved by the extension of the basal conglomerate from near the Tubutulik northward along the east side of the Buckland-Kiwalik divide. The conglomerate was noted also by Mendenhall[a] on the Kobuk, from which place it swings southeastward. It was recognized, although not correctly correlated, by Schrader on the Koyukuk and by Dall, Collier, and Spurr on the Yukon, and was correctly correlated by Maddren on the Yukon near the Melozitna.

In the belt occupied by the heavy conglomerate the deposits were certainly near enough the shore to permit the formation of placers, but the physical conditions under which this conglomerate was deposited do not seem to have been well suited to the unlocking of gold from bed rock. Instead, the bowlders were riven from sea cliffs and were subjected to trituration rather than to decomposition or disintegration, and whatever gold may have been in the rocks was so abraded before it was deposited that it undoubtedly formed flour gold, which would be much more widely disseminated than flake or shot gold. Furthermore, over a considerable part of the region where the basal conglomerate was seen by the survey party the

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., Reconnaissance from Fort Hamlin to Kotzebue Sound, Alaska: Prof. Paper U. S. Geol. Survey No. 10, 1902, pp. 39–41.

country rock forming the old land shore line against which the sediments were deposited consisted of limestones and igneous rocks. So far as is known from a careful study of the known placer camps farther west, practically no gold is found in the limestones and none is known associated with the granites or other igneous rocks. It will be seen therefore that in the shoreward portion of the metamorphic area the important condition of near-by highly mineralized country rock from which the sediments were derived is wanting. It is believed, therefore, that search for commercial placers, although not entirely out of the question in the conglomerate area, is to be discouraged, unless the field evidence shows the existence of conditions other than those generally encountered in the basal member.

Over the greater part of the Nulato-Norton Bay area it has been shown that the lower member marking proximity to the old shore line is not exposed. It seems probable that through this part of the region the deposits are much higher geologically. From the physical character of the sediments and from the structures observed, such as cross bedding, it seems certain that the higher geological members

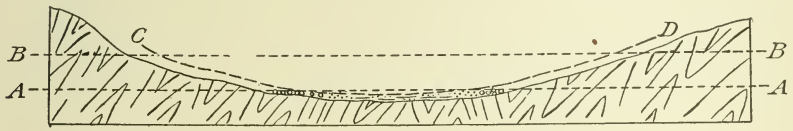


FIGURE 11.—Diagrammatic cross section of the Nulato-Norton Bay region during Cretaceous deposition.

were deposited in relatively shallow water. This fact, however, does not mean that the deposits were near the old land of metamorphic rocks. Figure 11 shows in diagrammatic manner the conditions believed to have prevailed in the Nulato-Norton Bay region. The metamorphic rocks to the left in the figure may be taken to represent the schists of Seward Peninsula, and those to the right the rocks near the Melozitna; the intervening area is the Nulato-Norton Bay region at the beginning of Cretaceous deposition, with sea level indicated by the line AA. At this stage conglomerates were laid down close to the shore of the old land and sandstones and shales toward the center of the basin. Gradually depression took place and continued at such a rate that the surface of the deposits was always within a short distance of sea level. It is evident, therefore, that if this depression continued until the surface of the deposits and the sea level stood at the line BB, no part east of C as far as D had ever been close enough to the metamorphic area, which is assumed to have been the source of mineralization, to have received any notable amount of gold. Consequently, in this part of the region, unless subsequent folding exposed rocks at the surface outside of the part included within the

line CD, the probability of finding auriferous deposits is slight, and then only if the old land area from which the sediments were derived was sufficiently mineralized to afford placer gold.

It has been the object in the preceding paragraphs to point out that on the whole the chances of finding gold in the area of unmetamorphosed rocks are slight. From the fact that only under exceptional conditions are valuable deposits likely to be found it seems that the ordinary prospector for gold should be warned against spending much time in the region east of Koyuk River. Not only does this conclusion seem sound from a theoretical standpoint, but it was learned from prospectors on the Inglutalik that they had been from that river eastward to beyond the Gisasa and had not been able to raise a single color of gold.

It is not the purpose of this warning, however, to assert that no gold will be found in the region, for there are three conditions under which deposits may be found. The first of these conditions, already described, is that the unmetamorphosed sediments considered may have been originally deposited at no great distance from the shore of a mineralized area of metamorphic rocks. Such deposits might be found at several places, even in the middle parts of the basin, if subsequent deformation brought the underlying rocks up to the level of erosion. As an example of this condition may be cited the area of metamorphic rocks which appear between Kwik and Koyuk rivers.

The second condition which might permit the formation of valuable gold placers in the Nulato-Norton Bay region is long continued concentration of the material, either by streams or by the ocean. Concentration of this sort may have been effected either during the time the sediments were being deposited or at a much later time. Throughout the period occupied by the deposition of the sands and gravels the region was apparently undergoing almost uninterrupted depression, so that, although there was sorting by water, it was nowhere so effective as it would have been if the region had been one of alternate erosion and deposition, as the coastal plain at Nome has been. In other words, the ancient placers at Nome seem to have been subjected to at least two periods of concentration, whereas the deposits of the other region seem to have undergone but one. Since consolidation, the sandstones and shales of the Cretaceous have been eroded by the streams and a present day concentration is being effected. Some of the reported gold placers in the Yukon basin are probably due to this sorting, but they may have been formed by original sorting before the consolidation of the sediments, for little is known about the deposits.

The third type of locality where search for gold placers or lodes in the area of nonmetamorphic rocks would be warranted is at those places where mineralization has occurred since Cretaceous times.

Such places are, so far as known, closely associated with the areas of intrusive igneous rocks. The effusive rocks or lavas of Tertiary-Recent age do not seem to have brought any valuable minerals, and therefore placers or lodes due to post-Cretaceous mineralization are not to be sought in those areas where only these rocks occur.

Intrusive rocks later than the Cretaceous have been noted at but two places, although a more detailed investigation of the area undoubtedly might result in discovering others. The two places where these later granitic rocks have been examined by the Survey party are at Christmas Mountain, east of Ungalik River and at Bonanza Creek. From reports of prospectors it seems that the placer-bearing gravels of Anvik River may have been derived from a similar area of intrusive granitic rock, although too little is known of the geology of the country to advance this interpretation more than tentatively. Spurr[a] in his summary of the occurrence of gold in southwestern Alaska says:

> The gold in this region is by no means so abundant as it is along the belt of the Yukon geanticline, where the ancient schists with their inclosed quartz veins are found. The mineralization of southwestern Alaska is of a later date and not so intense or widespread. Within the area examined by the writer's party last summer (1898) the Tordrillo Mountains are undoubtedly the chief seat of mineralization, and this appears to be directly dependent upon the fact that these mountains have also been the chief seat of intrusion of igneous rocks.[b]

PLACERS OF THE BONANZA CREEK REGION.

Bonanza Creek is the only stream between the Koyuk and the Yukon where placer mining has been successfully carried on. This creek is only about a mile long, but values have been found almost the entire length of its course, and, from the character of the gold, they seem to be of distinctly local origin. Gold was originally discovered and staked on this creek in 1899 by Thomas Moon and his partner. The absence of water and the boom that the Seward Peninsula placers were having prevented any considerable development for the first few years on Bonanza Creek. After the lower claims had changed hands several times they were bought by the Nelsons, who have since been the most industrious miners there. Other miners have held ground on No. 2 and No. 3 above the Discovery claim, and some work has been done for the last two or three years. It is hard to realize that during the boom days of this camp nearly a hundred men rushed to the creek, and several road houses and three or four saloons were in operation, for now the creek is practically deserted, and only four or five white men are living there.

[a] Spurr, J. E., Reconnaissance in southwestern Alaska in 1898: Twentieth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 7, 1900, p. 261.

[b] It is extremely doubtful if the intrusives of the Tordrillo Mountains are post-Cretaceous, as the sedimentary rocks they cut are Jurassic or older.

At first the creek claims were the ones from which the values were obtained. On the lower claim the pay streak was 400 feet wide, but it narrowed upstream and at the northern line of No. 1 above Discovery the width was only about 75 feet. The gravels are typically river wash in form and consist of material from near-by rocks, although some of the pebbles were undoubtedly derived from higher level gravels which were not of local origin. Bed rock is a much shattered black slate or shale, on the whole rather thinly laminated and not so quartzose as the black quartzitic slates of the Paleozoic section. The slates are cut by igneous rocks of the granite family. An exposure of one of the intrusive dikes occurs a short distance north of the cabins at the junction of Bonanza Creek and the Ungalik. Here the dike is apparently about 10 feet wide and shows by its undeformed character that it was injected subsequent to the period of folding and faulting of the slates. It trends obliquely to the slates, having a strike of N. 5° E. and stands vertical. It is heavily iron stained in places. This iron is probably derived from the decomposition of sulphides, some of the unaltered material showing pyrite in microscopic sections.

Above the stream on the northeast side of the valley is a bench on which gravels have been found that are highly auriferous. After the exhaustion of the creek gravels attention was turned to this high-level ground, and satisfactory returns have been obtained from it. Aneroid readings give the elevation of the bench as about 80 feet above Bonanza Creek at the cabins, but some gravels have been found up to an elevation of 150 feet above the stream. The gold on the benches is medium coarse and of a dark reddish color. None of it is black gold. Several nuggets were seen that had small pieces of quartz attached. From the owners it was learned that the largest nugget taken from this creek was worth about $21. The value of the gold is high—that from the lower claim being reported as worth about $19.25 an ounce, and some from higher up on the creek and not from bench ground assaying from $19.05 to $19.15 an ounce.

Concentrates from the bench ground show a good deal of magnetite or black sand. Some of the fragments of this mineral were as much as one-fourth of an inch in length. Together with the magnetite is also ilmenite or the oxide of titanium and iron, which is nonmagnetic. Garnet or the so-called "ruby" sand is practically absent in all parts of the creek. This was to be expected, for none of the rocks in the neighborhood show any such development of this mineral as is the case in the Seward Peninsula placers. Some float pieces of antimony are occasionally found in the gravels of Bonanza Creek.

Bonanza Creek has such a small supply of water that the extraction of the gold from the gravels has been a serious problem. In the early days the separation was accomplished by the use of rockers,

and even during the summer of 1909 this method was still in use on some of the creek gravels half a mile or so above the mouth of the stream. The discovery of gold in the high benches called for a supply of water at considerable elevation. Ditches except of such length as to be prohibitive in cost were not feasible, and the experiment of pumping water from Ungalik River was resorted to. Wood cut in the neighborhood of the mines was used for fuel. Although no figures are available as to the cost of the water delivered on the ground, it seems that the fact that this method was pursued until the claims were worked out is sufficient proof that the owners were satisfied with the project.

The method of work was to make cuts at intervals at right angles to the trend of the old channel. In these trenches sluice boxes were placed in such manner that their lower end discharged toward Bonanza Creek. The abrupt cliff that occurs at the edge of the bench deposit offered particularly favorable topography for the discharge of tailings on the lower ground so that the boxes would not become choked, and this was taken advantage of. The water pumped in two lifts was delivered to the nozzles on the bench ground and the gravels and overburden were washed through the sluice boxes. After the gravels had thus been sluiced off, the bed rock was taken up by hand and cleaned. In places three feet of the rather angular blocky slate had to be picked up to recover the pay values, but over much of the bench ground it was necessary to take up only from 12 to 18 inches.

During 1909 the last of the bench and creek ground nearest the mouth of the creek was exhausted, and the boiler and pump were dismantled and put into condition to be shipped away; the lower claims may now be regarded as worked out. Good bench placer ground, however, continued from the end line of the claim, and the next upstream claim undoubtedly contains valuable deposits. During the early part of 1909 the owner of this ground was engaged in building a small ditch from the upper part of Bonanza Creek to bring water to this bench. The small amount of water available, however, makes it probable that the operations will be much hampered. The bench ground is frozen, and either a strong head of water will be required to break down the gravels or else the owners will be forced to resort to thawing.

On the fourth claim above the mouth of Bonanza Creek little work was accomplished during 1909 and that mainly of a prospecting character. The unusually dry season made this part of the stream practically dry by the middle of July, and the only gold taken out was by means of rockers. At this place specimens of gold in a black graphitic slate were seen. This occurrence suggests that the carbon, which is abundant in the slates, may have been effective in causing the deposition of the gold.

At the mouth of Bonanza Creek some gold has been found in the gravels of Ungalik River. Several rather shallow holes have been put down in the river flats, a few score yards north of the mouth of Bonanza Creek, and good prospects have been reported. On the whole, however, the tenor of the gravels of Ungalik River is low, and, although occasional 5-cent pans have been found, the average indicated is so low that the ground could not be worked without labor-saving devices capable of handling large quantities of gravel at a low cost. The gold is reported to be irregularly distributed; rich pockets separated by intervals of barren ground are to be expected, which condition is not one calculated to encourage the development of large undertakings.

The other placer where post-Cretaceous mineralization apparently associated with igneous intrusions has been reported is at Christmas Mountain. Scores of lode claims have been staked on this mountain, but, with the exception of a little sulphide mineralization, few indications of profitable veins have been disclosed. In spite of the apparent absence of lodes that would warrant extensive development it is believed that there is a disseminated mineralization in the vicinity of this mountain that might justify search for placers in the neighborhood. From the reports of prospectors it was learned that colors of gold had been found in the gravels of many of the streams heading in this mountain and draining either into the Ungalik or the Shaktolik. Several placer claims have been staked on Christmas Creek, which enters the Ungalik 3 to 4 miles north of camp A16, but no mining has been done. It seems probable that the inaccessibility of the region would make it unprofitable to work any but a rather high grade placer at the present time at this place.

It is further reported that stibnite (antimony sulphide) float has been found on the divide between the Shaktolik and the Ungalik, about 4 miles northeast of Bonanza Creek, on the slopes of Christmas Mountain. This mineral was not found at this place by the Survey party. Its presence would indicate that there has been a good deal of mineralization and would show that the sulphide mineralization already noted may have introduced many different minerals.

In the same general region, but not definitely associated with intrusive igneous rocks, are streams that are said to have some auriferous gravels; the geology of these places is too indeterminate at the present time, however, to warrant even a suggestion of the origin of the valuable minerals contained. Garryowen Creek, a tributary of the Inglutalik heading in the Ungalik divide, is reported to yield colors of gold. Negromoon Creek, which joins the Inglutalik from the west upstream from Garryowen, also shows gold-bearing gravels. The values, however, on both these streams are so low that they are of no commercial significance at the present time and can not be worked

under existing conditions. No adequate prospecting has been done on any of these streams, and it is therefore impossible to make even an approximation of the tenor of the gravels.

GOLD PLACERS IN AREAS OF METAMORPHIC ROCKS.

DISTRIBUTION.

As the metamorphic rocks are older than the nonmetamorphic rocks they have been subjected, broadly speaking, to at least the same number of periods of mineralization as the latter plus whatever number occurred before the laying down of the Cretaceous sediments. It is, of course, realized that mineralization may be distinctly local and may affect one region and not another, and it is not intended to assert that the richness of a region is necessarily dependent upon the number of periods of mineralization it has undergone, although, according to the law of chances, such a generalization is sound. This view receives corroborative support from the field evidence, for in most of the Seward Peninsula placer regions there were at least two periods of vein formation, during each of which gold lodes were made, whereas in the area of unmetamorphosed sediments only one period has been recognized.

Valuable gold deposits have been mined most extensively in Seward Peninsula where the metamorphic rocks are most abundant, and it is believed that regions underlain by them are the most promising areas in which to prospect for new placers. In general, the richest placer areas are near the contacts between the heavy overlying older limestones and the underlying quartz chlorite schists. So far as known, the intrusive igneous rocks older than the Cretaceous are not auriferous, and neither are the more recent lava flows. Therefore, areas deriving their surficial deposits from such rocks are not likely to afford valuable placers.

Several of the various placer camps located within the area covered by the map of southeastern Seward Peninsula were not visited during 1909. It has been thought desirable, however, to summarize the investigations made during previous years in order to gain a more comprehensive idea of the mineral industry as a whole, rather than to omit districts so important as Council and Bluff simply because they have been already described. Consequently, to complete this part of the report it is necessary to refer to the published reports of Brooks, Moffit, Collier, and others. In the treatment of the gold placers of the areas of metamorphic rocks a geographic order will be adopted. The placer deposits of a single river basin will be treated from the mouth toward the head of the stream. The various river basins tributary to Norton Sound will be described from east to west,

beginning with the Koyuk, and then will follow descriptions of the various basins emptying into Kotzebue Sound from Buckland River westward.

KOYUK RIVER BASIN.

In the Koyuk Basin no gold placers are now being mined and commercial mining has been done in but few places in the past. Colors of gold have been found on many of the streams and many attempts at mining have been made in the region, but so far without sufficiently encouraging returns to keep a permanent force on any of the streams.

About a mile west of camp B17, at the mouth of the Koyuk, there is a black limy schist and limestone that occurs east of a lighter-colored schist, the dip of both being practically vertical. On the beach at this place and extending for a considerable distance both east and west are many large angular pieces of quartz float that suggest vein material. Pans of broken-up material from the schists near this place show a number of very small colors of worn placer gold. From a prospector living near the place it was learned that 1-cent pans had been found, but the small returns were not sufficiently encouraging to warrant any considerable expenditures of either time or money.

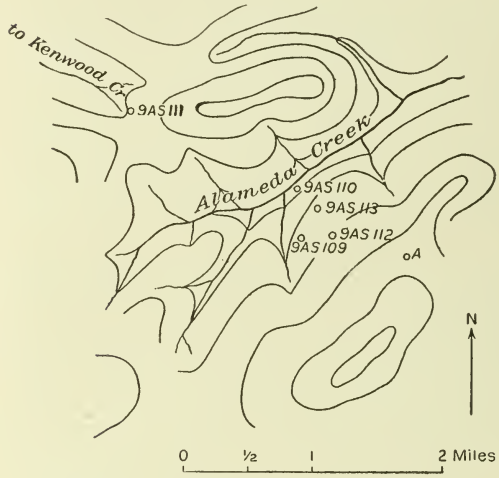


FIGURE 12.—Sketch map of Alameda Creek.

Alameda Creek, a small tributary to the Koyuk from the west, joining the river a short distance below the mouth of East Fork, was visited in the early part of August. Although no active work was in progress the problems that have been raised by earlier prospecting are such as to attract the attention of the geologist. Figure 12 shows the headward portion of this stream with the location of the different prospect holes that have been sunk. The elevations are only approximate, as the weather was so changeable that an aneroid was of no assistance.

At locality 9AS109 south of Alameda Creek a shaft 192 feet deep was sunk all the way through well-rounded, predominantly quartz gravel. The upper part of the gravel is whitish, with black quartzite pebbles and some glassy lava; not many pebbles of the latter

material were found. Midway in the shaft the gravels are more yellowish and more iron stained than in the upper part. In the lower part of the hole the fine material is of a greenish-white color but is otherwise similar to that above. On reaching a depth of 192 feet the miners were forced to abandon the shaft, as they encountered a great deal of water. This condition suggests that they were approaching bed rock. This conclusion receives some support from the fact that in the bottom of the shaft pieces of ancient lava, probably the country rock here, became more numerous.

It is reported that in the general gravel section cut by the shaft a few thin sedimentary layers were found that gave fairly good prospects. A pan of the gravel from the dump which was said to have come from near the top of the shaft gave two small colors. Samples from the gravels said to be near the bottom of the shaft showed also minute specks of gold. In the concentrates from the same part of the section there was a good deal of black sand, but garnet was practically absent. A good many pieces of undecomposed sulphides were also recognized in the concentrates. Within 100 feet of the shaft a pan from the surface gravels directly under the grass roots showed several bright colors of gold, some magnetite sand, and ilmenite.

Nearly due east of the last locality and at an elevation about 100 feet higher another shaft has been sunk (locality 9AS112). The depth of the shaft is somewhat over 70 feet and it has not reached bed rock. The material on the dump consisted mainly of well-washed white quartz gravel, with some pebbles of black quartzite and red lava. Twenty-five feet east of this hole and at a slightly higher elevation a shaft had been sunk 45 feet without reaching bed rock. The material on the dump at this shaft was more sandy and the pebbles were smaller than at the shaft at locality 9AS112.

Northward down the slope at locality 9AS113 another shallow shaft has been put down. It was only about 15 to 20 feet deep, and in it no gravel at all was reported.

On a low bench on the south side of Alameda Creek, at an elevation of less than 10 feet above the water, there is a caved shaft (locality 9AS110). This was originally 32 feet deep and reached bed rock, which belonged to the group of ancient igneous rocks. There was a great deal of well-rounded quartz gravel, but as a whole the material on the dump was much darker than at locality 9AS109, and there was a much greater proportion of lava fragments. The prospectors who sunk this shaft reported that the values were found entirely on bed rock and that the lower gravel went about 1 cent to the pan. Upstream from this shaft the present gravels of Alameda Creek are reported to carry no gold, whereas northeast, or downstream, the creek gravels yield about 7 cents to the 10-pan bucket. A mile and a half downstream, however, even this amount of gold

disappears and the gravels are barren. From these facts it would appear that the present creek may derive its gold from the earlier channel. It should be remembered, however, that if the values occur mainly on bed rock in this channel the bottom is still below the level of Alameda Creek, and therefore the reconcentration has not affected the richest portion of the old channel.

Directly across the creek and at the same elevation above the stream as locality 9AS110 a shaft 12 feet deep has been sunk to bed rock. The bed rock at this place also was dark, much fractured, fine-grained lava. A pan of gravel from the dump at this place showed an abundance of green lava sand with numerous hornblende crystals. Several well-rounded garnets were also noted.

A mile and a half west of this shaft and on one of the small tributaries of Kenwood Creek some further prospecting has been done to try to locate the northwest continuation of the old channel. At locality 9AS111 there is a shaft 24 feet deep, now badly caved. The material on the dump is nearly all angular, almost completely decomposed rock, which seems to contain some rounded black pebbles. The material is so badly changed that it is impossible to assert definitely whether it represents a recent slightly consolidated gravel or a more ancient sandstone or fine grit. It was claimed by the prospectors that bed rock was reached in this shaft and samples of the material supposed to be from the bottom of the hole showed thin quartz and calcite veins with decomposed material between. Some of the quartz was much slickensided.

Forty-five and sixty-five paces west of locality 9AS111 were two other prospect pits at a slightly lower elevation than the one last described. The western one showed undoubted gravel on the dump, some of the pebbles being 3 to 4 inches in diameter. There were very few white quartz pebbles, the greater number being of black quartzite. There seems to be little room to doubt that this is a portion of the same deposit encountered in the deep shaft at locality 9AS109. It is unfortunate that the depth to bed rock has not been determined at the two places, for it might afford information either as to the direction of the old drainage or as to the amount of deformation since the cutting of the channel.

On the broadly open saddle, 1½ miles southwest of locality 9AS109, quartz gravel is reported to be abundant, and it is believed that this low pass may mark the southern continuation of this channel. On this assumption a party of three or four men was engaged in prospecting during the winter of 1909–10. From a recent letter it seems that little was accomplished at this place during the winter, and although seven holes from 18 to 24 feet deep were sunk their location is not sufficiently explicit to show the relation to the surrounding topography. It was stated, however, that they found but little of the well-rounded wash noted at locality 9AS109. In several of these

holes colors of gold were found, but apparently not enough to warrant further prospecting. It should be pointed out, however, that even if this be the old course of the valley it does not follow that the gravels will be commercially valuable, for, as has already been noted, so far as prospected the gravels in the deep hole on Alameda Creek are not sufficiently gold bearing to be mined at the present time.

Not enough facts are yet available for more than a tentative interpretation of the conditions under which the old channel was formed. It is evident from the presence of lava in the gravels of the channel filling that the channel was carved and occupied by a stream later than the effusion of the recent lava. It seems probable that a rearrangement of drainage may have resulted from the extrusion of the tongue of lava which occupied the low country between Koyuk and Buckland rivers and flowed down the present Koyuk Valley below East Fork. This may have resulted in turning the lower part of the Koyuk out of its former course and allowing it to cut its gorge. After the gorge had been eroded, either by change in the relation of the land with respect to sea level or by capturing, the old valley was filled and the stream was so diverted that it took up a course parallel with the tongue of lava that flowed down the Koyuk Valley. It eroded the lava, thus etching out and uncovering its former valley, in which it now flows.

In regard to the origin of the gold found in the old valley gravels there is some question. Alameda Creek is near the area of metamorphic rocks, and the presence of a great number of pebbles of vein quartz in the gravels suggests that they at least have been derived from the quartz stringers in this series. If this vein quartz has been derived from this source there is a strong presumption that the gold has also come from the same place. On the other hand, it should be noted that there are indications that some of the ancient lava is mineralized. A shallow prospect pit has been sunk on a ledge of amygdaloidal trap outcropping on the divide between the Koyuk and Alameda Creek at A, on figure 12. Assays made at Nome of material from this pit are reported to have given as high as $3.72 in gold per ton. The rock shows no macroscopic mineralization, and considerable doubt is felt of the accuracy of this determination.

Kenwood Creek, which enters the Koyuk from the south above East Fork, has been prospected near the head, as already noted, and a little work has been done also on the lower part. Two prospectors, who were reported to have found good prospects at this place several years ago, went to the lower part of Kenwood Creek during the summer of 1909. The low water prevented their getting upstream far enough with their boat and they returned. It is probable, however, that bed rock through the lower part of the creek is deep and difficulty with water will be experienced.

On Willow Creek, which enters the Koyuk from the south above Kenwood Creek, there are signs of former prospecting, but the stream is now deserted. McPherson says that at the time of his visit (1907) location notices were seen, which showed that the prospecting had been done about five years before.

Peace River is one of the northern tributaries of the Koyuk west of East Fork. About 12 miles above the mouth it forks, and near this place some prospecting was done during the winter of 1908. Two shafts were put down on the east bank of the river, but they were so badly caved that only the upper 3 feet or so was visible. This part of the section shows brown, irregularly bedded sands of even texture, having in general a dip toward the west—that is, toward the stream. The material on the dump is fairly well-rounded river wash, consisting almost entirely of igneous rocks with some red, iron-stained gravel of the same nature. The eastern of the two holes was probably not more than 15 feet deep, but the other may have been 25 feet deep. Some material put aside as though it were the pay gravel was a greenish-brown sand.

About 100 yards east of this place and on a slightly higher bench there is another shaft now filled with water. This pit was probably not more than 5 or 10 feet deep. From the material on the dump it appeared that the gravel is not so well rounded and there is much more mud mixed with the sand. The upper 2 or 3 feet, which was the only part visible, instead of consisting of sands as in the western holes, was entirely formed of muck. From prospectors it was learned later in the season that some gold had been found in these holes, but not enough to warrant further exploitation. It was currently reported that one piece of gold found there was worth 4 cents, but this was the largest piece. The presence of gold at this place suggests the possibility of some of the ancient lavas having been more or less mineralized, but the evidence is not sufficiently definite to preclude other sources of origin.

Mendenhall notes that in 1900 Big Bar Creek had been prospected and a mining district established there. He was unable to learn the success of the operations, but the fact that in 1903, when this region was visited by Moffit, no work was in progress and the creek was deserted shows that the gold tenor of the gravels must have been too low to make mining profitable.

A tributary creek farther up stream and heading in the hills near the low pass into Death Valley and the upper part of the Koyuk basin is mentioned by Mendenhall as follows:[a]

> Just above the camp of September 5 another tributary enters from the south carrying only schistose pebbles. These, however, are very calcareous. Most of the streams which enter the upper course of the river from the north lie

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 213.

without the lava belt, but the schists here have not the aspect of the gold-bearing members. At Cheenik in the fall we met prospectors who had been up the river and reported finding colors all along its course.

Moffit in 1903 reported no mining in this part of the river basin, and no signs of recent work were seen by the party in 1909.

KWIK RIVER BASIN.

No mining was in progress during 1909 on any of the streams in the Kwik River basin, and so far as could be learned little or no prospecting has been done in the past in this area. On the head of Quartz Creek, about 3 or 4 miles east of camp C3, there were some old claim stakes and some sluicing had been done several years ago. McPherson, who visited this region in 1907, noted that he found location notices of about five years previous date on this creek.

TUBUTULIK RIVER BASIN.

During the time that the survey party of 1909 was in the vicinity of the Tubutulik no prospectors were seen and no evidence of any recent mining was observed. Practically the only thing that is known about the mining in the basin is furnished by the report of Mendenhall,[a] in which the following statements are made:

> This stream, while farther from the known productive districts than the Fish, was the object of considerable attention during the season of 1900. The surface gravels of the river bars gave colors quite as heavy as those on Fish River, wherever a pan was washed out—at least as far up as the granite area. We had no reports from the head of this stream and did not have an opportunity to examine it ourselves, but the area drained by it is not particularly promising. Mr. C. C. Alexander and members of his party, who had been prospecting on Chukajak and Vulcan creeks during the fall of 1899 and the summer of 1900, report the finding of coarse gold early in their work on the former stream, but more thorough development did not fulfill the promise of this first find. Reports of favorable prospects here had, however, reached Golofnin Bay and Nome, and a small stampede toward the Tubutulik resulted. When we left the river, late in August, many outfits were reaching the field. Reports toward the end of September did not tend to confirm the earlier accounts of rich strikes there.

It was reported that some mining was done several years ago on the next stream above Lost Creek. According to Mendenhall the name of this creek was Admiral, but the claims were described as on Camp Creek. It seems probable that the two names are applied to the same stream, but which is correct could not be determined. From the character of the bed rock near this stream it would appear that the geology is complex and that the older schists form the lower part of the valleys, so that it is presumed the gold was derived from them. Placer mining on Camp Creek was carried on by means of horse

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 212.

scrapers, but the absence of any recent work in the vicinity seemed to show that the returns were not satisfactory. From the strong evidence of glaciation of the valley type in many of the streams heading in the Darby Range and entering the Tubutulik from the west it seems unlikely that any rich placers will be found in that part of the basin. The eastern boundary of the basin in the southern part is formed of the Ungalik conglomerate so that strong mineralization is not to be expected from it. Farther north the eastern part of the Tubutulik divide is formed of the Paleozoic limestones, and these are not promising rocks from which to derive placers. It is felt, therefore, that a large part of this drainage basin is not particularly favorable for commercially important placers.

KWINIUK RIVER BASIN.

Practically the whole of Kwiniuk River and its tributaries flow in valleys carved in the igneous rocks that make up the Darby Range. So far as is known these rocks are but slightly mineralized. Consequently there is but little chance that the detritus worn from these rocks would form valuable placer deposits. In the lower part of the course, where the bed rock is heavily covered by unconsolidated deposits, the character of the country rock is not evident, and the more mineralized schists may occur. If this is the case, there is some possibility, where concentration has been effective, that placers may be discovered. The depths of covering and the question of handling water would make the development of such placers difficult.

FISH RIVER BASIN.

MAIN STREAM.

The main Fish River basin has not been important as a placer district, although the tributaries of the Niukluk, its longest western branch, have produced more gold than those of all the rest of the region. The name of the principal town, Council, will be used to designate this placer region in order to distinguish it from the rest of the Fish River basin. According to Mendenhall[a] Fish River carries gold from its mouth to the northern end of the gorge. Throughout the lower part of the river the colors are very light, but they become heavier in the constricted part of the valley, where the stream crosses the belt of limestones and schists. Opposite the mouth of Anaconda Creek, as the lower part of Pargon River is called, pans taken from the broken rim rock yielded from one-half a cent to 1 cent each. According to the same author prospectors found nothing in the upper flats of Fish River, and so far as reported the streams flowing out of the mountains to the north do not yield colors.

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 212.

From the geologic description of the northern and eastern part of the Fish River basin it is seen that the rocks are schists and limestones, which appear to be the same as the rocks in some of the placer regions, except that the schists contain much greater quantities of biotite. Veins are equally abundant in both types, and it is believed that the absence of placers may be explained in part by the valley glaciation that has scoured out the water-sorted deposits from most of the valleys heading in the Bendeleben and Darby mountains. This process has scattered the deposits, which may have existed in the valleys prior to this erosion. Information on the subject is still too meagre to allow a final judgment as to the reason for the absence of placers in this part of the basin, but it is believed that the physical history rather than the lithologic character is responsible for the apparent absence of placers.

COUNCIL REGION.

Placer gold has long been known in the region around Council, for it was reported by members of the Western Union Telegraph Expedition in 1865, and in 1892 John Dexter is said to have notified members of the silver-lead mining company that he had found gold there. It was not until 1896–97, however, that the discovery of Ophir Creek, the richest one in the Council district, was made by Mordant, Melsing, Libby, and Nelson. Although, apparently, gold was found at that time, it was not until the spring of 1898 that the district was organized and active placer mining begun. So valuable have the placers turned out that in 1903 Collier estimated that the gold output up to that year was between $5,000,000 and $6,000,000.[a] Since that time $2,000,000 to $3,000,000 more has been taken out, so that this camp has been second in production to that of Nome.

The productive creeks in this so-called Council region from southeast to west are Fox, Mystery, Melsing, Ophir, Goldbottom, Camp, and Elkhorn creeks. All except Fox Creek are tributaries of the Niukluk, and Fox Creek joins Fish River less than 4 miles below the Niukluk.

Fox Creek has never been a rich creek. The only valuable ground was on a small tributary known as I. X. L. Gulch, and on the main valley at the mouth of this stream. At this place, according to Collier,[b] about 2 ounces of gold were taken from about 4 cubic yards of pay dirt. A little prospecting has been done here in every year since 1906, but the production is practically negligible.

Collier[c] reported that on Mystery Creek, 1 mile from its mouth, $6 to $8 nuggets have been found. Part of the gold was bright and

[a] Collier, A. J., and others, The gold placers of parts of Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 328, 1908, p. 236.

[b] Idem, pp. 237–238.

[c] Idem, p. 240.

part was rusty, but all is rough and angular as though derived from near-by sources. On Mud Creek, a small side stream from the west, one claim was operated in 1903. The gold here, according to Collier, is found both in the gravel and to a depth of 3 or 4 feet in crevices of the bed rock. It is very rough, spongy, and somewhat rusty, and is coarse and easily saved. Near the mouth of Mystery Creek a hole 102 feet deep was sunk, but no values were found. In 1907 and for the succeeding two years there has been mining on this creek, but the production was small though the returns were commensurate with the amount of time spent.

Melsing Creek was one of the first creeks on which gold was discovered, and it has been a constant though small producer ever since. According to the 1900 report, 40 men were engaged on the creek. Collier estimates that up to 1904 about $50,000 had been taken from this stream. The auriferous gravels seem to occur only below the mouth of Basin Creek. From this part of the creek the small pieces of gold are reported to be nearly all smooth and bright, whereas the larger ones are rusty. Richest concentration occurs on a clay layer. At the mouth of Basin Creek the gold is found throughout the gravel, but is most abundant on and in bed rock. Collier states that the average yield per man per day in 1903 was about $50.[a] One of the nuggets examined by him from this claim showed a small, square hole filled with hydrous iron oxide, probably the mould of a pyrite crystal associated with the gold.

In 1906 there had been four parties of 3 to 10 men each on Melsing Creek below Basin Creek. In 1907 a steam scraper was built at the mouth of Melsing Creek, but delays in building prevented its running full time. Work still continued near the mouth of Basin Creek and a short distance down stream. During 1908 and 1909 work was continued on about the same scale and at the same places as in the past, and, in addition, during the last-mentioned year, some mining was done on the lower part of Basin Creek. The operations were, however, on a small scale and the production was slight.

Ophir Creek is the most important gold producer in the Council region. By 1903, according to Collier, the entire creek had been prospected, and during that year 1,000 men were at work on the main stream and its tributaries. Gradually the number of men employed has decreased, but this has been due in part to the replacement of hand labor by mining machinery. Some mining was done in 1903 at the mouth of this stream in the Niukluk River flats. These gravels are estimated to carry from 50 cents to $1 a yard in bright, nearly flour, gold. Concentrates show much magnetite and garnet, with smaller quantities of pyrite and ilmenite. This deposit was developed

[a] Idem, p. 242.

by a steam dredge with an estimated capacity of about 3,000 cubic yards per day. Bed rock is rather deep and the difficulty of handling the water makes mining expensive. According to Collier, the gold has been derived not only from Ophir Creek, but also from the other streams.

Farther up Ophir Creek the gold becomes coarser and the values per cubic yard are higher. After a short experiment on the ground near the mouth of Ophir Creek already described the dredge was moved upstream and has been in successful operation ever since. In an account of this dredge recently published by Rickard[a] it is shown that the average cost is 32 cents a yard and the average gold tenor of the gravels worked is 84 cents a yard. The low value per yard is in part due to the fact that some of the ground had been worked before by more primitive methods.

Next upstream on Ophir Creek from the dredge, hydraulic mining has been tried and some good placer has been uncovered. The ground mined is now mainly on a low bench, but in the past the creek gravels have been worked by pick-and-shovel methods with satisfactory results. Still farther upstream and only a short distance below Sweetcake Creek is the Discovery claim. It has been worked for several years but was finally exhausted by the use of hydraulic elevators. The values were in fairly coarse gold of a bright color. This claim was probably the second richest on the entire creek and it is reported that $1,000,000 was taken from it.

Sweetcake Creek was staked in 1898 and was the scene of probably the first successful placer mining in the precinct, it being reported[b] that $36,000 were taken from one claim that year. The only productive claims are on the lower part of this stream; they were notable contributors in the early days of the camp, although since 1903 little gold has been won from them. Some of the gold was angular and showed quartz attached.

Little of value has been found on the main stream for nearly 1 mile above Sweetcake Creek. At this place, however, there is creek and bench ground that has been very rich. Pick-and-shovel methods were used even in the early days and in 1907 an unsuccessful attempt was made to use a dry-land dredge, which was followed by the successful use of a derrick and horse scrapers. The pay streak in the creek was from 100 to 200 feet wide. The bench gravel near this place, according to Collier, was not well sorted.[c] The pay streak is said to run 10 to 15 cents a pan. One nugget worth $3.75 is reported by Collier to have been found here, but nearly all the gold is fine and flaky.

---

[a] Rickard, T. A., Dredging on Seward Peninsula: Min. and Sci. Press, vol. 97, 1908, pp. 234–240.

[b] Collier, A. J., and others, op. cit., pp. 250–251.

[c] Idem, p. 245.

From this place nearly to the mouth of Dutch Creek the Ophir Creek gravels and benches have yielded probably nearly $750,000 in gold. In the central portion of this part of the valley the presence of limestone bedrock allows a large portion of the water to flow in subterranean channels and it is notable that the quantity of gold in the gravels decreases also. At the mouth of Dutch Creek the richest claim in the whole Ophir Creek basin was located, and, although now exhausted, this claim and the claim next below probably produced nearly a quarter of the gold won in the entire Council region. Much of the gold seems to have been of local origin, as pieces with quartz attached were by no means uncommon. On Dutch Creek little has been done and then only on the lower claims adjacent to Ophir Creek. Values are reported both in the creek and bench gravels.

Above Dutch Creek the values in Ophir Creek suddenly decrease and then gradually increase toward the northwest to within a mile or so of Crooked Creek. All of the claims between these two side streams have been mined to some extent. A mile and a half above Dutch Creek, according to Collier,[a] excavations show from 5 to 14 feet of gold-bearing gravel resting upon broken limestone bedrock, and three-fourths of a mile to the north 6 feet of sand and muck rest upon about 12 feet of gravel of which the upper 2 or 3 feet carry very little gold.

In 1903 the only other work done on Ophir Creek was near the mouth of Crooked Creek. "Here terrace gravels on the left bank were being exploited. The bedrock of the deposit is probably little above the present creek. A section showed 2 or 3 feet of muck overlying 5 or 6 feet of gravel which rested on calcareous schist."[b] No work was in progress during 1906, but near this place during 1908 and 1909 a small dredge was installed and according to local reports was giving satisfaction in handling creek gravels.

Crooked Creek has been one of the richest tributaries of Ophir Creek. Collier noted that in 1903 more men were employed there than on any one of the other side streams. Near the junction of this stream with Ophir Creek the pay streak is about 250 feet wide, but it narrows rapidly upstream. According to Collier,[c] the pay streak is reported to have been about 6 feet thick. The gold tenor of the gravels mined is estimated at $4.50 to the cubic yard. The gold is comparatively coarse and the pieces well rounded. Some are bright and others are iron stained. In the sluice boxes are found heavy concentrates consisting principally of garnet and magnetite, but including some topaz. Above the lower claim the pay streak is, in the main, not more than 20 feet wide and the bedrock is a schistose limestone.

[a] Idem, p. 249.
[b] Collier, A. J., and others, op. cit., p. 250.
[c] Idem, p. 252.

Balm of Gilead Gulch, which enters Crooked Creek from the southwest, had gold "from the surface down, but is richest in the crevices of the limestone. The gold is rough and angular, with sharp corners,"[a] and is undoubtedly of local origin. Albion Gulch contains auriferous gravels throughout its course. In 1907 two camps were established on this stream, and a rich hillside placer was mined by hydraulicking. The difficulty of obtaining an adequate constant supply of water has much hampered developments on both of these gulches.

Above Crooked Creek the valley of Ophir Creek has been prospected, but little actual mining has been done. Near the upper end of the canyon of Ophir Creek there is a little bench gravel, which was being developed at the time Brooks visited the region in 1903. Although this work may have yielded wages, it was not highly remunerative and was soon abandoned. Further prospecting was undertaken here in 1907, but was not successful in locating placer.

From the general distribution of the values in the Ophir Creek gravels it seems evident that many of the rich placers of the stream are formed by the reconcentration of former bench deposits. At other places, however, it seems clear that the richness is due to proximity to local mineralization. Collier notes that a sample taken from the schists adjacent to some quartz stringers near the mouth of Ophir Creek contained some gold and that samples crushed in a hand mortar and panned yielded free gold. On Crooked Creek there "is a mineralized belt 12 feet wide, which strikes northwest. In this impregnated zone vein quartz is associated with pyrite. It is reported to assay as high as $8 to the ton."[b] Near this place on the divide, between Gold Bottom and Crooked creeks, there is a lode which seems to be similar to the one previously noted; it is significant as pointing to the origin of some, at least, of the Crooked Creek gold, which is very sharp and angular and in many instances has quartz attached. None of these mineralized veins have been mined, and it is doubtful whether the diffused character of the mineralization would permit economic treatment. The absence of valuable placer in the upper part of Ophir Creek, beyond the canyon, strongly suggests that the gold was not derived from the biotite schists that occur in the Bendeleben Mountains.

Farther up the Niukluk is Camp Creek. Mining on this stream was described by Collier[c] as follows:

Camp Creek flows into the Niukluk from the south about a mile below Gold Bottom Creek. Several claims were worked on this creek in 1904. The auriferous gravel is from 50 to 100 feet wide and about 3 feet thick, with an over-

[a] Idem, p. 254.
[b] Collier, A. J., and others, op. cit., p. 252.
[c] Idem, p. 256.

burden of about 3 feet, and is said to carry from 75 cents to $1 a cubic yard. Most of the mining was done by the shoveling-in process, but one claim was hydraulicked.

Only a little desultory work has been done on this stream within the last two or three years.

The next gold-producing tributary of the Niukluk from the north above Ophir Creek is Goldbottom Creek, with its tributary, Warm Creek. Mining began on Warm Creek in 1900 and up to 1903 the basin is estimated to have produced about $100,000. "Most of the gold is rough and iron stained, and some of it is almost black. One nugget, worth $45.10, at $16 an ounce, was found in 1902; and one worth $12.33 in 1903. The concentrates contain ilmenite, scheelite, magnetite, garnet, and some hematite and rutile."[a] Mining has been confined to the portion of the stream near the junction of Warm and Goldbottom Creeks, but colors of gold have been reported from many parts of the basin. During 1906 there was a little mining, but since then practically nothing was done until 1909, when two dredges were erected in the lower part of the valley. It was so late before the dredges were completed that their production for 1909 was slight. Mineralization on a small scale is recognized at many places, and a short distance upstream a vein on which some development work has been done was found at the contact of schist and limestone. "Near the mouth of the creek are two quartz veins, one about 3 feet wide and the other about 1 foot wide, striking N. 30° E. and standing nearly vertical."[b] As the pebbles in the placers all seem to be of local origin, it is probable that the gold is also derived from veins within the basin.

On Elkhorn Creek mining began in 1900 and was reported upon by Richardson[c] as follows:

> Near the mouth of the creek 2½ feet of gravel overlie 6 inches of clay and disintegrated bed rock. It is reported by miners that the pay streak is in patches and that the average yield of pans is 5 cents. The bench near the mouth gives colors, but has not been developed. The bed rock is mica schist, interbedded with limestone, and the strike is at right angles to the course of the stream, with almost vertical dips, giving favorable conditions for the concentration of gold. The gold is medium coarse and bright yellow in color. Some very coarse gold has been found stained with iron. The average assay shows its value to be $19.12 an ounce. Quartz is often found attached to the placer gold, and one nugget was attached to a piece of mica schist. This goes to show that it is of local origin. One nugget worth $55 has been found, and several worth from $12 to $16.

---

[a] Idem, p. 256.

[b] Idem, p. 255.

[c] Brooks, A. H., and others, Reconnaissances in the Cape Nome and Norton Bay regions, Alaska, in 1900, a special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901.

In 1903 this stream was visited by Collier,[a] who reported as follows concerning mining developments:

> Since 1900 the placers for about half a mile have been entirely exhausted, but farther up the creek work is still (1903) in progress both in the creek bed and on the benches. It is estimated that the total production of the creek up to date (1903) has been from $110,000 to $120,000.

After 1903 very little work was done on this stream, and when it was visited in 1906 it was practically abandoned and since that time mining operations have not been resumed.

BLUFF REGION.

The region around Bluff has not been visited by Survey geologists since 1906, and the following descriptions are taken from Brooks's report of his visit at that time.[b] In order to condense the account certain parts have been left out and the arrangement has been changed. To connect the retained portions words, phrases, and sentences have been introduced. So many changes have been made that quotation marks have been omitted. Gold is said to have been found at Daniels Creek in September, 1899, by William Hunter and Frank Walker. Beach placer was soon after located and within less than six months $600,000 had been taken from a strip of land less than 1,000 feet long. Meanwhile, the two lowest claims on Daniels Creek were opened and in 1900 yielded probably $200,000 in gold. Most of the production of 1901–2 came from Discovery Claim, at the mouth of Daniels Creek. Meanwhile gold had been found on Eldorado and Ryan creeks and on Swede Gulch. In 1902 a strong company was organized and has ever since been in practical control of the important placer ground. Figure 13 shows graphically many of the more important features of the Daniels Creek placers.

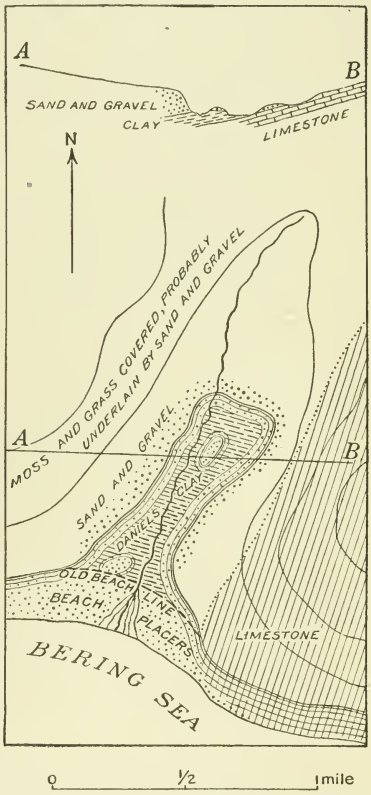


FIGURE 13.—Sketch map and section of Daniels Creek placers.

The placers are of two types, beach placers and creek placers, the former consisting of ancient and recent beaches. The alluvial mate-

[a] Collier, A. J., and others, op. cit., p. 257.

[b] Brooks, A. H., The Bluff region (in The gold placers of parts of Seward Peninsula, Alaska) : Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 328, 1908, pp. 283–293.

rial of the creeks is of two general types, that in which clay predominates and that which is chiefly sand. In many places no structure can be made out in the clays; the bedding of the sands and gravels is of the greatest irregularity, locally changing its character every few feet. The indications are very strong that the layers of clay, which in general lie near the bottom of the deposit, are formed almost in place, whereas the sands and gravels appear to have been laid down in swiftly running water. Near the head of the creek the surficial deposits consist chiefly of clay, but near its mouth sands and gravels predominate.

Little can be said of the distribution of pay gravels. The managers of the hydraulic mine report that in general the clay carries higher values than the sand and gravel. This is very significant, for it appears to be established that the sand and gravel have been far more concentrated than the clay. It would indicate a large gold tenor for the rock from which the clay has been derived. In any event there can be no question that the gold is very near its bed-rock source, which appears to be at the contact of mica schist and limestone.

From an examination of the Daniels Creek placers several facts are evident—first, the source of the gold is entirely local; second, where it is richest, as in the red-clay deposits, there appears to have been little sorting action by water; third, the gold is so intimately associated with mica schist débris that most probably the schist has a close connection with its origin. It is evident that the stream gradients must have been low during the period of the formation of the clay. The area was probably exposed for a long time to the agencies of weathering and an irregularly pitted land surface was produced. An uplift followed, as a result of which the carrying power of the streams was increased and the deposits of sand and gravel were laid down. At Daniels Creek this uplift gave the former level a slight tilt to the west, as is shown by the bedding of the gravels. The elevated beach deposit appears to have been formed prior to this uplift, but it would require a very detailed survey to establish this fact. The presence of gold at a depth of 60 feet near the mouth of Daniels Creek reported in 1907 may indicate either a deep zone of weathering or a buried ancient beach line. A subsequent uplift, which probably did not exceed 8 feet at the coast, exposed this older beach in part to wave action and this led to reconcentration of the gold in the gravels of the present beach.

The other creeks of the district besides Daniels Creek have been but little developed, for none of them carry a sluice head of water except early in the spring or during heavy rains. Eventually, how-

ever, they will all be hydraulicked with water from the Topkok ditch. Sluicing has been done on about half a dozen claims on Eldorado Creek, and some work has been done on Ryan and Little Anvil creeks. So far as the scanty exposures show, the mode of occurrence of the gold on these streams is similar to that of Daniels Creek, but the deposits are probably not so rich and the auriferous gravels not so extensive.

BUCKLAND RIVER BASIN.

The only stream tributary to Buckland River, on which gold placer has been found, is Bear Creek, which heads in the ancient lava hills that form the western margin of the basin. The first claims recorded on this stream were located by R. S. Hoxie, L. Tendness, and A. Barr, in August, 1901. During 1903, according to Moffit,[a] about 40 men were at work on Bear Creek and its tributaries, Sheridan and Cub creeks, but as only about $10,000 in gold was won from this basin during that year it is evident that the work was not very profitable. Figure 14 shows the location of the principal places where auriferous gravels have been found on this creek.

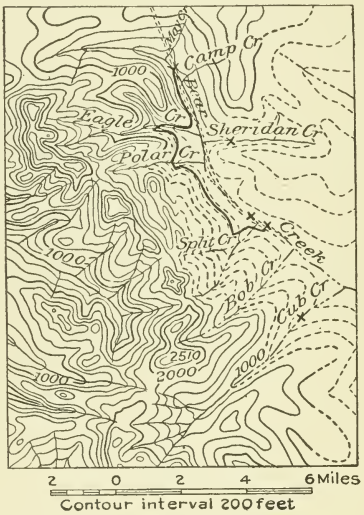


FIGURE 14.—Map showing location of placer camps on Bear Creek.

Mica schist is said not to be found in this creek, although mica does appear in the sands and gravels, which are composed largely of eruptive material, and on some of the bench claims reach a thickness of 20 feet, with several feet of muck overlying. In places on the creek a considerable quantity of a heavy red cherty rock remains in the boxes with the gold and is a source of some annoyance to the miner. This is especially true on Cub Creek. On Sheridan and Bear creeks the gold is mostly on bed rock, differing in this respect from that on Cub Creek, where it is found throughout the whole thickness of the 2 feet of stream gravel; on the other hand, gold from Bear and Cub creeks is light and flaky, while that from Sheridan is heavy. All the gold is bright yellow in color, assaying $19.20 to the ounce. A little "white iron" pyrite is present and also an abundance of black sand, which is entirely removed by the magnet.[b]

From 1903 to 1907 a little desultory prospecting and mining was done, but during the latter year the building of a ditch along the west slope of the valley revived interest in the region. The small precipitation of 1908, however, prevented any extensive use of the new

[a] Moffit, F. H., The Fairhaven gold placers, Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 247, 1905, p. 64.

[b] Moffit, F. H., op. cit., p. 64.

ditch, and in 1909 there was no evidence that productive mining was in progress.

In spite of the small production of gold, this region is of interest as indictaing that the placer has been derived from the ancient lavas that form the Buckland and Kewalik divide. It will be remembered that this source of origin was suggested as a possibility for the placers on Alameda Creek in the Koyuk basin, which is on the southern extension of this lava series. It should be pointed out, however, that although a little local mineralization may have affected this group of rocks here and there, so far as can be foretold by present indications, there is slight chance of finding any considerable extent of rich placer on those streams where the ancient lavas form the country rock. In other words, it is believed that only "one man camps" will be established on streams deriving their gravels from areas of ancient lavas.

KIWALIK RIVER BASIN.

The main production of Kiwalik River comes from Candle Creek and its tributaries. As the larger part of this stream lies outside of the area represented on the map accompanying this report and as the region was not visited in 1909 by the geologists of the Survey party it is desirable to omit any detailed description of the placers. As complete descriptions as the facts in hand warranted have already been published by the Survey.[a] From these reports it will be learned that the production from Candle Creek, on which gold was discovered in 1901, has amounted to about $2,500,000 in gold. During the first years of the camp most of the values came from the creek gravels, but afterward high-level deposits were found which seem to be of a type intermediate petween bench and hillside placers. As these deposits are in places deep, mining has been carried on in winter as well as in summer. According to Moffit:[b]

> The gold is usually flattened and black so that when cleaning out the boxes miners are often seen biting a nugget to make sure that it is gold and not one of the iron stones. Quartz is at times embedded in the larger nuggets and gold is observed now and then in the form of fine veinlets through the iron stones. One nugget weighing $62.10 and a second weighing $36 have been taken from the creek.
>
> Black sand is unknown in the clean ups; pyrite and a few small pieces of rutile which occasionally have been mistaken by the miners for tin ore are the heavy minerals associated with the gold; it is not considered a favorable sign when the iron stones fail.

So far as is known all of the material in the Candle Creek placers is of local origin, although the source of the gold in bed rock has not been determined.

---

[a] Moffit, F. H., The Fairhaven gold placers, Seward Peninsula, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 247, 1905.

Henshaw, F. F., Mining in the Fairhaven precinct: Bull U. S. Geol. Survey No. 379, 1909, pp. 364–369.

[b] Moffit, F. H., op. cit., p. 62.

During the early development of this region considerable difficulty was experienced owing to the lack of a sufficient supply of water for mining. This deficiency was met in part by the construction of short ditches within the Candle Creek basin, but as the supply was still inadequate a ditch over 33 miles in length was built in 1907 along the west band of Kiwalik River from the mouth of Glacier Creek to the mouth of Candle Creek. This ditch has a capacity of 20 to 30 second-feet and the height of the lower end above Kiwalik River at that point is about 250 feet. Henshaw[a] in the report already mentioned suggests that the most practical method of obtaining a larger water supply is by pumping from Kiwalik River. Power for such an enterprise might be derived either by using Chicago Creek coal as fuel or by the transformation of water power below Imuruk Lake into electricity.

SUMMARY.

From the distribution of the areas where placers of economic importance have been mined certain facts of value in assisting further prospecting may be learned. Some of the more evident conclusions are as follows: The Cretaceous areas are not promising placer regions and neither are those places promising that derive their deposits mainly from Cretaceous rocks, as, for instance, the marine deposits on the east shore of Norton Bay; no placers of other than distinctly local importance occur in regions deriving their gravels from the pre-Cretaceous igneous rocks; no placers at all have been found in the gravels derived solely from the recent effusive rocks; no gravel deposits derived entirely from the limestones of Paleozoic age contain gold in workable quantities; local placers may occur near the post-Cretaceous intrusions; the most extensive placers occur in the areas of metamorphic sedimentary schists, especially near their contact with the heavy limestones; gold placers are usually found where concentration of gravel derived from the Paleozoic black quartzite has occurred. These general conditions are modified by local conditions; thus in places where concentration has been strong richer deposits are to be expected than in places where less sorting has occurred. From this fact it follows that the glaciated areas hold less promise of placer deposits than the unglaciated areas.

LODE PROSPECTS.

Although, as has been shown, placer gold has been found on many of the streams in the area of metamorphic rocks, no veins sufficiently rich to allow lode mining have been discovered. This is probably in part due to the absence of adequate prospecting. Quartz veins

[a] Henshaw, F. F., op. cit., p. 368.

containing gold have been found at many places and at a few places pits have been sunk; copper sulphides have also been found; and silver-bearing galena has been known almost since the first white men visited the region.

GOLD LODE PROSPECTS.

In order to give an idea of the places where auriferous veins have been exploited the following notes may be of service.

A sample taken from the schists adjacent to some quartz stringers near the mouth of Ophir Creek contained gold in such quantities that when crushed in a hand mortar and panned free gold was obtained. On Crooked Creek, a tributary of Ophir Creek, there "is a mineralized belt 12 feet wide which strikes northwest. In this impregnated zone vein quartz is associated with pyrite. It is reported to assay as high as $8 to the ton."[a] Near this place, on the divide between Goldbottom and Crooked creeks, is a gold-bearing vein which seems to be a continuation of this lead. Mineralization on a small scale has been recognized at several places on Goldbottom and Warm creeks, and a short distance from the mouth of Warm Creek a vein, on which some development work had been done, was found at the contact of schist and limestone. "Near the mouth of the creek [Warm Creek] are two quartz veins, one about 3 feet wide and the other about 1 foot wide, striking N. 30° E."[b]

No productive lodes have so far been found in the Bluff region. Brooks says:[c]

> So far as observed, the schists appear to be mineralized only near their contacts with the limestones. At these places quartz veins cutting the foliation of the schists are not uncommon. The individual veins appear to be of small extent, but at some localities a stockwork forms a considerable mass of low-grade ore. The ores appear to be chiefly iron pyrite with some chalcopyrite and arsenopyrite. * * *
>
> An impregnated zone is well exposed along the sea cliff about three-fourths of a mile east of the mouth of Daniels Creek. * * * At this locality a belt of mica schist about 60 feet wide is more or less impregnated by pyrite-bearing quartz stringers. The belt, including some irregular limestone masses, is bounded by graphitic limestone walls which dip away from the schists and form a small anticline much broken by faults. * * * At the west contact a band of schist 20 feet in cross section lies between one of the included limestone masses and the country rock. In this band the mineralization is more intense than in the rest of the schist. Here a series of gash veins, the largest of which is 18 inches in width, cut the foliation of the schist. [See fig. 15.] A mass of crushed material or gouge forms the hanging wall of this deposit and along this zone, which has been a plane of movement, the quartz veins are cut off abruptly. Stringers of quartz do, however, occur in the limestone on both sides of the schist. The ore appears to be chiefly iron pyrite and mispickel, with some chalcopyrite; the gangue is mostly quartz, with some calcite.

---

[a] Collier, A. J., and others, op. cit., p. 252.
[b] Idem, p. 255.
[c] Brooks, A. H., op. cit., pp. 285–292.

Although this mineralized zone was known for several years not much active exploitation was undertaken until 1907. At one claim a shaft 50 feet deep was sunk and a short drift about 15 feet in length was turned off. On the adjoining claim the zone of mineralization is so wide that two shafts, one on the hanging wall and one on the foot wall, have been sunk. One of these is reported to be 100 feet deep; the other is slightly less than half that depth. On the next claim, also, two shafts have been sunk to a depth of approximately 50 feet. Two shorter shafts have been put down on the next claim, and one shaft about 75 feet deep has been sunk near the end line of the next claim beyond. In 1907 the ore from these properties was crushed in an arrastra which was operated by a horse; it was intended to erect a stamp mill later. The developments at this place, however, have not been ascertained for the last two years.

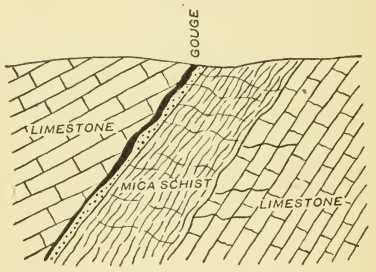


FIGURE 15.—Diagrammatic section of impregnated zones, Bluff region.

According to Brooks, in 1906 a lode 3 miles east of Bluff had been developed to some extent.[a] It was located near the shore, and was said to be 14 feet wide and to yield as much as $30 in gold to the ton. The ore is reported to be iron pyrite and mispickel. A few tons have been sacked and prepared for shipment but practically nothing is known about the mode of occurrence.

A small amount of prospecting has been done near the head of Walla Walla Creek somewhat east of the contact of the igneous rocks and the black quartzitic slates. Although rich specimens are said to have been found here, a careful examination of the rock on the dump failed to disclose enough mineralization to encourage further prospecting. A small amount of limonite staining the joints and fracture planes of the rocks was observed, but there is no vein or distinct lead. Developments at this place consist of an open cut about 25 feet long and a crosscut adit, started about 500 feet away and down the hillside, which has gone in 38 paces (about 100 feet), all the way through barren rock. An analysis of rock from this open cut by Peter Esch, of Nome, gave a trace of gold.

As placer gold is derived from veins, it is certain that auriferous veins must occur widely throughout the area. Whether such veins can be economically mined is a question which can be decided only by more active development. It is probable that if auriferous veins are

[a] Brooks, A. H., op. cit., p. 292.

exploited in the future the mining problems involved will fall within commercial rather than geologic boundaries.

SILVER-LEAD DEPOSIT.

Within the area of metamorphic rocks of southeastern Seward Peninsula one deposit of argentiferous galena has been of some economic value. This lode, staked in 1881, was probably the second one discovered in the entire territory of Alaska. Although the claims were not recorded until July, 1881, galena had been known for a year or more before, and Petrof, in the census report for 1880, mentions that silver-lead ore had been found in the vicinity of Golofnin Bay. The developments at this place have been carried on at a single group of claims located on a low limestone-schist hill on the western flanks of the Darby Range. As has already been stated, the claims were located in 1881. In 1882 a company was formed which in 1883 was absorbed by the Omilak Gold and Silver Mining Company, which continued to hold the ground until 1898, when the Russian-American Mining Exploration Company took the properties. This transfer was one of name rather than of personnel. The claims were patented in 1894.

The geology in the vicinity of the mine is so complex that without more detailed study than was made in 1909 the stratigraphy is not determinable. East of the mine, toward the head of Omilak Creek, is a large area of white crystalline limestone, which, in the main, appears to dip westward at high angles. This is succeeded farther west by schistose rocks containing much biotite and quartz and some graphite. Still farther west, in the immediate neighborhood of the mine, the distribution of the various rocks is as shown in figure 6 (p. 64). Although from this map it appears that the dip is in general to the west, the evidence on the ground shows that the rocks are much deformed, and appressed folds, such as are shown in Plate XIII, *A* (p. 90), have been recognized. This fold, which pitches steeply toward the west, is shown at A on figure 6 (p. 90). It is evident that with such an amount of folding this structure is by no means so simple as appears at first sight, and even the determination of bedding is often impossible. It is believed, though it has not been definitely proved, that the schists represent younger or overlying rocks.

In addition to the dark biotite schist and the limestones there is an area of slightly sheared igneous rock similar to the greenstones of the more western part of Seward Peninsula. Although the exposures were not sufficiently clear to preclude other interpretations, it seems probable that these greenstones intrude the limestones. Owing to the amount of deformation and consequent metamorphism it is probable that some of the greenstones are included in the areas

mapped as schist. The fact that the greenstone is more easily recognizable in the midst of the limestone may be due to the protection given it by that rock, which is more easily deformed than the schist, whose resistance to dynamic metamorphism is more nearly equal to that of the igneous rocks.

According to Mendenhall the ore occurs near the contact of this intrusive and the limestone.[a] From the study of the region in 1909 this conclusion could not be verified as the shaft was inaccessible and the only mineralization seen was in the midst of the limestone. In the absence, however, of ore-bearing minerals in the greenstone it seems doubtful whether the galena could have been introduced at the time of the intrusion. Furthermore, the well crystallized character of the ore suggests that its deposition was later than the deformation of the region, whereas the greenstone was earlier.

Two kinds of ore minerals are found in this deposit—argentiferous galena and stibnite. So far no interrelation between the two has been shown, but it is believed that both were introduced at essentially the same time. It should be noted that the deposits containing the galena seem to be topographically above those with stibnite.

From the reports of others—as it was not possible to see the underground workings personally—it was learned that "no continuous vein of galena ore existed, the ore being found only in irregular and disconnected pockets."[b] None of the pockets were of large size and the better ones occurred entirely within the limestone. Some of the ore was thickly covered with products of oxidation, mostly lead carbonate.

About 400 paces south of the galena shaft there are a shaft and an incline which were used to explore the stibnite leads. The limestone is much fractured and the ore occurs in thin streaks in the shattered zone. None of the veins seen by the writers are of sufficient size to warrant mining. The stibnite is well crystallized, the thicker stringers apparently occupying fault planes and sending small offshoots into the limestone, which, near the ore, is abnormally granular and sugary.

Considering the number of years the ground has been held and the large expenditures incurred, the amount of development work is astonishingly small. A shaft 180 feet deep has been sunk near the eastern margin of the limestone on top of the hill, and two short drifts have been turned off in the search for ore pockets. The upper part of the shaft is in limestone, but the lower is in schist, as the contact dips toward the west. The shaft is well timbered and is fairly dry. Hoisting is done by power, a bucket not running on guides

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., op. cit., p. 214.
[b] Idem, pp. 213–214.

being used. Electric lights are used around the shaft house and underground. Two outfits for drilling have been used, one an air compressor and air drills and the other an electric drill plant. Electricity for these uses is furnished by a coal-oil engine located near the main bunk house on Omilak Creek.

At 200 to 300 feet, vertically, above Omilak Creek an adit has been started to intersect the shaft in depth and thus obviate the necessity of hoisting the rock to the top of the hill and then taking it down again for shipment. The length of the adit is 187 paces, or, approximately, 500 feet; this distance was in massive white limestone somewhat shattered, but nowhere showing mineralization.

In addition to the equipment directly at the mine there are bunk and store houses at Cheenik, on Fish River, and also half a mile or so below the mine on Omilak Creek. At the latter place are a repair shop, electric plant, assay laboratory, electric sawmill, stable, and the other equipment usually found only at large producing mines. The company also owns a large river steamer originally built for freighting the mine supplies up the river, but it has never been used.

The production of the mine is not definitely known, but it has probably not been more than 400 nor less than 300 tons. A part of this was obtained from the various pockets below ground, but a considerable amount is understood to have come from hand picking the float found on the hillside. The following tables show the returns from assays of the ore as shipped. It should be noted that owing to the high transportation charges the ore was carefully hand picked and in some cases washed before shipping.

Returns from assays of ore as shipped from Omilak mine.

	Weight (pounds).	Gold (value per ton).	Silver (value per ton).	Lead (pounds per ton).	Lead (value per ton).	Total value per ton.
1	4,230	.....	137.29	1,538	61.52	198.81
2	545	2.07	106.62	1,320	52.80	161.49
3	130,000	3.09	98.72	1,128	45.12	146.93
4	68,078	.....	104.00	1,300	52.00	156.00
5	12,167	2.07	125.19	1,440	57.60	184.86
6	82,100	.....	132.95	1,494	59.76	192.71
7	86,885	7.43	49.60	502	20.08	77.11
8	27,787	1.54	41.40	606	24.24	67.18
9	13,606	1.54	38.10	566	22.64	62.28
10	2,675	1.03	54.93	770	30.80	86.76
11	6,569	2.07	46.46	890	35.60	84.13
12	164	7.53	65.54	816	32.64	105.71
13	595	2.07	71.15	980	39.20	112.42
14	380	2.07	86.86	966	38.64	127.57
15	26,175	2.07	120.33	1,222	48.88	171.28

1 to 6 inclusive, solid ore from Omilak mine, tons of 2,000 lbs.; 7 to 14, inclusive, carbonate ores from Omilak mine; 15, carbonate ore concentrated by washing in sluice boxes.

Unfortunately, in these assays the data are not sufficient to determine the percentage of any of the constituents except the lead, and

therefore the following assays, less complete in certain other ways, are given also:

Silver and lead in ore from Omilak mine.

	Silver (ounces per ton).	Lead (per cent).
1	173.00	75.0
2	141.00	80.7
3	158.00	78.0
4	153.70	82.0
5	162.97	78.5
6	149.16	73.0
7	142 20	74.7
8	94.30	55.9
9	60.7	10.27

Assays 1–2 by Herford Copper Works, Swansea, England; 3 by Pennsylvania Lead Company, Pittsburg, Pa.; 4–6 by W. P. Miller, San Francisco; 7 by T. Price, San Francisco; 8–9 reported by W. C. Mendenhall, op. cit., p. 214; 8 yellow carbonate ore; 9 red carbonate ore.

Assays and relative weights of part of the different ores shipped by the Omilak mine in 1889, with the price paid in open market for the same are given in the following table:

Assays and weights of ore shipped by Omilak mine in 1889.

Commercial name.	Weight (pounds).	Gold (ounces per ton).	Silver (ounces per ton).	Lead (per cent).	Price received per ton.
Red carbonate	380	0.1	92.9	48.3	$93.00
Gray carbonate	595	.1	76.1	49.0	81.00
Yellow carbonate	6,569	.1	49.7	44.5	57.00
Argentiferous galena	82,100	.....	142.2	74.7	154.00

It is evident that the ore is high in silver and also usually carries a small quantity of gold. Its metallurgical treatment is simple and the ore is especially valuable to mix with other more refractory ores. The absence of fuel at a reasonable price prevents treatment near the mine and the high charges for transportation restrict shipments to ores of the higher grade.

From the foregoing descriptions certain facts are evident, which may be summarized as follows: The claims have been inadequately prospected and large expenditures have been made, apparently without disclosing a workable vein; the ore found is of excellent quality, but the quantity, so far as could be determined by the writers, is not sufficient to warrant extensive developments. The most promising area to prospect is in the limestone near its contact with the schists, but the deposits likely to be found will probably be pockets not easily adaptable to cheap mining methods and not capable of affording a large, constant amount of ore.

COPPER PROSPECTS.

Attempts have been made to develop copper leads at three places within the Nulato-Council region, but so far the results have not been encouraging, and the general absence of sulphide mineralization throughout Seward Peninsula leads one to doubt whether commercially important deposits of copper will be found. Furthermore, the necessary treatment and refining that copper must undergo before manufacture makes this metal difficult to handle in a country where high wages, high cost of supplies, and absence of transportation facilities exist. It seems likely, therefore, that until one or all of these factors are canceled or reduced, copper mining can be successfully carried on only where the deposit is exceptionally rich. No such places are at present known in Seward Peninsula.

Several shallow prospect pits were sunk in 1906–7 in the hills near Timber Creek in the Tubutulik divide, on copper-stained greenstones, near their contact with limestone. A large outfit was shipped in and extensive plans formulated, but the mineralization was not sufficient to warrant development, and after a little desultory prospecting the ground was abandoned. Specimens of the ore from this claim were assayed and, according to the owners, yielded from 17 to 70 ounces of silver to the ton and from a few cents to $1 a ton in gold as well as copper. From the high copper content reported in these assays, it is evident that the sample for assay was carefully hand-picked. From a personal examination of specimens from this ground it appeared to the writers that the copper occurred almost exclusively in the form of malachite, the green carbonate of copper, and sulphides or other original minerals were practically absent. On account of the secondary character of the ore, it is difficult to ascertain the time or mode of origin of the copper mineralization. The observed facts show that the carbonate occupies fractures and joints in the greenstone, but this does not preclude its having been derived from the leaching of copper minerals originally present in the greenstone. So far as could be determined, the copper mineralization at this place is distinctly local and in such insignificant quantity as to discourage further investigation.

On the east coast of the Darby Peninsula, about 3 miles north of Carson Creek, a little copper mineralization was observed. A small amount of exploration by means of a short, open cut had been made, but no work was in progress at the time of the visit in 1909. The copper occurs mainly in the form of the carbonate, but there is also a little chalcocite present. This ore does not occur in a vein, but seems to be a replacement of parts of the schist, so that its distribution is irregular and discontinuous. Some is also found in the joint planes, as though it had been introduced later than the deformation of the country rock. There is a large amount of slickensiding on the rocks,

showing that faulting has occurred, and it is by no means improbable that the shattering effected by these movements may have produced a more or less pervious zone, which allowed easy penetration for mineralizing solutions. The amount of mineralization is, however, slight, and there seems to be no reason for believing that a commercially workable deposit will be found at this place.

A short distance farther south is an outcrop of a nearly pure white limestone, which, though slightly sheared, is in places much brecciated. A short tunnel has been driven in on this brecciated band. Apparently some surface stains had tempted exploitation, but as the work progressed and no vein or other mineralization was found the search was abandoned. From the present condition of the tunnel and the surrounding country rock one fails to understand why mining was ever contemplated at this place.

The only other place where copper prospecting has been undertaken within the Nulato-Council region is in the Bendeleben Mountains on the divide between Kingsland and Nugget creeks. These streams are tributaries of the Niukluk from the east about 4 miles south of the Birch Creek-Niukluk divide. Prospecting in this region has been carried on for five to eight years, but no shipment of ore has been made and no considerable body has been exposed. The ore occurs near the contact of a limestone and schist in a region much faulted and intruded by small granite dikes. The ore is low grade and consists mainly of chalcopyrite, with few alteration products. No distinct vein was found, the ore occurring mainly as a replacement of the country rock in disseminated lenses and strings. A little gold is reported to be associated with the copper, but neither its value nor its relation to the copper mineralization was learned.

Although of no commercial value, the occurrence of copper sulphides in a pink granite, with rather large feldspar crystals, on the upper part of Peace River 2 or 3 miles above camp B13, is noted as giving a suggestion of the time of introduction of some of the copper mineralization. At this place there is only a little copper, but it seems to have been brought in contemporaneously with the granite. As there is no evidence at the other places already described of the age of the mineralization, this occurrence becomes significant.

From the preceding accounts of the meager amount of development work on copper lodes it is evident that no deposits of value are known. In part this may be due to lack of thorough investigation, but it is believed to be due in the main to the absence of cupriferous veins. Therefore, although valuable copper may be discovered in the future, the present conditions do not warrant search unless the

enterprise is undertaken with the knowledge that the chances are against rather than in favor of success.

COAL RESOURCES.

Wherever the Cretaceous sediments are extensively developed throughout Alaska there are indications of coal. Some of these croppings in the area under discussion have been prospected and claims staked. Field examinations of some of the Alaskan coal deposits along Yukon River have been recently completed by Atwood, but the results have not yet been made available. Manuscript notes of the facts gathered by him concerning the Nulato region have, however, been furnished and have been of service in preparing the following paragraphs.

Fossils have not been found at many of the coal prospects and it is impossible to refer the various beds definitely to their proper geologic horizons. Closer correlations therefore than that the coals belong to the Upper Cretaceous will not be attempted, although it is believed that most of the deposits belong to the lower rather than the higher part of this series. One exception, in which the material is a very woody lignite, seems to be of much more recent age and is provisionally called post-Tertiary, mainly on account of its physical character.

For convenience of description a geographic order will be adopted. According to this plan, the deposits have been divided into, first, those occurring in the Yukon River drainage basin, and, second, those either in regions draining into Norton Bay or in Seward Peninsula.

YUKON BASIN.

The most eastern locality where coal has been prospected in this part of the Yukon basin is at Nahoclatilten or Louden, west of the mouth of the Melozitna. A description of these coals by Collier is as follows:[a]

> Two beds of coal were seen by the writer at this place, and two more are reported to have been uncovered in prospecting. The largest observed seam has a thickness of 1 foot. Below this seam there are about 5 feet of bony coal or coaly shale with stringers of coal. There are reported to be 3 smaller beds in the foot wall, each having a thickness of 10 inches. Owing to the apparent rather intense folding of these beds, it is impossible to place much reliance on these statements.
>
> The coal in the 1-foot seam is not crushed, although the beds are much disturbed in position. The following analysis shows it to be a bituminous coal of good quality. It is reported to have given satisfactory results in a blacksmith's forge.

[a] Collier, A. J., The coal resources of the Yukon, Alaska: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 218, 1903, pp. 47–48.

Analysis of coal (No. 241) from 1-foot seam 5 miles above Nahoclatilten.

[Analyst, E. T. Allen, U. S. Geol. Survey.]

	Per cent.
Water	6.88
Volatile combustible matter	41.82
Fixed carbon	48.93
Ash	2.37
	100.00
Sulphur	.65
Fuel ratio	1.17

Coke slightly coherent.

These coal beds have been known for several years, and various attempts have been made to open here coal beds of commercial importance, but thus far no seams thicker than 12 inches have been found.

No other coal prospects have been noted lower down on the Yukon until about midway between the mouth of the Koyukuk and Nulato. A mine, called from its owner the Pickart mine, was noted by Schrader in 1899; it is therefore one of the oldest coal mines in Alaska. According to Collier:[a]

At the Pickart mine one coal seam has been exploited which strikes N. 75° E. and dips 35° N. Two rolls, or horsebacks, are reported to occur in the floor of the coal bed. Whether these are in the nature of faults due to movement of strata along the coal bed or irregularities in deposition of the sediments constituting the floor the writer was unable to determine. Near these rolls the coal shows considerable crushing, which suggests that the roll is formed by deformation. The Pickart coal bed has a thickness of 30 inches at a distance of 300 feet from the entrance to the mine, but near one of the rolls above referred to the seam measured only 18 inches. Mr. W. E. Williams, manager of the Pickart mine, reports that in mining this coal a roll was encountered in the workings above the coal mine gangway in which the floor of the bed was raised up, pinching the coal down to a knife-edge thickness. The roll extended in a nearly straight line and approached the gangway at a rate of about 1 foot in 20. On cutting through this roll good coal was found.

Analyses of the coal from near this mine published by Collier are as follows:[b]

Analyses of semibituminous coking coal on the Yukon.

[No. 1 from 12 miles above Nulato, on the Yukon; analyst, George Steiger, U. S. Geol. Survey. Nos. 2 and 3 from Pickart mine, on the Yukon; analyst, E. T. Allen, U. S. Geol. Survey.]

	1.	2.	3.
Moisture	0.86	1.02	1.64
Volatile matter	25.75	27.33	24.98
Fixed carbon	66.51	65.03	58.18
Ash	6.88	6.62	15.20
Sulphur	.....	.56	.....
Fuel ratio	2.22	2.37	2.32

[a] Collier, A. J., op. cit., p. 50. [b] Idem, p. 62.

In 1907 this mine was visited by Atwood, who reports that no work had been in progress for several years. According to him there are at least four thin seams of coal stratigraphically higher than the one the mine was opened on. These upper beds are only from 6 to 8 inches in thickness, and are associated with carbonaceous shales, which show frequent signs of cross-bedding and ripple marks.

About a mile above Nulato, Collier noted a prospect hole sunk in the sandstones called Nulato sandstone by Dall. The section exposed showed 2½ feet of bony coal with several bands of clay. One 6-inch bed of clean coal was uncovered and, it is reported, was used to some extent for blacksmithing at Nulato. There has been no recent work at this prospect, and it is evident that the seam is too thin to invite further investigation.

Four miles below Nulato, in the name sandstone in which the other prospects already described occur, is a coal bed that has been opened to a small extent. This mine is locally known as the Busch mine. No mining has been done here for several years. Atwood, when he visited the prospect in 1907, reported that the slope had caved so as to make the mine inaccessible. According to Collier, at the time of his visit in 1903:

> In the tunnel, which extends about 40 feet, large bodies of crushed coal 4 to 5 feet in thickness are exposed. The coal is regarded as bituminous, having a fuel ratio of 1.76 and a water content of 11.17 per cent. The high percentage of water is probably due to decomposition of the coal in the croppings. No coal has been produced.[a]

Aanalysis of coal from Busch mine, 4 miles below Nulato.[b]

[Analyst, E. T. Allen, U. S. Geol. Survey.]

Moisture	11.17
Volatile matter	29.48
Fixed carbon	52.02
Ash	7.33
	100.00
Sulphur	.44
Fuel ratio	1.76

Coke, noncoherent.

About 5 miles below the Busch prospect is the Blatchford mine, which is also abandoned. Collier reports:[a]

> One workable coal bed has been opened at this place. This bed has been crushed and sheared by the movements of the inclosing strata, making it very irregular. Large masses 8 feet in diameter have been found and mined out, showing that before it was disturbed the coal bed probably had considerable thickness. The coal has a tendency to break up into fine pieces, though it is

[a] Collier, A. J., Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 213, 1903, p. 281.

[b] Collier, A. J., The coal resources of the Yukon: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 218, 1903, p. 53.

a bituminous coal having a fuel ratio of 3.30, the highest of any coal on the Yukon, and a water content of 1.36 per cent. The ash is only 2.22 per cent, making it, by approximate analysis, the best coal seen by the writer on the Yukon River.

This mine has no visible development or permanent equipment. The workings lie below the level of the river and the entrance is covered with water during the summer months, so that it can be worked only in the winter after the freezing of the river, where the ice filling the upper workings must be mined out before the coal can be reached. The mine has probably produced about 300 tons of coal.

The Williams coal mine is located on the west side of the Yukon just south of the mapped area. It has been more extensively developed than any of the mines already described, but as it does not come within the area covered by this report, description will be omitted except to state that in a broad way conditions are the same there as in the other prospects.

NORTON BAY BASIN AND SOUTHEASTERN SEWARD PENINSULA.

Coal has been reported at a number of places along the eastern shore of Norton Bay, but so far as known no beds of a sufficient size to allow profitable mining have been discovered. Dall mentions a 2-foot bed of shale and lignite, possibly Kenai in age, on Ulukuk River, a tributary of the Unalaklik from the north.[a] It was reported to have no commercial value. Brooks[b] states:

> Capt. D. H. Jarvis informed the writer that some very good-looking coal had been found near Unalaklik Cape near the eastern shore of Norton Sound. These [beds] probably belong to the same series described by Dall.

Several openings have been made near the mouth of the Koyuk on the western side close to camp B17. Unfortunately the shafts were not in condition to be examined, and the only information gained was from a study of the material on the dump, as there are no exposures of the coal-bearing rocks in the neighborhood. Although lignitic material was found at this place, several years of desultory prospecting have failed to disclose a workable bed. The shafts show a series of sandstones and clays which have weathered badly on the dump and appear much less consolidated than the average sandstones near Nulato. It is understood that during 1909 the company formerly interested in this claim abandoned the enterprise.

In this same region coal float has been found on Coal Creek and claims have been recorded, but none of them was being prospected in 1909. Probably little of value was found as the series is without doubt similar to that near camp B17.

---

[a] Dall, W. H., Correlation papers, Neocene: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 84, 1892, p. 246.

[b] Brooks, A. H., Coal resources of Alaska: Twenty-second Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, 1902, pt. 3, p. 560.

Mendenhall[a] says concerning his investigation in southeastern Seward Peninsula:

> The only rocks encountered in the reconnaissance likely to carry coal are the sediments supposed to be of Tertiary age outcropping on the Tubutulik and Koyuk rivers in narrow belts. No direct evidence of the presence of this mineral was secured on the Koyuk, but along the river bank associated with the sandstone outcrops on the Tubutulik are numbers of small pieces of bright compact coal seemingly of good quality.

The presence of this coal float has long been known to prospectors but so far no beds that would warrant investigation have been discovered.

As previously stated one locality was visited in 1909 where there is a woody lignite of relatively recent age and differing from those previously described. This exposure is on the Rathlatulik, a tributary of Fish River, about 10 miles above the junction of the streams. A shallow pit has been sunk here and slightly carbonized fragments of wood found. Underneath this layer of woody material is a blackish-green calcareous muck which is nearly flat or has a slight slope toward the east. A cross section of the valley at this point shows a low bench about 5 feet above the water, succeeded on the east by another bench 15 feet higher 100 paces beyond the stream and separated from the lower bench by a steep cliff. All the material from the stream to the top of the 15-foot cliff is well-rounded gravel. Several abandoned river beds are found on the lower bench.

The coal is not over 18 inches thick and is of poor quality, having advanced little beyond the wood stage. Resin is abundant in many of the samples of this material. No tests of the coal were made, but from its physical character it does not seem possible that it could be used for fuel except very locally. No accurate estimate of the amount of material available could be made without further exploitation, but it is believed to be of very slight extent and not of sufficient value to warrant further development.

CONCLUSIONS REGARDING THE COAL RESOURCES.

In the foregoing paragraphs the places where the coal-bearing rocks have been prospected to some extent have been described with the object of showing the general character of the known coal deposits. Indications of coal have been noted at many other places, but the types are essentially similar and do not merit specific description. There are certain conclusions that may be drawn from the facts that may save prospectors from spending their time unprofitably in the search of coal. Coal will be found only in the areas of Cretaceous sediments. No economically important beds are to be expected in

[a] Mendenhall, W. C., A reconnaissance in the Norton Bay region, Alaska, in 1900, a special publication of the U. S. Geol. Survey, 1901, p. 214.

the unconsolidated alluviums such as those in the Fish River basin on the Rathlatulik. From the fact that so far there is no productive mining on any of the coal-bearing rocks outcropping along the Yukon within the mapped area, it seems improbable that workable beds in the same series of rocks will be developed in the immediate future in the more remote regions where transportation facilities and markets are wanting. Although thicker beds may be found here and there, the additional cost of transportation for each mile that the deposit lies back from the river or from some other cheap avenue of communication increases much more rapidly than the thickness of the bed could be reasonably assumed to increase. It is improbable, therefore, that workable coal, where it is not now known, will be found in the Nulato-Council area.

INDEX.

A. Page.

Acknowledgments to those aiding 10–11
Admiral Creek. *See* Camp Creek.
Alameda Creek, gold on 110–115
gravel on 81
map of 110
rocks on 53
Albion Gulch, gold of 121
Anaconda Creek, gold on 116
Arvesta Creek, description of 19
Atwood, W. W., survey by 16, 57, 59, 60

B.

Baker Creek, moraine on 84
Bald Head, rocks of 53, 54
Basin Creek, gold on 118
Bear Creek, gold placers on 125–126
gold placers on, map of 125
gravel on 80
Bear River, rocks on 73–74
Bendeleben Mountains, character of 29–30
copper in 135
glaciation in 83–84
rocks of 42–44, 64, 68–71
veins in 75
Big Bar Creek, gold on 114
Birch Creek, rocks on 43, 69
Bishop Rock, rocks of 60
Blatchford mine, coal of 138–139
Bluff, gold near 123–125, 128–129
gravels at 79
lodes near, section showing 129
population near 38
rocks near 61, 63
figure showing 63
Bluff-Topkok Head area, rocks of 52
Bonanza Creek, placers on 105–108
rocks near 54, 55, 71
working methods at 106–107
Boston Creek, rocks on 50
Brooks, A. H., cited 52, 63, 82, 128, 139
preface by 7–8, 15
Brooks divide, character of 29
Buckland River, basin of, description of 28
basin of, gold in 125–126
rocks of 67–68
Busch mine, coal of 138
coal of, analysis of 138

C.

Calcite veins, character and distribution of 74
Camp Creek (of Niukluk), gold on 121–122
Camp Creek (of Tubutulik), gold on 115–116
Candle Creek, gold on 126–127

Page.

Caribou Creek, description of 19–20
Carson Creek, copper near 134
rocks on 65
Cheenik, veins near 75
Christmas Creek, gold on 108
Christmas Mountain, faulting at 89
formation of 98, 100
placers at 108–109
rocks of 54, 70, 105
Chukajak Creek, gold on 115
Climate, records of 35–38
Coal, occurrence and character of 136–141
Coal Creek, coal of 139
rocks on 53
Coast, features of 18, 30–32, 78–79
placers on 102–105
view of 30
Collier, A. J., cited 43, 69, 71, 73, 117–123, 128, 137–139
work of 16
Concretions, views of 56
Copper prospects, description of 134–136
Council, population near 38
rocks near 74
Council region, gold in 116, 117–123
Cretaceous rocks, coal in 136
occurrence and character of 39, 54–60, 97
Cretaceous time, coast in, deposition at 103–104
conditions, figure showing 103
events in 96–97
Crooked Creek, gold on 120–121, 128
Cub Creek, gold on 125

D.

Dall, W. H., work of 14
Daniels Creek, gold lodes on 128
gold placers on 123–124
map of 123
rocks on 63
section of, figure showing 63
Darby Peninsula, coast of, inclusions at, view of 66
coast of, view of 30
copper in 134
rocks of 61, 62
section of, figure showing 62
views of 46, 66
Darby Range, character of 29–30
glaciation in 83–84
effects of, view of 30
rocks near 44–45, 46–49, 61, 62, 64–67
section of, figure showing 62
structure in 89–90
veins in 74, 75
view of 50

Page.

Death Valley, gravels in ... 82
rocks of ... 42, 46
Devonian time, events in ... 95
Drainage, basins of, description of ... 18–32
character of ... 17-18
relation of, to geologic structure ... 23, 24
figure showing ... 23
Dust whirls, occurrence of ... 38
Dutch Creek, gold on ... 120

E.

Eakin, H. M., work of ... 8
Economic geology, account of ... 100–141
Effusive rocks, character and distribution of ... 71–74
deposition of ... 94, 95, 98, 100
Eldorado Creek, gold on ... 123, 125
Elevations, height of ... 27, 28
Elkhorn Creek, gold on ... 122–123
Erosion, period of ... 94, 98, 99, 100
Eskimos, homes of ... 38–39
Etchepuk River, description of ... 27
moraines near ... 84
rocks near ... 66
Exploration, history of ... 12–17

F.

Faults, occurrence and character of ... 86–92, 100
Field work, character and extent of ... 7–8, 9–10
Fish, occurrence of ... 35
Fish River, basin of, coal of ... 141
basin of, description of ... 25, 27
gold in ... 116–123
gravel in ... 82
glacial deposits in ... 84, 85
gold on ... 116, 117
rocks on ... 43, 49–51
Folds, diagram showing ... 91
occurrence and character of ... 86–92, 100
Forage, occurrence of ... 33
Fox Creek, gold on ... 47
gravel on ... 80
rocks on ... 44

G.

Galena, occurrence of ... 131
Game, character of ... 33–35
Geography, description of ... 11–32
Geologic history, account of ... 93–100
diagrammatic summary of ... 100
Geologic maps of area ... Pocket.
of Omilak region ... 44
Geologic structure, effect of, on drainage ... 23–24
effect of, figure showing ... 23
Geology, description of ... 39–86
Gisasa River, basin of, description of ... 19
Glacial deposits, character and distribution of ... 83–85
Glaciation, occurrence of ... 99, 100
effects of, view of ... 30
Goldbottom Creek, gold on ... 122, 128
Gold lodes, occurrence and character of ... 128–130
Gold placers. *See* Placers.
Golofnin Bay, description of ... 31
gravels of ... 79
Gravels, character and distribution of ... 78–83
Greenstones, character and distribution of ... 71–73
deposition of ... 94–95, 100
Grouse Creek, rocks on ... 73

H.

Page.

Harbors, lack of ... 18, 31
Haystack Mountain, rocks of ... 53
Henshaw, F. F., cited ... 51, 83, 85, 127
Hills, character of ... 29
character of, figure showing ... 29
Historical geology, account of ... 93–100
diagrammatic summary of ... 100
History, review of ... 12–17

I.

Igneous rocks, character and distribution of ... 60, 74
Iguik River, basin of ... 21
Inclusions, view of ... 66
Indians, homes of ... 38–39
Inglutalik River, basin of, description of ... 20–21, 23–24
rocks on and near ... 59
view of ... 58
Intrusive rocks, character and distribution of ... 70–71
deposition of ... 94–95, 96, 100
gold associated with ... 105
Isaacs Point, rocks of ... 53
I. X. L. Gulch, gold of ... 117

J.

Jurassic time, events in ... 96

K.

Kachauik Creek, rocks on ... 45, 49, 67
Kaiyuh Hills, rocks of ... 40, 61
Kaltag, rocks near ... 71–72
Kateel River, basin of, description of ... 19–20
Kennicott, Robert, exploration by ... 14
Kenwood Creek, gold on ... 112–113
rocks on or near ... 41, 73
Kindle, E. M., fossils identified by ... 47, 48
Kiwalik Mountain, rocks near ... 42, 46, 64, 67–68
structure in ... 90
Kiwalik River, basin of, gold in ... 126–127
Kotzebue Sound, description of ... 31
drainage to ... 18, 28
explorations near ... 13–14
Koyuk River, basin of, description of ... 24–25
basin of, gold in ... 104, 110–115
gravel in ... 80
rocks of ... 42, 46, 53, 54, 55, 68, 72–73, 88, 98
channels of ... 113
gold on ... 110
rocks on ... 54, 71
Kwik River, basin of, description of ... 25
basin of, gold in ... 115
rocks of ... 41–42, 45, 55–56
gold near ... 104
Kwiniuk, Mount, rocks of and near ... 52, 53, 94
Kwiniuk River, basin of, description of ... 25, 26–27
basin of, gold in ... 116
rocks on and near ... 46–50, 65–66
views of ... 46, 58

L.

Lead. *See* Silver-lead.
Limestone, folding in, views of ... 50, 90
intrusions in, views of ... 46
veins in, view of ... 66
Lindburg, John, aid of ... 11
Little Anvil Creek, gold on ... 125
Location of area, description of ... 11–12
map showing ... 12

Page.

Lodes, occurrence and character of..... 127
See also Gold; Copper; Silver; Lead.
Lost Creek, rocks on..... 47,56
Louden, coal at..... 136–137
coal at, analysis of..... 137

M.

McKelvie Creek, glacial deposits on..... 83
McPherson, J. L., cited..... 16,115
Maddren, A. G., survey by..... 16–17,40,61
Map, index, showing area..... 12
Maps, Alaskan, development of..... 7–8
Maps, geologic, of area..... Pocket.
of Omilak region..... 44
Maps of area..... Pocket.
description of..... 11–12
Marine gravels, age of..... 86
character and distribution of..... 78–79
Mastodon, bones of..... 23
Melozitna River, rocks on..... 57,60
Melsing Creek, gold on..... 118
rocks on..... 50,84
Mendenhall, W. C., cited..... 42–43, 50–51, 54, 56, 64–65, 72, 73, 75, 79, 82, 85, 114–115, 116, 140
work of..... 15–16
Metamorphic rocks, gold placers in..... 109–127
occurrence and character of..... 39–46, 61–64
Metamorphism, occurrence of..... 95
Mineralization, occurrence of..... 95
Miniatulik River, rocks on..... 47
Moffit, F. H., cited..... 42, 67–68, 72–73, 92, 114, 115, 125, 126
Moon, Thomas, aid of..... 11
Mosquito Creek, description of..... 27
Mountain building, periods of..... 94–95, 97–98, 100
Mukluktulik River, rocks on..... 41, 53–54, 73
Munro, C. H., acknowledgments to..... 10–11
Mystery Creek, gold on..... 117–118
gravel on..... 80
rocks on..... 50

N.

Niukluk River, description of..... 27
gravel on..... 81,84
rocks near..... 44
Nome, gravels at..... 86
placers at, formation of..... 101–102
Norton Bay, coal on..... 139
rocks on..... 72
Norton Bay region. *See* Nulato-Norton Bay region.
Norton Sound, coasts of..... 31–32
drainage to..... 20–27
tides in..... 31
Noxapaga River, rocks on..... 73
Nulato, gravels near..... 81,83
precipitation at..... 37
rocks near..... 59–60
settlement of..... 13
temperature at..... 36
Nulato-Norton Bay region, definition of..... 11–12
geologic map of..... Pocket.
section of, figure showing..... 103
See also Seward Peninsula, southeastern.

Page.

Nulato River, basin of, description of..... 20
coal near..... 137–138

O.

Omilak Creek, rocks near..... 61
silver-lead on..... 130
Omilak mine, deformation near, view of..... 90
fault near..... 90–91
geologic map of..... 44
ore of..... 131–133
precipitation at..... 37
production of..... 132
region of, view of..... 50
rocks at..... 51–52, 63–64, 130–131
figures showing..... 50, 64
settlement at..... 38
temperature at..... 36
workings at..... 131
Ophir Creek, folding on..... 92
folding on, view of..... 90
glacial deposits on..... 83
gold on..... 118–121, 128
gravel on..... 81
rocks on..... 49
Oregon Creek, moraine on..... 87
rocks near..... 69

P.

Paleozoic rocks, deposition of..... 94
occurrence and character of..... 46–54
views of..... 46
Pargon River, description of..... 27
glacial deposits on..... 83–84, 85–86, 99
gold on..... 116
Peace River, copper on..... 135
gold on..... 114–115
Peters, W. J., work of..... 15
Pickart mine, coal of..... 137–138
coal of, analyses of..... 137
Pinnacles, views of..... 30, 58
Placers, character and distribution of..... 101, 109–110
descriptions of..... 105–109, 110–127
formation of..... 101–105
Population, distribution of..... 38–39
Post-Cretaceous igneous rocks, character and distribution of..... 61, 70–74
Pre-Cambrian deposits, occurrence of..... 93–94
Precipitation, records of..... 36–37
Pre-Cretaceous igneous rocks, character and distribution of..... 61–70

Q.

Quartz Creek, gold on..... 115
Quartz veins, character and distribution of..... 74–76

R.

Rain. *See* Precipitation.
Rathlatulik River, coal on..... 140, 141
description of..... 27
rocks near..... 51
Relief, description of..... 17, 28–30
origin of..... 30
Richardson, G. B., cited..... 122
River gravels, character and distribution of..... 79–83
Russell, I. C., cited..... 81, 83
survey by..... 15
Ryan Creek, gold on..... 123, 125

S.

Page.

St. Michael, founding of 12–13
Schists, character and distribution of 40–46
Schrader, F. C., surveys by 15, 16
Settlements, distribution and character of ... 38–39
Seward Peninsula, coal of 140
rocks of 40–46
work in, completion of 7–8, 9
Seward Peninsula, southeastern, definition of 12
geologic map of ..... Pocket.
map of ..... Pocket.
Shaktolik group, character and distribution of 55, 57–60
deposition of 97, 100
views of 56, 58
Shaktolik River, basin of, description of 20–22
basin of, gravels in 81
valley in, view of 22
faults in 89
rocks on 57–59, 60, 71
view of 56
Sheridan Creek, gold on 125
Silver-lead deposit, description of 130–133
See also Omilak mine.
Smith, P. S., work of 8, 43
Spits, occurrence and character of 32
Spurr, J. E., cited 57, 71, 105
survey by 15
Stibnite, occurrence of 108, 131
Structural geology, description of 86–93
Surveys, Alaskan, development of 7
Swede Gulch, gold on 123
Sweetcake Creek, gold on 119

T.

Temperature, records of 35–36
Tertiary time, events in 98–99
Tides, range of 31
Timber, character of 32–33
distribution of, map showing 32
Timber Creek, copper on 134
Topography, description of 17–32
Transported material, character and distribution of 78–85
types of 77
See also Marine, River, *and* Glacial deposits.
Traverse Peak, diagrammatic section at 87
structure near 87–88
Tubutulik River, basin of, description of 25–26
basin of, gold in 115–116
rocks in 46, 55–56, 88–89

U.

Page.

Ulrich, E. O., fossils determined by 48
Ulukuk River, coal on 139
Unalaklik, founding of 13
Unalaklik River, basin of, description of 20–21
Unconsolidated deposits, age of 85–86
occurrence and character of 76–85
See also Transported *and* Unsorted deposits.
Ungalik conglomerate, character and distribution of 55–57, 88
deposition of 97, 100
Ungalik River, basin of, description of .. 20–21, 22–23
faulting on 89
gravel on 78
rocks of 55–56, 70–71
Unsorted deposits, character and distribution of 76–77
Uplands, view of 22
See also Relief.
Uplift, evidence of 78–79, 82
periods of 94, 95, 97–98, 100

V.

Valley topography, view of 22
Vegetation, character of 32–33
Veins, character and distribution of 74–76
formation of 94, 100
view of 66
Vulcan Creek, gold on 115

W.

Walla Walla Creek, gold on 129
Warm Creek, gold on 122, 128
Watkins, J. T., cited 72
Williams mine, coal of 139
Willow Creek, gold on 114
Winds, character of 37–38
Winegarden, A. G., work of 9, 10

Y.

Yukon basin, coal in 136–139
drainage of 19–20
rocks of 40, 71–72

Z.

Zagoskin, L. A., explorations by 13, 24

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
GEORGE OTIS SMITH, DIRECTOR

BULLETIN 450

MINERAL RESOURCES

OF THE

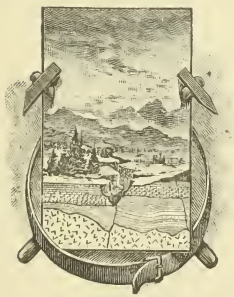
LLANO-BURNET REGION, TEXAS

WITH

AN ACCOUNT OF THE PRE-CAMBRIAN GEOLOGY

BY

SIDNEY PAIGE



WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1911

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Introduction	7
Topography	8
Drainage	8
Geology	9
General features	9
Algonkian (?) rocks	9
Geologic units	9
Granites	10
Geologic relations	10
Types and distribution	11
Petrography	11
Coarse-grained type	11
Medium to fine-grained types including some coarse varieties	12
Opaline quartz-feldspar porphyry type	14
Schists and gneisses (Llano series)	14
Divisions and distribution	14
Packsaddle schist	15
Distribution and general character	15
Petrography	17
Valley Spring gneiss	19
Distribution and general character	19
Petrography	20
Origin of the schists and gneisses	20
Basic intrusive rocks of a gabbro-diorite type	21
General character and distribution	21
Petrography	22
Paleozoic rocks	23
Upper Cambrian rocks	23
Cambro-Ordovician rocks	24
Carboniferous rocks	24
Structure	25
Iron ores	26
General description, by A. C. Spencer	26
Special localities	28
Olive property	28
Bader tract	31
Iron Mountain	34
Keyser-Jones tract	40
Goodwin prospect	41
Parkhill prospect	42
Iron deposits near Castell	42
Deep Creek ores	42
Elm Creek ores	45
Lively tract	48
Section 13 and vicinity	49
Riley Mountain	54

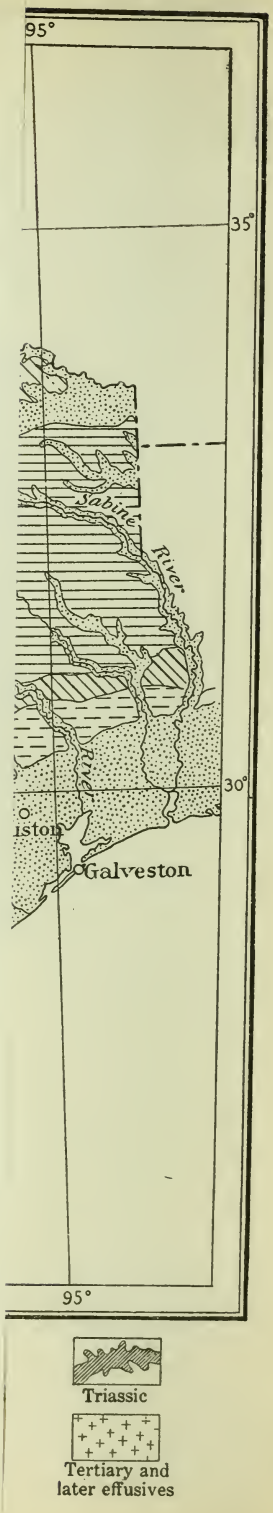
Iron ores—Continued. Page.
Origin of the iron ores 56
Possible hypotheses 56
General distribution of iron throughout geologic formations and the character of the accompanying beds 56
Geologic relations of the iron ores 57
Characteristics of the ores 58
Bearing of igneous rocks of the region on origin of iron ore 60
Chemical relations 62
Probable conditions at time of intrusion 65
Comparison with other regions 68
Summary 69
Gold 70
Copper 73
Lead 75
Graphite 77
Manganese 82
Rare-earth metals 83
General description of the deposit 83
The rare-earth minerals 85
Economic value 88
Zinc blende with fluorite gangue 89
Serpentine and talc 90
Oil 93
Structural materials 94
Marble 94
Sandstone 94
Limestone 95
Granite 95
Index 101

ILLUSTRATIONS.

		Page.
Plate I.	Geologic map of Texas	7
II.	General geologic and economic map showing locations of Burnet and Llano quadrangles, Texas	8
III.	Economic and geologic map of Llano quadrangle, Texas	In pocket
IV.	*A*, Assimilation of schist fragment along borders at contact with granite; *B*, Banding of magnetite ore	10
V.	*A*, Folding of Upper Cambrian sandstone on Beaver Creek, near lead prospect; *B*, Pegmatite and granite intruding schist	76
Figure 1.	Local flowage of schist at granite contact	10
2.	Cross section and plan of Olive mine	30
3.	Distribution of float and outcrops on Bader tract and vicinity	32
4.	Surface crop and underground workings at Iron Mountain prospect	35
5.	Vertical section of ore body at Iron Mountain prospect	36
6.	Ideal section showing relation of faulting to folding and erosion	37
7.	Stereogram illustrating condition which would exist if the north fault passed vertically but at an angle to the strike of the fold	38
8.	Magnetite prospects on Keyser-Jones tract, southwest of Castell	40
9.	Distribution of magnetite near Deep Creek	43
10.	Distribution of magnetite near Elm Creek, northeast of Castell	45
11.	Distribution of magnetite showings in northern part of Schneider's pasture	47
12.	Distribution of magnetite 2 miles east of Castell	49
13.	Magnetite prospects in H. & G. N. Section 13	50
14.	Relation of ore layers in pit south of Willow Creek in section 13	51
15.	Sketch of 8-foot ore surface in magnetite gneiss	52
16.	Map showing location of pyrite deposits north of Click post-office and their relations to faults	54
17.	Concentration of magnetite along edges of schist fragment at granite contact	61
18.	Remnant of schist fragment in granite mass	62
19.	Prospect pits and shafts at Heath gold prospect	72
20.	Map showing location of lead prospects north of Bluffton and area covered by figure 21	75
21.	Plan and ideal section showing relations of Upper Cambrian to underlying pre-Cambrian granite at lead prospects north of Bluffton	76
22.	Plan of workings at graphite property near Lone Grove	79

GEOLOGIC MAP OF TEXAS.

See page 7.


95°
35°
Sabine River
30°
iston
Galveston
95°
Triassic
Tertiary and later effusives

MINERAL RESOURCES OF THE LLANO-BURNET REGION, TEXAS, WITH AN ACCOUNT OF THE PRE-CAMBRIAN GEOLOGY.

By Sidney Paige.

INTRODUCTION.

The field work on which the following report is based was begun in the summer of 1908 under the direction of A. C. Spencer, who was assisted by the writer, and was completed in the fall of 1909 under the direction of the writer, who was assisted by Fred H. Kay. A. C. Spencer and W. S. Bayley cooperated in the field work, and Mr. Spencer has contributed descriptions of certain of the iron-ore deposits. Howland Bancroft also spent a short time in the field. A general report on the Llano and Burnet quadrangles, to be published in folio form, is now in preparation.[a] The present report deals chiefly with the geologic relations of the pre-Cambrian rocks and the associated iron ores. The stratigraphic and structural relations of the Paleozoic and Cretaceous rocks are only briefly treated, but will be discussed more fully in the later report.[a]

The writer wishes to express his indebtedness to Dr. Spencer, whose acquaintance with pre-Cambrian structure and iron ores has been of great value in both the field and the office work. Thanks are due also to Prof. W. S. Bayley for counsel and suggestion, and to Mr. N. J. Badu, of Llano, whose knowledge of Llano County was of great assistance during the field work.

The central Texas region lies in the broad regional coastward slope, of which Texas forms a part and which constitutes a great geologic province reaching from the Cordilleras to the Gulf of Mexico. (See Pl. I.) In this region, about midway between the Cordilleras and the Gulf the peculiar condition exists that erosion has exposed rocks of pre-Cambrian and Paleozoic ages within and about the rim of an oval structural and topographic basin which is nearly surrounded by Cretaceous rocks on its outer border. This area of old rocks is largely included in the Llano and Burnet quadrangles. (See Pl. II.)

[a] Paige, Sidney, Llano-Burnet folio, Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey. (In preparation.)

As the principal mineral resources of the region are confined largely to the Llano quadrangle, this report deals almost entirely with that area.

The Llano quadrangle includes portions of Llano, Mason, and San Saba Counties in central Texas. (See Pl. III, in pocket.) It is bounded by parallels 30° 30′ and 31° and meridians 98° 30′ and 99° west, and covers 1,024 square miles. The region is accessible by the Houston & Texas Central Railroad, which terminates at Llano, the county seat of Llano County. This road connects at Lampasas, about 20 miles north of Burnet, Burnet County, with the Gulf, Colorado, & Santa Fe Railway. Llano is the principal town of the quadrangle.

TOPOGRAPHY.

A casual observer, standing on an eminence, such as Town Mountain, near Llano, will be impressed with the basin-like form of the broad valley of Llano River. From such an eminence a broad rolling plain may be seen stretching east, west, north, and south to the horizon, which is marked by an encircling scarp of Paleozoic rocks. Within this broad area, however, there are many minor irregularities. These irregularities are of two types—first, mountain-like masses, such as Riley, Packsaddle, Putnam, House, and Smoothingiron Mountains; and second, smaller masses, such as the group of hills west of Oxford and that northeast of Babyhead, as well as the many isolated hills north and south of Llano. The masses of the first type are characterized by cappings of nearly horizontal beds and steep marginal scarps, and present to the observer mesa-like outlines; those of the second type are maturely dissected hills and isolated cones that rise rather abruptly from the surrounding plains. The form of the masses of both types depends on the nature of the rocks composing them. Encircling the pre-Cambrian basin described above is a plateau of Paleozoic and Cretaceous rocks, more or less maturely dissected.[a]

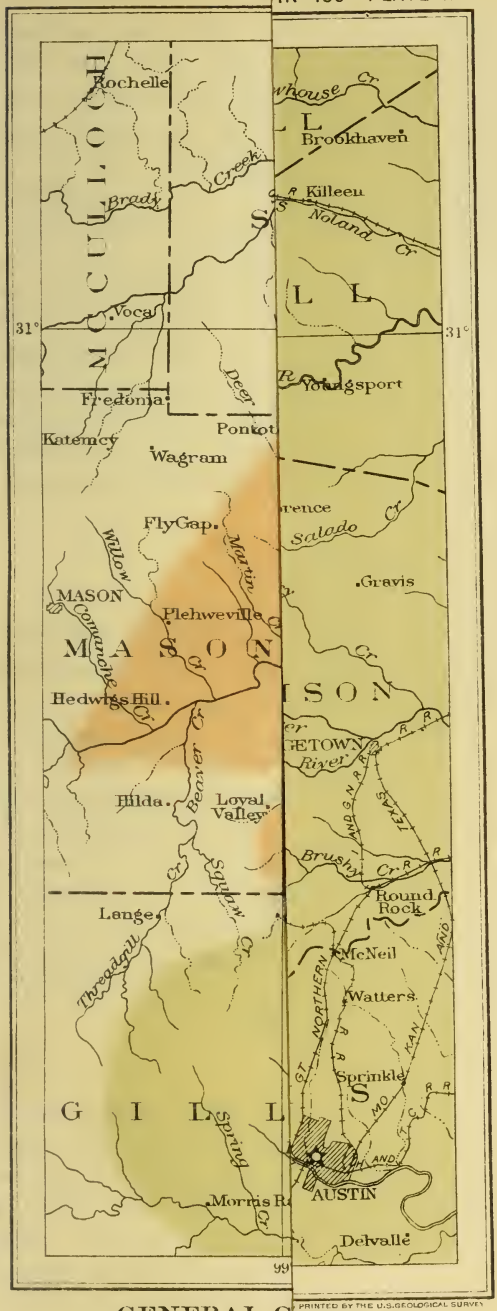
The northern border of the Llano quadrangle lies within the Paleozoic plateau; its western part is a rolling plain, which to the east and approaching Colorado River becomes more broken and irregular. The Paleozoic scarp to the west and south does not lie within the Llano quadrangle.

DRAINAGE.

The region included in the Llano quadrangle is drained almost entirely by Llano River and its northward and southward flowing tributaries. The quadrangle is nearly halved by Llano River, which flows eastward across it and enters Colorado River at Kingsland, in the Burnet quadrangle.

---

[a] For a detailed classification of Texas plateaus see Hill, R. T., Physical geography of the Texas region: Top. Atlas U.S., folio 3, U. S. Geol. Survey, 1900; Geography and geology of the Black and Grand prairies, Texas: Twenty-first Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 7, 1901.



LEGEND

SEDIMENTARY ROCKS

Cretaceous

Paleozoic

METAMORPHIC AND IGNEOUS ROCKS

Algonkian (?)

Note: *Dotted boundaries are only approximate West of meridian 99° they can not be placed on the map*

Quarry

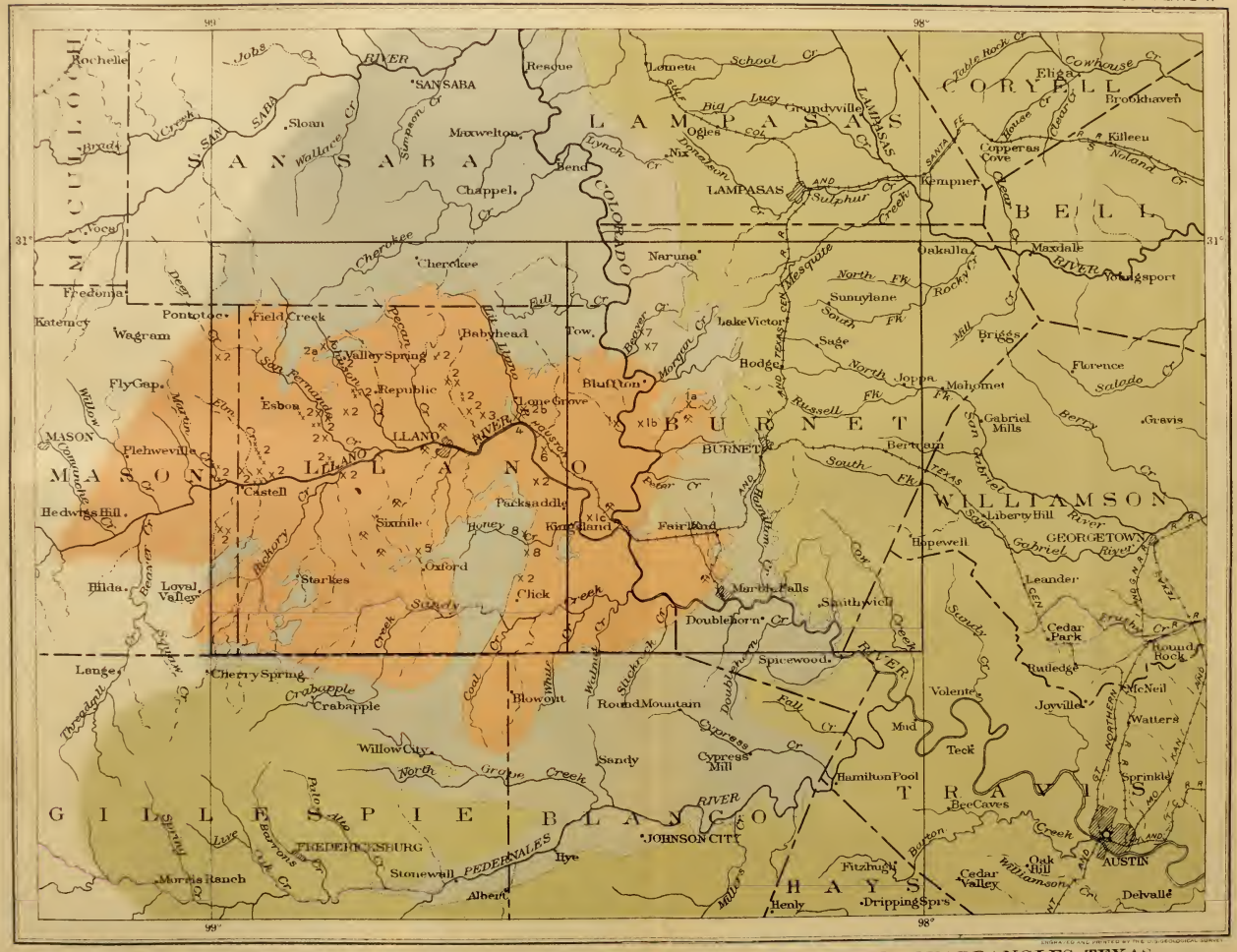
Mine and prospect

1. Barringer Hill
1a. Fergusonite and gadolinite
1b. Gadolinite in pegmatite
1c. Allanite and fluorite
2. Magnetite
2a. Iron Mountain prospect
2b. Olive mine
3. Heath gold prospect
4. Graphite prospect
5. Serpentine and talc
6. Talc
7. Lead-galena
8. Pyrite bodies

GENERAL G TEXAS

PRINTED BY THE U.S.GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

logy within Llano and Burnet quadrangles by
. Spencer, Sidney Paige, W. S. Bayley, and
d H. Kay. Dotted boundaries compiled from
s by Robert T. Hill.



GENERAL GEOLOGIC MAP SHOWING LOCATIONS OF BURNET AND LLANO QUADRANGLES, TEXAS

With principal quarries, mines, and prospects

Scale 1/750000

10 0 10 20 30 Miles

1910

Geology within Llano and Burnet quadrangles by A. C. Spencer, Sidney Paige, W. S. Bayley, and Fred H. Kay. Dotted boundaries compiled from maps by Robert T. Hill.

On the north, Elm, San Fernando, Johnson, Pecan, and Mitchell Creeks and Little Llano River are the important affluents of Llano River; on the south, Hickory, Bullhead, Sixmile, Flag, Oatman, and Honey Creeks are the large streams. Sandy Creek, in the southern part of the quadrangle, an exception, flows eastward into the Colorado.

Nearly all the streams of the region within the pre-Cambrian basin carry a great and increasing burden of sand. During most of the year their beds are apparently dry, and it is only by digging that water can be found. Llano and Little Llano Rivers and a few other spring-fed streams are exceptions. The infrequent but torrential rains, the stripping of the granite areas of vegetation by the overstocking of ranches, the alternation of intense heat by day and of coolness by night, which tends to disintegrate the rocks, all combine to bring about this condition of the streams.

GEOLOGY.

GENERAL FEATURES.

The rocks of the Llano-Burnet region fall naturally into three broad subdivisions—(1) pre-Cambrian schists, gneisses, and granites; (2) Paleozoic sandstones, limestones, and shales; and (3) Cretaceous sandstones, clays, and limestones. The Cretaceous rocks are confined almost entirely to the Burnet quadrangle, and appear in the Llano quadrangle in but one small area.

The Paleozoic strata, which completely surround the pre-Cambrian area, are more or less folded and faulted, and are separated from the pre-Cambrian by an unconformity representing a great time interval. The Cretaceous formations rest in almost undisturbed position on the Paleozoic rocks, but are separated from them by a great erosional unconformity.

ALGONKIAN (?) ROCKS.

GEOLOGIC UNITS.

Pre-Cambrian rocks underlie the larger part of the Llano quadrangle. A strip along the northern edge, however, ranging in width from 3 to 10 miles, and Riley and Cedar Mountains, Putnam Mountain, and a few other isolated areas are covered by Paleozoic sediments. In the geologic mapping of the area (see Pl. III) four major divisions of pre-Cambrian rocks have been discriminated, namely, (1) the Packsaddle schist, a series predominantly of basic type, including amphibolite and mica schists and old basic intrusive rocks; (2) the Valley Spring gneiss, a schist-gneiss series, including quartzites or their derivatives, light-colored mica schists, and acidic gneisses; (3) a very coarse grained pink granite, which could not be separately mapped over the area; (4) all the remaining granitic rocks, including

a number of varieties. All these rocks are believed to be of Algonkian(?) age. In addition to these major distinctions, bands of crystalline limestone and wollastonite were mapped wherever possible. Likewise the outcrops of a quartz porphyry of peculiar type, locally termed opaline granite, have been indicated, and a serpentine mass near Oxford has been shown. Iron-ore prospects and some lean banded ores are also represented. The area surrounding the Llano-Burnet region is shown on a general map (Pl. II), on which the several economic resources are indicated.

A glance at the map forming Plate III (in pocket) will show clearly in a general way the northwest-southeast trend of the schist-gneiss series; also the complicated and irregular distribution of the granitic intrusive rocks.

GRANITES.

GEOLOGIC RELATIONS.

The granite in this area is invariably intrusive and is almost omnipresent. It cuts the schist series in large and small masses, in dikes, in sills, and, if pegmatite may be considered a phase of granite, it is found both in minute veinlets and in huge dikes and sheets. The area contains rock of every grade between pure granite and pure schist. Certain localities are characterized by pure granite masses of batholithic type, such as the area of coarse granite in the southwestern portion of the quadrangle, the area immediately west of Cedar Mountain, and the area east of Lone Grove. Other areas show an intimate mixture of granite and schist, the schist being literally the sponge which has soaked up and become permeated with granitic material. Such permeation is best developed about the edges of the large granitic masses, though not at all confined to those bodies. (See Pl. V, *B*, p. 76.)

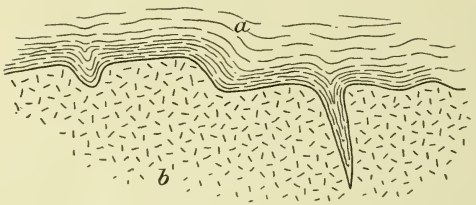


FIGURE 1.—Local flowage of schist at granite contact. *a*, Schist; *b*, granite.

The manner in which intrusion was effected varied. In some places portions of the schists were in a plastic state and flowed under the influence of pressure (see fig. 1); at other localities the contacts of the cutting dikes are sharp, indicating a condition of considerable rigidity; elsewhere the temperature of the intruding mass was so high that masses of the schist lost their identity and passed by gradual melting into solution (see Pl. IV, *A*; also fig. 18, p. 62); and elsewhere, again, granitic material, following planes of least resistance, forced itself between the layers of the schists and formed injection gneisses.

A. ASSIMILATION OF SCHIST FRAGMENT ALONG BORDERS AT CONTACT WITH GRANITE.

See page 10.

B. BANDING OF MAGNETITE ORE.

See page 58.

The results of the processes outlined above may be seen both on a small and on a huge scale, and afford a fine example of the conditions existing about the borders of a great batholithic mass that lies in contact with a deeply buried sedimentary series.

The dikes, sills, and broader masses of pegmatite, which occur in great abundance and in all sizes, are worthy of special mention, particularly the broader masses, which are locally developed at contacts of schist with crosscutting granite dikes. In the areas about Hog Mountain such sheets are finely developed, and it is believed that they indicate the proximity of schists now removed by erosion.

TYPES AND DISTRIBUTION.

Three types of granite have been distinguished on the geologic map—(1) a very coarse grained homogeneous rock; (2) a medium to fine grained granite, including some coarse-grained varieties; and (3) an opaline quartz-feldspar porphyry. Microscopic examination has shown that the distinction is largely textural, the mineralogical constituents in the three types being essentially the same.

The coarse-grained granite has been mapped in two areas—one in the southwest corner of the quadrangle, a large subcircular area with Prairie Mountain as a center; the other farther north, in the vicinity of Smoothingiron Mountain. Granite of the same type occurs east and southeast of Lone Grove and in other localities, but in areas so small that it could not be consistently differentiated in mapping. Conclusive evidence in regard to the relative age of this coarse granite was not discovered, but tentatively it may be considered intrusive in the finer-grained granites.

The granite of the second type, the widespread dominant rock of the region, includes various textural types, ranging in texture from very coarse to very fine grained, but has been mapped as a unit.

The granitic rock of the third type, the opaline quartz-feldspar porphyry, invariably occurs as a dike rock cutting both the schists and the intrusive granites which accompany them. Its outcrop may be followed, with interruptions, from a point about $3\frac{1}{4}$ miles east of Llano, on the Llano-Lone Grove road, northward through Miller Mountain for $6\frac{1}{2}$ miles, where it bends to the northeast and forms a hook passing around the town of Babyhead and ending about a mile southwest of that place.

PETROGRAPHY.

COARSE-GRAINED TYPE.

The very coarse grained granite is of reddish tone, due to the large, finely developed potash feldspars, the largest an inch long and three-fourths of an inch broad, the average length being perhaps half an inch. The space between these well-crystallized, finely developed

crystals is filled with quartz. Biotite, the dominant ferromagnesian mineral, is well developed in stout columns and rather abundant. Locally a parallel arrangement of the large feldspars was noted in the vicinity of Bullhead Mountain, a phenomenon probably due to movement under pressure while the magma was yet in a more or less viscous state.

A microscopic examination shows the following characteristics:

Very coarse granite from Watch Mountain, near Walnut Springs: Feldspars are microcline, orthoclase, and albite-oligoclase. Microcline dominant. Length one-half inch to 1 inch or more, width one-fourth to one-half inch. Quartz filling space between feldspars. Biotite mica abundant in stout columns one-eighth inch or more in length. Perthitic intergrowth of microcline and albite noted.

MEDIUM TO FINE GRAINED TYPES, INCLUDING SOME COARSE VARIETIES.

The granites mapped under this head include many varieties, from fine to coarse grain, but are, in general, chemically and mineralogically similar. Differences of texture and variations in the quantity of the ferromagnesian minerals account for most of the varieties.

An examination of numerous specimens reveals an abundance of microcline, with orthoclase, albite-oligoclase, biotite, quartz, and hornblende. The granites are distinctly potash rocks, though they almost invariably contain soda. They also contain the usual accessory minerals—magnetite, apatite, titanite, etc. Several hornblende granites were noted, but their areal extent is small.

Petrographic notes made on granites of the medium to fine grained type are given below:

Granite from Parkinson group of quarries.

Megascopic character.—Medium-grained to fine-grained gray granite. Biotite, quartz, and feldspar. Mica evenly distributed in fine flakes.

Microscopic character.—Largely composed of microcline with subsidiary orthoclase, rare plagioclase. Micrographic intergrowth with quartz in some feldspar. Rare zonal arrangement. Alteration has set in on nearly all the feldspar. Quartz shows some strain phenomena. Biotite occasionally altered to chlorite. Alteration of feldspar more pronounced at center than elsewhere. Grain or two of magnetite.

Granite from Kansas City quarry, 2 miles west of Llano.

Megascopic character.—Medium to coarse grained light-gray granite with slightly gneissoid aspect. Quartz, feldspar, mica.

Microscopic character.—Thirty-two per cent quartz; 62 per cent feldspar, microcline, and orthoclase; 6 per cent mica (biotite) with rare muscovite; 71 per cent SiO_2. Micrographic intergrowths of quartz and feldspar occasionally finely developed.

Hornblende granite from northwest Hog Mountain, near Wollastonite rock.

Megascopic character.—Pinkish toned medium crystalline granular, spotted with blotches of hornblende of various sizes up to one-fourth inch in diameter. Groundmass between the blotches is barren of ferromagnesian minerals.

Microscopic character.—Microcline, orthoclase, and albite-oligoclase feldspars dominant in order named. Dark-green hornblende apparently poikilitically arranged about quartz. Measurements with microscope show 31 per cent quartz, 69 per cent feldspar, 75 per cent SiO_2.

Granite from Norton quarry.

Megascopic character.—Light-gray granite; abundant mica in very small flakes, evenly distributed.

Microscopic character.—Microcline, orthoclase, and little albite-oligoclase; quartz abundant. Biotite mica.

Red granite from Parkinson's quarry "well," camp No. 1.

Megascopic character.—Red, fine-grained granite, with ferromagnesian minerals scant and in very small particles.

Microscopic character.—Microcline, orthoclase, and albite-oligoclase rather abundant. Quartz abundant. Little magnetite, mica, titanite, and hornblende. Ferromagnesian minerals very scant. Feldspars where altered are replaced by a red decomposition product.

Granite from Grays Mountain.

Megascopic character.—Coarse pinkish granite. Feldspars as large as one-fourth inch in length and mica very abundant; sufficient to give dark tone to rock.

Microscopic character.—Oligoclase and microcline. Former dominant. Both dominant over quartz. Biotite abundant, but not evenly distributed. Apatite. Feldspar altered.

Hornblende granite (a chip only) from south edge of quadrangle near small creek above house in Elver's pasture.

Coarse granite. Orthoclase, microcline, and oligoclase feldspars. Quartz. Hornblende, partly altered to chlorite. Feldspars badly altered. Zircon. Apatite abundant. Titanite.

Pink granite from west of road, east of direct route from Castell to Berry Spring (Goodes Spring).

Megascopic character.—Fine-grained pink granite, containing circular areas impoverished of ferromagnesian minerals, in the center of which are aggregations of titanite and magnetite.

Microscopic character.—Microcline, orthoclase, and albite-oligoclase feldspars with biotite, and segregations of magnetite and titanite. Part of the quartz one of the first minerals to separate out. Apatite needles abundant.

Granite from Heine's well, south of Willow Creek, 4 miles north of river, 1 mile west of San Fernando Creek.

Megascopic character.—Red granite, medium to fine grain, glassy aspect.

Microscopic character.—Microcline and orthoclase feldspars and quartz. Microcline and orthoclase, badly altered. Scanty biotite; chloritized. Sericite developed in feldspars. Red tone very probably accentuated by alteration.

Pink granite from one-fourth mile west-northwest of Esbon post office on Kings Mountain.

Megascopic character.—Fine-grained, light-pink granite, ferromagnesian minerals evenly distributed in tiny flakes.

Microscopic character.—Microcline feldspar dominant; with orthoclase and quartz. Biotite (about average amount) in small flakes. Apatite needles. Feldspar, especially orthoclase, badly altered, though the hand specimen looks fresh.

Granite from breast of crosscut in shaft at Iron Mountain (1908).

Megascopic character.—Pink, medium to fine grained granite.

Microscopic character.—Microcline, orthoclase, and albite-oligoclase feldspars. Quartz. Biotite mica. Little magnetite.

OPALINE QUARTZ-FELDSPAR PORPHYRY TYPE.

This rock, as its name indicates, is a quartz-feldspar porphyry. When rough in the hand specimen, it has a dark-reddish aphanitic groundmass mottled with abundant phenocrysts of pink feldspar and opaline quartz, the quartz being very prominent on weathered surfaces. The quartz phenocrysts break with a glassy fracture, are of light-bluish tone, and possess a certain iridescence when polished. The microscope shows quartz phenocrysts (with a great number of minute inclusions); microcline feldspar phenocrysts; microperthite phenocrysts (albite and orthoclase); a groundmass of quartz and orthoclase, and small flakes of biotite mica; a little magnetite with associated sphene; some fine zircons; little apatite; local chloritization of mica.

Dr. Joseph P. Iddings proposed the name of llanite for this rock some years ago.[a] It is known in Llano County as opaline granite. Dr. Iddings[a] estimated that the rock is probably composed as follows:

Mineral composition of opaline granite, Llano County, Tex.

Quartz	34.6
Feldspar	55.7
Biotite	8.6
Fluorite	1
Apatite	.13

In speaking of the bluish color of the quartz he says:

> The sky-blue milky color of the quartz phenocrysts is undoubtedly due to reflection of blue light waves from the minute colorless prisms whose width is a fraction of the length of light waves. It is similar to the blue color of the sky. It is probable, however, that there is also blue light produced by interference of the light reflected from both sides of the minute tabular crystals, whose thickness is also of the order of a fraction of a light-wave length. So that both kinds of phenomena occur within the quartzes.

SCHISTS AND GNEISSES (LLANO SERIES).

DIVISIONS AND DISTRIBUTION.

The schists and gneisses of this area comprise the Llano series, and all are believed to be of Algonkian age. Two broad divisions may be recognized and have been mapped on Plate III (in pocket)—the one, a series dominantly basic and generally of dark color containing much limestone, biotite, amphibolite, and graphite schists and termed the Packsaddle schist, a name applied originally by Com-

[a] Phillips, W. B., Tests on Texas building stones: Mining World, June 24, 1905.

stock[a] to marbles and shaly beds near Packsaddle Mountain. In this report, however, the name is redefined and limited strictly in its usage by principles to be presented below. The other, a series dominantly acidic, of light color, containing some altered limestone and termed the Valley Spring gneiss, a name also applied by Comstock[b] and also redefined in this report. Bands of acidic material are found in the first series and bands of basic dark material have been included in the second. There is a transition zone between the two series, locally offering difficulties to the placing of definite boundaries. Likewise, within the acidic series, the distinction between invading granites and gneisses is often exceedingly difficult to recognize, because of a gneissoid texture that the granites locally possess.

The distribution of the two series is dependent primarily on major structural relations, modified by igneous intrusion. Their general northwest-southeast trend is determined by the major axes of folding, and the lack of continuity along their trends is due to the presence of granite (see Pl. III). Two major anticlinal axes are present, one passing northwest and southeast through the center of the mountainous mass just west of Oxford, the other passing from Packsaddle Mountain northwest to a point several miles west of Babyhead. Between these two anticlinal axes a major synclinal axis passes northwest and southeast a short distance west of Llano. The broad band determined by this synclinal axis is composed largely of the Packsaddle schist, while the anticlinal axes mark areas of the lighter Valley Spring gneiss. The basic Packsaddle schist overlies the acidic type, and therefore is found on the eroded flanks of these great folds, where not disturbed by granite masses. The major axes of folding do not represent a simple structure, minor folds, some of which have been separately mapped, being superimposed upon the major folds, with the result that local complexities of structure are frequent. No estimate has been made of the thickness of the series.

PACKSADDLE SCHIST.

DISTRIBUTION AND GENERAL CHARACTER.

The Packsaddle schist series includes mica, amphibole, and graphitic schists, and crystalline limestone. In the series are also lighter-colored, more feldspathic bands, resembling quartzites. Intrusive rocks of earlier age than the granite, of the diorite-gabbro type, are also present locally in considerable amount. They have been separated from the Packsaddle schist in only one instance, in the southeast corner of the Llano quadrangle and the southwest corner of the Burnet quadrangle.

---

[a] Comstock, T. B., Preliminary report on the geology of the central mineral region of Texas: First Ann. Rept. Texas Geol. Survey, 1889.

[b] Loc. cit.

As a whole, the Packsaddle schist is characterized by an excellent cleavage which for the most part accords in attitude with an original bedding in sediments, of which the schists represent the metamorphosed equivalents. Frequently, though not invariably, the graphitic schists are closely associated with limestones. The limestones are developed to a varying degree, as a glance at the map (Pl. III) will show. East of Oxford numerous limestone beds are present, and the region south and west of Llano includes many bands. In general they occur wherever the Packsaddle schist is found, but, though most abundant in the Packsaddle schist and in a measure characteristic of that schist series, they do also occur in the lighter series (Valley Spring gneiss), though usually in a still more altered form; that is, as wollastonite bands. The graphitic schists carry varying proportions of graphite—locally, it is believed, a sufficiently high content to be of commercial value. (See p. 77.) A microscopic examination of a specimen of graphite schist from Cottonwood Creek showed about 60 per cent of quartz, 30 per cent of orthoclase feldspar, fairly abundant grains of augite, a little titanite, a little apatite, and flakes of graphite arranged parallel to the schistosity of the rock. Often crystalline limestone bands are interbedded with the graphite schist, leaving little or no doubt as to the sedimentary origin of the carbon mineral. Among the remaining types of a sedimentary origin are mica, tourmaline, and quartz-feldspar schists. All these rocks carry a high content of quartz, and are characterized by potash feldspar and biotite with here and there some pyroxene (augite). The tourmaline schist is an exception and does not carry feldspar. Magnetite, titanite, and apatite are often accessories. Amphibolite schists are fairly abundant and are characterized by a very low content or lack of quartz. There is some doubt regarding their origin. As they are interbedded with limestones, a sedimentary origin is suggested; their origin as old flows and sill-like intrusions, however, must be kept in mind, as possible or even probable, for basic intrusive rocks are found in the region, and in one place a type transitional from a basic porphyry dike to amphibolite schist was noted. Amphibolites of undoubted igneous origin may also be seen in considerable masses.

The following section was measured on the west fork of Oatman Creek, about 3½ miles south of Llano:

Section of Packsaddle schist on Oatman Creek east-southeast of Bachelor Peak.

	Feet.
Schist with pencil cleavage	1,000
Hidden	400
Thin-bedded feldspar-quartz schist (strike N. 40° W., dip 65° E.)	3
Well-banded hornblende schist	30
Quartzite (feldspar-quartz schist)	1
Hornblende schist	15
Thin-bedded micaceous schist	75

	Feet.
More massive, micaceous schist with pegmatite and quartz injections	130
Graphitic slate schist	23
Crystalline limestone	24
Graphitic slate schist	35
Injection gneiss	30
Hornblende schist	91
Feldspar-quartz schist	62
Weathered hornblende schist	120
Thin-bedded mica schist, massive as a whole	60
Limestone	8
Graphitic slate or schist	6
Limestone	4
Heavy, thin-bedded mica schist full of quartz blebs and stringers	32
Friable mica schist (like pencil schist)	250
Hidden	40
Mica schist	50
Hidden	50
Mica schist	20
To granite contact	60
	2,619

PETROGRAPHY.

The results of a microscopic examination of a number of specimens of the Packsaddle schist are as follows:

Quartz-feldspar schist.

Megascopic character.—A whitish-pink, sugar-grained, finely banded rock; bands straight and narrow, made by pink and white constituents. Speckled with magnetite showing a slight tendency to follow bands. Rock cleavage follows bands.

Microscopic character.—Equidimensional grains microcline feldspar, orthoclase feldspar, and quartz. Flakes of a brownish-yellow biotite mica and magnetite not clearly in bands. Considerable alteration of feldspar. Measurements showed 68 per cent feldspar, 32 per cent quartz—which gives 76 per cent SiO_2, approximately 12 per cent Al_2O_3, and approximately 12 per cent K_2O.

Quartzite-like feldspar schist.

Megascopic character.—Fine-grained, almost aphanitic, grayish and pink banded schist.

Microscopic character.—Even, granular, fine-grained, holocrystalline rock, two-thirds orthoclase feldspar (altered), one-third quartz, light-green hornblende (partly altered to chlorite), and titanite. About 75 per cent SiO_2 and 12 per cent Al_2O_3.

Amphibolite schist.

Megascopic character.—Dark-green to black, finely-cleaved schistose rock.

Microscopic character.—Mass of hornblende laths in a matrix of feldspar. Abundant grains titanite. Little calcite, little apatite.

Amphibolite schist.

Megascopic character.—Dense, slaty, almost aphanitic, dark-green to black rock showing on weathered surface evidence of schistosity.

Microscopic character.—From 50 to 60 per cent light-green hornblende, considerable augite, orthoclase, and some plagioclase feldspar in the interstices of the hornblende laths.

Amphibolite schist.

Megascopic character.—Dark-green to black glittering schist.

Microscopic character.—Linear arrangement of abundant dark-green hornblende laths in a matrix of microcline and quartz, the former in great excess. Scattering grains of augite partly altering to hornblende. Epidote, magnetite, apatite.

Amphibolite schist.

Megascopic character.—Dark-green to black very fine grained glittering schist.

Microscopic character.—Interlocking grains of prismatic light-green hornblende evenly though not entirely equidimensional. The little space between the hornblende plates is filled with feldspar.

Biotite-quartz-mica schist.

Megascopic character.—Gray even and fine grained mica schist.

Microscopic character.—Even, granular quartz, orthoclase, and microcline. Abundant biotite laths parallel to schistosity. Some muscovite.

Mica schist.

Megascopic character.—Gray banded schist. Bands due to lines of pink feldspar in light-gray background. Feldspar is arranged in lentils which produce the bands. Abundant fine flakes of black mica.

Microscopic character.—About equally divided quartz and altered orthoclase feldspar. Abundant biotite in linear parallel arrangement. Abundant iron oxide grains.

Mica schist.

Megascopic character.—Dark-greenish, nearly black aphanitic glassy rock showing on surface striations which reveal its schistose nature.

Microscopic character.—Orthoclase and quartz in equidimensional grains, former in slight excess. Biotite mica in fine parallel alignment. About 6 to 9 per cent mica.

Quartz-tourmaline schist.

Megascopic character.—Dense dark-blue to black hornfels-like rock, with fine bands of quartz showing schistosity.

Microscopic character.—Fine bands of quartz and tourmaline. Tourmaline for the most part oriented parallel to schistosity and apparently crystallized first, as it appears in fine lines in the quartz parallel to bands. Much of the quartz has wavy extinction.

Biotite feldspar gneiss.

Megascopic character.—Blue-gray, granular, fine-grained rock with gneissoid aspect, rather evenly granular. Mica prominent as dark constituent.

Microscopic character.—Granitoid texture. Quartz, albite-oligoclase, and abundant biotite. Some hornblende, titanite, and chlorite. By measurements the following approximate chemical composition was calculated: 73 per cent SiO_2, 14 per cent Al_2O_3, 6 per cent Na_2O, 1 per cent CaO, 6 per cent Fe, Mg, etc.

Mica schist.

Megascopic character.—Pink and black banded schist, with finely developed schistosity due to mica.

Microscopic character.—Crystalline granular quartz. Microcline and little albite-oligoclase. Biotite, in laths or plates parallel to the schistosity. Quartz arranged roughly in direction of schistosity. Microcline is slightly altered. Composition: 79 per cent silica, 9.64 per cent alumina, 8 per cent potash, 3.36 per cent iron, magnetite, sodium, and calcium.

VALLEY SPRING GNEISS.

DISTRIBUTION AND GENERAL CHARACTER.

The mapping of the Valley Spring gneiss was locally attended with many difficulties, partly connected with separating it from the Packsaddle schist, but primarily because of its relation to granitic intrusions, which, as has been pointed out, are widespread and of all degrees of magnitude. As the Valley Spring gneiss often closely resembles the granites, especially where slight schistosity may have been impressed upon the granites, and as contacts are exceedingly irregular (a feature characteristic of the borders of large intrusive masses), all the boundaries shown on the map must not be considered as definitely separating distinct formations, but rather as indicating changes in the dominant rock type. In a region where intrusion has so completely interleaved and at places actually impregnated a rock mass, and where all gradations from pure granite to pure schist exist, such boundaries as have been used are necessary to express the geologic facts. In many places, however, the boundaries are sharp and form definite lines, but it is not practicable on the map to discriminate between the two classes of boundaries. It is believed, also, that with the schists and gneisses of sedimentary origin are included old gneisses of igneous origin.

Perhaps the most distinctive difference between the light Valley Spring gneiss and the dark Packsaddle schist lies in their difference of massiveness. This difference applies more particularly when the groups are taken as a whole and not when small areas are compared. The mountainous tract west, southwest, and northwest of Oxford, including Hobson and Blount mountains, and the area south and west of Babyhead, and including Babyhead Mountain, contain such massive rocks, typically representing the Valley Spring gneiss. A study of these areas leaves the impression that a thick series of sediments of rather uniform composition has been involved in a zone of intense granitic intrusion and metamorphism, locally in a zone where rock flowage and minor folding have been dominant. The dark Packsaddle schist nowhere presents as a whole this massive appearance.

It has already been noted that dark bands occur, though not abundantly, in areas mapped as Valley Spring gneiss, and also bands composed of the metamorphosed equivalents of limestones—that is, wollastonite. These bands of wollastonite lend plausibility to the hypothesis that metamorphism has been most intense in the light series (the lower series), though this hypothesis does not exclude the generalization that intrusion has been most intense along synclinal axes, as the position of the great granite areas indicates, for evidently wherever the dark series is nearly obliterated by areas of granite the underlying light series must have been similarly affected.

PETROGRAPHY.

The results of a microscopic examination of a number of specimens of the Valley Spring gneiss are given below.

Feldspar-quartz-mica gneiss.

Megascopic character.—Finely banded sugar-grained pink and black gneiss. Bands one-sixty-fourth to one-fourth inch in width.

Microscopic character.—Potassic feldspar, more or less altered, and quartz about evenly divided with feldspar. Biotite mica (altered to chlorite in part) in linear arrangement. Little calcite. Little apatite.

Feldspar-quartz schist.

Megascopic character.—Nearly white aphanitic schist. Banding due to quartz bands separated by 1-inch to ½-inch aphanitic bands.

Microscopic character.—Fine-grained, granular quartz and microcline, the former much in excess. Feldspar greatly altered. Little muscovite.

Quartz-feldspar schist.

Megascopic character.—Pink, fine sugar-grained rock with only slight schistosity in hand specimen. Flecked with small grains of magnetite evenly distributed.

Microscopic character.—Altered microcline feldspar dominant. Little albite-oligoclase. Quartz abundant, though less than feldspar. Few flakes of biotite. Magnetite scattered.

Quartz-feldspar schist.

Megascopic character.—Even-toned pink fine-grained rock. Banding brought out by quartz and feldspar, arranged in lines. Fine dust of magnetite, little muscovite, and little garnet.

Microscopic character.—Holocrystalline grains quartz, potash feldspar, mostly microcline, and abundant muscovite. Approximate composition: 68.6 per cent silica, 16 per cent alumina, 11 per cent potash, 1.48 per cent calcium, 2 per cent magnetite.

ORIGIN OF THE SCHISTS AND GNEISSES.

The schists described above, those of both the light and the dark series, are all completely crystallized; that is, the arrangement, the size, and the composition of their mineral constituents are due in part to the influence of heat and pressure and in part to flowage as a mass. The presence of crystalline limestones and of graphite and mica schists, traceable for long distances and retaining the characteristics of beds, leaves no room for doubt that these rocks were in great part formed by metamorphism from a sedimentary series. It is believed also that the presence of iron ores leads to the same conclusion—a point which will be more fully considered at another place. As has been pointed out, the amphibolites, because of their basic character, probably represent in part old basic intrusives or flows, or perhaps sediments of a tuffaceous nature.

Gneisses derived by metamorphism from intrusive rocks of a granitic type are almost without doubt present in the region. One crosscutting dike possesses much the same schistose nature as the

beds which it cuts. Red Mountain also, a granitic ridge in the southeast corner of the Llano quadrangle, is a noteworthy example of the same phenomenon. This ridge trends northwest, and the dike which forms it can be traced to a point near Walker Peak. Toward the northwest a gradual change takes place in the appearance of the mass, and the rock at its northwest end shows decided lamination. Indeed, were the rock exposed only in the condition seen at this end, it could not be distinguished from beds which are believed to represent sedimentary strata.

In the area immediately east of Long Mountain also the gneissoid rocks have much the aspect of granites impressed with foliate structure; and south of Field Creek, near San Fernando Creek, in the northwest part of the quadrangle, similar features were noted. It should be understood, then, that the series of gneisses and schists of the acidic type mapped as Valley Spring gneiss probably contains material of igneous origin. It may be said here that no genetic relation could be shown between the iron-ore deposits and these old granitic intrusive rocks.

BASIC INTRUSIVE ROCKS OF A GABBRO-DIORITE TYPE.

GENERAL CHARACTER AND DISTRIBUTION.

The dark intrusive rocks are most abundantly developed in the southeast corner of the Llano quadrangle, and, though they have not been generally separated from the accompanying dark Packsaddle schist, they have been mapped in one instance. A considerable mass of gabbro was observed in the vicinity of Goldmine Creek, north of Moss ranch, but it has not been mapped; and, as has been stated, the dark Packsaddle schist probably includes amphibolites, which represent old intrusive rocks of gabbroic or diabasic type.

The area south of Click is especially characterized by very dark green to black amphibolite rocks, which were probably derivatives of a gabbro or diorite magma. The talc deposits in this vicinity are alteration products of such a series, and the serpentine rocks of Oxford are probably derived from a peridotitic magma.

Two dark fine-grained dikes (aphanitic in texture) which cut the schist series and which might have been expected to show a rather basic character proved to be felsites, one a spherulitic mica felsite, the other a hornblende-mica felsite; the hornblende of this latter rock showed a bluish pleochroism parallel to the C axis, suggestive of a soda amphibole. A short distance east of Click a small intrusive mass proves to be a hornblende-soda granite.

The rocks of this gabbro-diorite group were intruded earlier than the greater part of the granites. It is possible that some of the latter rocks, which show evidence of pressure and metamorphism, may have been nearly of the same age, though no relations were observed which might establish this point.

PETROGRAPHY.

The results of a microscopic examination of a number of specimens are as follows:

Soda-hornblende granite, chip only, taken a short distance east of Click post office.

Microscopic character.—Holocrystalline albite feldspar and considerable quartz; a little microcline feldspar. Large plates of green hornblende are abundant. Abundant titanite surrounding grains of titaniferous magnetite. The rock has suffered crushing and shows abundant granulation at the edges of the feldspar grains; the amphiboles are locally broken and bent and drawn into shreds.

Hypersthene olivine gabbro from Goldmine Creek.

Megascopic character.—Dark-blue to black medium-grained rock.

Microscopic character.—Holocrystalline texture. Labradorite in lathlike prisms. Diallage, hypersthene, and olivine. Biotite and hornblende poikilitically inclosing pyroxene and feldspar. Magnetite.

Amphibolite from high hill on Coal Creek.

Megascopic character.—Dark-green hornblende rock with slight tendency, due to pressure, to cleave more easily in one direction than in another.

Microscopic character.—Mat of light-green hornblende with plagioclase feldspar in interstices. Shows evidence of crushing.

Metadiorite porphyry in hornblende schist series near Aaron Moss ranch.

Microscopic character.—Altered andesine-labradorite feldspar phenocrysts in a fine-grained groundmass of feldspar and green hornblende. Flowage of hornblende around the phenocrysts of feldspar noteworthy. Shows an intermediate stage in the formation of an amphibole schist.

Diorite from Cedar Mountain under Cambrian.

Megascopic character.—Medium-grained dark gray to green rock.

Microscopic character.—Holocrystalline andesine-labradorite and hornblende in large plates.

Spherulitic mica felsite.

Megascopic character.—Black aphanitic dike rock.

Microscopic character.—Mass of very fine blades of biotite mica in groundmass of unstriated feldspar. Some quartz and one quartz phenocryst, showing absorbed edges. A spherulitic arrangement of the feldspar is noteworthy and the mica seems to be arranged in a manner controlled perhaps by this spherulitic structure.

Amphibolite (meta-gabbro?) (partly crushed) from southwest part of Burnet area near edge of Llano area.

Megascopic character.—Dark-green medium to fine-grained hornblende rock.

Microscopic character.—Mass of interlocking hornblende crystals with interstices filled with untwinned plagioclase feldspar. Abundant grains of magnetite largely within the hornblende.

Mica-hornblende felsite.

Megascopic character.—Nearly black aphanitic dike rock.

Microscopic character.—Abundant hornblende in laths and grains set in a matrix of very finely granular feldspar and quartz. Biotite mica is also abundant in fine laths and tiny plates. Apatite needles are present. The hornblende has a blue pleochroism parallel to the elongation (C), and extinction angles as high as 18°.

Diorite from southeast of Rough Mountain and west of San Fernando Creek.

Megascopic character.—Medium-grained dark-green rock.

Microscopic character.—Holocrystalline texture. Weathered andesine-labradorite feldspar and abundant hornblende in large plates. Much pyrite in large part confined to hornblende. Hornblende altering to iron oxide along cleavage cracks. Some epidote. Some apatite.

PALEOZOIC ROCKS.

The Paleozoic formations in the Llano-Burnet region, as stated in an earlier portion of this report, surround a basin cut in pre-Cambrian rocks, and much of the section therefore is exposed about the edges of this relatively low-lying area.

The pre-Cambrian rocks, composed in large part of metamorphosed marine sedimentary beds, passed through all the stages of deposition, deep burial, folding, metamorphism, intrusion, elevation, erosion, and subsidence beneath the sea before the basal Paleozoic beds were deposited. It is evident, therefore, that a vast interval of time separates the periods during which the two series were formed. This time interval is expressed by the unconformity between the Paleozoic beds and the underlying schists and granites. As this report treats principally of the pre-Cambrian rocks and the relations of the economic resources thereto, the Paleozoic rocks will be very briefly discussed.

UPPER CAMBRIAN ROCKS.

The Upper Cambrian rocks of this area are believed to be essentially the equivalent of the Reagan sandstone in Oklahoma. They rest upon a pre-Cambrian complex of metamorphic rocks—the schists, gneisses, and intrusive rocks described above—and have been divided into three formations, namely, proceeding from the base upward, the Hickory sandstone, the Cap Mountain formation, and the Wilberns formation.[a]

A variable thickness of conglomerate and sandstone, up to 250 feet, comprises the lower formation to which the name Hickory sandstone is given, a name originally applied by Comstock[b] to sandstones in the valley of Hickory Creek and its tributaries. Next, but with a gradual transition from sandstone to limestone, are beds predominantly limestone, capped by a variable thickness (from 15 to 75 feet) of cross-bedded glauconitic sandstone; these strata, 90 feet thick, constitute the second formation, the Cap Mountain, which is typically exposed at Cap Mountain, in the Llano quadrangle. The third formation, the Wilberns, from 170 to 220 feet thick, includes limestones and shales, the shales occupying approximately the upper third of the formation. It is typically exposed near Wilberns Glen, in the Llano quadrangle.

---

[a] For detailed descriptions of these formations see Llano-Burnet folio, Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey. (In preparation.)

[b] Comstock, T. B., Preliminary report on the geology of the central mineral region of Texas: First Ann. Rept. Texas Geol. Survey, 1889.

CAMBRO-ORDOVICIAN ROCKS.

The Cambro-Ordovician rocks have not been subdivided. They are represented by the Ellenburger limestone (locally dolomitic).[a] There is believed to be an unconformity near the top of the formation, for, according to Ulrich, fossil evidence precludes the idea that continuous sedimentation could have been in progress during the deposition of the entire series of beds. The formation is composed of chert-bearing limestones and dolomites, which are typically exposed in the Ellenburger Hills, in the Burnet quadrangle. In the greater number of places where the base of these beds was observed, apparent conformity with the Wilberns formation existed, though in several places on Riley Mountain an angular limestone conglomerate was present. Here, also, some evidence of overlap was observed, but the writer, in view of the fact that faulting was found to be prevalent, wishes to leave this point open until opportunity may be offered to study the locality again. In the majority of places, however, where the conglomerate was noted, concordance of beds was the rule. Many observations were made where no unconformity could be detected, and also where apparent transition of the two formations could be followed. It must be noted, however, that the basal beds of the Ellenburger limestone varied in texture and appearance; and as this phenomenon is in itself a suggestion of unconformity, any conclusion must for the present remain tentative.

At the top of the Ellenburger limestone a conglomeratic limestone bed is generally, though not always, present, and the lowest portion of the upper Carboniferous succeeds. The deposition of upper Carboniferous limestone on beds of Cambro-Ordovician age marks a great gap in sedimentation, a period of great duration including lower Carboniferous, Devonian, Silurian, and part of Ordovician time, during which no deposition was taking place.

The Cambro-Ordovician rocks occur at the crest of the Paleozoic scarp (unless faulting has intervened) and form the greater part of the Paleozoic surface in Llano and Burnet Counties.

Complete sections of the Ellenburger limestone are not easy to obtain. The general massiveness of the formation, gentle folds and faults, combine to prevent continuous record. Thicknesses up to 600 feet may be observed in the bluffs of the Colorado, between Tanyard Crossing and Deer Creek, and it is probable that the formation is composed of beds aggregating 1,000 feet in thickness.

CARBONIFEROUS ROCKS.

Beds of Carboniferous limestone and shale of lower Pennsylvanian age are present in this region and have been divided into two formations—the Marble Falls limestone, composed of limestone, and the

[a] For detailed description of the formation see Sidney Paige, Llano-Burnet folio, Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey. (In preparation.)

Smithwick shale,[a] composed of nearly black shale accompanied by sandstone lentils.

As has been already noted the Carboniferous is in most places separated from the underlying Cambro-Ordovician by a thin limestone conglomerate, and, in one instance, a very coarse, angular conglomerate or breccia was observed. In some localities, however, little or no discordance could be seen, as in the restricted basin 5 miles northeast of Blufton in the Burnet quadrangle.

The Marble Falls limestone is believed to be not over 450 feet, possibly 500 feet, in thickness. The Smithwick shale, which immediately overlies the Marble Falls limestone, because of its soft nature is not exposed in such attitude as to permit a section measurement. Moreover, its top is overlapped by Cretaceous sediments. Probably the beds exposed in Burnet County do not exceed 400 feet in thickness.

The Carboniferous is confined almost entirely to the southeastern portion of the Burnet quadrangle, though a small area exists in Riley Mountain.

STRUCTURE.

A reference to the small map of Texas (Pl. I, p. 7), showing the geologic relations of the Llano-Burnet region and surrounding area, will immediately call forth the suggestion that some unusual condition has caused the exposure of these ancient pre-Cambrian rocks; and on turning to the detailed map (Pl. III, in pocket) and studying the faulting which has taken place, one is compelled to ascribe to this faulting, combined with differential erosion, the present basin-like form of the area.

The faults which border this basin, indicated by heavy black lines, all have one important similarity. The downthrown block forms the scarp side of the fault and presents a more or less vertical face toward the basin, or, in other words, the basin area, now topographically lower than the surrounding scarp and largely characterized by pre-Cambrian rocks, is structurally elevated with respect to that scarp.

Such an elevation in past time must have exposed the rocks which were carried up by it to accelerated attack by the elements with the result that the overlying sediments were stripped off and the core of schists and granite uncovered. From this point on, the metamorphic complex disintegrated more rapidly than the surrounding linestone-capped strata, and the present erosional basin was formed. The Paleozoic sediments involved in the suggested uplift are locally folded, and are inclined at varying degrees from the horizontal.

The structure of the pre-Cambrian schists (except the displacement they have suffered due to late faulting) is of a much earlier date and of a much more complex nature than the structures just described.

[a] For detailed descriptions of the Smithwick shale see Llano-Burnet folio, Geol. Atlas U. S., U. S. Geol. Survey. (In preparation.)

The rocks have suffered deep-seated regional metamorphism, have been impressed with a foliate structure, have usually steeply inclined dips, trend generally to the northwest, and are intruded both by old dioritic and gabbroic rocks and by late granitic and pegmatitic types. The major structural lines are indicated on the geologic map (Pl. III). Two nearly parallel anticlinal axes are specially noteworthy, one a few miles west of Oxford, the other, a few miles east of Lone Grove. The latter ends to the southeast in the Burnet quadrangle (not shown here), and is beautifully accentuated by heavy bands of limestone, bending around the nose of the arch.

Several of the many minor folds are indicated on the map. The great granite masses occupy positions corresponding to synclinal axes, as, for example, the mass in the southwestern part of Llano quadrangle and the mass in the western part of Burnet quadrangle. The central syncline does not seem to have suffered such intense intrusion.

North of Llano River in the western portion of the Llano quadrangle the anticlinal arch flattens and the schists dip at lower angles.

The manner in which intrusion has taken place has already been described and need not be repeated. A study of the map will indicate, in part, the extreme point to which this process has been carried. A discussion of the probable forces involved in the production of the post-Paleozoic faulting can not be given in this paper.

IRON ORES.[a]

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

By A. C. Spencer.

Iron ores composed essentially of magnetic iron oxide (magnetite) (Fe_3O_4) or of admixtures of magnetite with hematite (Fe_2O_3) occur in deposits of noteworthy size in Llano and Mason Counties, Tex. During the progress of geologic mapping of the Llano quadrangle in 1908 and 1909 thirty-two more or less distinct occurrences of such iron ore were noted and studied with such detail as was warranted by generally poor natural exposures and a very small amount of exploratory development.

Though a few localities are in eastern Mason County, most of the iron showings are in that portion of Llano County which lies north of Llano River. All of the known occurrences of magnetite are described, but it is believed that not more than perhaps three of the deposits promise to become of industrial value. No assurance can be given that the three most likely deposits can be developed into profit-

[a] The examination of the iron-ore deposits was assumed as an especial task by Mr. Spencer in view of his familiarity with the magnetite ores of the northeastern portion of the United States, but the more notable showings were also studied by Mr. Paige. The notes of both have been used in the following descriptions.

able mines in advance of adequate exploration by means of diamond drills or by prospecting shafts in addition to those already opened, and it is considered that the less promising deposits will not warrant any large expenditure for prospecting unless the market value of iron ores increases.

The permissible scope of the geologic work did not admit of magnetic surveys, but it is suggested that such surveys should be carried on in connection with any future exploration of the more promising magnetic deposits of this district. Surveys with compass and dip needle would perhaps serve as adequate guides in the preliminary magnetic exploration of these iron-ore deposits, after which, if the results obtained warranted such a course, more refined methods and studies might be applied.

Financial interests that may take up the problem of the practical development of the Llano County iron ores will doubtless give due consideration to the possibility of applying magnetic concentration, as processes of this sort are becoming more and more firmly established in various parts of the world.

The deposits of magnetite in Llano and Mason counties, Tex., are typically layered or stratiform ore bodies conforming in attitude with the layering of the somewhat schistose rocks by which they are inclosed. The feature of layering is more marked in the leaner ore bodies than in the deposits of higher grade, but may be made out in nearly every locality where the ore-bearing rocks are adequately exposed for any sort of an examination. A single exception is noted in the case of a small ore mass opened by the Gallihaw shaft, which occurs in a dike cutting across the layering of the local gneiss.

In so far as the geologic mapping may be relied on the deposits are associated mainly with the lower of the two sets of gneisses which have been broadly separated. The difficulties of consistently discriminating between these rocks have, however, proved to be so great that it must be freely admitted that the immediate country rocks of the ores may be representatives of the upper set of schists in certain localities. If any mistake has been made in the proper classification of the country rocks, it is in places where the upper schists have suffered excessive metamorphism and where they constitute areas of minor extent.

Two extensive occurrences of magnetite were found within areas which are undoubtedly underlain by the upper dark schists, the Packsaddle schist, and a small amount of magnetite was noted at one other place in this rock. The Olive deposit, which is included in the foregoing, occurs in the dark Packsaddle schist near beds of limestone and very near the edge of a great intrusion of coarse granite.

SPECIAL LOCALITIES.

OLIVE PROPERTY.

By A. C. Spencer.

The Olive iron-ore property is located on Little Llano River about 6 miles east by northeast of Llano, 1 mile south of Lone Grove post office, and 1 mile north of Llano River and the line of the Houston & Texas Central Railroad. The property has been more extensively developed than any other in the district. It was opened by a shaft in 1892 or 1893.

An extensive area of granite covering the western-central part of the Burnet quadrangle and the adjacent portion of the Llano quadrangle is bounded on the southwest and west by a band of limestone-bearing schists extending along the railroad southeast and northwest from Graphite station and up the valley of Little Llano River. The Olive shaft is situated on the east bank of the Little Llano just west of the main boundary between the schists and granites, and therefore within the schists which belong to the upper set of metamorphosed sedimentary rocks characteristic of the region.

The rocks exposed in the vicinity include granite, hornblende-mica schist, graphite schist, and crystalline limestone. The granites are intruded into the other rocks in an intricate manner which can not be fully made out because of rather poor exposures, so that the representation of areal relations given on the geologic map is of necessity very much generalized. The material on the waste dump includes all the rocks mentioned except graphite schist.

The stock pile contains perhaps 400 tons of ore of very good physical appearance. Most of the ore contains hornblende, and some of it carries iron sulphide in addition to magnetite. It is all more or less distinctly layered in its make up. As the result of 17 years' exposure many of the ore chunks present a somewhat weathered appearance, the partial disintegration being due to oxidation of the iron sulphide present. Where this mineral is lacking, the ore shows no effects of weathering.

The following analyses show the character of the ore:

Analyses of iron ore from Olive mine, Llano County, Tex.

	Metallic iron.	Silica.	Sulphur.	Phosphorus.
1	57.80	8.40	0.28	Trace.
2	54.35	10.16	.55	.021
3	57.5	8.6	Trace.	Trace.

1 and 2 are samples taken by Robert Linton, of Atwater, Linton & Atwater, mining engineers, for Johnston, Elliot & Co., of Dallas, Tex.
3. S. H. Worrell, analyst, University of Texas.

Mr. Robert Linton has furnished also the following analyses, said to have been made in 1893 for the owners of the Olive property. Though the name of the analyst is not given, there is no reason to believe that these are not good commercial analyses. The samples taken together are stated to have come from the third mine level and to represent a section across 9 feet 6 inches of ore, 9 feet 2 inches of which is covered by samples 5 to 11 in the following table. These samples show an average content of iron of 58.71 per cent and of phosphorus of 0.0325 per cent, this average being figured with due consideration of the widths of ore stated in the table.

The analyses show a strictly Bessemer type of ore with a moderate iron content. Sulphur, though rather high, is not sufficient to lower the value of the ore appreciably.

Analyses of iron ore from third mine level, Olive mine, Llano County, Tex.

Analysis No.	Width of ore.	Fe_2O_3.	Fe.	P.	S.	SiO_2.	Mn.	TiO_2.	Total.
	Ft. in.								
5	2	91.76	64.33	0.0264	0.58	81.52	.....	.....	100.51
6	1	87.17	61.02	.0177	.93	11.08	2.25	.....	101.44
7	2	.....	24.08	.0607	2.21	25.28	.....	.....	.....
8	2 3	89.27	62.49	.0104	.32	8.87	.....	.....	98.47
9	2	69.81	48.87	.0279	.64	19.43	.....	.....	89.90
10	10	60.50	42.35	.0569	.53	22.41	.....	.....	83.49
11	1 2	61.06	42.74	.0663	.47	25.14	.....	.....	86.73
12	8	88.34	61.84	.0168	.64	10.54	.....	.....	99.53

The Olive ore was discovered at a point about 95 feet north by northeast of the working shaft. There is no surface showing and the ore is said to have been uncovered by accident in a shallow excavation. The first development was by means of an incline about 30 feet deep and of a southerly drift, which was afterwards connected with the vertical working shaft. The latter, which was started in the hanging wall, encountered the ore below the level of the drift mentioned above. It was carried down through and below the ore, and three crosscuts were run out to the ore.

The following notes by J. B. Dabney, former superintendent of the Olive mine, are furnished by Mr. N. J. Badu, of Llano:

> The vein lies northeast and southwest. The ore was good on the first heading, but not so good as on the second, third, and fourth levels. On the fourth level the ore pinched to 2 feet. The heading on this level was carried 20 feet beyond the vein and then abandoned. Next an incline was driven to the vein which, as near as I can remember, was 8 feet wide. From the bottom of the incline the vein was opened to right and left.

The cross section of the mine given herewith (fig. 2) is adapted from a sketch by Mr. Dabney on the sheet bearing the notes already given. On his sketch he notes the thickness of the vein above the first level as 3 feet; between the first and second levels, 6 feet; between the

third and fourth levels, 8 feet; at the fourth level, 2 feet; and at the bottom of the incline, 8 feet.

For the sketch plan of the mine workings here given the writer is indebted to Mr. Robert Linton, who secured it from mine records which passed through his hands during the summer of 1909.

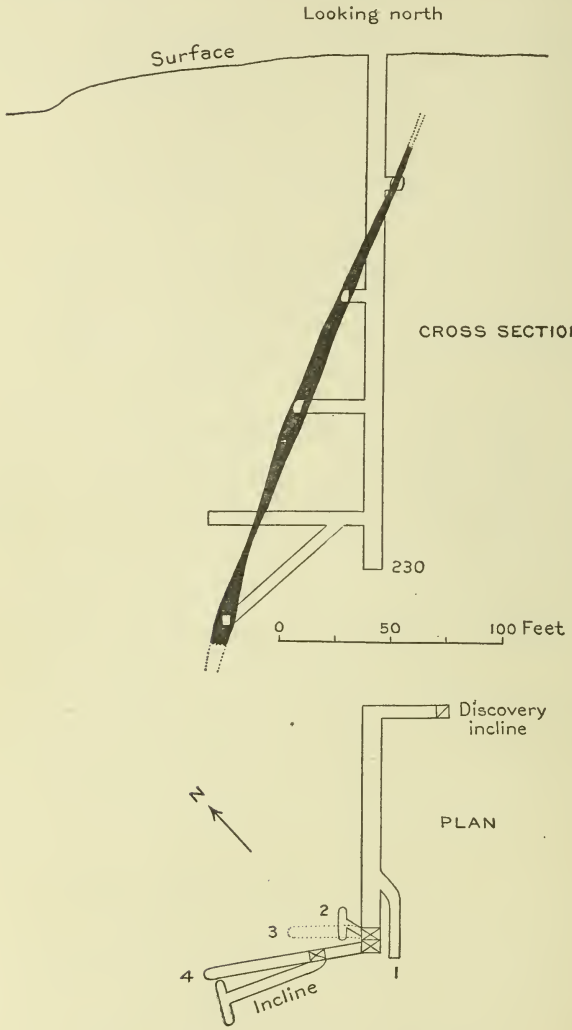


FIGURE 2.—Cross section and plan of Olive mine.

From the data at hand it may be concluded that the Olive ore body strikes approximately northeast and southwest and dips rather steeply toward the northwest and beneath Little Llano River. The relative positions of the mine levels and the apex of the vein at the discovery shaft suggest that the ore body may be a pod-shaped mass, plunging in a southerly direction, but it is not known that any horizontal limit of the ore was established at any point.

Observable relations at the Olive mine do not lead to any conclusion concerning the mode of origin to be assigned to the deposit. Lying at the edge of a great granite intrusion, the ore might have been segregated as an effect of igneous metamorphism. However, the material on the waste dump can not be regarded as in any way particularly characteristic of intense igneous metamorphism, the limestone and schist being quite like the general run of the rocks which compose the upper of the two sets of schist (Packsaddle schist) which have

been delineated on the geologic map. The Olive deposit is one of two which may be assigned to this set of rocks without reservation.

It is suggested that magnetic observations might prove of practical value in any future exploration of the Olive ore body.

BADER TRACT.

By A. C. Spencer.

The property known as the Bader tract lies about 9 miles west of Llano and 9 miles south of the Iron Mountain mine. This parcel is adjoined upon the north by a tract known as the Otto, the east and west property line being somewhat less than 2 miles north of Llano River. Iron ore has been found at several places along a north by northwest trending zone about 500 feet in width and nearly 7,000 feet in length. A shaft in the extreme southwest corner of the Otto tract encountered magnetite, which represents the most northerly known extension of the Bader ore range. Farther northwest there is no trace of any exploratory work such as trenches, and careful search on the part of the geologists failed to reveal so much as a fragment of magnetite beyond the west line of the Otto tract. That the ore may continue in this direction is thought to be possible but improbable.

There is much more granite north of the Otto workings than on the Bader tract, and the metamorphic rocks are seriously broken and interrupted by the granite intrusions. This fact is shown in a very general way on the geologic map, though many slivers of schist are present in the areas which the map shows as granite. The impossibility of adequately representing the actual relations of the schists and the granites has been explained in former paragraphs.

No importance can be attached to any suggestion that might be made in the direction of correlating the Bader range with other occurrences of magnetite in Llano County. There is no adequate reason for regarding the range as in any way the extension of the Iron Mountain ore. Though the trend of the range would carry it to the ore on the Epperson tract 3 miles to the northwest, there is a wide area of intrusive granite north of the Bader, and beyond this intrusion structural trends are rather northerly than northwesterly.

A sketch map (fig. 3) has been prepared to show the general distribution of magnetite occurrences on the Bader and the adjacent tracts. Aside from very shallow pits or trenches at various points, the Bader range has been explored only in the vicinity of the northern end, where the original surface indications appear to have been the best. Here trenches and float ore extend for a total distance of 1,000 feet in a southerly direction from the Otto shaft. Two lines of outcrop about 80 feet apart are noted in the vicinity of the Bader incline.

South of the incline and about 110 feet distant an excavation in the lower ore layer shows 31 inches of fairly clean ore dipping about 30° NE. There is also a 5-inch rider lying 2 feet above the principal ore layer and separated from it by feldspathic gneiss. In an adjacent opening on the upper layer the grain or layering of the ore appears to be nearly horizontal.

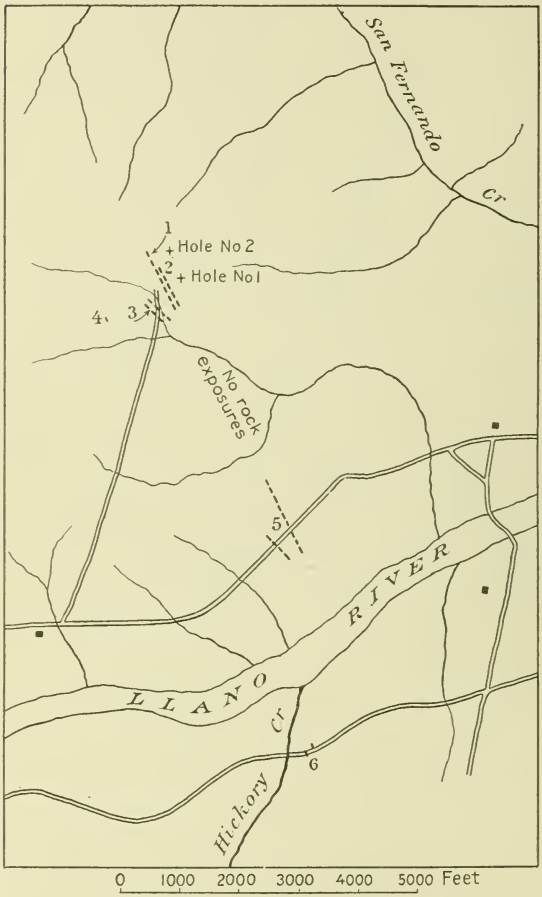


FIGURE 3.—Distribution of float and outcrops on Bader tract and vicinity. 1 Otto shaft; 2, Bader incline; 3, magnetite float; 4, barite-magnetite outcrop; 5, magnetite float and shallow pits; 6, Hickory Creek outcrops.

The Bader incline reveals two ore layers estimated to lie between 10 and 15 feet apart. The dip of these layers varies from 20° to 40°. The lower ore may be described as gneiss carrying thin and discontinuous layers of magnetite. This lean material is not over 16 inches in thickness. The incline follows the dip of this ore for about 25 feet to a point where the slope flattens so that the workings cut across the layering of the gneiss and encounter the upper ore bed. As exposed in the sides of the incline this second layer has a maximum thickness of 20 inches.

The dip length of the incline is estimated to be about 50 feet. All the ore on the dump is layered to a marked degree, much of it being sharply segregated into layers of more or less granular magnetite and layers of silicate minerals.

Standing on the surface one may judge that the lower of the two layers shown in the pits mentioned above is identical with the upper of the two opened by the incline, though this may not be affirmed. If this identification be correct there are at least three ore layers at this place, the lowermost being nowhere exposed at the surface. The approximate positions of the last two holes which have been drilled

are given on the sketch map. No record of hole No. 1 is at hand. The following drill log is taken from a private report by E. V. D'Invilliers, who states that this record was furnished by G. M. Wakefield.

Copy of record of drill hole No. 2, Bader location, Llano County, Tex.

[Signed by Fred A. Wright, engineer in charge.]

	Ft.	in.
Stand pipe	1	6
Granite	301	6
Magnetite ore mixed	40	3
Granite	29	9
No core, probably ore	13	
Granite	27	
Chloritic rock and granite	6	
Ore	7	
Granite schist	13	
Granite	55	
Total drilled	494	

Angle of dip 29.5° E.
Strike of formation north-northwest and south-southeast.
Distance from cropping to point where drill was placed 600 feet.

Just where the wagon track from the south crosses the shallow valley southwest of the Bader shaft there is a heavy accumulation of magnetite float in solid pieces ranging up to 1 foot in diameter. This material, which is evidently derived from the veins that are in place on the hill slope to the east, is much more prominent than the float occurring along the veins themselves.

West of the wagon track two lines of magnetite débris may be made out, though it is impossible to trace these lines for any great distance. No trenching has been done at this place. About 1,000 feet west of the wagon track shown on the sketch map (fig. 3) and just south of an east-west wagon road long abandoned is a small outcrop of magnetite mixed with barite ($BaSO_4$). Only a few square inches of this material are exposed and its relations are unknown.

Along what may be called the main trend some float ore may be found to a distance of 500 feet southeast of the Bader shaft, where granitic material appears to interrupt the continuity of the ore. Though gneiss is present north and east of the small stream beyond the granite, no ore fragments are found in the soil. Farther to the southeast and across the stream there are no rock exposures for a distance of 3,000 feet, though a few small pieces of magnetite were noted northwest of the tributary plotted on the sketch map. South of this tributary a series of pits and small pieces of float from place to place show the presence of magnetite for a distance of 2,800 feet along a southeast trend in line with the northern ore occurrences. Also opposite the south end of this line of showings a second line of

ore indications is present. Along this general zone the soil is much redder than elsewhere in the neighborhood.

On the sketch map (fig. 3) two occurrences of magnetite on the Mason-Llano road south of Llano River and east of Hickory Creek are indicated. Fragments of ore lying on the surface are massive and pure, but the size of the ore bodies in place can not be judged, as no work has been done upon them.

The ore occurrences at the Hickory Creek locality lie at the end of a curving tongue of more or less hornblendic gneiss inclosed by massive granite, and granite exposed along the river separates the Hickory Creek ore from the nearest exposures of ore on the Bader tract.

No definite conclusion concerning the possibilities of the Bader tract can be offered. Compared with the great cropping and the abundant float at Iron Mountain the surface showings would seem to be unimportant. It is believed, however, that caution should be exercised in accepting an unfavorable point of view in cases of the sort here presented, since experience in other districts has shown that the importance of magnetite ore bodies in gneisses may be seriously misjudged from surface indications. It is suggested that the Bader tract is worthy of more extensive exploration than it has received up to the present time, and particularly that preliminary work in this direction should include a magnetic survey of the range which, as already stated, has a length of about 7,000 feet. It is thought that dip-needle observations might give indications of ore in the covered territory between the two ends of the Bader range.

The following are analyses of the ore from the Bader property:

Analyses of iron ore from the Bader property, Llano County, Tex.

	Metallic iron.	Phosphorus.	Silica.	Titanic acid.	Specific gravity.
1	64.150	0.014	72.80	0.385	4.577
2	52.550	.019	19.225	.310	.....
3	65.800	.046	.....	.....	.....

1. General sample of outcrop ore (Mr. McCreath). Report of E. V. D'Invilliers.
2. Sample representing 4 feet 10 inches of the mixed lens ore from the drill core on the Otto property. Report of E. V. D'Invilliers.
3. Bader tract. Report of E. V. D'Invilliers; by Rattle & Nye, of Cleveland, Ohio.

IRON MOUNTAIN.

By Sidney Paige.

The Iron Mountain prospect is located 12 miles northwest of the town of Llano and one mile northwest of Valley Spring post office. The property consists of 640 acres and is owned by Robert H. Downman, of New Orleans, La.

The ore body caps a low mound slightly above the elevation of the surrounding country, and trends about N. 60° W. in a gently curving line. The surface outcrop has a length of about 114 feet and a width of 22 feet at its center. It is slightly narrower at the northwest end and narrows down to about 6 feet at the southeast end. (See fig. 4.) A granite intrusion cuts across the mass at the northwest end, appar-

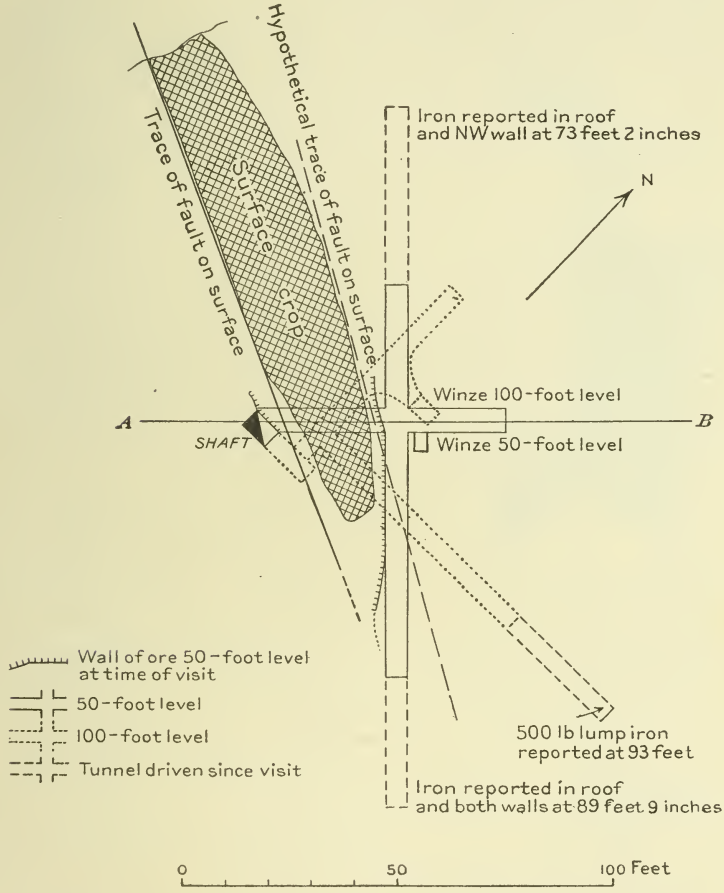

Hypothetical trace of fault on surface
Trace of fault on surface
Surface crop
Iron reported in roof and NW wall at 73 feet 2 inches
N
Winze 100-foot level
A
B
SHAFT
Winze 50-foot level
Wall of ore 50-foot level at time of visit
50-foot level
100-foot level
Tunnel driven since visit
500 lb lump iron reported at 93 feet
Iron reported in roof and both walls at 89 feet 9 inches
0
50
100 Feet

FIGURE 4.—Surface crop and underground workings at Iron Mountain prospect.

ently cutting off the ore. Covered surface prevents observations on the southeast end.

The ore body as revealed at the surface is a nearly vertical mass of very pure magnetite. Along its south side schists are exposed in several small cuts. They strike northwest with the ore, but in dip do not accord with the dip of the mass. (See figs. 4 and 5.) On the north side a gneissoid rock of granitic type forms the wall. It is believed to be intrusive into the ore, but is an older intrusion than

that of the granite which cuts across the northwest end. Unfortunately the surface cover has rendered the exact surface relations of the ore body obscure; also the complex intrusion of granite into the schists, a condition described in an earlier part of the report, has at this locality obscured the original relations of the ore to the inclosing rock.

Both northwest and southeast of the ore body the surface is covered with soil and only occasional outcrops of weathered material may be seen. About 450 feet northwest a small outcrop of iron in schist was noted; granite, gneissoid granite, and schist are, however, evidently present in a complex mixture. Float ore can be found both northwest and southwest of the crop, but much of this in the near vicinity of the ore mass is evidently derived from it and has during erosion been carried to its present position. Some float ore derived from the overlying Cambrian sandstone and occasionally carrying fossils must not be confused with the magnetite float of the pre-Cambrian ores.

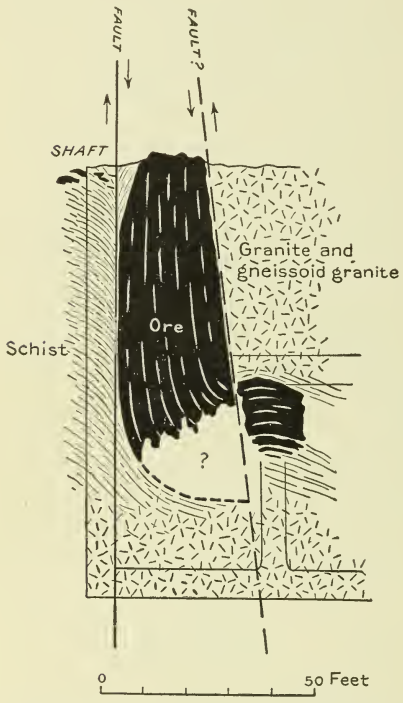


FIGURE 5.—Vertical section of ore body at Iron Mountain prospect.

A study of the plan and sections (figs. 4 and 5) will show clearly what is known of the structure of the body as revealed by developments. A shaft was sunk near the southwest wall of the ore body. A crosscut has been driven at the 50-foot level, showing 25 feet of solid ore. This crosscut was continued 54 feet. After passing through the 25 feet of ore a narrow mass of granitic schistose material was encountered, after which ore was again found. This second body was confined largely to the floor, and a winze was sunk in ore. (See fig. 5.)

On the 50-foot level two drifts were driven. (See fig. 4.) At the time of the writer's visit the northwest drift had been opened 30 feet, with no solid ore in any part of the working. Since that time the drift is reported to have been driven to 73 feet, with ore in the roof and northwest wall, at this point.

The southeast drift at the time of the writer's visit had been opened 60 feet, with solid ore on the south wall to a point 30 feet ± from the center of the crosscut. Since that time the drift is reported to have been driven to a point 89 feet 9 inches from the center of the

crosscut, and to have had ore on the south wall the entire distance; and at that point is reported to have ore on both walls and in the roof.

At the 100-foot level crosscuts and drifts were run, as shown on the plan (fig. 4), but ore was not encountered under the vertical mass. The country rock is a mixture of schist and granite. A raise was made from the 100-foot level to connect with the winze, and revealed 16 feet of ore in a nearly flat-lying body of schist, grading downward into lean ore and granite. The schists containing the ore dipped at a low angle to the east.

The crosscut shown on the 100-foot level was driven 55 feet, but encountered no ore. At the time of the writer's visit the drift on the 100-foot level had been driven 62 feet, but no ore found. Since that time this drift is reported to have been driven to a point 93 feet from the center of the crosscut, and to have found at that point a lump of disconnected ore weighing about 500 pounds.

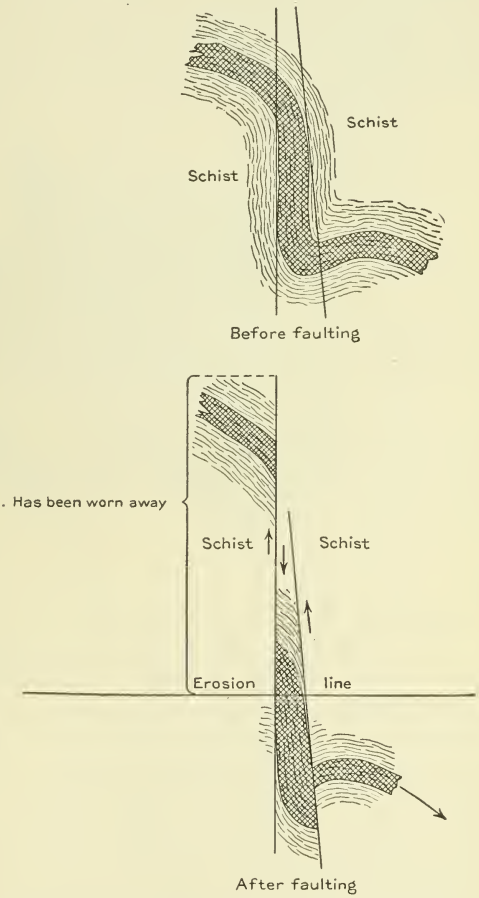


FIGURE 6.—Ideal section showing relation of faulting to folding and erosion.

The relations described above may be hypothetically explained as follows: The vertical mass of iron ore is a layered body with the layering vertical. It is believed that formerly it occupied a position in accord with the schists, as does the mass exposed in the winze. Faulting is believed to have taken place on both south and north sides, though evidence for the latter is not as strong as for the former. (See fig. 5.) Several facts point to this conclusion. The schists on the south side dip sharply downward at their contact with the iron, suggesting fault drag, and a band of soft chlorite-like material about 2 inches wide is found at the contact. The drag was observed both at the surface and at the 50-foot level. The gouge material was not so well developed at this level. From the very fact also that the layering of the ores of the region has

elsewhere been invariably parallel to the schistosity the discordance here is excellent evidence of faulting. At the 50-foot level on the north side, there is also a suggestion of faulting.

The direction and dip of these hypothetical faults may be somewhat different from those indicated by the plan and section, but the structural results of their presence are believed to be as presented.

The vertical iron mass, therefore, is on the downthrow side of both faults No. 1 and No. 2. The fault plane was for a distance parallel to the limb of a fold and accounts for the vertical position of the large iron mass and its peculiar relation to the flat iron bed. The difference in thickness between the flat bed and the vertical bed may be

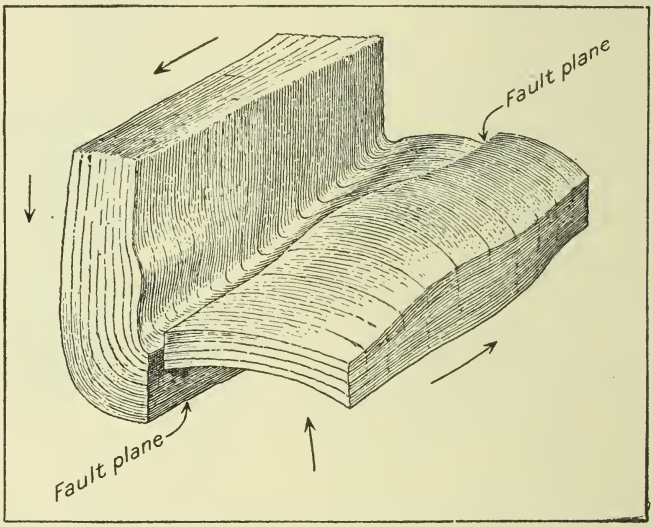


FIGURE 7.—Stereogram illustrating condition which would exist if the north fault passed vertically but at an angle to the strike of the fold.

accounted for by supposing a certain amount of movement to have taken place in a horizontal direction, bringing a thinner portion of the layer against a thicker portion. Intrusion of granite probably preceded this faulting. There is some reason to believe, however, that the fault on the north side was accompanied or followed by granite intrusion. Figure 6 is an ideal sketch of the probable conditions before and after faulting, and figure 7 is a stereogram showing the relation which might exist if the north fault plane passed at an angle to the strike of the bed.

Besides the development by shaft and tunnels above described the property has been prospected by several diamond-drill holes. They will be described in the order of their drilling.

The first hole, located 200 feet S. 57° W. of the shaft and inclined 37° toward it, was drilled to a depth of 169 feet. Two feet of ore was reported at 108 feet. This hole, to have reached the vertical plane of the ore body, should have been drilled 250 feet. It would have cut the plane at a depth of 150 feet.

The second hole, located 488 feet S. 72° E. from the northeast corner of the shaft, was drilled S. 4° W. at an angle of 43°. A foot of lean ore was struck at 18 feet. The drill jammed at 225 feet. Another hole at this same locality was drilled 290 feet S. 77° W. with a dip of 49°. Its record follows:

Record of hole drilled in Iron Mountain iron property, Llano County, Tex.

	Ft.	in.		Ft.	in.
Lean ore	14	11	to	16	..
Pink granite	16	..	to	25	..
Decomposed material	25	..	to	25	8
Granite	25	8	to	31	4
Black schist, little magnetite	31	4	to	35	8
Granite	35	8	to	198	1
Black schist and granite	198	1	to	199	..
Granite	199	..	to	215	5
Ore	215	5	to	216	8

Hole 253 feet deep on October 8, 1909, without commercial ore.

Next, a hole was drilled 500 feet northeast of the shaft. It was put down 500 feet. No ore was struck.

Then a hole was drilled on this same line, but only 216 feet from the shaft. It dipped 60° toward the shaft and was drilled to a depth of 606 feet. No ore was struck.

A hole approximately 1,400 feet northeast of the shaft and east of Johnson Creek was down 600 feet at the end of March, 1909, without striking commercial ore. It was drilled toward the shaft at an angle of 45°.

Analyses of ore from Iron Mountain, Llano County, Tex.

	Metallic iron.	Phosphorus.	Silica.	Specific gravity.
1	65.40	0.069	4.695	4.724
2	67.60	.093	4.690	4.677
3	65.45	.061	.....	.....
4	66.53	Not det.	.....	.....
5	64.90	Not det.	.....	.....
6	58.87	Not det.	.....	.....
7	61.45	Not det.	.....	.....
8	67.70	0.045	.....	.....
9	66.10	.034	.....	.....
10[a]	63.23	.008	4.70	.....
11[b]	66.82	Trace.	4.65	.....
12[c]	66.30	0.146	6.30	.....

[a] Sulphur, trace. [b] Sulphur, 0.30. [c] Sulphur, 0.04.

1. General sample of surface ore. Private report of E. V. D'Invilliers.
2. Sample 125 pieces of ore at depth of 50 feet in shaft. Report of E. V. D'Invilliers.
3. Surface ore clippings large bowlders (sampled by representative of McCreath). Report of E. V. D'Invilliers.
4. Surface ore main exposure (sampled by representative of McCreath, 1889). Report of D'Invilliers.
5. From shaft 8 feet deep, south side main exposure. (McCreath.) Report of D'Invilliers.
6. From shaft 12 feet deep, north side of main exposure, lower 8 feet of ore. (McCreath.) Report of D'Invilliers.
7. 150 yards east of main exposure, from cut 4 feet deep. (McCreath.) Report of D'Invilliers.
8. From shaft at main exposure, ore from lower depth than 5 or 6, chiefly magnetic. Report of D'Invilliers.
9. Iron Mountain tract, sampled and analyzed by Rattle & Nye. Report of D'Invilliers.
10. 50-foot level, Iron Mountain mine; taken by Robert Linton, of Atwater, Linton & Atwater, mining engineers, for Johnston, Elliot & Co., of Dallas, Tex.
11. 50-foot level, Iron Mountain mine; taken by Robert Linton, for Johnston, Elliot & Co., of Dallas, Tex.
12. 7 feet of new ore on east wall of winze, 48-foot level, sampled by William B. Phillips, Rinaldo Williams, analytical chemist, Birmingham, Ala.

It would seem advisable to confine prospecting largely to the north side of the line of strike of the ore body. If it can be shown that the flat bed has considerable extension in a northwest-southeast direction and also on the dip, a large body of ore may be present. If underground work is to be continued it would seem advisable to make a raise from the end of the east drift on the 100-foot level, at the point where iron was struck, to discover the presence or absence of the bed. A magnetic survey of the territory adjacent to the ore body would be of value.

KEYSER-JONES TRACT.

By A. C. Spencer.

In Mason County, about 4½ miles south and somewhat west of Castell, magnetite float and ore outcrops occur at several places within the drainage basin of Keyser Creek, otherwise known as Old Place Creek. The relative locations are shown on the accompanying sketch map (fig. 8.) The most noteworthy showing is on a subdivision of the tract belonging to Judge J. H. Jones, of Mason. Here massive magnetite outcrops along a low hillock for a total distance of 75 feet, the maximum observed width of ore being about 4 feet. The ore is distinctly layered in its make-up and is rather siliceous. The trend of the cropping is about N. 45° W. No rocks are exposed within several hundred feet except at a point 100 feet southeast of the ore where micaceous gneiss was noted. About a quarter of a mile northwest along the general strike of the ore a low hill is formed of hornblende schist. If the outcrop at Iron Mountain be excepted, this is the largest surface showing of magnetic iron ore in the Llano district. At present, however, there would be no adequate inducement to warrant the expense of drilling at this point, though in the future such exploration might be advisable.

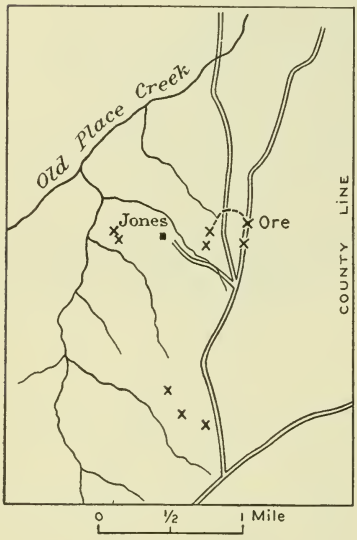


FIGURE 8.—Magnetite prospects on Keyser-Jones tract, southwest of Castell.

A second fairly good showing of magnetite may be seen on a hilltop somewhat less than half a mile east and a little south of Jones's house above the tank (stock reservoir). This ore is accompanied by red-weathering gneiss or schist, a curving band of which may be traced to the northeast and east across the two roads shown on the sketch map. Magnetite float may be found from place to place along

this red band, but one does not gain the impression that excavation is likely to reveal any body of ore.

A mile or more farther south minor amounts of magnetite may be found in association with highly metamorphic schists, and in this case outcrops are adequate for a decision that no deposits of economic importance are to be expected. On the whole the possibilities of the tract seem to depend upon the Jones outcrop.

GOODWIN PROSPECT.

By Sidney Paige.

About 2½ miles S. 55° W. of Babyhead post office, small outcrops of iron ore may be seen on Mr. Goodwin's place. The rocks are believed to belong to the lighter (lower) gneiss and schist series (Valley Spring gneiss), and are, as is almost invariably the case, more or less intruded by granite.

A short distance north of Mr. Goodwin's house a small trench reveals a foot or two of lean hematite ore banded with quartz and feldspar, the latter minerals forming a very fine sugar-grained aggregate. The individual thin iron layers swell and pinch in an irregular manner. What appears to be secondary quartz is introduced in bands along the schistosity in considerable abundance. The hematite is feebly magnetic, and octahedral faces can be detected among the crystals. The mineral is probably martite, a pseudomorph of magnetite.

Farther west over the ridge may be seen white schists of very even, fine, sugar-grained texture, carrying finely disseminated hematite in minute grains. Abundant orthoclase feldspar, with quartz and muscovite, make up the rock, which is believed to be a metamorphic sediment.

About 1,000 feet S. 10° E. from the house a shallow pit in the schists reveals a small bed of magnetite lying nearly flat and striking nearly east and west. About 9 or 10 inches of ore is exposed for 50 feet. The dip is to the south, more pronouncedly so at the west end. Considerable garnet and abundant quartz with some pyrite are the gangue minerals.

Less than 1,000 feet west of the locality and S. 37° W. from the house just described, a small pit shows an apparently vertical bed of magnetite and quartz with 1 or 2 feet of lean ore. This deposit can be traced for 100 feet in the trend of the ridge. Locally there is an indication of about 5 feet of ore. The north end of the outcrop is apparently cut off by a swing in the beds of pink schist.

No encouragement can be given that these deposits have any commercial value.

PARKHILL PROSPECT.

By Sidney Paige.

About 1 mile east by south of the summit of Horse Mountain a small quantity of ore may be seen about 2,300 feet north of and between the forks of two creeks. The bed strikes N. 55° W., dips 20° S., and is about 2 feet thick. The magnetite is admixed with quartz and red feldspar, and the pit reveals decided irregularity in thickness. The deposit does not seem worthy of further prospecting at the present time.

About 1 mile northwest of Miller Mountain and east of the main north and south Babyhead road, a small trench shows a foot or a foot and a half of lean ore in schist. The country rock trends about N. 30° W. and dips south. This opening and another a short distance northwest of it do not offer any inducement to further prospecting.

IRON DEPOSITS NEAR CASTELL.

By A. C. Spencer.

Castell post office is situated on Llano River 18 miles west of Llano. North of the river within the radius of a few miles there are showings of iron ore at several places which may be described in two groups—the Deep Creek deposits and the Elm Creek deposits. The ores of the Deep Creek and Elm Creek drainage basins are regarded as of no probable value, because the deposits, though extensive, are both lean and thin. At the same time by way of caution against absolute disparagement it is to be noted that such development work as has been done is negligible, so that the impressions gained by the geologists have been derived from very imperfect surface showings. With due allowance made for this condition, the opinion may be expressed that although future work may lead to the discovery of ore masses of sufficiently high grade to warrant mining operations, such ore bodies will not prove to be of large size, so that it can not be expected that any large mines will ever be developed in the combined field of Deep and Elm creeks.

DEEP CREEK ORES.

Deep Creek (fig. 9) joins Llano River about 1½ miles above the Castell ford. From the river the creek valley extends a mile west to an elbow, above which it has a general north-south course for somewhat more than a mile before turning again to the west about one-fourth mile north of the Mason stage road.

The magnetite deposits occur in the Deep Creek valley near the lower elbow and again north of the Mason road.

The magnetite showings near the elbow of Deep Creek are disposed along a line about a mile in length. Downstream from the bend the

presence of a little ore is noted on the north bank of the creek, and toward the southeast heavy float is noted at two points. At these localities the ore is massive and nearly pure, the only minerals present besides magnetite being a little feldspar and mica. The manner of occurrence is not evident, but the three localities lie along a line trending northwest and crossing the creek both below and above the elbow. Opposite the elbow none is noted, but west of the creek it again appears and abundant float may be traced along the hill slope

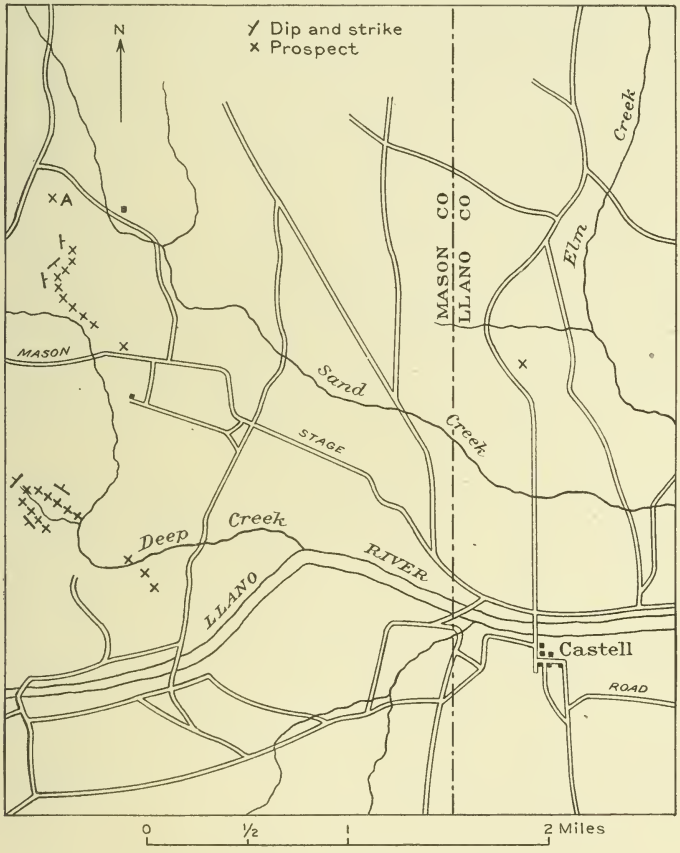


FIGURE 9.—Distribution of magnetite near Deep Creek.

north of a small drain. About 1,800 feet above the mouth of this drain the line of the ore crosses the shallow valley and turns back upon itself. The hook-shaped outcrop may be taken as evidence that the ore occurs as a conformable layer in the local schists and that the rocks are here thrown into a low arch or anticline.

A few outcrops of feldspathic schist in the neighborhood exhibit strikes and dips which bear out this impression of structure.

Though the exposures of ore are very inadequate, they serve to convey the impression that the iron mineral may be distributed

through 3 or 4 feet of rock, and that the reef is made up of layers of rock and ore from 6 to 10 inches thick. Some of the component layers are high-grade ore; others are platy aggregates of magnetite and siliceous minerals; still others carry but little iron.

North of the Mason road, east and north of Deep Creek, magnetite is found at several points. A short distance north of the road a few isolated fragments of good ore were noted. Then a quarter of a mile or so to the northwest there has been some prospecting. Natural outcrops, shallow pits, and float lead to the recognition of a curving magnetite range perhaps half a mile in length (fig. 9). There are evidently two parallel reefs along part of the range which are estimated to be less than 20 feet apart, measured across the layering. The curving outcrop and observed dips show that the ore and associated schists are gently folded. The dips are low to the east, or, locally at the turn, approximately south.

The ore appears to be rather lean, much of it showing garnet mixed with magnetite. Specimens were seen which are composed of alternate thin layers of fairly clean magnetite and of quartz. The garnet-bearing reefs vary in thickness from 18 inches to 3 feet.

The ore reefs are by no means continuous along the strike. Part, but certainly not all, of the observed discontinuity is due to the presence of irregular intrusive masses of granite, both fine and coarse grained varieties being present.

North of the occurrences mentioned in the foregoing paragraph, at the locality marked A on the sketch map, figure 9, there is a rather noteworthy showing of magnetite float. In addition to good-sized chunks of pure ore there is an interesting exhibition of coarsely crystalline material composed of quartz, pink feldspar, and magnetite in various proportions. This material is not exposed in place, but it has every appearance of being pegmatite (extremely coarse granite) of very siliceous and ferruginous composition, and is therefore believed to be intrusive in its nature. Magnetite-bearing pegmatites were noted in small amounts at many places in the Llano district, but no other instance of any great amount of the mineral in this association was seen. Though the ore at this particular place is regarded as almost certainly of igneous origin, it is not regarded as possible to use this conclusion in any definite way in working out the general origin of the iron ores of the district.

If the layered ores of Deep Creek valley are not merely ferruginous strata which have suffered simple metamorphism in company with sedimentary beds originally associated with them, as suggested by Mr. Paige elsewhere in this report, they were formed by some process the nature of which can not be stated—some process, as yet unrecognized, involving secondary rather than primary or original segregation.

ELM CREEK ORES.

The distribution of magnetite showings northeast and east of Castell is given on the sketch map (fig. 10). It should be noted that the area shown on this map overlaps that of the Deep Creek sketch map (fig. 9).

Between the southward-flowing portion of Elm Creek and the next considerable valley to the east the land rises to form a rolling plateau. Along the west edge of this plateau, just at the break to the Elm Creek slope, or locally somewhat down this slope, an iron-bearing reef may

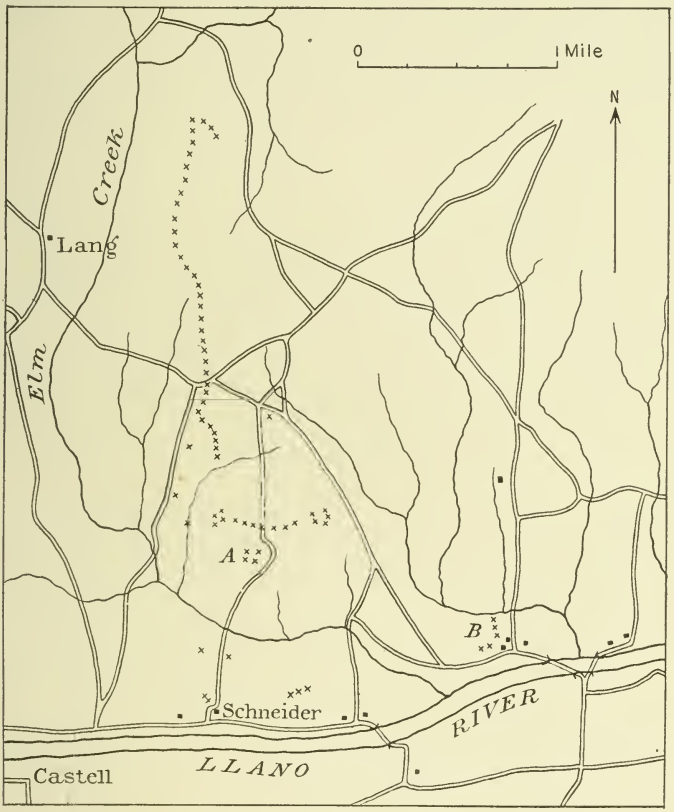


FIGURE 10.—Distribution of magnetite near Elm Creek, northeast of Castell. *A*, Area shown in figure 11; *B*, area shown in figure 12.

be followed by means of float and occasional outcrops for a distance of 1½ miles. The trend of this reef is nearly north-south, the north end (in the form of a hook) being situated 1 mile northeast of the Lang house. Though there is no difficulty in following the lead by means of the surface showings, the ore is seen not to be really continuous, being interlayered with the associated feldspathic gneisses. Locally there are evidences of two ore layers, neither one of which can be more than 2 feet thick. Dips are uniformly low to the east. All of the ore

is lean in appearance, and scarcely any of it would analyze above 30 per cent of iron.

The south end of this line of croppings is north of a small drain in the northeast corner of Dr. Donges's pasture, and for a distance of about 1,000 feet to the south along this trend there are no signs of magnetite. West of the trend, however, minor amounts of float were noted at two points, and a 6-inch seam of ore outcrops in the stream bank at a point indicated on the sketch map (fig. 10). In the vicinity of this stream the rocks appear to be greatly disturbed, as there are great variations in strikes and dips from place to place. At the 6-inch capping noted above the dip is about 45° NNE.

Directly east of the exposure last mentioned and west of the Donges-Ebers property line, on the edge of the plateau, a flat-lying layer of lean ore about 2 feet thick has been stripped of its original cover over an area of perhaps 250 square feet. This flat constitutes the western limit of a line of outcrops extending in an easterly direction along the southern break of the plateau for a distance of approximately 3,000 feet. The western exposure lies due south of the termination of the north-south line of croppings already described, the barren interval between being about 1,200 feet.

Locally along this east-west trend there are indications of magnetite in two layers, perhaps 20 feet apart, but usually there is only one layer. At the east end of the line of outcrops the ore layer is complexly folded and also disrupted by granite intrusions. Along the cropping the dip is to the north at a very low angle.

Wherever exposed, the ore is lean in appearance, because of the amount of quartz and potash feldspar which it contains. Its thickness was nowhere observed to be greater than 2 feet, and nearly everywhere it is less than 18 inches. The associated rocks are feldspar gneisses and granite. At many points thin sill-like masses of coarse granite (pegmatite) lie under the ore layer, but no genetic relation may be made out between this rock and the magnetite.

Four samples collected to represent the ore of this eastward-trending outcrop may be taken as typical of the ores of the Elm Creek occurrences, since there is very close resemblance in the material observed in all of the several localities. Samples 1 to 3 came from near the east end of the line of outcrops and sample 4 from a point near where the reef crosses the wagon track.

Analyses of Elm Creek iron ores, Llano County, Tex.

[R. C. Wells, analyst, United States Geological Survey.]

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Fe	25.68	26.04	14.60	24.70
SiO_2	54.56	52.23	62.53	55.36
Mn	Trace.	.06	None.	Trace.
P	.04	.05	.01	.05
S	.06	.10	.04	.07
TiO_2	.10	.20	.11	.10

In the northern part of Christian Schneider's pasture, about a quarter of a mile south of the east-west ore belt described above, similar lean material occurs within an area about half an acre in extent. The ore evidently occurs as a layered deposit thrown into shallow folds, though the rock layers are not exposed with sufficient completeness to clearly reveal the structural details (figs. 10 and 11). Considerable intrusive granite is noted within the area, including the different outcrops of ore.

The thickness of ore observed varies from 15 inches to 3 feet.

South of Elm Creek ore is to be observed at four points. Near the north side of Schneider's horse pasture is a single outcrop of an ore

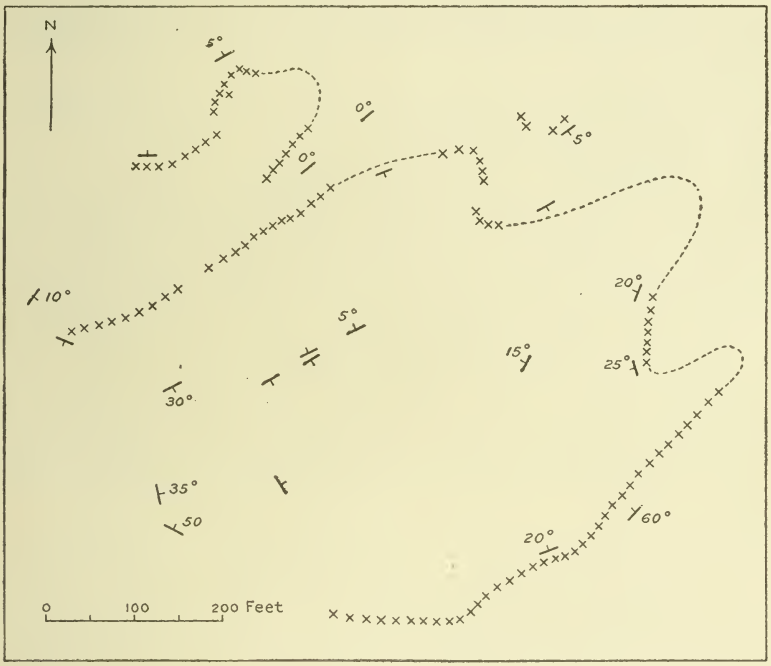


FIGURE 11.—Distribution of magnetite showings in northern part of Schneider's pasture (*A*, fig. 10).

layer 2 feet thick. East of this a small amount of float is encountered along the wagon track, and as the local trends are east and west it may be suggested that prospecting would reveal a more or less continuous lead between these two points. A short distance north of the Schneider house the presence of float suggests the existence of a nearly east and west trending ore layer extending west of the wagon track for perhaps 200 feet. The fourth locality south of Elm Creek is on the hilltop between the creek and the river, partly within the Schneider tract, but extending across the east boundary line. The rocks are layered feldspathic schists, weathering of which produces a very red soil. The ore, which is interlayered with the schist, may be seen to have a local

thickness of 18 inches, though it is thinner in places. A sample of the best-looking material in sight gave the following analysis:

Analysis of Elm Creek iron ore, Llano County, Tex.

Iron	35.40
Silica	34.68
Manganese	Trace.
Phosphorus	.03
Sulphur	.04
Titanium oxide	.15

The ore layer may be traced by means of outcrops and float for a distance of approximately 600 feet along a general northeast course, but the stronger showings are confined to the southwest part of the area of outcrop. Here the ore and the associated rocks are evidently folded to a considerable degree, and possibly have been duplicated by dislocation.

About 2 miles east of Castell and 1 mile east of the locality described in the foregoing paragraph magnetite is found in two places about 1,000 feet apart. (See figs. 10 and 12.)

On the north the ore may be traced along a low ridge in a southerly direction for a distance of 825 feet. The reef as seen in natural exposures, no trenching having been done, may have a maximum thickness somewhat in excess of 6 feet, though throughout much of its length it is almost certainly thinner. No sample was analyzed, but from the general nature of the material it can hardly carry above 35 to 40 per cent of iron. The better portions of the ore closely resemble lean portions of the Iron Mountain ore. The reef is cut across by two granite dikes 30 and 50 feet wide. The dip of the ore was not satisfactorily determined, though it is probably low toward the east.

South from the last outcrop is a belt of red soil within which, at a distance of 930 feet, strong magnetite float again appears. Near by is an outcrop of lean ore dipping about 10° E. From this outcrop there are almost continuous showings along a curving zone for a distance of 400 feet or more. Beyond where the zone turns from south to west the ore lies nearly flat and is obscurely exposed for a width of about 50 feet. The material is of very lean appearance. It can hardly be more than 3 feet thick and is probably thinner.

LIVELY TRACT.

By A. C. Spencer.

The Lively property lies somewhat more than 1 mile southeast of Iron Mountain and three-fourths of a mile southwest of Valley Spring. There has been no development, and the showing is confined to magnetite float in the wagon road northeast of Johnson Creek. The position of this locality is near a line joining the ore at

Iron Mountain to the northwest and the Becton ore 4 miles to the southeast. Although the three localities are thus in alignment there is no adequate basis for the suggestion of any connection between the several deposits or for any expectation that intermediate deposits are likely to be discovered.

Between the Lively ore and Iron Mountain the ancient gneisses are buried beneath Cambrian sandstone, the northern edge of an east-west band of this rock being situated about 1,000 feet southeast of the Iron Mountain shaft.

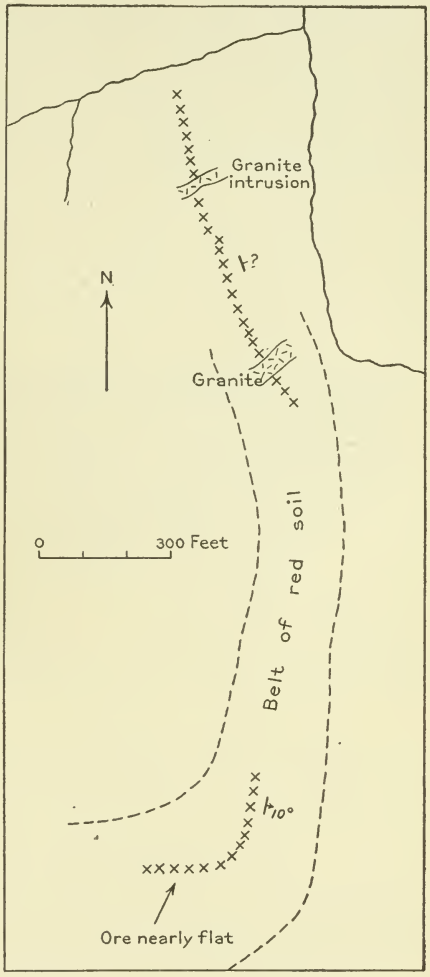


FIGURE 12.—Distribution of magnetite 2 miles east of Castell (*B*, fig. 10).

SECTION THIRTEEN AND VICINITY.

By A. C. SPENCER.

The tract of 640 acres known as H. and G. N. Section Thirteen lies about 4 miles south of the Iron Mountain property, on the southwest side of San Fernando Creek, at the mouth of Willow Creek. Magnetite has been found at several places on this tract and at several localities in the neighborhood on both sides of San Fernando Creek. The distribution of these showings is indicated on the accompanying sketch map (fig. 13).

There has been some prospecting south of the east-west road leading to Epperson's house, about 2 miles east of San Fernando Creek, and east of Epperson's boundary line. The old trenches are so badly filled that they afford no indication of what may have been found, and all that can be seen at present is rather sparse float of magnetite in small pieces. This float may be found at intervals for about 400 feet along a line trending a little west of north.

Three-quarters of a mile southeast of Epperson's house, where the road crosses a small ravine, heavy float of magnetite in solid chunks is noted. This float may be traced to a small outcrop near by, but

nothing may be said of the prospects of this occurrence until some development work has been done. The ore closely resembles the material on the surface at the Iron Mountain mine.

About 1½ miles southwest of the locality mentioned in the foregoing paragraph and half a mile south of the Otto house chunks of solid magnetite a pound or more in weight were noted in the wash of a small drain. Though hornblende gneisses outcrop in the vicinity, the ground is largely covered by rock waste, so that no suggestion is warranted as to where this ore would be found in place. East and south of this locality granite is very much in evidence, though as noted in the description of the Bader tract, slivers of gneiss are

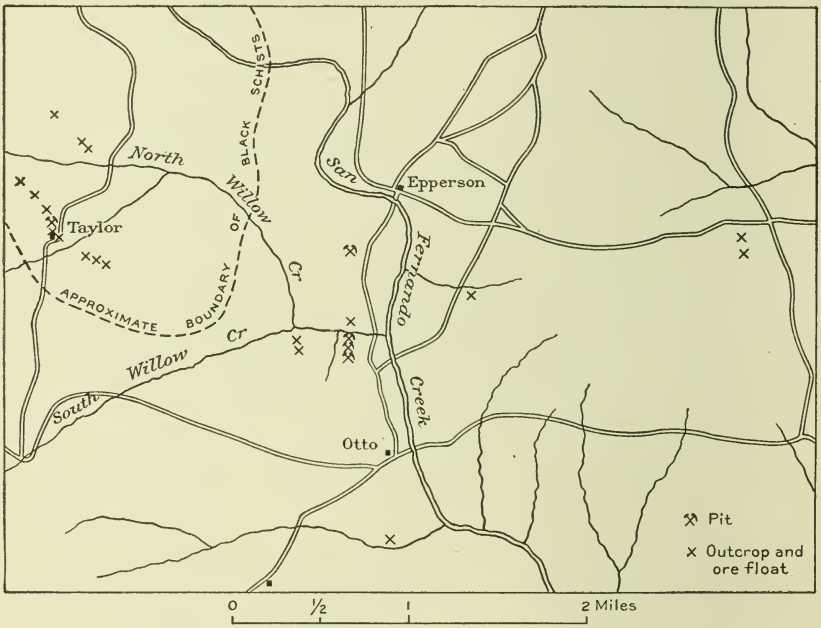


FIGURE 13.—Magnetite prospects in H. & G. N. Section Thirteen.

included in the area northwest of the Bader workings. Careful search in this interval of 2 miles failed to reveal any iron-ore float.

West of San Fernando, in section 13, magnetite has been discovered at three localities, the relative positions of which are roughly indicated on the sketch map. The presence of float ore led to the digging of several pits, some of which are still in such condition as to show that the magnetite occurs in gneiss. The ore and the country rock are distinctly layered, with dips toward the east. A study of the southeasterly pits suggests the presence of at least two leads somewhat less than 100 feet apart, trending a few points east of north.

Fairly abundant float may be found for a distance of about 600 feet along this zone, and three pits have been dug. On the south an opening 8 feet deep has exposed 1 foot of solid ore dipping east with

a granite footwall. At a depth of 3 feet the granite cuts off the ore along a flat contact.

A hole 6 feet deep situated somewhat east of the last-mentioned shows 7 feet of layered material-carrying ore. The strike is N. 10° E. and the dip about 25° E. The lead is complex, being made up of two fairly solid layers of ore separated by light-colored granitic rock carrying a minor amount of magnetite. The upper ore layer is from 10 to 14 inches thick and the lower layer about 2 feet thick. The immediate footwall is whitish granite gneiss about 1 foot thick, and below this is hornblende gneiss carrying considerable magnetite. (See fig. 14.) A short distance east of this pit is an exposure of hornblende gneiss carrying garnet and epidote.

The next opening to the north is 4 feet deep. Here the rock layers exhibit a low dip to the east. At the bottom is hornblende gneiss, then a layer of white gneiss varying from 1 foot to 18 inches in thickness and carrying irregular masses of ore, one of which was noted to have a diameter of 10 inches; next above this layer comes 8 inches of hornblende rock, and this is followed by gneissoid granite. Magnetite is disseminated through the hornblende rock in fine grains, but in the white gneiss the iron mineral is coarsely granular. This occurrence strongly suggests that the ore was generated in a layer of intrusive material, or, more definitely stated, the impression is given that this ore is of igneous origin. The reader will, however, note that the general features of the Llano ores have not been interpreted as particularly favoring a hypothesis of igneous origin.

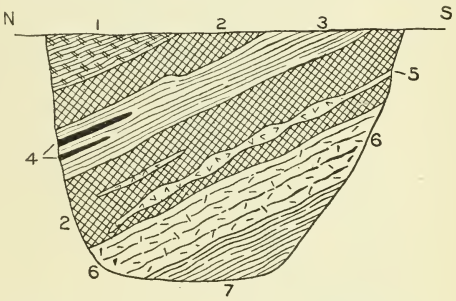


FIGURE 14.—Relation of ore layers in pit south of Willow Creek in section 13. 1, Feldspar-magnetite gneiss; 2, ore; 3, gneiss; 4, magnetite; 5, pegmatite; 6, granite gneiss; 7, hornblende gneiss.

About 90 feet west of the 4-foot pit a shallow excavation shows a 10-inch layer of magnetite embedded in white gneiss. This ore contains flakes of mica and closely resembles ore from the Deep Creek locality described on a subsequent page.

The surface indications just south of Willow Creek forks are rather meager, as very little work has been done.

North of Willow Creek, on the top of the hill, is a single pit 9 feet deep which affords a good exposure of magnetite-bearing gneiss. The strike of the layering is N. 35° W. and the average dip about 50° NE. Approximately 8 feet of rock is exposed and about half its bulk appears to be magnetite. The casing material of the lead is mica-bearing granite gneiss of the same general appearance as that at the Iron Mountain mine. The general character of the ore is like that

taken from the Bader incline, but the rock layers exhibit more irregularity and are more contorted than at the Bader locality. Layers of solid magnetite are in no place more than 8 inches thick, but a 30-inch layer of rock is estimated to be three-fourths magnetite. Most of the magnetite is fine grained, but here and there strings and bunches of coarse-grained mineral are noted. As represented in the sketch given as figure 15, the immediate hanging wall is feldspathic gneiss carrying mica and magnetite; the footwall is light-hued granitic rock nearly free from dark minerals. Immediately under the contorted layer of heavy ore represented on the left side of the sketch is a layer of granitic material with ore irregularly distributed through it. This portion of the lead presents the appearance of an injection which has been forced into the ore-bearing rock; if it is actually invading material, fragments of ore torn from the walls have been drawn out and incorporated in its mass.

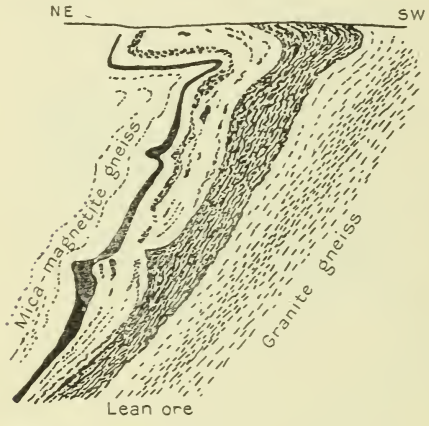


FIGURE 15.—Sketch of 8-foot ore surface in magnetite gneiss.

The immediate environs of the pit exhibit no exposures, bedrock being covered by an apparently deep mantle of residual sand. Float ore is not noted along the strike of the lead.

Though there is some doubt concerning the proper classification of the rocks with which the ore in section 13 is associated, they have been mapped as belonging to the lower (lighter) series of schists (Valley Spring gneiss). Another possibility is that they represent the dark schists very extensively injected by granitic material.

West of section 13, in the drainage basin of the north fork of Willow Creek, iron ore has been found at several points, and here the rocks are definitely recognized as belonging to the dark series (Packsaddle schist) with associated limestones. Aside from the Olive mine, this is the only occurrence of really noteworthy segregations of magnetite which can be unequivocally assigned to this set of rocks.

The approximate boundary of the dark schist area is shown on the sketch map (fig. 13, p. 50). It is to be noted that the principal showings of ore are aligned parallel to this boundary as it is represented upon the map. The ore layers dip toward the interior of the dark schist area.

Southeast of the main fork of North Willow Creek ore float a few shallow openings show the presence of magnetite at various points along a curving line about 5,000 feet in length and at a few isolated

points north and east of this line. The ore material exhibits a somewhat siliceous aspect, and all of it is distinctly layered. Near the main creek and again southeast of the tributary which passes the Taylor house, fragments of ore lying on the surface are made up of alternating layers of dense, fine-grained magnetite and of quartz, the layers varying in thickness from one-half inch to 2 inches. It seems that there are at least two distinct layers of this material in the northern portion of the range. Their maximum thickness appears to be less than 2 feet.

In the central part of the range more massive ore is exposed, and at a pit north of the Taylor house a 17-foot section of the ore is exposed. The ore is a mixture of magnetite and hornblende, and it is judged from what may be seen on the surface that a layer of similar material at no place less than 4 feet thick has an extent along the strike of about 600 feet. Near the house the ore mass is probably more than 20 feet wide.

A sample representing the entire 17 feet of ore exposed in the pit mentioned above gave the following analysis:

Analysis of iron ore from sec. 13, Llano County, Tex.

[R. C. Wells, analyst, U. S. Geol. Survey.]

Fe	35.87
SiO_2	34.57
Mn	1.05
P	.07
S	.04
TiO_2	.15

From the surface indications it is believed that this body of iron-bearing material may be expected to hold its size and character to a depth of several hundred feet along the dip. Only the lean nature of the material stands in the way of the suggestion that the lead is worthy of detailed exploration; but it seems hardly likely that any but high-grade ores will warrant the railroad construction required for transportation. Enrichment of this material by means of magnetic concentrators would appear to be feasible from the technical standpoint, but at present certainly not practically advisable.

Three or four minor outcrops of magnetite north of the north fork of the creek appear to be of no particular interest. They exhibit the same general trend as the main range, but it is not possible to correlate them in any way with the more prominent line of outcrops.

From the structural features of the ore range which has been described it appears to be obvious that the ore is developed along a definite horizon in a set of sedimentary rocks; any additional characteristics which have been observed as bearing on the origin of the ores will be discussed later in more detail.

RILEY MOUNTAIN.

By A. C. Spencer.

Prospecting has been carried on at several places along the east base of Riley Mountain between Click post office and Honey Creek, and also north of Honey Creek. (See fig. 16.) Most of the surface showings are pyrite gossans, though one, situated 1 mile north of Click, is magnetite.

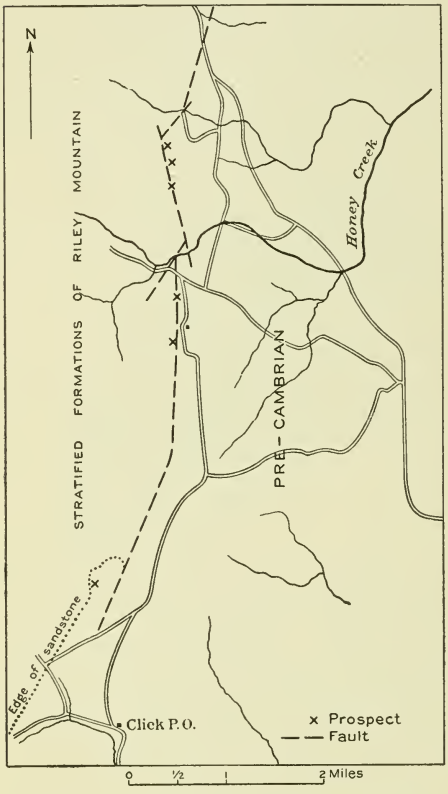


FIGURE 16.—Map showing location of pyrite deposits north of Click post office and their relations to faults.

The pyrite bodies were under exploration during the summer of 1909, so that a fair opportunity of studying their features was afforded.

Development work on the Roberts place, south of Honey Creek, shows that the iron cap gives place to the original sulphide within 20 feet of the surface. At this place the sulphur-bearing material is arsenical iron pyrites. The mass has been shown to have a width of 15 feet and has been exposed (June, 1909) for a length of 25 feet. Adjacent to the Roberts pit (an incline) float may be traced for a distance of 500 feet along the lower slope of the mountain; somewhat farther north are other showings along the same general trend. The deposit is in limestone adjacent to a very strong fault which brings the stratified limestones of Riley Mountain against very much older crystalline schists on the east. The ore is not on the fault but about 50 feet west of it. It appears to have been deposited by replacement of the limestone and to follow the bedding of the rock which dips toward the west and away from the fault. The rocks are poorly exposed, but there is reason for believing that the rocks are greatly broken adjacent to the main line of faulting, so that it may be that the ore follows a zone of shattering rather than a layer of the limestone.

The conditions of structure suggest that the deposits should exhibit considerable continuity in depth, but developments are not

adequate to show whether or not such is the case. The fault adjacent to which the pyrite ore occurs is traceable for several miles southward from Honey Creek, though evidences of iron capping were not recognized far beyond the Roberts opening.

About a mile north of Honey Creek, on the Bedford tract, is a shaft said to have been opened prior to the settlement of the district. Near by a shaft was sunk in 1909 to a depth of 70 feet. Here there is evidently a crush zone adjacent to a strong fault. The lead which has been opened by the shaft appears to be a filling of crushed material along a fault which brings together cherty limestone on the west and red sandstone on the east. The material of the lead is red iron oxide and coarsely crystalline calcite. Brown iron ore in the crystalline form of pyrite (that is to say, limonite pseudomorphs after pyrite) was observed, but part of the red oxide may have been derived from the alteration of carbonate of iron. East of the shaft there is a band of red sandstone 60 feet wide, then another fault bringing up the crystalline schists.

It is evident that the showings of iron gossan in the neighborhood of Honey Creek can have no value as a source of iron ore. Whether or not the deposits from which the gossan has been derived will ever be worked as a source of sulphur or arsenic can not be foreseen. Parties engaged in exploring the deposits state that the sulphide shows no valuable quantities of gold or silver.

West of Click post office the basal sandstone of the sedimentary series of Riley Mountain laps over the ancient crystalline schists. The line between the sandstones and the schists trends northeast and finally curves out toward the east to meet the fault along the east face of Riley Mountain. Along this boundary, about 1½ miles north of Click, abundant float of very pure magnetite is noted in a small branch west of the Wilson house. This float is readily traced to its source at the sandstone overlap. Part of the loose ore has undoubtedly been derived from the lowest part of the sandstone, as fragments of magnetite may be seen in this rock. Another part may have been derived directly from ore occurring in the schist, though the position of a lead has not been discovered. On the whole it seems probable that all of the material is really débris from the sandstone and that the bedrock deposit does not come to the present surface because it is capped over by the sandstone.

A few hundred feet southeast of the point where the sandstone containing magnetite fragments is exposed there is a shaft said to have been opened in search for copper ore. Though the material taken from this shaft does show the presence of copper minerals, there is nothing to encourage further work.

ORIGIN OF THE IRON ORES.

By Sidney Paige.

POSSIBLE HYPOTHESES.

Three possibilities have been recognized in an endeavor to arrive at a definite conclusion concerning the origin of the iron ores described in this report. They are as follows:

1. That the beds represent igneous segregations from a granitic magma and owe their tabular form to flowage under pressure; that is, they represent granitic magmas impressed with a foliate structure.
2. That the ores are replacements of sedimentary beds, either before or during metamorphism, due to emanations from a granitic magma.
3. That the ores represent metamorphosed iron-bearing sediments.

Since the arguments presented to substantiate the last mode of origin will necessarily involve arguments against the first and second, a separate treatment of those hypotheses is not necessary.

A modification of the third hypothesis would recognize the possibility that iron had been introduced into unmetamorphosed beds, which were subsequently metamorphosed.

The writer alone is responsible for the views here set forth and realizes the difficulty of arriving at a definite conclusion. The value of various classes of evidence varies with the problem in hand; only by a careful weighing of these values can a legitimate conclusion be reached; and speculation, unless demanded, should be relegated to its proper place. The writer will endeavor to distinguish between considerations that are speculative and those that are not.

The considerations presented will fall under the following heads:

(1) The general distribution of iron throughout geologic formations and the character of the accompanying beds; (2) the geologic relations of the iron ores; (3) the characteristics of the ores having a bearing on origin; (4) the relations of the igneous rocks of the region; (5) the chemical factors involved; (6) comparison with other regions.

GENERAL DISTRIBUTION OF IRON THROUGHOUT GEOLOGIC FORMATIONS AND THE CHARACTER OF THE ACCOMPANYING BEDS.

The Upper Cambrian sandstones and limy sandstones of Llano County, Tex., carry disseminated iron oxides—hematite and limonite. Locally there is a fairly high content of iron (though not from a commercial standpoint) and the iron-bearing horizon is persistent. Within this series are also beds bearing glauconite—hydrous potassium-iron silicate.

The specular hematite ores of Virginia and other Appalachian States occur in rocks of Cambrian age.

In the lower Silurian of central Bohemia, composed of quartzites associated with slates, graywacke, conglomerates, diabases, amyg-

daloids, and diabase tuffs, occur hematite and carbonate iron ores, the former in diabase tuffs, the latter in quartzites between graywacke [a] slates.

The Clinton ores of the Silurian are interbedded with clay shales, sandstones, and impure limestones.

Iron ore accompanies the "Coal Measures" of the Carboniferous on the Continent, in England, and in the United States.

The ores of the northern Alps (probably Permian) are in a so-called graywacke zone.

The minette ore beds of the Dogger formation are found in the Jurassic of Alsace-Lorraine in beds of a limy and sandy composition. Green iron silicates are noted.

In the Eocene of Bavaria oolitic ores occur. Glauconite and quartz sand are noted.

Finally, deep-sea investigations have proved the very wide distribution of highly ferruginous sediment.

These facts point at once to two conclusions—that the presence of iron ore is to be expected in the sedimentary record of all periods, and that this means of accumulation, that is, sedimentation, illustrates at least one potent factor in ore segregation.

The nature of the metamorphic rocks found in the pre-Cambrian complex leaves little room for belief that the processes of sedimentation during pre-Cambrian time could have been appreciably different from those which proceeded during the more easily read periods which followed. It is therefore natural that bedded iron ores derived from primary sedimentary deposits should be present in the pre-Cambrian complex.

J. J. Sederholm [b] has described in great detail the manner in which granites have intruded the schist-gneiss series of Finland, and a remarkable similarity may be noted between the processes at work there and those observed in the Llano region; but he makes no note of iron ore. It seems to the writer that this absence of iron is more than a mere accident which might be explained away by referring to the vagaries of granite intrusions (introducing iron in one locality and not in another). It is more logical to believe that the reason for the absence of iron ores in the above-cited locality lies in the fact that that portion of the schist-gneiss series which is there (in Finland) exposed to observation represents beds barren of sedimentary iron deposits.

GEOLOGIC RELATIONS OF THE IRON ORES.

So far as could be observed the iron ores are an integral part of the Llano series and exhibit much the same relationship to the other

[a] "Sandstone-like rocks which in addition to the quartz and feldspar of an arkose contain rounded or angular bits of other rock. Some varieties * * * composed largely of feldspar may be difficult in the hand specimen to distinguish from some felsite."—Pirsson, L. V., Rocks and rock minerals, p. 326.

[b] Om Granit och Gneis: Bull. Comm. géol. Finlande No. 23. (English summary.)

members as do the limestones and the graphite schists. They are tabular in form, can be traced along the strike where not covered or interrupted by granite, follow all the convolutions of the rocks which inclose them, vary in thickness and in iron content as do graphite-bearing strata in carbon, and locally grade into the surrounding country rock by a gradual decrease of iron. They are layered deposits, even in the locality of their heaviest development.

No locality was observed where the beds in which the ore occurs cut across neighboring beds, as might be expected in the case of intrusive sheets, nor were beds observed where great unexplained irregularities of iron content were present; a lean bed following along the strike did not essentially change its character, at least not more rapidly than would be found in a sedimentary ore. There are, interbedded with the iron ores, barren or lean layers composed of the same minerals as the ore gangue.

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE ORES.

The ore-bearing rocks are crystallized granular schists or gneisses which, so far as observed, have undergone the same degree of metamorphism as the remaining beds of the series. The ore occurs as more or less concentrated grains of magnetite (or hematite, in part), with quartz and feldspar and a little biotite. (See Pl. IV, *B*, p. 10.) The magnetite seems to have crystallized either just before or simultaneously with the feldspar and the quartz. A microscopic examination of a specimen of lean ore gave as its result plagioclase feldspar, largely albite, magnetite, and quartz, in the following proportions: Quartz, 50 per cent; feldspar, 26 per cent; and magnetite, 22 per cent. This is roughly equivalent to the following composition:

Composition of lean iron ore, Llano County, Tex.

Silica	67
Alumina	5
Soda	3
Magnetite	22

The wall rock of the ore (which is but a lean portion of the ore) showed approximately the following composition by microscopic analysis:

Composition of wall rock of iron ore, Llano County, Tex.

SiO_2	71
Al_2O_3	12
Na_2O, K_2O, CaO (largely Na_2O)	7
Magnetite	5
Biotite	3

A partial chemical analysis of the gangue of the Bader ore gives the following result:

Analysis of lean iron ore from the Bader incline, Llano County, Tex.

[W. T. Schaller, analyst, U. S. Geol. Survey.]

Silica (SiO_2)	57.31
Alumina (Al_2O_3) [a]	10.15
Ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3) [b]	26.66
Lime (CaO)	1.20
Potassa (K_2O)	.16
Soda (Na_2O)	5.93
	[c] 101.41

The same analysis, recalculated to 100 without iron to show composition of the remaining material, is as follows:

Analysis of lean iron ore from Bader incline recalculated without iron.

[W. T. Schaller, analyst.]

SiO_2	76.66
Al_2O_3	13.57
CaO	1.60
K_2O	.21
Na_2O	7.93
	99.97

The most interesting point in this analysis is the presence of sodium in excess of potassium, for the sediments of the region as a whole, including some of the iron ores, showed the latter in much greater abundance. This point will be discussed later.

The relations thus far pointed out indicate more or less strongly that the iron was present in the rock before metamorphism, for it follows the convolutions of the schists, may be traced long distances, was apparently crystallized before or at the same time as the accompanying minerals, and occurs in much the same relation as does graphite, a mineral without much doubt developed in this field in sedimentary material. Light is also thrown on the presence of iron in the rock before metamorphism by an occurrence of lean ores northwest of Bodie Peak, where the banded material carrying the magnetite has suffered brecciation by intrusion of granite. A thorough intermixing of the brecciated fragments and the intruding rocks has taken place. Locally the angular outlines of the broken fragments are very evident, but passing northward the fragments appear stretched and lentil shaped, and if the angular material had not been observed one might be at a loss to account for the lentil-like streaks. A microscopic examination showed an interesting distribution of the magnetite. It occurs both in the brecciated fragments and also between them, whereas the concentration was much less between the

[a] Including TiO_2 and P_2O_5, etc. The TiO_2 is present in small quantity, probably less than 0.5 per cent.

[b] Total iron, that is, $FeO+Fe_2O_3$.

[c] Summation high on account of reckoning FeO as Fe_2O_3. The correction to be deducted from the total is about 0.83 per cent.

fragments than in them. This feature may indicate a more or less mobile state of the iron, due to the injection of granitic material. The microscope showed a granular mass of quartz and microcline feldspar (the latter dominant) and magnetite, with certain lens-shaped areas where the magnetite was heavily concentrated (the mashed fragments). In these areas quartz was almost wholly lacking, magnetite and feldspar being the minerals present. The writer believes that the magnetite found between the fragments was derived from the fragments of the intruded sediments and not from the intruding magma.

BEARING OF IGNEOUS ROCKS OF THE REGION ON ORIGIN OF IRON ORE.

The basic intrusive rocks described above have no genetic relation, so far as observed, to the iron ore and they will not be discussed in that connection. That they may have been important, however, in effecting chemical changes in the sediments at the time of their intrusion will be pointed out later. The granitic rocks of the region, on the other hand, are intimately associated with the ores, and the hypothesis of a genetic connection with them may not be so readily dismissed.

As has been indicated, the iron ores are found in rocks believed to represent a sedimentary base and owe their origin either to replacement of metamorphosed beds, or to original deposition with or secondary introduction into unmetamorphosed strata. The granite, wherever found in association with iron ores, is intrusive into them, cuts across the bedding, or is interleaved with the ore beds. In fact, it presents exactly the same relations to the iron ore that it presents in numerous places to the mica, the graphite, or the hornblende schist series, into which group of rocks it can hardly be argued that the mica, the graphite, and the hornblende were introduced by the granite. In the case of the ore-bearing rocks, however, and also in the case of certain feldspathic schists, the mineral composition of the invading and the invaded rock is strikingly similar. The writer believes this to be a fortuitous condition, for, as is well known, certain metamorphosed sediments have a composition very similar to that of granite.

A very small percentage of magnetite, not more than ordinary, occurs in the granites of the region. In the pegmatites there are a few exceptions and in one instance a notable one. Near Gallihaw Crossing a pegmatite dike several feet thick was observed cutting across the schistosity of the mica schist series. It was composed of feldspar, magnetite, garnet, epidote, and limonite. The magnetite, which was abundant, occurred in irregularly shaped, often elongated masses throughout the dike and apparently crystallized simultane-

ously with the feldspar, though this is not certain. Bedded iron ores may exist not far distant from the locality, as small outcrops were seen. The dike apparently has had little contact effect on the schists which it cuts. It is suggested that it may have acquired its magnetite in passing through beds of iron ore. Where pegmatites occur in a region of abundant amphibole schist, hornblende was noted in the pegmatite, a fact certainly suggestive; and where pegmatite had cut limestone, scapolite was formed in the dike, clearly exhibiting the absorption of lime, though whether from the immediate vicinity or elsewhere is not certain.

In certain localities, where the effects of intrusion and impregnation have been most intense, abundant magnetite crystallized with feldspar has all the appearance of an original mineral in the granite magma; but never is the possibility absent that an iron-bearing sedimentary base has been absorbed by the intruding mass.

It is evident from what has just been said respecting the geologic relations of the granite to the schists that if the iron is a result of replacement, by means of magmatic emanations, some granite, other than the one now observed, was involved in the process.

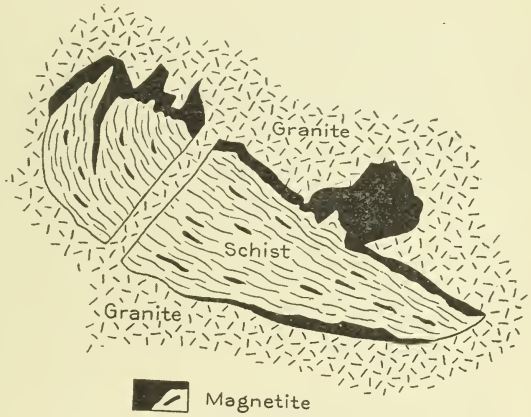


FIGURE 17.—Concentration of magnetite along edges of schist fragment at granite contact.

It is hardly conceivable that a granite presenting such indubitable evidences of its intrusive nature could have been the principal factor in the intense metamorphism observed, which is believed to be largely the effect of dynamic forces other than intrusion. The metamorphism was complete, or at least well under way, before the injection of the granite took place.

Though this statement seems to the writer a reasonably safe conclusion, it should be said that phenomena are observed locally which might be used as an argument for igneous introduction of the magnetite; such, for example, as the locality shown in the accompanying sketch (fig. 17). The clear evidence of crosscutting should here be noted, however, and the possibility of original iron in the schist kept in mind. On the north side of Llano River a short distance west of Hickory Creek the granites show almost completely absorbed schist fragments, in which but the faintest outline of the original fragment remains, indicated by broadly spaced lines of magnetite. (See fig. 18.)

It seems more probable that the granite, acting on an iron-bearing base, had by assimilation rearranged the quartz and feldspar, the iron remaining approximately in its original position, than that the granite had introduced this iron and then absorbed the schist.

CHEMICAL RELATIONS.

With the schist-gneiss group considered as a metamorphosed sedimentary series and the intrusive nature of the granite borne in mind, certain facts of general geologic application may have weight in arriving at a conclusion regarding the nature of the iron. It is a recognized fact in geologic science that the important result of regional metamorphism, in general, is a change of form rather than a chemical addition or subtraction. The schists of Llano County might well be the result of such metamorphism without any considerable additions. They are generally high in potassa and silica, two elements which Bastin[a] and others have shown are likely to be dominant in metamorphic sediments. Van Hise[b] points out that "quartz and acid feldspars have very nearly the same specific gravity, and unless such material be gradually contributed to the water so that it can be handled by strong waves and currents for a long time before final deposition quartz and acid feldspar will not be separated" and as the mica is carried away, "consequently in the comparatively shallow water along the shore, many nearly pure quartz-feldspar sands may be built up." Glauconite also is a deposit restricted largely to the borders of the continental shelf. He also says:[c] "From * * * muds carbonates are mainly removed in solution, the hydroxides are removed to some extent, and the highly oxidized iron largely remains." In regard to the pelite gneisses he says in part:[d] "While the greater part of the potassium probably passes into muscovite, where the potassa is abundant, a portion of it passes into feldspar, producing orthoclase and microcline, since these minerals are rather abundant in many of the schist pelites and gneiss pelites."

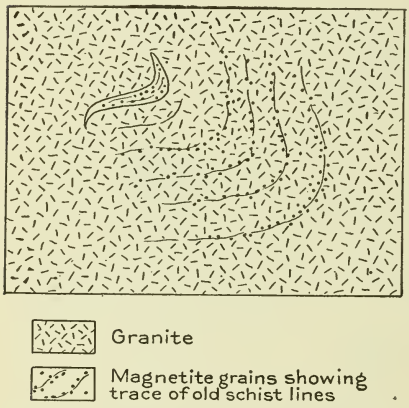


FIGURE 18.—Remnant of schist fragment in granite mass. Note lines of magnetite.

---

[a] Bastin, E. S., Chemical composition as a criterion in identifying metamorphosed sediments: Jour. Geology, vol. 17, No. 5, 1909.

[b] Van Hise, C. R., A treatise on metamorphism: Mon. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 47, 1904, p. 873.

[c] Idem, p. 889.

[d] Idem p. 900.

Grubenmann[a] also points out that "there occur marly sandstone or argillaceous marls, whose chemical composition approaches so nearly that of igneous rocks that confusion may arise in their discrimination."

The analysis of the wall rock at the Bader incline shows soda as dominant over potash. This relation was also observed at the Iron Mountain ore body. Iron ores in the western part of the quadrangle, however, are associated with a decidedly potassic gangue, as indicated by the prevalence of microcline feldspar. As normal sediments are in great part or entirely of the potash type, an explanation should be offered for the high soda content of this particular sediment.

As described earlier in this report, amphibolite and mica schists form a fairly definite unit in the schist series; it was also noted that amphibolites are occasionally found within the lighter schist series, and it was suggested that in many places they might be derived from basic sills intrusive into the sedimentary series prior to its deep burial and foliation. The contact metamorphism produced by such intrusion into clay shales has been studied in various localities throughout the world and in several places, at least, with the very definite and similar result of finding that soda and silica have been added and potash removed, but in the cases to be cited, without the addition of iron.

Though it can not be proved that the relations about to be presented existed in Llano County, they are given as a possible if not a probable explanation of present conditions; at the same time it is assumed that the introduction of soda took place prior to the deep burial of the rocks, with the result that under conditions of intense regional metamorphism and accompanied by complete recrystallization of the rocks albite was formed in place of microcline or orthoclase.

Teall, in British Petrography,[b] says:

> A striking feature [speaking of adinole, a rock produced by contact metamorphism of clay shale by diabase intrusion] is the large percentage of soda which the rocks contain. This has been proved by Schenck[c] to be due to an actual impregnation of the sediment with alkali derived from the eruptive rock. Thus at Bochtenbeck, by Niedersfeld, the unaltered rock contains 1.16 per cent of soda, the altered rock 4.94, 4.56, and 3.59 per cent; at Kuhlenberg, by Silbach, the unaltered rock contains 1.15, the altered rock 7.14 per cent; at Silberberg, the unaltered rock contains 0.50, the altered rock 6.03 per cent. We are thus led to the important conclusion that *the albite of the rocks altered by diabase is largely if not wholly a secondary product, due to the actual impregnation of the surrounding sediment by material derived from the eruptive rock.*

Rosenbusch,[d] in describing the contact effect of diabase sills on clay shale, says:

> These products of the innermost parts of the diabase contact areas are called adinole and are composed of an extremely fine-grained mixture of allotriomorphic albite and quartz, with which are very sparingly associated actinolite, epidote, rutile or anatase or even titanite.
>
> The chief difference between this and the deep-seated contact zone lies in the complete chemical changes of the schists.

---

[a] Grubenmann, U., Die Kristallinen Schiefer, 1904, p. 12.
[b] Teall, J. J. H., British petrography, 1888, p. 220.
[c] Die Diabase des oberen Ruhrthals: Inaug. Diss. Bonn, 1884.
[d] Rosenbusch, H., Elemente der Gesteinslehre, 2d ed., 1901, pp. 346–347.

Analyses 1a–1c and 2a–2c and 4a–4c show different stages of change with increasing distance from the diabase.

One sees that the oxides RO and K_2O strongly decrease, while, on the other hand, SiO_2 and Na_2O considerably increase—that is to say, silica and soda are added in appreciable amounts to the schist substance.

	1a.	1b.	1c.	2a.	2b.	2c.	4a.	4b.	4c.
SiO_2	69.27	73.74	75.25	54.02	55.06	72.63	60.28	57.77	74.16
TiO_2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.69	.92	.37
Al_2O_3	13.12	14.81	11.80	21.22	19.75	15.81	22.61	19.35	11.85
Fe_2O_3	.62	.02	Trace.	2.51	1.83	.....	2.53	1.29	.82
FeO	5.24	1.31	1.76	6.48	7.55	.74	.45	3.37	1.66
MnO	.09	.11	.....	1.74	.....	.....	Trace.	Trace.	.06
MgO	1.36	1.29	1.57	3.01	2.21	1.21	1.35	4.35	2.10
CaO	.12	.61	.32	1.64	3.59	1.02	.13	1.71	2.10
Na_2O	2.25	5.47	7.54	3.36	7.51	8.33	.54	8.22	6.57
K_2O	4.31	1.51	.61	3.71	.84	.75	5.73	.22	.15
H_2O	3.36	.70	.81	1.97	1.83	.61	3.62	2.34	.52
CO_2	.04	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.09
FeS_2	.62	.84	.49	.....	.....	.....	.03	.04	.08
Organic substance	Trace.	Trace.	.....	Trace.	Trace.	.....	.97	.....	.18
	100.40	100.41	100.15	99.66	100.17	101.10	99.57	99.76	100.76
Specific gravity	2.653	2.658	2.653	2.678	2.813	2.778	.....	.....	.....

J. Morgan Clements [a] has well shown the metamorphism produced in sediments by the intrusion of diabase dikes and sills. The changes resulting in a clay slate due to this influence are indicated in the following analyses. Clements was not able, because of poor exposures, to select his specimens with absolute certainty as to their exact distance from the diabase. He says:

From previous determinations in other regions it is well known that the adinoles are next to the contact, while the spilosites (and desmosites) are intermediate between them and the clay slates. The following series of analyses are arranged in the order of approach to the dolerite, as determined by the character of the rocks:

Analyses of rocks from Lake Superior iron region.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
SiO_2	60.28	52.51	57.77	74.16
TiO_2	.69	1.70	.92	.37
Al_2O_3	22.61	19.00	19.35	11.85
Cr_2O_3	.....	None.	None.	.....
Fe_2O_3	2.53	3.31	1.29	.82
FeO	.45	7.19	3.37	1.66
MnO	Trace.	Trace.	Trace.	.06
CaO	.13	1.55	1.71	2.10
BaO	.04	Trace.	None.	None.
SrO	.....	Trace.	Trace.	.....
MgO	1.35	3.29	4.35	2.10
K_2O	5.73	.70	.22	.15
Na_2O	.54	6.72	8.22	6.57
Li_2O	.....	Trace.	None.	.....
H_2O at 100°−	.60	[b] .34	[b] .18	.05
H_2O at 100°+	3.62	[c] 3.26	[c] 2.34	.52
P_2O_5	.03	.15	.04	.08
CO_2	None.	None.	None.	.09
S and SO_3	.....	None.	None.	.....
C	.97	.....	.....	.18
Cl	.....	None.	None.	.....
F	.....	Trace.	None.	.....
	99.57	99.72	99.76	100.76

[a] A contribution to the study of contact metamorphism: Am. Jour. Sci., 4th ser., vol. 7, pp. 81–91.
[b] H_2O at 110°.
[c] H_2O above 110°.

1. Clay slate, specimen No. 32497, U. S. Geol. Survey. Analyst, George Steiger.
2. Spilosite, specimen No. 32861, U. S. Geol. Survey. Analyst, H. N. Stokes.
3. Spilosite, specimen No. 32827, U. S. Geol. Survey. Analyst, H. N. Stokes.
4. Adinole, specimen No. 32465, U. S. Geol. Survey. Analyst, George Steiger.

In these analyses the usual increase of silica as the dolerite is approached is at once noticeable, and hand in hand with it goes the diminution in percentage of alumina and iron oxides. The content of water and carbonaceous[a] matter also suffers diminution, as was to be expected.

The most noteworthy difference between the clay slate and the contact rocks is shown in the relations of potash and soda. This is well brought out in an examination of analyses Nos. 1 and 2. It will be seen that there is only about one-eighth as much potash in the contact rocks as in the normal clay slate; while, on the contrary, about 12 times as much soda as there was in the slate has been added to the contact rock. This causes a reversal of the relations of the soda and potash, so that, whereas in the clay slate there is present 10 times as much potash as soda, we find in the contact rock taken as an example very nearly 10 times as much soda as potash. * * *

The very considerable changes which are shown by the above analyses to have taken place in the metamorphism of the slates, especially the changes in the amount of silica and soda resulting in the production of albite in large quantity, seem to add weight to the supposition that in such contacts an actual transfer of material, possibly in the form, as has been suggested by others, of the soda-silicate, does take place from the basic igneous rock to the intruded slate.

In summing up, then, it may be said that the light-colored schist series as a whole are eminently quartzose potassic rocks; that it is important to recognize the fact that introduction of material in the deep-seated zone, except on a very minor scale, is not necessary to account for their chemical composition; and that the introduction of soda may have taken place at the intrusion of the diabase-like rocks prior to deep-seated conditions.

Attention should here be called to the potassic composition of the lean ores in the extreme western part of the area and to the possibility of their derivation from glauconitic sediments. That glauconite is capable of altering to magnetite can not be questioned. J. K. Prother[b] says, in describing the glauconite from the greensands of New Jersey: "In some glauconite grains are rows of small grains of magnetite. All gradations are noted from unaltered glauconite to glauconite changed to a network of magnetite—magnetite is seen filling the cracks of glauconite."

It is reasonable to suppose that such a process may have operated in the case of the ores under discussion.

It would seem extremely probable that if the siliceous glauconite beds of the Cap Mountain formation, for example, were subjected to metamorphic conditions, potassic feldspars, quartz, and magnetite would result.

PROBABLE CONDITIONS AT TIME OF INTRUSION.

In attempting to state the reactions taking place at contacts of igneous masses with sedimentary rocks at great depths, one is forced to base conclusions on phenomena only imperfectly understood. It

[a] The carbon in Nos. 2 and 3 was not determined.

[b] Jour. Geology, vol. 13, p. 511.

is all the more important, then, to refrain from speculation and to confine oneself to reasonable analogies.

If we make the assumption for a moment that gaseous solutions capable of carrying iron into the schists were present at the time of intrusion, an examination of the conditions probably obtaining in the wall rock at that time do not give much if any support to the idea that such replacement would have taken place.

Field evidence shows that the schists were in large part in the zone of flowage, where openings in the rocks, if existing at all, were subcapillary, producing practically impervious strata. The crystalline interlocking of the iron with its accompanying minerals indicates that the iron was present at the time of crystallization, which preceded the intrusion of the granite. Many crystalline limestones were observed which showed no evidence of replacement, and where limestone has been converted into wollastonite, as is the case in the lower (lighter) schist series (Valley Spring gneiss), it is not certain that the effect was not due to thermal metamorphism of impure limestone. In this case CO_2 was expelled. Barrell [a] holds that—

> Carbonic acid is only expelled when the siliceous impurities of the limestone are sufficient to combine with the lime set free, forming lime silicates. This ability of *deeply buried* [b] limestones to retain their carbonic acid when intensely heated, if free from other impurities, has been noted by a number of observers.

A consideration of the chemical nature of the remaining beds other than limestone places them in a class even more chemically inactive than the limestone, so far as replacement is concerned; for they are siliceous rocks, and as such notably inactive except where pore space (including fractures) exists.

The study of rock magmas has shown the probability that when molten they exist as silicate solutions (various silicates in mutual solution); further, that as crystallization ensues, the remaining magma becomes progressively more siliceous. In such a system pegmatites become end products of crystallization. Harker [c] regards a rock magma as—

> A definite mixture of silicate compounds, the only free oxides present, at least in a magma approaching the point of crystallization, being those parts, if any, of the silica, alumina, ferric oxide, and water, which after crystallization appear as quartz, corundum, hematite, and free water.

Moreover,[d] he regards mineralizing substances such as water, chloride, fluoride, etc., as "an integral part of the rock magma itself," and considers them "operative throughout the whole progress of consolidation of the magma. * * * The pegmatites [e] themselves represent the watery residual magma, except that the greater part

---

[a] Barrell, Joseph: Am. Jour. Sci., 4th ser., vol. 13 p. 279.
[b] Italics by present writer.
[c] Harker, A. H., The natural history of rocks, p. 166.
[d] Idem, p. 288.
[e] Idem, p. 295.

of the water and other volatile substances was expelled in the final crystallization."

At this stage of consolidation should exist the most perfect opportunity for a liquid substance to permeate the rocks; but this has not taken place except in a mechanical way by interleaving or crosscutting, though these processes have locally proceeded in a most intricate manner. It is probable that the water and the silica of the final product are represented in the quartz veins, which are very numerous in this region; but this mode of entrance into the schist shows clearly that the easiest avenues were chosen, namely, fractures and cleavage planes.

With the completion of crystallization in a rock magma[a] the contained water and other volatile substances * * * must be disengaged. We must suppose a certain leakage by diffusion into and through the contiguous country rocks; but it is probable that this escape is not important until the temperature has fallen considerably.

High temperature,[b] which in liquids diminishes viscosity and so promotes diffusion, has the opposite effect in gases; and in view of all the conditions it is likely that a large part of the volatile constituents is in general retained down to a late stage. Nevertheless, more or less of the water and other gases must pass into the neighboring rocks while these are still heated by the intrusion.

Such transition, it is believed, can occur only where pores or fractures exist, or where pressure is so slight as to permit the ready expulsion of CO_2 (in the case of limestones) to admit the entrance of solutions, or where chemical interchange is possible. It is extremely doubtful if solutions capable of producing magnetite, quartz, and albite can permeate a nearly impervious siliceous formation for any great distance. Assuming that they have done so in this region, they could not do more than progressively fill the minute cavities found; for it is known that silicate rocks are those which offer the greatest resistance to attack, and the relation of the iron minerals in the schists is of the same nature as that of the albite and the quartz which accompany it.

The local abundance of magnetite in the pegmatite might be advanced as an argument for the igneous introduction of the iron into the schists; if, however, a quantitative analysis were possible over a broad area the writer believes it probable that the iron ratio to pegmatite would be shown to be much the same as is the iron ratio in the granites to the parent magma. The extreme fluidity of the pegmatite material should offer favorable opportunities for such segregations of iron minerals as are found, without postulating any great quantity of iron when compared with that found in the body of the schists.

The ratio of phosphorus to iron in the Llano ores is interesting. Practically all the analyses at hand show a very low content of

[a] Harker, A. H., op. cit., p. 299. [b] Idem, p. 303.

phosphorus; that is, Bessemer grade. An examination of sedimentary ores the world over shows, for the most part, phosphorus in greater quantities than Bessemer practice permits. It would seem necessary, therefore, if these ores are to be assigned to a sedimentary origin, to offer some explanation of this divergence. It should be pointed out that the Bessemer limit, as a point on a scale of phosphorus content, is a low point, and that its delicacy being considered, this limit might easily have been disturbed by conditions not understood and now hidden by the metamorphism which has taken place.

Van Hise [a] gives as the result of an analysis of 78 shales an average content of 0.17 per cent phosphorus; of 624 sandstones, 0.07 per cent. The Llano ores may well have been deposited with arkosic sandstone. It must be admitted, however, that the presence of the iron in sedimentary deposits seems to involve the presence of phosphorus and that therefore this comparison loses some of its value.

It is credibly reported that certain stock piles in the Lake Superior region originally above Bessemer grade have by processes of weathering been leached of sufficient phosphorus to render them of Bessemer grade.

It is possible, then, that in the case of the Llano ores, first, that only a small percentage of phosphorus was deposited with the ore; or, second, that by some process of leaching phosphorus was removed; or, third, that unknown reactions due to metamorphism have served to remove or lower the phosphorus content.

It should be said also that those magnetite deposits of the Adirondacks to which an igneous origin has been ascribed by careful workers contain from 0.01 to 2 or 3 per cent of phosphorus; but this fact, though it could be legitimately used as an argument against igneous origin, does not alter any value the low content of phosphorus may have as an argument against sedimentary origin.

COMPARISON WITH OTHER REGIONS.

Beck, [b] in describing the iron ores of Krivoi-Rog, in southern Russia, says:

> These ore deposits, [c] ordinarily grouped as those of the Saxagan basin, lie on the Inguletz, a western tributary with north-south course entering into the Dnieper River above Cherson. They are of exceedingly great importance to Russia, because they lie close to the Donetz coal basin extending east of the Dnieper. The ores occur in a strongly folded crystalline schist striking north-south, whose geologic age is as yet uncertain. In its upper part this rock consists of carbonaceous slate with but

[a] Van Hise, C. R., A treatise on metamorphism: Mon. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 47, 1904, p. 975.

[b] Beck, R., The nature of ore deposits (tr. by W. H. Weed), p. 75.

[c] See reviews of the works of Kontkiewitsch, Piatnitzky, Domherr, Monkowsky, Karpinsky, and others in Zeitschr. prakt. Geologie, 1896, p. 271; 1897, pp. 182, 186, 278, 374; 1898, p. 139 (Macco). See also Strippelmann, L., Süd-Russlands Magneteisenstein und Eisenglanzlagerstätten in den Gouvernements Jekaterinoslaw und Cherson, 1873; and Cordeweener, J., Géologie de Krivoï-Rog et de Kertsch, Paris 1902.

few layers of ore; next below come the ore-bearing quartzite schists, underlain by clay slate, actinolite schist, quartz chlorite schist, talc schists, arkose, and itacolumite, like mica schists, and finally by gneiss (probably dynamometamorphic granites) and true granites. The ore-bearing strata form a long-extended fold, and show a close minor plication by which quartzite beds have, according to Macco, changed into a succession of quartzite nodules, like conglomerate cobbles in a clay slate. In the double row of deposits extending parallel to the Saxagan River the two most important ore bodies are those near Krivoi-Rog; the lower one about 98 feet (30 meters) and the uppermost about 262 feet (80 meters) thick. The ores consist of magnetite, for the most part altered to red hematite, with 45 to 70 per cent of iron and 0.01 to 0.02 per cent P_2O_5. The very irregular ore masses lie in a finely banded yellowish white, red, or brown ferruginous quartz schist whose crystalline quartz grains inclose numerous magnetite particles.

Newland,[a] referring to nontitaniferous iron ores in the Grenville series of the Adirondacks, says:

There can be no doubt that the form assumed by the ore bodies is conditioned by the structures of the inclosing rocks. * * * This feature is least apparent in the gneisses of the igneous series, and most evident in the banded gneisses and schists of the Grenville. The ores consequently must have been deposited before the great regional disturbances took place, or at least before the rocks received their present structural arrangement.

Though Newland found it difficult or impossible to determine the origin of some of the iron-ore deposits in the Adirondack region, he regarded the origin of others as quite obvious. For example, describing the deposits near Crown Point, on Lake Champlain,[b] he says:

The magnetites * * * are associated with banded gneisses and schists that can be classed without reserve in the sedimentary or Grenville series. They have a simple tabular or lenticular form, swelling and narrowing to some extent along the strike and dip, but otherwise are little disturbed. * * * The Grenville rocks which occur near the ores are mostly hornblende and biotite quartzose gneisses with occasional intercalations of thin-bedded schists. They are conspicuously foliated and variable in their composition from layer to layer. * * * The Grenville has been broken up into patches and larger irregular areas by granite which has invaded the series from below. * * * The granite frequently cuts across the stratification of the sediments and sends off dikes and stringers which penetrate the latter in all directions.

Other instances might be cited where field relations point to the conclusion that metamorphosed sediments are the base of the iron-ore formation and that metamorphism has in all probability preceded granitic invasion, but the localities mentioned are sufficient for the purpose.

SUMMARY.

In conclusion it may be said, as Van Hise[c] has so well pointed out in referring to the distribution of the elements—

that a general result of metamorphism and accompanying processes is that many of the secondary rocks are depleted in reference to each metal and that correlative with

[a] Newland, D. H., Geology of the Adirondack magnetic iron ores: New York State Mus. Bull. 119, 1908, p. 27.

[b] Newland, D. H., op. cit., pp. 40–41.

[c] Van Hise, C. R., A treatise on metamorphism: Mon. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 47, 1904, p. 1035.

such depletion other deposits are formed in which each metal is segregated. Since these processes result in deposits in which each of the common metals is segregated, why should we hold that the metal of a present deposit of gold or silver or copper [or iron][a] is derived solely from an immediately adjacent igneous rock unless evidence for this be conclusive. The natural view is that the metallic ore deposits of the world are broadly accumulated results of the processes of segregation carried on throughout geological time.

The geologic events probably involved in the formation of the Llano ores may be indicated as follows:

1. Deposition of iron as oxide, carbonate, etc.,[b] with the sediments, either in extended basins or along borders of the sea.
2. Burial and intrusion of dikes and sills of a diabasic type with possible local introduction of soda. Possibly granitic intrusions.
3. Deep burial with following folding and metamorphism, and second intrusion of basic types.
4. Intrusion by granite magma with great local disruption.
5. Elevation above sea, and exposure by erosion.

GOLD.

Small quantities of gold may be found at many localities throughout the pre-Cambrian area. It must be said, however, that in general the quantity is so small as to be valueless from the standpoint of a mining enterprise. Results of many assays made of specimens said to contain gold were decidedly discouraging. The following table shows the results of a number of assays:

Results of assay for gold and silver, Llano County, Tex.[a]

	Gold, per ton.	Silver, ounce per ton.	Locality.
1	Trace.	Trace.	Sulphides from Mr. Sheeon's place, 4 miles south of Llano.
2	None.	None.	Graphitic schist 2½ miles southwest of Niggerhead Mountain, three-fourths of a mile east of the Colorado (flowing south) and a scant half mile north of the river (flowing east).
3	Trace.	.56	Thomas Prospect, Hooking Hollow.
4	None.	None.	Shaft near Gallihaw Crossing. Pegmatite dike.
5	None.	None.	2½ miles east by north from Granite Knob and one-fourth mile south of the east and west road, near edge of sheet. Gossan from vein.
6	Trace.	.38	4 miles west of Burnet and north of Spring Creek, Bailey Prospect.
7	$0.31	None.	Quartzite-like rock near Parkinson's quarries, 110 feet long, 30 feet wide.
8	.10	None.	Iron oxide 1¾ miles east-northeast of Field Creek village.
9	.10	None.	Edwards's pasture, near east boundary 2-foot vein, 240 feet long (by float). Prospect holes 5 miles east by south of Valley Springs.
10	None.	None.	Southeast of No. 9 and west of Pecan Creek, north of road to Edwards's ranch. Bedded layer in graphite schist.
11	.10	None.	Willow Creek above Burnet-Valley Springs road; outcrop about 2½ miles west of Valley Springs.
12	.10	None.	Heavy pyrite gossan in graphite schist on knoll 1½ miles west by south of Miller Mountain.

[a] Assays 1–6 by E. E. Burlingame Denver, Colo. Assays 7–12 by Ledoux & Co. New York City.

On Henry H. Sheeon's place, about 4 miles south of Llano, a shaft has been sunk to prospect pyrite veins in the quartzite schist. The

[a] Inserted by present writer.

[b] The chemistry of the possible manner of original deposition need not be discussed here, as little or no evidence is at hand for discrimination.

pyrite nearly or quite accords with the bedding of the schists which at this point dip steeply to the southeast. The iron mineral is accompanied by much quartz in narrow veins swelling and pinching in the layers of the schist. Apparently the two were introduced together. An assay of this pyrite, which is very abundant, judging from the dump (the shaft, unfortunately, was not open at the time of the visit), shows no gold.[a]

The only prospect visited where gold was present in sufficient quantity to warrant further prospecting is called the Heath mine. This prospect is located 5 miles northeast of Llano, just north of the Llano-Lone Grove road. At the present time the property is controlled by Mr. McCarty Moore, of Dallas, Tex., though during the past 25 years a number of persons have been interested in the prospect.

The rocks in this vicinity are a part of the dark (Packsaddle) schist series. Graphite and mica schist and limestone are present. At the prospect, intrusive granite, which to the south and east occurs in large masses, has broken the regularity of the beds, and strikes and dips with quite variable angles may be observed. Much quartz and pegmatite have interleaved and cut the schist beds, and pyrite is locally present. It is with the quartz stringers that the gold seems to be largely associated.

In the subsoil and in the partly decayed schists below, where exposed in crosscuts, a canary-yellow efflorescence or stain may be noted coating quartz stringers and distributed in spots through the decayed rock. This stain has been mistaken occasionally for an oxidation product of gold tellurides. An examination by W. T. Schaller of the United States Geological Survey proves the material to be a compound of bismuth and vanadium. The only known mineral compound of bismuth and vanadium is the mineral pucherite, which, however, is always found in crystal form. The yellow compound has been noted by Mr. Schaller in California where he collected sufficient material for an analysis, results of which will be published at a later date.

The prospect is located on a low spur rising to the north. A cover of residual red and brown soil effectually conceals the underlying decayed schists and granites. This residual soil carries gold, undoubtedly concentrated by the removal of soluble and easily transported constituents of the rock. Values are also reported in the underlying schists.

Figure 19 is a sketch map on which are shown the positions of some of the open cuts and shafts by which the property has been prospected. The map also shows the general northwest trend of the schists and the variable dips and strikes that may be observed.

In 1900–1901 a shaft 615 feet deep was sunk. Gold is reported from this shaft, but little definite information could be obtained as to

[a] See table on page 70, assay 1.

its value or the depth at which it occurred. The writer was informed that an 8-foot band of black schist carried fair value in gold associated with molybdenite.

The material on the dump shows that the lower portion of the shaft penetrated feldspar-mica schist and fine-grained pink intrusive granite.

At points 5 and 6 shown on the sketch map two 50-foot shafts have been sunk and connected by a drift. The results of any systematic sampling of these openings are not at hand. High values are not reported. At point 7 shown on the sketch map two shafts 45 feet deep are sunk in schist and intrusive granite. An open cut following a quartz vein is also located at this point. The presence of pyrite with the quartz and in the granite is noteworthy. Open cuts are located also, as indicated at 1, 2, 3, and 4, and a shaft is sunk as indicated at 11.

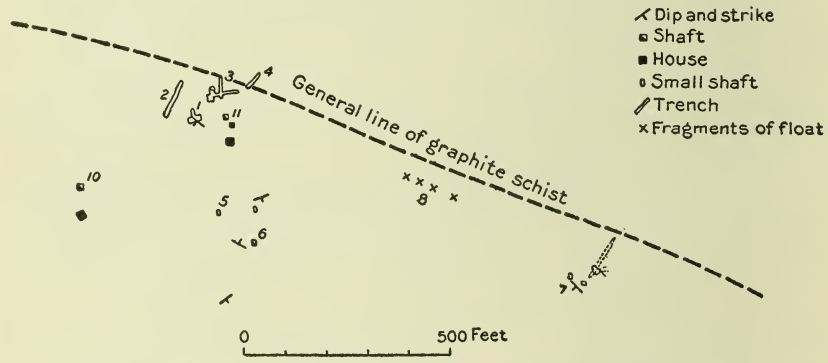


FIGURE 19.—Prospect pits and shafts at Heath gold prospect.

It has been pointed out that a foot or more of residual soil covers most of the bedrock in this vicinity. This soil has been sampled by 60 shallow pits in addition to the open cuts shown on the sketch map. A sample selected with great care by the writer from one of these pits gave an assay of 20 cents in gold.

An incline has been run from the surface crosscut shown at 1 on the sketch map (fig. 19) southward down the dip of the schists for about 90 feet. A sample from the west wall of this incline, about 30 feet from its upper end, was cut from the grass roots down to the bottom of the cut, a distance of 9 feet. The sample was crushed on a canvas sheet, mixed and quartered twice, and assayed for gold and silver, and $1.60 in gold was reported by the assayer.[a] A second sample from the east wall and 12 feet farther down the incline was cut from 6½ feet of material. The top of this cut was 7 feet below the grass roots. The sample was quartered once and assayed for gold and silver, and 20

[a] Assays made for the U. S. Geol. Survey by E. E. Burlingame, of Denver, Colo.

cents in gold was reported. A third sample was taken from the west wall 42 feet down the incline from second sample. This sample covered 4½ feet of material and was 5 feet from the face of the incline. It was quartered once and assayed. No values were reported.

A sample was taken from crosscut 3 (see sketch map) on its south side. It included 6 feet of schist and a little granite. It was quartered once and assayed. No values were reported.

Crosscut 2 (see sketch map) was sampled at three points about 75 feet apart, two on its northwest side and one on its southeast side near the northeast end. The three samples, covering in all about 10 feet of vertical material, weathered schist and soil, were mixed together and quartered once and assayed. No values were reported.

A sample was taken from the top of 26 ore sacks and from an ore pile representing picked ore selected by panning tests. This sample assayed $20.59 a ton in gold and silver, of which 19 cents was silver.

The company has had many assays made of material from the surface and from the cuts and the incline. Separate assays of quartz from veins have also been made. In all these instances, values higher than those found by the writer are reported. In some instances single stringers of quartz are reported to carry exceptionally high values. The sample from the ore sacks, noted above, was of very quartzose material.

It seems very probable that in large measure the values are confined to the quartz veins; these are abundant locally, but are not persistent and are not of such size that they could be worked individually.

Except in the residual material, in which there has been opportunity for enrichment by the removal of soluble constituents of the rock during its decay, it is doubtful if sufficiently high values in gold could be relied on to insure profitable mining. This point, however, can be determined only by assaying many carefully taken average samples.

COPPER.

No encouragement can be given that any copper prospect visited during the course of the investigation on which this report is based can ever be of commercial value.

About one-half mile northwest of Wilberns Glen on both sides of the road some crosscuts and a shaft about 35 feet deep have been opened. Films of malachite were noted associated with epidotized and garnetized schist.

About three-fourths of a mile beyond the western edge of the Llano quadrangle and about 400 feet south of the Mason road prospecting has been done on what is known as the Bauer prospect. At

this point schists striking east and west are near the edge of a large mass of fine-grained granite. A shaft (slope) of unknown depth dips 50° S. Carbonates are noted over about 150 feet of prospected ground. No sulphides were seen on the dump. A little garnet was noted. Two carloads of ore are reported to have been shipped.

In May's pasture, 2 miles south of Babyhead and a short distance east of the Llano-Babyhead road, a fine-grained pink granite is seen carrying malachite and some azurite. About two tons of 3 per cent rock is at the surface. A small trench has been made.

There has been prospecting for copper on Adolf Schneider's place, 1½ miles north of Llano River, and 5 miles east of the Mason County line, on a stream joining the Llano above Bauer's ford. Three holes from 15 to 30 feet deep have been sunk in schists which strike north and dip about 35° E. A little chalcopyrite associated with black garnet, epidote, quartz, and a little calcite may be seen in a layer of schist. Carbonates extend down only a few feet, and but little gossan is seen. The occurrence is on the west side of a tongue of fine-grained red granite which crops about 30 feet down the dip to the east.

Chalcopyrite and a little chalcocite were seen in the intrusive granite as well as in the schists, and a microscopic examination showed clearly its secondary nature—that is, it in part fills the cracks in feldspars. The solutions therefore which brought in the copper penetrated the rocks later than the intrusion of the granite and took advantage of existing fractures.

An assay of a sample representing about 200 pounds of ore selected by Mr. Schneider gave the following result: Gold, $0.41 per ton; silver, trace; copper, 0.94 per cent.

About 2 miles east of Magill Mountain and a short distance east of Pecan Creek, prospecting for copper has been carried on. Several shafts and crosscuts have been opened. At this point the pre-Cambrian schist series is cut by a network of pegmatite and quartz veins, the latter often paralleling the lamination of the flat-lying schist. The schist and the pegmatite also contain disseminated pyrite, chalcopyrite and bornite, with malachite and azurite. The prospects do not indicate a deposit of value.

In the town of Llano and in the near vicinity several pits have been sunk in the hope of developing a copper property, but nothing was seen which would invite further work.

Other prospect pits were seen at various localities, but in no instance were any of the showings of such a nature as to warrant further prospecting.

LEAD.

About 3½ miles north of Bluffton, Burnet County, on Silver Creek, a tributary of Beaver Creek, a small area of coarse pink granite protrudes beneath the Cambrian strata, and around the edges of this outcrop galena may be observed in the limy glauconitic quartz sandstone, which here rests by overlap on the granite. About 1½ miles north by west of this locality a similar occurrence is found on Beaver Creek, where again galena occurs in glauconitic sandstone near the base of the sandstone series and just below an outcrop of pre-Cambrian granite (on the creek). The locations of Beaver and Silver Creeks are shown on the map (fig. 20), and the geologic relations at the Silver

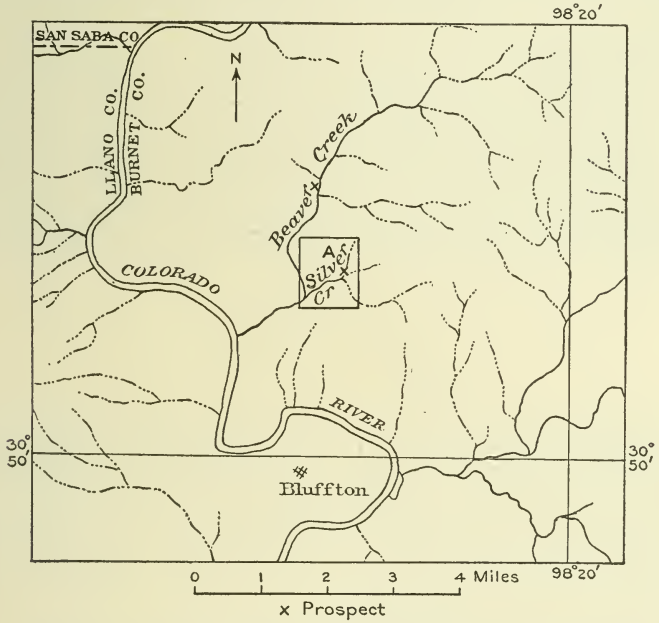


FIGURE 20.—Map showing location of lead prospects north of Bluffton and area (A) covered by figure 21.

Creek locality are shown in figure 21. It may be seen from these figures that at this point overlap occurs, because of the unevenness of the pre-Cambrian floor on which the sediments were deposited. It will be noted also that quaquaversal dips occur along the borders of the granite mass. In the field small faults accompanied by zones of slipping and brecciation were developed along this unconformity. These, with the steep dips (confined entirely to the contact), plainly indicate an upward movement of this granite mass, a movement of sufficient magnitude to flex the beds sharply, but not sufficient to do more than break them slightly. The structure at the locality on Beaver Creek is of the same type, though in that locality the folding of the beds due to a sharp uplift is even more beautifully shown (Pl. V, *A*).

The lead occurs apparently as a replacement of the limy sandstone, though it is not confined to that member, being found also locally in the limestone. It can not be said to follow the bedding consistently, though locally it may do so. It is found both near the granite floor and also a considerable distance, 40 feet or more, above it. A microscopic examination shows that the galena is most likely a replacement of the calcite which binds together the quartz and glauconite grains making up the sandstone.

Two shafts and a tunnel have been opened on the property. Only the tunnel was in condition to be examined. From the 65-foot shaft two or three veins of lead are reported by Dr. Osborne, who owns the property. Sixteen feet from the top of this shaft a vein reported 3½ feet thick is said to run 75 ounces in silver and 20 per cent lead.

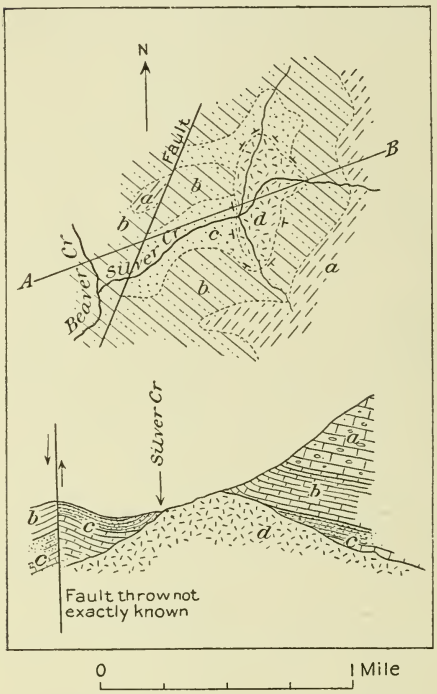


FIGURE 21.—Plan and ideal section showing relations of Upper Cambrian to underlying pre-Cambrian granite at lead prospects north of Bluffton. *a*, Ellenburger limestone; *b*, Wilberns formation; *c*, Cap Mountain formation; *d*, pre-Cambrian granite.

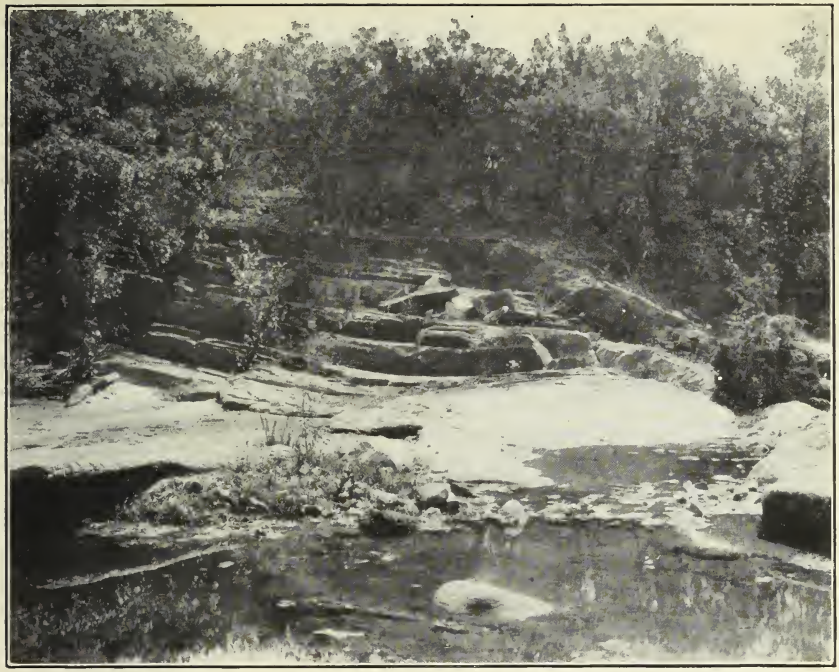
Some of the galena from this locality was examined for its silver content.[a] The method used, with the quantity of sample submitted, would not detect less than 8 ounces of silver per ton. No silver was detected.[b]

The tunnel is located a short distance south of Silver Creek on the western contact. It is run S. 68° W. in glauconitic sandstone. Thirty feet in, a crosscut is driven 7 feet northwest and 18 feet southeast. A bed of sandstone about 18 inches thick is here seen dipping 23° SW., and shows a little disseminated galena. At the end of the crosscuts and also at a point near the tunnel the drift has been widened, evidently for the purpose of following a body of ore which gave out. The tunnel was continued beyond the drift, but is reported to have struck no lead.

The origin of an ore deposit generally has an important bearing on a decision regarding the probabilities of developing a commercial deposit. The following suggestions are offered as an explanation of the occurrence described, but the writer does not thereby wish to

[a] W. B. Phillips (Eng. and Min. Jour., vol. 77, 1904, p. 364) reports the lead-bearing strata on Silver Creek to be 6 to 12 feet thick. Assays show between 10 and 20 per cent lead with no silver or gold.

[b] Munroe, Hall & Hopkins, chemists, assayers, engineers, Washington, D. C.



A. FOLDING OF UPPER CAMBRIAN SANDSTONE ON BEAVER CREEK, NEAR LEAD PROSPECT.

See page 75.

B. PEGMATITE AND GRANITE INTRUDING SCHIST.

See page 10.

create an optimistic sentiment regarding these ores; it can not be said that the prospects which were available for study would warrant such a view.

It is significant that in both the localities described the lead is concentrated in an area of local disturbance, where a dome-like uplift has to some extent brecciated the rocks and caused small faults to appear. It is noteworthy also that the pre-Cambrian basement at this point is about 100 to 150 feet higher than the pre-Cambrian floor to the west. Seventy to 90 feet above the glauconite horizon occurs a shale member of sufficient thickness to act as a fairly impervious cover. Waters carrying lead in solution circulating under artesian conditions might flow upward along the unconformity, reach this locality of relatively open space, and deposit lead sulphide. The chemical reaction which caused this precipitation must remain conjectural. If the deposition be due to any inherent quality of the inclosing rock, one would suspect that the presence of glauconite might have played a part.

It is interesting to note that this galena occurs in a series which is lithologically very similar to the Lamotte sandstone and the dolomitic Bonneterre limestone of southwestern Missouri, where workable ore bodies are found both in that sandstone and in the limestone above. If these Texas occurrences are of a similar type to those of southwestern Missouri, much irregularity may be expected in their distribution. Though many faults occur in the Texas region, some of considerable throw, they have no apparent connection with the galena other than the local effect due to the formation of open space by the brecciation described above. Considering their proximity to the basal unconformity and the presence of the shales above, it is suggested that the deposits owe their origin to lead-bearing solutions more or less controlled by the relatively impervious pre-Cambrian floor below and the relatively impervious shale above, moving laterally in past time under artesian conditions, the lead in solution having been derived by leaching from many feet of higher strata perhaps many miles distant from the present deposit.

GRAPHITE.

As the series of pre-Cambrian rocks described above were in part originally shales, sandstones, and limestones, they are now represented by schists of varying composition. Moreover, certain constituents have become, through metamorphism, of possible economic importance. Such an instance is the change of carbonaceous matter originally in the shales to graphite.

Graphite-bearing schists are widely distributed throughout the pre-Cambrian rocks, though the content of graphite is variable. In most places the graphite schists are associated with limestone or

marble, a natural occurrence, for carbonaceous shales are often associated with limestone strata. Many of these schists can be traced for long distances.

Graphite-bearing schists were noted at many localities, but since only one of these is as yet considered of importance, a description of the occurrence at this locality will serve as a measure of those left undescribed; for it may be said in general that it would not be advisable to spend money on prospecting or testing at other localities until the deposit in question is proved a commercial success. If any exception be made to this statement, it would be that perhaps certain beds carry sufficient graphite to be of value as a source of paint pigment, in the industrial manufacture of which a very impure graphite can be used, as not more than 35 or 40 per cent of graphite is required in the paint pigment, the remainder being generally siliceous, aluminous, or ferruginous material.[a]

The locality which has received and warranted the most attention is located 1⅞ miles due south of Lone Grove, is approximately 1,500 feet west of Little Llano River and 800 feet north of the Houston & Texas Central Railroad.

The graphite occurs in graphitic schists of the upper or black series which in this vicinity contains considerable limestone. (See map, Pl. III, in pocket.) Granite and pegmatite intrusion has locally disrupted the beds to a greater extent than can be expressed on a map of the scale here published.

The graphite-bearing schists can be traced with interruptions for one-half mile northwestward from a point a little west of the railroad bridge, through the present workings, to a point where the series disappears beneath overlying Cambrian sandstones. Graphite is also reported across the river in the same trend.

The deposit has been prospected by a shaft with underground workings and by a number of surface cuts, four or more in a distance of about 500 feet. Two to the southeast of the shaft (about 150 and 300 feet from it, respectively) only show granite débris. One to the north of it about 150 feet is badly filled. A 70-foot cut about 25 feet north of the shaft gives an excellent exposure.

At the west end of the cut, a mixture of schist and pegmatite with calcite veinlets is exposed for 22 feet. There is a little graphite in the schist. Limestone is exposed in the extreme west end. Next to this 22 feet of lean material, an irregular mass is exposed, about 3 feet across and extending from the bottom to the top of the cut. It contains considerable graphite, mixed with quartz, feldspar, and calcite and represents a rich graphite-bearing layer intruded and broken by pegmatite with subsequent filling of fractures by calcite.

---

[a] Bastin, E. S., Graphite: Mineral Resources U. S. for 1908, pt. 2, U. S. Geol. Survey, 1909, p. 720.

At a first glance the impression might be formed that pegmatite had introduced the graphite. A careful examination of the graphite bunches in the pegmatite shows, however, that they represent broken fragments of schist. A specimen was polished and etched with hydrochloric acid, which by dissolving out the calcite contained between the laminæ of the schist fragments showed clearly the schistose nature of the graphite.

Following this mass is 6½ feet of fine-grained mica schist, carrying a small content of graphite, after which is exposed 6 feet of material similar to the 3-foot irregular mass described above. Seven feet of schist, practically barren of graphite, is followed by 25 feet of material similar to the irregular mass of graphite, feldspar, and quartz,

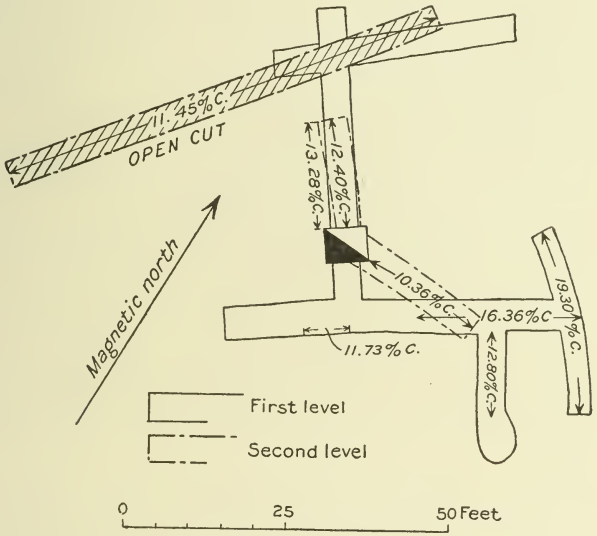


FIGURE 22.—Plan of workings at graphite property near Lone Grove.

but containing more of the latter material as the end of the cut is approached. Decayed granite appears in the east end of the cut.

The underground workings were not open at the time of the writer's visit.

An average sample taken over the length of the cut described above showed a carbon content of 11.45 per cent.

The locations of the shaft, cut, and underground workings are shown in figure 22. The first level is 55 feet below the collar of the shaft, the second 28 feet below the first. In addition to the workings shown in this figure is an exposure of some 5 feet of graphitic material in a small pit about 150 feet northwest of the shaft, and about 300 feet northwest of the shaft is a long crosscut 10 or 12 feet deep in greatly decomposed schist and gneiss, practically barren.

A private report made in 1902 by William Young Westervelt and furnished by the courtesy of Mr. R. H. Downman contains many

interesting data on this property, and the following notes are abstracted from it:

The only point at which sufficient development work has been done to actually place "ore in sight" is at the shaft and associated workings, represented by the accompanying plate.

The shaft, for the first 5 feet, is built up through the dump, but with this exception is entirely in a mass of graphite ore from its collar to the first level. There being neither timbers nor ladderway in the shaft, except at the collar and levels, it was impracticable to take a sample of it. Careful samples of the levels and of the sump being secured, however, sampling of the shaft was not deemed necessary. On the first level, a drift runs northwest on a seam of graphitic shale about 5 feet wide, which is proved to exist for about 30 feet northwest of the shaft center and continues beyond. Sample No. 8 of this seam assays 12.40 per cent graphite. Southeast of the shaft, it is shown to exist at least 15 feet in this direction, and sample No. 7 across the seam, as shown in figure 22, assays 11.73 per cent graphite. The crosscut near the end of the northwest drift is barren. The crosscut at the end of the southeast drift, however, though barren to the southwest, enters a mass of graphitic material some 10 or 15 feet northeast of the drift and passes through 25 feet of the crystalline material.

A first and second drift on this ore, as shown in figure 22, are also largely on the ore. Samples Nos. 3, 4, and 6, taken in the drifts and crosscut, contain 19.30 per cent, 12.80 per cent, and 16.36 per cent graphite, respectively.

Between the first and second levels, graphitic shale is shown on the northeast side of the shaft; the balance of the shaft, however, is barren.

At the second level, as is shown in short dash lines in figure 22, there is a 20-foot drift running northwest. This drift is on a 2 to 4 foot seam of graphitic shale. Sample No. 2 of this seam contains 13.28 per cent graphite. East of the shaft a drift has been run in 25 feet, the south side and bottom of which are entirely in graphitic shale containing, according to sample No. 1, 10.36 per cent graphite. The width of the seam at this point is not, however, determined. Below the second level, in the 8-foot sump, graphite shale appears on the southwest side, and sample No. 5 shows it to contain 12.50 per cent graphite. The balance of the sump, however, including the bottom, is barren.

* * * * * * *

In addition to this ore in the mine, there are two dumps of ore, taken from the workings lying next the shaft. These I sampled by cutting trenches through them and drawing samples from the sides of the trenches. One, an annular dump, formed to make a walkway for the horse-whim, shows by sample No. 11, 12.20 per cent graphite, and contains according to my measurements about 1,747 cubic feet of loose material, or, according to my determination of specific gravity (see Laboratory tests et seq.), 80 tons.

Another dump, which I estimate to contain 1,800 cubic feet, or 89 tons, contains, according to sample No. 10, 10.47 per cent carbon.

A third dump, which shows practically no value on its surface, and which I was assured contained only waste from the barren portion of the workings, also contained about 1,800 cubic feet, but was not sampled.

To sum up, allowing for inevitable inaccuracies, there are in sight on the property at least 5,500 tons of 12 per cent graphite ore.

* * * * * * *

As the value of graphite in commerce depends not only on the percentage of the pure mineral present, but also on the physical qualities of this mineral, together with the composition of the impurities present, and as the value of graphite, in common with that of any ore, also depends on the economy with which a marketable product can be produced, I have undertaken a number of laboratory tests on the samples which I secured with a view to securing some indication of these points.

A brief description of these tests and their results is as follows:

A general sample was made up of all the samples secured underground, and crushed to pass a 10-mesh sieve. It was assayed and found to contain 14.50 per cent graphite. A portion was separated into various sizes and carefully examined. Flakes of graphite being noted, a series of tests were undertaken to determine the amount and quality of this material. Flaked graphite is largely used in the manufacture of crucibles and receives the highest price of any grade. In order to be classed as such, however, the flakes must be sufficiently large not to pass through a 60-mesh sieve. Accordingly, in making this set of tests, finer material than 60 mesh was first carefully screened out of weighed portions of the general sample, and the balance was washed on a vanning plaque.

These tests indicate that ore containing 14.50 per cent carbon (the assay of the made-up general sample) will yield from 1 per cent to 4 per cent of its weight of flaked graphite containing from 56 per cent to 40 per cent carbon, whose impurities contain less than 2 per cent each of iron (Fe) and lime (CaO)—the most common of the objectionable impurities for crucible manufacture.

After taking out the flaked graphite, the residues were crushed to pass the 60-mesh screen, and added to the fines which had originally passed through it. These were then also washed on a vanning plaque, and results were produced indicating that fine graphite could be produced amounting to from 27 per cent to 28 per cent of the original ore and containing from 29.75 per cent to 25.80 per cent pure graphite, the total recovery of graphite in the form of flake and fines being 60 per cent to 61 per cent of the total graphite in the original sample.

Another series of tests of a similar nature was then made on a selected specimen of the ore representing a class which I am inclined to think could readily be secured on a practical scale by hand sorting. This specimen contained the graphite in nodules of more or less pure mineral and showed, on assay, 21 per cent carbon. It was found to contain practically no value in flake graphite, but yielded a product amounting to 31 per cent of the original, containing 37 per cent carbon. This represents a recovery of 55 per cent carbon in the specimen.

A third set of tests was then made on a specimen of the graphite shale, which also could be very readily secured in practice by itself. This was found, on assay, to contain 16 per cent carbon, and yielded on vanning no flake, but a product representing 55 per cent of the whole, containing 24 per cent carbon. This represented a total recovery of 81 per cent of the carbon present in the original.

A fourth series of tests were made on the sample taken from the Lyman lot, which it will be recalled contained 15.27 per cent carbon. It yielded 1.44 per cent of the original as flake graphite containing 42.40 per cent carbon, and 21.8 per cent of fine material containing 40.40 per cent carbon. This represented a recovery of 61.6 per cent of the carbon present in the original.

Experiments were also made to determine the effect of bolting the fine product of vanning through 200-mesh bolting cloth, the vanned, graphitic material having first all passed 100 mesh. Before bolting the sample contained 25.80 per cent pure graphite. Twenty-two per cent of this material failed to pass through the 200-mesh bolting cloth, and was found to contain 41.30 per cent carbon. The balance was either passed through or lost in extremely fine dust and in the mesh of the cloth.

In order to estimate the tonnage of ore in the dumps at the shaft collar, a series of determinations of the specific gravity of the well-packed crushed ore was made. The average of these on sample No. 11 of the annular dump is 1.482. Of sample No. 10, the other ore dump, 1.591. This gives a factor of 21.6 cubic feet per ton of 2,000 pounds for the former and 20.2 cubic feet per ton for the latter.

To determine the tons of ore in sight underground a series of specific gravity tests were made on some of the specimens of the various classes of ore. The averages of these determinations are as follows:

Specimen No. 1	2.488
Specimen No. 2	2.448
Specimen No. 3	2.598
Average specific gravity	2.511

This gives a factor of 12.8 cubic feet per ton of 2,000 pounds.

When it is understood that much of the territory included in this property has not been adequately tested by surface cuts, it may be seen from these extracts that possibilities exist for the successful establishment of a graphite industry at this point.

About 2 miles south of Llano graphite schists trending in a northwest-southeast direction toward Sharp Mountain may be observed. This vicinity is, perhaps, with the exception of the property just described, the most favorable locality to prospect, though graphite schists do occur at many other localities throughout the region. It must be borne in mind, however, in estimating the graphite content of a given band of schist that a little graphite makes a very striking showing.

The graphite bands are confined entirely to the areas mapped as Packsaddle schist.

MANGANESE.

Five miles north of Llano, on the southeast flank of Horse Mountain, prospecting has been done on what is known as the Griffy manganese deposit. The schists and gneisses at this point strike N. 11° W. and dip 24° SW. Two pits are opened at this locality; the southern one is 15 feet long on the strike and 12 feet wide on the dip. About 2 feet of manganese oxide is exposed in this pit. Quartz is banded with the ore. About 90 feet north on the strike a second pit reveals much leaner material.

Both north and south from these pits at intervals small showings of oxide and silicate may be seen. An examination of the pits shows clearly that the oxide present is a decomposition product formed from the silicates, which are observed in place. Both spessartite (a manganese garnet) and piedmontite (a manganese epidote) may be found in considerable abundance. They are associated with quartz and feldspar in grains, forming layers and probably represent metamorphic equivalents of the original elements in the sediments. A microscopic examination of a specimen showed spessartite garnet intergrown with epidote accompanied by much muscovite and quartz and some magnetite. Decomposition in this vicinity is very shallow, and below the oxidized zone the deposits, because of the silicate nature of the minerals and their discontinuity and leanness, are without commercial value.

An analysis of the Horse Mountain ore, from a report of the Arkansas Geological Survey in 1890, by R. A. F. Penrose, jr., is given below:

Analysis of manganese ore, Horse Mountain, Llano County, Tex.[a]

Manganese	24.60
Iron	3.22
Silica	35.93
Phosphorus	None.
Lime	8.48

In Mason County manganese occurs in somewhat the same manner as at Horse Mountain and has been described in the report quoted.

RARE-EARTH METALS.

The Llano region was visited by Frank L. Hess in 1907[b] for the purpose of studying the rare-earth minerals, and the following notes are quoted from his report:

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE DEPOSIT.

Baringer Hill is located about 100 miles northwest of Austin, Tex., on the west bank of Colorado River, near the western edge of the Burnet quadrangle as mapped by the United States Geological Survey. It is 12 miles north of Kingsland, the nearest railroad point, 16 miles west of Burnet, and 22 miles northeast of the town of Llano. It is a low mound rising above the flood plain of the Colorado and formed by the resistance to erosion of a pegmatite dike intruded in a porphyritic granite.

Few if any other deposits in the world, and certainly no other in America, outside of the monazite localities, have yielded such amounts of the rare-earth metal minerals as Baringer Hill.

The writer visited this region in the latter part of February, 1907, fortunately at a time when Mr. William E. Hidden, who has been largely instrumental in making this locality famous through his contributions to mineralogical literature on the rare minerals found here, was conducting mining operations.

The hill is named for John Baringer, who discovered in it large amounts of gadolinite about 1887. No one in the neighborhood knew what the mineral was, and specimens were sent to a number of places before it was identified. A piece fell into the hands of Mr. Hidden, who at once looked up the deposit and afterwards obtained possession of the property. Meanwhile Mr. Baringer had taken out a quantity of gadolinite estimated at 800 to 1,200 pounds, which was largely picked up and carried off by persons in the neighborhood as curiosities. Some of the choicer pieces, showing crystal form, found their way into various museums. The property is now controlled by the Nernst Lamp Company, of Pittsburg, Pa., and is worked by that concern for yttria minerals. Since its acquirement by this company a considerable amount of work has been done on the deposit, consisting mostly of open cuts around the edge of the pegmatite, reaching a depth of 30 or 40 feet. A large block, 30 feet in height and more in diameter, consisting mostly of quartz, is left standing in the middle.

* * * * * * *

Baringer Hill * * * is a small mound which, before mining was begun, rose, perhaps, 40 feet above a surrounding flat, was about 100 feet wide, and from 200 to 250 feet long. The longer axis runs east and west and is nearly at right angles to the course of the Colorado River at this point. The country rock is a coarse porphyritic

[a] Penrose, R. A. F., jr., Manganese: Ann. Rept. Ark. Geol. Survey for 1890, vol. 1, 1891, p. 447.

[b] Minerals of the rare-earth metals at Baringer Hill, Llano County, Tex.: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 340, 1908, pp. 286–294.

granite with feldspar phenocrysts about 1 inch long. This granite seems to weather and erode rather easily, and the river has cut a flood plain perhaps one-fourth of a mile wide at this point, while the dike, owing to its greater hardness and freshness, has better withstood the erosion. The pegmatite, an unsymmetrical body with irregular walls, is intruded into the granite in what seems to be a pipe or short dike.

At the edges of the intrusion is a graphic granite of peculiar beauty and definite structure, being more like the textbook illustrations than the usual graphic granite found in the field. The altered band is from 1 foot to 5 or 6 feet thick and apparently surrounds the pegmatite. No segregation of the feldspar or quartz in particular parts of the dike can be noted, except that the feldspar may possibly be more inclined to occupy the sides of the intrusion. As far as shown it occupies most of the western and southern sides, and the quartz occupies the center and much of the eastern side.

One quartz mass is more than 40 feet across. The quartz has distinct white bands, from one-eighth to one-half inch wide, which seem to be due to a movement akin to flowage and are similar to those found in many pegmatitic masses in other portions of the country. The white banding is due to small liquid inclusions, many of them containing bubbles which either do not move from change of inclination of the fragment containing them, or do so but slowly. The cavities are minute, largely of irregular, angular shapes, suggesting at first glance particles of broken minerals, and occur in straight or broken lines that probably follow fine cracks which were later cemented. Groups of these cracks, with their inclusions, form the bands, which seem to lie approximately parallel to the walls of the dike or at such angles with them as might easily be formed by the flowage of the material into the space it occupied in the granite. The condition of the quartz seems to show that the pegmatite, after being forced into the granite, partly cooled and solidified and then made another small movement, or a series of slight movements, at which time the minute fractures were formed in the quartz and the magmatic fluids were forced into them, but as the mass was not yet totally solidified the cracks were effectually healed and the fluid was inclosed. Such movements may be supposed to have been consequent on the readjustment of the mass on cooling. Between the fracture bands the quartz is glassy and clear. At one place a vug was found large enough for a man to enter, lined with "smoky" quartz crystals reaching 1,000 pounds or more in weight. This would seem to indicate that the pegmatite had been intruded in a pasty or semifluid condition and that the vugs represent the spaces occupied by segregated water that was squeezed from the magma as the minerals took their final solidified form.

The feldspar is an intergrowth of microcline and albite, of a brownish flesh color, beautifully fresh, and occurs (1) in large masses reaching over 30 feet in diameter, and (2) as huge crystals, many of which, though they rarely show terminal planes, have one or more sharply defined edges, especially where partially surrounded by quartz. An edge 34 inches long was measured on one crystal thus embedded. A smaller crystal was seen which was about a foot long, weighed perhaps 20 pounds, and showed fine terminations and twinning planes.

A large amount of feldspar has been mined and thrown on the dump, and it is possible that in time the dump material may be utilized, either for its potassium content, as a fertilizer, or for pottery making.

Large crystals of fluorspar, measuring a foot along the edge, occur in the quartz, but this mineral does not form any considerable percentage of the mass. The fluorspar ranges from almost colorless to violet so dark that it is practically opaque. Where found alone in the quartz it was, so far as observed, of lighter color than where found with dark-colored minerals. Mr. Hidden informed the writer that it sometimes becomes luminous at the temperature of a living room.

Ilmenite occurs in radiating bunches of sheets or blades ranging from 1 inch to 10 or 11 inches in width and from one-sixteenth to one-fourth of an inch in thickness. In cross section the ilmenite looks like the ribs of a fan, with the outer ends from one-

fourth to three-fourths of an inch apart. Similar aggregations take different angles, and numbers of such groups are found lying close together. With them occurs biotite mica in like bunches, the sheets of which are said to reach 3 feet in width by an inch in thickness. The mica is reported by Mr. Hidden to contain cæsium and rubidium, and to be close to lepidomelane in constitution. Small flakes of lithia mica reaching half an inch in diameter are found, generally along cracks in the quartz. No muscovite was seen, but it is said to be found occasionally. Compared with the mass the total amount of mica is very small.

THE RARE-EARTH MINERALS.

The greatest interest in the dike centers in the accessory minerals, particularly in the occurrence of the rare-earth metal minerals, which, as stated, probably have never been found at any other place in such large masses and in such quantities as in this locality. So far the excavations are comparatively shallow, and such minerals as are found are more or less weathered. Many show their crystalline form, but owing to alteration the crystals are now imperfect.

Allanite, a variable silicate of calcium, iron, aluminum, the cerium metals (cerium, praseodymium, neodymium, and lanthanum), and in smaller amount those of the yttrium group, occurs in large masses, one of which weighed 300 pounds and was embedded in purple fluorspar. It is a dense black mineral with a fine luster, and a hardness of about 6. Around the edges and along cracks it shows alteration to a brown substance having a hardness of about 5.5. The percentage of yttria ordinarily occurring in allanite is small and rarely exceeds $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.

Cyrtolite is rather common in the dike in peculiarly fine, polysynthetic groupings with curved faces. It is brown on the surface, with a darker or nearly black interior, and is evidently a mixture of substances. It carries a considerable amount of zirconia and some yttria, and is supposed by Mr. Hidden to be an alteration product of zircon. If it is such a derivative, the original mineral was probably much more complicated than ordinary zircon. It makes a fair radiograph, which also gives evidence of its nonhomogeneity.

Fergusonite, a variable columbate of the yttrium group and other of the rare-earth metals, occurs in four varieties, so different as to be almost distinct minerals. The difference between them is due to oxidation and hydration. No anhydrous varieties are found. It is found in crystalline form surrounded by decomposition zones. Bunches of irregular crystals have been broken out, weighing over 65 pounds. It is generally a mixture of minerals, as may be easily seen on a smooth surface from the different colors. The difference in composition is strikingly shown in a radiograph, the variations being marked by difference in radiation. According to the two analyses by Hidden and Mackintosh,[a] the fergusonite obtained here carries from 31.36 to 42.33 per cent of yttria and accompanying rare-earth metals, and 42.79 to 46.27 per cent of columbium dioxide. The two analyses give 1.54 per cent and 7.05 per cent of uranium oxides. These are probably very irregularly distributed through the material, as shown both by the mineral itself and especially by its radiographs, which are of striking beauty.

Gadolinite, a silicate of beryllium, iron, and yttrium, is the most important of the minerals found here. It contains about 42 per cent of the yttrium oxides, with a molecular weight of 260, and occurs in crystals and masses of irregular shape up to 200 pounds in weight. The outer portion of the mineral and that adjacent to the cracks is altered to dense brick-red material, but the mineral itself is of a fine, glassy black, with a smooth conchoidal fracture. Thin splinters are bottle-green in color.

[a] Hidden, W. E., and Mackintosh, J. B., Yttria and thoria minerals from Llano County, Tex.: Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 483–484. The minerals of this locality have been well described by these writers in a number of papers.

It has a specific gravity of a little over 4.2 and a hardness of 6.5 to 7. A specimen collected makes no impression on a photographic plate with 50 hours' exposure.

Polycrase, a columbate and titanate of yttrium, erbium, cerium, and uranium, occurs in grains, small masses, and plates, the last associated with ilmenite in such a manner as to suggest the probability of replacement. It normally contains between 20 and 30 per cent of yttrium oxide, but is in too small amount to be commercially important. It is very radioactive and quickly affects a photographic plate.

Other rare-earth metal minerals found in the dike are yttrialite, rowlandite, nivenite, gummite of several varieties, thorogummite, mackintoshite, and tengerite. These minerals are apt to occur in any part of the dike, either in the quartz or the feldspar, but have so far been found mostly along the outer portions. A peculiarity of their occurrence is that they are found in bunches from which, if in quartz, radial cracks extend in every direction, and by following such cracks the minerals are found. An illustration of such an occurrence was published by William E. Hidden in 1905.[a] The cause of these "stars," as they have been called by Mr. Hidden, is not clear, but the thought suggests itself that the rare-earth metal minerals may have crystallized first from the magma and the solidifying quartz, being unable otherwise to accommodate itself to the incompressible nucleus cracked in this manner.

Mr. Hidden stated that in mining one of the largest pockets the faces and hands of himself and his assistant were affected as if by sunburn, and, as in sunburn, the covered flesh was not irritated. He suggested radioactivity as the cause, and inasmuch as the minerals under consideration are radioactive, the explanation seems plausible.[b]

The following was given by Mr. Hidden in a personal communication as a complete list of the minerals found in Baringer Hill:

Minerals found in Baringer Hill, Llano County, Tex.

Silicates.

Albite; Microcline; } occur as intergrowths making up the mass of the feldspar.

Allanite; a variable silicate of calcium, iron, the cerium metals, and less amounts of the yttrium group, in masses weighing up to 300 pounds, embedded in purple fluorspar.

Biotite; close to lepidomelane.

Cyrtolite; hydrated silicate of zirconium, yttrium, and cerium. Radioactive, abundant.

Gadolinite; a silicate of beryllium, iron, and yttrium in masses weighing up to 200 pounds.

Lithia mica; apparently a later deposition in cracks in quartz. Small flakes one-half inch or less across.

Orthoclase; not abundant.

Yttrialite; an anhydrous silicate of thoria, yttrium, and cerium earths. Contains about 30 per cent silica, 46 per cent yttria, 10 to 12 per cent thoria, and 5 to 6 per cent ceria. Does not occur in large quantity.

Rowlandite; practically a hydrated yttrium silicate. Contains 5 per cent fluorine.

Columbates.

Fergusonite; four varieties, due to oxidation and hydration. Neither is anhydrous. Purest, 5.65 specific gravity. So different as to be almost distinct minerals. Crystals surrounded by decomposition zones.

Polycrase; columbate and titanate of yttrium, erbium, cerium, and uranium. Contains about 25 per cent of yttria.

---

[a] Some results of late mineral research in Llano County, Tex.: Am. Jour. Sci., 4th ser., vol. 19, 1905, p. 432.

[b] Mr. Hidden has described this incident in the article referred to.

Oxides.

Hematite; specular, small quantity.

Magnetite; without metallic acids or rare earths.

Ilmenite; iron-titanium oxide in beautiful crystals, as well as plates up to 8 or 9 inches broad.

Rutile; titanium oxide, in prismatic and reticulated forms one-fourth inch thick.

Quartz; large masses and crystals of white quartz and "smoky" crystals up to 1,000 pounds in weight. Amethysts of gem quality reach 1 inch by one-half inch.

Uranates.

Mackintoshite; 3 parts thorite to 1 part uraninite; contains 13 per cent silica and a small amount of yttria. Radioactive; several times more so than its alteration product.

Thorogummite; formed from mackintoshite by addition of H_2O and alteration of UO_2 to UO_3.

Nivenite; a uranate of uranium, thorium, yttrium, and lead. Contains 10 per cent of lead. The most soluble uranate yet discovered; soluble in 5 per cent solution of SO_3. Prints well and gives great detail. Occurs in cubes and masses. (See Dana's System of Mineralogy, p. 889, for two analyses.) Alters to gummite.

Gummite; several varieties.

Phosphate.

Autunite; hydrous phosphate of uranium and calcium; secondary, not analyzed.

Carbonates.

Tengerite; carbonate of yttrium and beryllium. Generally globular, but occurs also as crystals up to one-sixteenth inch in length singly and as little nests. May be a mixture of beryllium and yttrium carbonates.

Lanthanite; carbonate of lanthanum, containing also cerium, praseodymium, and calcium. In incrustations on allanite.

Sulphides.

Chalcopyrite; iron-copper sulphide, massive, in small amount.

Pyrite; iron sulphide, cubic and octahedral.

Sphalerite; zinc sulphide; the purest fergusonite contains some zinc.

Molybdenite; molybdenum sulphide in scales 5 inches wide, which form masses weighing up to 10½ pounds. Alters to powellite.

Molybdate.

Powellite; calcium molybdate, in white crusts lining cavities where MbS has been. Sugary white radiating or plumose crystals, one-fourth to three-fourths inch long. Locally greenish.

It is interesting to note that among the numerous minerals in this dike no tourmaline, zircon, beryl, monazite, cassiterite, garnet, or tungsten minerals have been found. Cassiterite has been reported from the neighborhood, but its occurrence is extremely doubtful.

With the exception of the alteration products and probably of the lithia mica, which as noted, occurs along cracks in the quartz, all the minerals are believed to be original constituents of the dike.

The possibility of finding dikes having a like variety of minerals at once suggests itself, and much prospecting has been done for them. A few specimens of the rare-earth metal minerals have been found at other places in the neighborhood, but only a few, and in small quantity. However, similar dikes occur, as already stated, and these have not all been thoroughly investigated. It is to be remembered that these

minerals form but a small fraction of 1 per cent of the mass, and it might easily happen that comparatively large amounts could exist in a dike and not be exposed at the outcrop. They are minerals which are altered to softer products by exposure, and would thus be easily removed by erosion and weathering. The cracks surrounding nuclei of the minerals should be useful in prospecting.

ECONOMIC VALUE.

The economic interest in the rare-earth metal minerals centers in their incandescence on being heated, and owing to this property they have been much sought. Thoria, beryllia, yttria, and zirconia show it in the greatest degree. It was found, however, that thoria and beryllia, which form the bulk of the incandescent oxides used in gas mantles, are too easily volatilized to be used in an electric glower, such as that of the Nernst lamp. Yttria and zirconia, however, will stand the necessary high temperature. Up to the discovery of this deposit it was practically impossible to get sufficient yttria-bearing minerals to manufacture the lamps, but fergusonite and gadolinite, with lesser amounts of cyrtolite, are found here in large enough quantity to meet the requirements. The zirconia is obtained from zircon brought from other localities.

In the manufacture of the glowers for the Nernst lamp, a paste consisting of 25 per cent of yttria and 75 per cent of zirconia is squirted into strips of the proper thickness, baked, and cut into the required lengths. When cold the mixture is nonconducting, but after being heated it becomes a conductor and gives a brilliant light.

The needs of the Nernst Lamp Co., which owns the deposit, require only the occasional working of the mine. After enough yttria minerals are obtained to supply its wants for a few months ahead, the mine is closed. But a few hundred pounds per year are extracted.

Rare-earth minerals have been noted at several localities besides Baringer Hill.

Professor Hidden mentions the discovery of two crystals of gadolinite about a mile south of Baringer Hill. Several pounds of allanite were taken from a mass of pegmatite outcropping as a low knoll about 2½ miles west-northwest from Kingsland, near Williams's garden. Fluorite occurs with the allanite at this place. The amount of prospecting is practically negligible.

In Burnet County, 2 miles due east of Baringer Hill and about one-half mile west of Shiloh Church, is another gadolinite locality. The matrix rock is like the pegmatite of Baringer Hill, but the mass is obviously smaller. The old workings consist of a shallow trench from which a few tons of pegmatite have been removed.

All the above-mentioned localities are in the area of coarse red granite. Outside of the granite area only one locality came under observation. Near the east side of Mr. Dorbant's pasture, south of the Burnet-Bluffton road, small masses of weathered rare-earth minerals are to be found in irregular narrow dikes of pegmatite inclosed in dark schists. This locality is about 4½ miles from Colorado River and 7 miles from Burnet.

ZINC BLENDE WITH FLUORITE GANGUE.

Deposits of fluorite carrying irregular amounts of metallic sulphide minerals occur at two localities west of Burnet within the drainage basin of Spring Creek. A fluorite-bearing reef has been opened on the Bailey place, about 4 miles from Burnet and a mile west of the Bluffton road. In this vicinity the rocks are pre-Cambrian gneisses and schists cut by minor masses of granite and pegmatite. Structural trends are east and west, the rocks, though poorly exposed, being evidently complexly folded. The outcrop of the fluorite reef is on top of a ridge between two of the upper tributaries of Spring Creek. The bulk of the rocks adjacent are feldspathic gneisses, but with these are interlayered masses of hornblende schist. Locally the strike of the different layers is about N. 60° E., and dips are to the southeast.

A mixture of fluorite and hornblende with a little quartz, feldspar, and chalcopyrite occurs in the form of a layer inclosed by light-colored gneiss. The material carries scattered grains of galena.

The deposit was prospected several years ago by means of a shaft and nine shallow excavations. A line joining the several openings trends N. 60° E. From what could be made out in 1909, it appears that fluorite was found along the strike of the layer for a distance of nearly 300 feet. On the southwest the mineral was encountered in five trenches, showing an extent along the reef of 100 feet. Counting toward the northeast, trench No. 5 shows a bunch of mineral which seems to represent the bottom of a shallow trough, as gneiss is exposed on both sides and below it. The next trench lies 135 feet northeast of No. 5. Here there is no evidence of the reef and the intervening ground is completely covered. However, about 40 feet farther on is the shaft, about which is piled a considerable amount of fluorite rock. This shaft contains water within about 20 feet of the surface. Its lower portion is evidently in feldspathic gneiss.

About 15 feet northeast of the shaft is a pit sufficiently deep to expose 20 feet of the fluorite-bearing layer measured down the dip, the dip being less than 10° SE. Thirty feet beyond, another excavation appears to have revealed no mineral, and the same is true of a long trench 325 feet northeast of the shaft. All the fluorite from this locality is white.

The purest masses of the mineral appear in the southwesterly pits, where the reef averages perhaps less than a foot in thickness. In the part adjacent to the shaft on the northeast, the reef has a maximum thickness of 2½ feet, but pinches and swells to a marked degree. Here the fluorite constitutes about 60 per cent by bulk of a granular rock containing hornblende, quartz, feldspar, and a little chalcopyrite. A carefully taken sample of the fluorite rock piled up about the shaft showed on assay a trace of gold and 0.38 ounce silver. Copper

was not determined, but from the small amount of chalcopyrite in the fluorite rock this metal can hardly amount to more than 1 per cent.

Fluorite accompanied by zinc blende is found at several points in the upper valley of the north fork of Spring Creek on and near the Frank Thomas place. The locality is about 7 miles west of Burnet. The occurrence of the mineral is in layers conforming with the north and south trending structure of the inclosing dark hornblende schists. About half a mile north of the dwelling house a shaft has been opened to a depth of 25 feet. Here the layer or reef is about 3½ feet thick at the outcrop. The material thrown out of the shaft is a mixture of fluorite sulphide minerals and a little quartz. Zinc blende is the most abundant metallic mineral, but galena, pyrite, and molybdenite may be observed. The assay of a carefully taken sample of the material thrown out of the shaft shows[a] zinc 7.60 per cent; lead, none; gold, a trace; silver, 0.56 ounce.

Whether or not this reef has any degree of continuity along the strike can not be stated, since no adequate surface explorations have been made. In the absence of any assurance of a continuous vein no estimate of the prospective value of this deposit is warranted. It may be said, however, that if only a few thousand tons of 7 per cent zinc ore could be developed there is no apparent reason against the possibility of profitable mining upon a small scale.

In the vicinity of the Thomas dwelling house fluorite has been discovered near the well on the east of the creek bed. The reef, which is not over 10 inches wide, trends north and south and stands nearly vertical. Going south along the strike the mineral has been uncovered in three or four places within a distance of somewhat more than one-fourth mile. At one point a shaft sunk in black schist encountered fluorite and chalcopyrite disseminated in black hornblende schist.

Other outcrops of fluorite were seen south of the eastward-flowing drain one-half mile south of the house.

Some of the fluorite in this vicinity is nearly free from other minerals, but specimens may be found which are made up of nearly equal parts of black zinc blende and fluorite, with a little quartz and a little pyrite. Such prospecting as has been done is not sufficient to demonstrate that these deposits have any promising degree of persistence.

SERPENTINE AND TALC.

Talc deposits have been found at a number of places within the pre-Cambrian rocks and serpentine has been found in a body of considerable size at one locality. Prospecting has been carried on with a view to proving commercial deposits at several places.

[a] Assay by E. E. Burlingame.

Serpentine.—The Collins property, located 9 miles south of Llano, a little west of the Oxford road, contains about 250 acres lying in a strip about 1½ miles long in a north-south direction. Near the north end of the property and on a hillside is a pit perhaps 20 feet in diameter and 10 feet deep. This pit is in serpentine and exposes on its west side a contact with soapstone. For perhaps 100 feet east and northeast of this pit and for at least 500 feet southeast and south serpentine is exposed.

At the foot of the hill a second pit about 30 feet in diameter by 10 or 15 feet deep exposes serpentine rock. At this point a diamond-drill hole was bored 275 feet deep without passing out of serpentine rock. Over the next pass to the south, serpentine is exposed for 100 feet or more down the slope, and a third pit about 10 feet wide by 20 feet long and 10 feet deep has been opened. Except a small outcrop of schist, the pit exposes only serpentine.

To the west and also partly surrounding these exposures of serpentine are very considerable exposures of soapstone, in which occur veinlets of asbestos and geodes of quartz and amethyst crystals.

It may be seen from the dimensions given above that a considerable deposit of serpentine and talc exists at this locality. Specimens were seen which took a fine polish. The commercial value of such a deposit will depend directly upon the demand that can be created for the serpentine.

Though blasting has been the only method employed in taking out material, blocks of considerable size have been extracted, and if more refined methods are used, there is no doubt that much larger blocks would be quarried and sawn into commercial sizes. An installment to carry on such work on a large scale would involve a considerable investment, and the opening of the property on a small scale would seem for the present more advisable. Market conditions and transportation would need to be carefully considered before any extensive plan of operation were adopted.

The relation of the outcrop of the body above described to the inclosing schist-gneiss series leaves little doubt that the deposit is an alteration product of a pyroxenic or peridotitic intrusive mass. As has been shown in an earlier portion of this report gabbroic and dioritic types of intrusives are present in the region. The presence of quartz and amethyst geodes and the occurrence of iron oxides in connection with the deposit point to the same conclusion; that is, they represent the silica and iron content derived from the breaking down of magnesian iron silicate minerals.

Talc.—Talc is found at a number of localities in addition to that associated with the serpentine deposit already described. In the area immediately east of Cedar Mountain, numerous small outcrops were seen, though in no case was any deposit mapped separately.

A small deposit also occurs 1½ miles west of Llano, and a deposit on which considerable work has been done is located about 1 mile north of Graphite station.

The small deposit west of Llano is formed without doubt by the hydration of magnesian silicate minerals developed by regional or contact metamorphism in pre-Cambrian limestone strata. A small pit is opened on the ledge, but stripping has been insufficient to prove the horizontal extent of the body. The presence of silicate minerals in the talc would destroy its commercial value. This point can only be determined by exploration work. Locally silicate minerals were noted in the material.

The talc deposits east of Cedar Mountain are associated with the dark series of schists described earlier in this report. This locality, however, is exceptional in that considerable bodies of dioritic rocks are intruded into the schist series. The talc in this area is probably in a large measure derived from limestones by the hydration of magnesian silicate minerals. It is almost certain, however, that some of the deposits are due to the alteration of basic intrusives or their equivalents, the amphibole schists. No large deposits of talc were seen in this vicinity, but considering the soft nature of talc and its tendency to break down and be covered up by surface soil, it is suggested that prospecting might reveal commercial deposits.

Surface outcrops do not give much information as to underground conditions at the property located a mile north of Graphite station. The following notes regarding underground developments are abstracted from a private report by William Young Westervelt, to whom part of the underground workings were accessible. The open cut described was poorly exposed at the time of the present writer's visit.

The property contains in all some 980 acres and the openings are all within a few hundred feet of the Houston & Texas Central Railroad. The workings are along a general northwest-southeast course and consist, commencing at the southeast end, of the following openings: A small shaft has been sunk 28 feet, from the bottom of which two crosscuts have been driven in northeast and southwest directions. At the time of visit the northeast crosscut was 13 feet from the center of the shaft. The southwest crosscut was too nearly filled to be accessible, though it was stated to be 9 feet long from the center of the shaft and, like the northeast drift, all in soapstone. The shaft itself was noted to be entirely in soapstone.

At 33 feet northwest of the shaft is an open crosscut 14 feet wide, 14 feet deep at one end, and sloping up in a northeasterly direction to a depth of but a foot or so at its northeast end, 40 feet distant. At the southwest end a schist wall is exposed, but for a distance of about 25 feet from the wall the cut is made entirely in soapstone. This soapstone in the deepest part exhibits considerable solidity, and apparently blocks of some size could be taken from it.

At 83 feet northwest of the first shaft is a second shaft 32 feet deep, but it was inaccessible. The dump consists entirely of soapstone, and it is probable that the shaft is wholly in that material. From the workings described there is good evidence that a mass of soapstone 20 feet wide by 90 feet long by 25 feet deep is present. The horizontal extent of this body can only be determined by more crosscuts and shafts, the outcrop being hidden by the surface mantle of soil.

The successful introduction of this material into the market will depend, first, on the size of the deposit that can be proved to exist, and second, on whether or not the several physical characteristics are present which are necessary in such material to permit competition with quarries operating in the East.

There is very little doubt that the deposit owes its origin to the hydration of magnesian silicate minerals developed in pre-Cambrian limestone by metamorphism. Such an origin would give to the deposit a bedlike character continuous in depth and horizontal extent only in so far as the silicate minerals had been developed and later altered to talc. As this process might result in deposits of great extent or in podlike masses of small size, it follows that exploration by crosscuts and shafts is the only practical method of exploring the deposit.

OIL.

A small oil seepage in a spring near the town of Burnet has deposited at the surface asphaltic material in the cracks and interstices of the neighboring limestones. In Post Mountain, also, a little oily residue is found about 20 feet above the base of the Cretaceous. The beds in which this oily residue is found are very near the base of the Cretaceous system, and consequently only a few feet above the underlying Paleozoic beds. (See geologic map, Pl. III.)

The underlying Cambro-Ordovician limestones, shales, and sandstones have not shown any indication of oil throughout the Llano-Burnet region. The Carboniferous strata of the region, on the other hand, have a decidedly petroliferous odor. Though the Trinity sand at Burnet is deposited on Cambro-Ordovician limestone, it is quite possible that a short distance to the east Carboniferous beds, raised by faulting, may be the basement upon which the Cretaceous sands rest. It is possible therefore that oil has passed from the underlying Carboniferous into the porous Trinity sand and spread laterally as far west as Burnet.

As has been pointed out by Taff and Reed,[a] the Trinity sand is of such character (being a beach or shallow-water deposit of siliceous

[a] Taff, J. A., and Reed, W. J., The Madill oil pool, Oklahoma: Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 381, 1910, p. 513.

sand with thin beds of clay) as almost to preclude the idea that oil originated in that formation.

The lack of other indications of oil in other portions of the Trinity in this region, the structurally broken and eroded condition of the underlying Paleozoic, and the petroliferous odor of the Carboniferous beds point to the conclusion that though a small quantity of oil may have passed upward from below, it is extremely improbable that oil in commercial quantities is present in the Burnet and Llano quadrangles.

STRUCTURAL MATERIALS.

Limestone, sandstone, and granite are present in large quantities in the central Texas region, and in the pre-Cambrian schist series marbleized limestone beds also are found.

MARBLE.

Only a few attempts have been made to utilize the marbleized limestone beds occurring in the pre-Cambrian rocks. A small amount was quarried from an opening near Bachelor Peak and was used in part in the construction of the Llano courthouse. Recently an opening has been made by Messrs. Sellman and Bernard, of Llano, on a marble ledge on the northern edge of the town of Llano. The operators propose to work the deposit, at least at first, on a small scale to supply a local demand for such material.

It may be said in general that much of the marble in the pre-Cambrian is of slight value because of its impurities. It is not improbable, however, that ledges exist of sufficient width and length and of such color and purity that quarry floors could be successfully opened. Such localities can only be found by diligent search, with careful sampling by surface cuts or pits.

The marble is practically all of a fairly coarse crystalline type, more or less mottled blue or black. Some pure white ledges undoubtedly occur, but, taken as a whole, the material represents a common variety of stone and probably will never command a high price. That operations may be carried on at a fair profit, however, at some time in the future is probable.

SANDSTONE.

A sandstone quarry has been operated intermittently for a number of years at a point north of Fairland, Burnet County. A considerable quantity of this material has been shipped out of the county, and the stone is used also in neighboring towns. The quarry is opened in beds of the Hickory sandstone. At this point the material is a light brown, rather fine-grained sandstone. The beds dip gently into the hillside, and bedding planes are prominent and add

to the ease with which the stone may be worked. A spur connects the quarry with the Houston & Texas Central Railroad. The demand for this stone at the present time is limited, competing as it must with abundant limestone building material at points beyond the Llano-Burnet region.

LIMESTONE.

Portions of the Edwards limestone and certain layers in the Trinity formation can be used for building purposes. The latter beds, of yellowish to white color, are quite easily extracted and in the quarry are often so soft that they may be sawed into blocks. This material becomes harder when exposed to the air.

GRANITE.

Granite forms a considerable proportion of the pre-Cambrian rock of the region. Unfortunately, however, from the viewpoint of the quarryman, all of this material is not available for use. In an earlier part of this report it was shown how the intrusion of granite had locally produced areas characterized by the presence of abundant schist fragments intermixed with the intruding rock. The condition is a very common and unfortunate one, and if it were not that many extensive areas also are underlain by clean stone the quarry industry in this region could have only a decidedly moderate growth. It may be said at once, however, that granting transportation and market, there is available an enormous quantity of clean granite in the region.

Of this material two very distinct types are present—(1) the coarse and very coarse grained granites and (2) the medium to fine grained granites, among which a number of varieties may be distinguished.

Of these two types the former is commonly free from such imperfections as would prevent its use, while the latter is locally marred or spoiled by the presence of schist fragments or iron pyrite.

By a glance at the map (Pl. III, in pocket) it may be seen that an extensive area of very coarse grained rock underlies the territory in southwest Llano County. Practically inexhaustible supplies of this granite lie above what would be railroad grade in the vicinity of Enchanted Rock. A further examination will show that both at Granite Mountain in Burnet County and north of that point are broad areas underlaid by coarse-grained stone. The wide distribution of the fine-grained types may also be seen, but of them it is not possible to predict that any given spot consists of clean granite, for, as explained above, various impurities may be present. In such areas only by careful examination can excellent quarry sites be selected.

A number of quarries have been opened in areas more or less characterized by the presence of schist fragments, and at other

localities abandoned quarries were seen where the presence of iron pyrite must have been one of the factors leading to their disuse.

One fact directly dependent upon the geologic relation of the granite to the schists and having a decidedly practical bearing on the selection of quarry sites is this: In areas of mixed schist and granite (that is, where granite has intruded the schists in a complicated way) there can be no assurance that what is apparently an excellent quarry floor will hold its valuable qualities in depth. It is in fact probable that schist fragments will be encountered in such amount as either wholly to ruin the enterprise or to reduce profits to a minimum. It is of course true that the mass may continue clean, but the chance is too small to be worth the risk.

At the present time transportation facilities deeply affect the growth of the granite industry, the Parkinson group of quarries, for example, being so situated that a wagon haul of 6 miles is necessary. The haul for other quarries is as much as 11 miles. A number of quarries, however, have been operated near the railroad, the quarry at Granite Mountain (the most extensive operation in the region), on the Houston & Texas Central Railroad being a notable example.

At the present time, exclusive of that from the Granite Mountain quarry, by far the greater part of the stone quarried is used for monumental purposes. The stone, for example, from the Gootch & Wells quarry, on the Parkinson tract, and from the Norton quarry, 11 miles south of Llano, is a medium to fine grained gray granite, and takes a fine polish. Much of the granite is well suited for large structures and could be so utilized were transportation better and a more active market available.

Granite Mountain quarry.—The Granite Mountain quarry is located on the Houston & Texas Central Railroad at Granite Mountain, Burnet County, near the town of Marble Falls. The owners since 1893 are Darragh & Catterson. Before that date the property was owned by Lacey, Westfall & Norton.

The quarry is opened in the side of a broad, low, bare, granite hill. No stripping is necessary. Sufficient granite is exposed above the present railroad grade to furnish material for a great many years.

The rock is coarse-grained pink granite, consisting of quartz, microcline (dominant), albite-oligoclase, some orthoclase, and biotite. Though portions of the mass are intruded with pegmatite, an enormous quantity of fine material is at hand. A well-defined rift aids quarrying. Sheets of any desirable thickness can be lifted, and facilities for handling impose the only limit to the size of blocks that may be obtained. The greater part of the rock quarried has been shipped in 5 to 10 ton blocks to the Galveston jetty. This work was begun in 1891 and continued to 1898. Little work was done from 1898 to 1902 From 1902 to the present time about 1,000,000 tons of rock

were shipped. Before that, however, 2,000,000 tons were shipped, and in addition 120,000 yards of crushed rock have been used on the same work.. Probably 2,000,000 tons were used as cap rock.

The capitol building at Austin, begun in 1884 and finished in 1899, and courthouses in Galveston, Houston, and at other localities, are built of this granite. Nevertheless, but a small part of the output has been dimension stone. This class of stone will probably grow in importance.

The quarry is equipped with 20-ton rigging. There are 5 derricks, a 1,500-foot cableway, and a tram. The rock is generally swung direct to the cars. A No. 7½ Gates crusher is also installed. About two-thirds of the labor employed is white. Engineers are paid $2.50 to $3.50 per day; derrick men, $2.75 to $3; foremen, $4; common laborers, $1.50 to $1.75.

Freight rates per ton of rough granite to points in Texas range from $1 to San Antonio to $1.40 to Aransas Pass.

Teich quarry No. 2.—This quarry is a short distance west of Kingsland, Llano County, and is connected by a spur with the Houston & Texas Central Railroad. It is owned by Mr. Frank Teich, of Llano, and was opened in 1908. The rock is a coarse-grained pink granite, and takes a fine polish. The Memorial Church of Orange, Tex., is built of this rock. About 50,000 cubic feet have been extracted, valued at 50 cents a cubic foot. The quarry was not being worked when it was visited.

Mr. Teich operated a small quarry on the Parkinson tract 6 miles south of Llano during the summer of 1909. About 6,000 cubic feet was extracted and manufactured into monuments at Teich's polishing works near Llano. This quarry was abandoned in the summer of 1910. A new quarry, Teich No. 3, is being opened about 4 miles south of Llano on Mr. Sheeon's land.

Gootch & Wells quarry.—Gootch & Wells are operating a quarry on the Parkinson tract about 6 miles south of Llano. The quarry presents a very rough and irregular appearance. The pit is from 25 to 50 feet deep and about 150 long in an east-west direction. About 100 feet wide at the east end, it narrows to 15 or 20 feet at the west end. The rock lies in somewhat irregular sheets broken by vertical joints. N. 50° E. is the easiest break.

The following section will give an idea of the sheeting:

Section showing sheeting in Gootch & Wells quarry, Llano County, Tex.

	Feet.
Top ledge, not used (low dip northwest)	5 10
Rotten granite	1– 2
Thick ledge	12±
Rotten seam	½
Ledge	8
Ledge	4

The thickness of the sheets varies considerably, and the presence in parts of the quarry of pegmatite and schist inclusions spoils much rock. The stone is a beautiful gray granite, somewhat resembling the Barre, Vt., stone. It consists of quartz, microcline feldspar with a little albite-oligoclase and orthoclase feldspar. Biotite in small flakes is the dark mineral. The quarries are equipped with 4 derricks, gasoline engines, and 5 air drills. Plug and feathers are largely used for breaking on the finish work. The quarry can produce 250 cubic feet per day.

The granite is hauled to the Houston & Texas Central Railroad at Llano in wagons at a cost of 15 cents per cubic foot. Freight on rough stock varies from 50 cents to $2.50 per ton within the State limits. From Llano to Houston the rate is $1.45. The entire product of the quarry is used for monumental work. The actual cost of quarrying is about 40 cents a cubic foot, varying with the nature of the seams in the quarry. The rough stone is sold from the quarry. Dressing costs from $1 to $25 per cubic foot, according to the nature of the designs.

The best quality of stock sells for $1.50 a cubic foot, this grade being used for best polished work. The cheapest stock used for hammered work sells for 90 cents per cubic foot.

The quarry produced during 1908 about 18,000 cubic feet and will produce during 1909 about 22,000 feet. The entire Parkinson tract produced during 1908 (including quarries operated by Messrs. Patterson, Blodgett, Leiter, and Teich) about 33,000 feet.

Norton quarry.—The Norton quarry, owned by Mr. Norton, of Llano, is located about 11½ miles southwest of Llano and about 3½ miles a little east of south of Sixmile post office. The quarry pit is nearly rectangular and measures 95 feet long in a north and south direction. It is about 35 feet wide and 12 to 15 feet deep. Natural walls, caused by small north and south seams, make the west and east sides. The north end, trending N. 60° E., is a very straight break. The rock breaks easiest the "capping way," while north-south and east-west breaks are about the same in this respect. The stone is a bluish-gray, fine-grained granite composed essentially of quartz, and microcline feldspar, with a little albite-oligoclase and orthoclase. The dark mineral is biotite mica in fine flakes. A little chlorite is present. Pyrite was noted, occupying almost invisible seams; it is not abundant, however, though some fine blocks are spoiled by its presence. Schist fragments also spoil some of the rock. The plant includes 2 derricks and a horse winze.

Stewart quarry.—E. L. Stewart, in August, 1908, opened a new quarry near the old Stewart quarry, about 10½ miles southwest of Llano and about 2½ miles a little west of south of Sixmile post office.

The rock is a fine-grained gray granite. Pyrite is very abundant in parts of the old Stewart quarry near by and may also interfere with the new opening. Schistose material is included in much of the granite of the vicinity and this fact, combined with the presence of pyrite and the long haul to the railroad will probably prevent extensive developments. Two carloads have been shipped to San Antonio and Paris markets, principally for monumental purposes. The rock is hauled for 25 cents a cubic foot loaded at quarry and unloaded at Llano. Quarrymen receive from $2 to $2.50 per day.

Other quarries.—Mr. Bradshaw has opened a small quarry one-fourth of a mile west of the Gootch & Wells quarry. Only the top rock has been removed over a small area.

Mr. H. P. Bailey is also opening a quarry three-fourths of a mile north of Bradshaw's. Only a few cubic feet of rock have been quarried.

Mr. George Patterson is operating a quarry on the Parkinson tract south of Llano, but no notes are at hand covering the operations.

A number of quarries have been worked in the past, but are, for the present at least, abandoned. Such are the Town Park quarry north of Llano, where pyrite marred a very beautiful coarse-grained gray granite porphyry; the Kansas City quarry, 2 miles west of Llano on the Mason road, and the quarry 7 miles northwest of Burnet, where a very dark gray, slightly gneissoid granite has been quarried.

INDEX.

A.

Page.

Acknowledgments to those aiding 7
Algonkian rocks (?), character, subdivisions, and distribution of 9–22
Allanite, character of 85

B.

Bader incline, iron ore from, analysis of 59
Bader tract, deposits at 31–34
iron ore from, analyses of 34
character of 33
record of drill hole at 33
workings at map showing 32
Badu, N. J., assistance of 7, 29
Bancroft, Howland, work of 7
Baringer Hill, deposits at 81–88
geological structure of 84–85
minerals of 86–87
rare-earth minerals of 85–88
Basic intrusive rocks, character and distribution of 21–23
Bayley, W. S., work of 7
Beaver Creek, folding of sandstone at, plate showing 76
Beck, R., on Russian iron ores 68
Bluffton, lead prospects near 76–77
lead prospects north of, map showing relations of Upper Cambrian and pre-Cambrian granite near, figure showing 76
Burnet quadrangle, map showing 8

C.

Cambrian rocks, character and subdivisions of 23–24
Cambro-Ordovician rocks, character and distribution of 24
Carboniferous rocks, character and subdivisions of 24–25
Castell, iron deposits near 42–48
Cedar Mountain, diorite from 22
Clements, J. Morgan, on contact effect 64
Click, intrusive rock from 22
pyrite deposits near, distribution of, figure showing 54
Coal Creek, intrusive rock from 22
Copper, distribution and ores of 73–74
Cyrtolite, character of 85

D.

Dabney, J. B., on Olive mine iron ore 29
Deep Creek prospects, distribution and character of 42–44
iron ore of, character of 43
map showing 43
Drainage system of the region 8–9

E.

Page.

Elm Creek prospects, distribution and character of 45–48
iron ore of, analyses of 46, 48
character of 46, 48
maps showing 45, 47
Erosion, relation to faulting, figure showing 37
Esbon, granite from 13

F.

Faulting, relation to folding and erosion, figures showing 36, 37
Feldspar of Baringer Hill, character of 84
Fergusonite, varieties of 85
Flowage of schist, plate showing 10
Fluorite, distribution and character of 89–90
Fluorspar of Baringer Hill, character of 84
Folding, of sandstone, plate showing 10
relation to faulting and erosion, figures showing 36, 37

G.

Gabbro-diorite intrusives, character and distribution of 21–23
Gadolinite, character of 85
Galena, distribution and origin of 76–77
Geology of the region 9–26
Gneisses and schists, divisions and distribution of 14–21
origin of 20–21
Gold, assays and distribution of 70–73
prospect for, map showing 72
Goldmine Creek, intrusive rock from 22
Goodes Spring, granite from 13
Goodwin iron prospect, character of ore at 41
Gootch & Wells quarry, granite of 97–98
section of 97
Granite, character and subdivisions of. 10–14, 95–99
distribution of 11, 95–99
geologic relations of 10–11
intruding schist, plate showing 76
local character of, at—
Esbon 13
Gootch & Wells quarry 97–98
Granite Mountain quarry 96–97
Grays Mountain 13
Kansas City quarry 12
Kings Mountain 13
Heine's well 13
Hog Mountain 12
Norton quarry 13, 98
Parkinson quarry 12
Stewart quarry 98–99
Teich quarry 97
Granite Mountain quarry, granite of 97–98

Page.

Graphite, distribution of..... 77–82
prospect for, map showing..... 79
report on..... 78–82
Grays Mountain, granite from..... 13

H.

H. & G. N. Section 13, iron ore of, analysis of..... 53
iron ores of, character of..... 50–53
prospects in, map showing..... 50
relations of ore layers, figure showing.... 51
Heath gold prospect, development at..... 71–73
map showing..... 72
Heines well, granite from 13
Hess, Frank L., on rare earths..... 83–88
Hog Mountain, granite from..... 12–13
Horse Mountain, manganese ore from, character and analysis of..... 82–83

I.

Iddings, J. P., on opaline granite..... 14
Igneous rocks, relation of to origin of iron ore. 60–68
Intrusive rocks, character and distribution of. 21–23
Iron Mountain, deposits at..... 34–40
geological structure of..... 37–38
granite from..... 13
iron ore of, analyses of..... 39
character of..... 35–37, 39
record of drill hole at..... 39
vertical section of ore body, figure showing..... 36
workings at, map showing..... 35
Iron ores, character, distribution, and geological relations of..... 26–70
chemical analyses of..... 28–29, 34, 39, 46, 48, 53, 58–59
chemical relations of..... 62–65
deposits of..... 56–57
local character and occurrence of..... 26–55
origin of, consideration of..... 56–70
hypotheses for..... 56
summary regarding..... 69–70

K.

Kansas City quarry, granite from..... 12
Kay, Fred H., work of..... 7
Keyser-Jones tract, iron ore of..... 40–41
prospects on, map showing..... 40
Kings Mountain, granite from..... 13

L.

Lead, occurrence of..... 75–77
ore, character of..... 76–77
prospects for, development of..... 76–77
map showing..... 76
Limestone, character and economic value of. 95
Linton, Robert, assistance of..... 29–30
Lively tract, iron ore of..... 48–49
"Llanite," character and composition of..... 14
Llano quadrangle, maps showing.... 8; in pocket.
Llano series, divisions and distribution of.... 14–21
origin of..... 20–21
Lone Grove, graphite deposit at, development of..... 78–82
graphite deposit at, report on..... 80–82
workings at, map showing..... 79

M.

Page.

Magnetite, concentration of, figure showing.. 61
Magnetite gneiss, sketch of ore surface in..... 52
Magnetite ore, banding of, plate showing.... 10
distribution of, figures showing..... 40, 43, 45, 47, 49, 50
See also Iron ores.
Manganese, distribution of..... 82–83
e, analysis of..... 83
character of..... 82
Marble, character of..... 94

N.

Newland, D. H., on iron ores..... 69
Norton quarry, granite from..... 13, 98

O.

Oatman Creek, Packsaddle schist near, section of..... 16
Oil, distribution and occurrence of..... 93–94
Olive property, development of..... 28–31
iron ore from, analyses of..... 28, 29
character of..... 28–31
workings, map showing..... 30
Opaline granite, character and composition of 14
Opaline quartz-feldspar porphyry, character and composition of..... 14

P

Packsaddle schist, character of..... 15–18
distribution of..... 15–16
section of..... 16
Paleozoic rocks, character and subdivisions of. 23–25
Parkhill (iron) prospect, deposits of..... 42
Parkinson quarries, granite from..... 12–13
Penrose, R. A. F., jr., analysis by..... 83
Polycrase, character of..... 86

Q.

Quartz of Baringer Hill, character of..... 84

R.

Radio-activity, indications of, in rare-earth deposits..... 86
Rare-earth metals, Baringer Hill, deposits of. 83–88
distribution of..... 83
economic value of..... 88
minerals of..... 86–87
radio-activity of..... 86
Riley Mountain, iron ore of, character of.... 54–55
Rosenbusch, H., on contact effect..... 63
Rough Mountain, diorite from..... 23

S.

Sandstone, character..... 94–95
Schaller, W. T., analysis of iron ore by..... 59
examination of gold ore by..... 71
Schist, assimilation of at granite contact, plate showing..... 10
flowage of at granite contact, figure showing..... 10
fragments of at granite contacts, figures showing..... 10, 61, 62
Schists and gneisses, distribution and subdivisions of..... 14–21
origin of..... 20–21
Sederholm, J. J., on granites of Finland..... 57
Serpentine, character and distribution of..... 91
Silver, assays for..... 70

Page.
Spencer, A. C., on iron ores 26
work of 7
Stewart quarry, granite of 98–99
Structural materials, character and distribution of 94–99
Structure of the region 25–26

T.

Talc, distribution of 90–93
workings for 92–93
Teall, J. J. H., on adinole 63
Texas, geologic map o 7
Topography of the region 7, 8–9

U.

Upper Cambrian rocks, character and distribution of 23

V. Page.
Valley Spring gneiss, character and distribution of 19–20
Van Hise, C. R., on distribution of elements 69
on shales 68

W.

Watch Mountain, granite from 12
Westervelt, W. Y., on Lone Grove graphite .. 79–82
on occurrence of talc 92–93
Wells, R. C., analyses by 46, 53

Z.

Zinc blende, character and occurrence of 89–90

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA
557XB C001
BULLETIN. WASH DC
447-450 1911
3 0112 026957065